

新东方  
XDF.CN

# New Perspective Grammar 英语语法新思维

## 基础版1

Basic

张满胜 / 著

连续热卖10余年的语法系列重装上市  
百万读者推崇的经典之作不容错过

英语语法新思维，改变你的“英语世界观”

浙江教育出版社

英语语法新思维

基础版3

张满胜 著

英语语法新思维

基础版2

张满胜 著

英语语法新思维

基础版1

张满胜 著

浙江教育出版社

浙江教育出版社

浙江教育出版社

# 版权信息

---

书名：英语语法新思维 基础版（全三册）

作者：张满胜

出版社：浙江教育出版社

# 目录 CONTENTS

---

## 英语语法新思维 基础版1

### 版权信息

### 前言 Preface

## Chapter 01 英文基本句型

### 1 英文句子构成：主语部分+谓语部分 Track01

### 2 主语+系动词+主语补足语（表语） Track02

### 3 主语+谓语（+状语） Track03

### 4 主语+谓语+宾语 Track04

### 5 主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语 Track05

### 6 主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语 Track06

## Chapter 02 动词分类

### 7 实义动词和（情态）助动词 Track07

## Chapter 03 句子的变化

### 8 陈述句的否定 Track08

### 9 一般疑问句 Track09

### 10 特殊疑问句 Track10

## Chapter 04 英文时态（一）：一般时态

### 11 一般现在时态的两种基本用法 Track11

### 12 一般现在时态的其他用法 Track12

### 13 一般过去时态的基本用法 Track13

### 14 一般将来时态的三种用法 Track14

## Chapter 05 英文时态（二）：进行时态

### 15 进行时态的构成与意义 Track15

### 16 现在进行时态的基本用法 Track16

### 17 过去进行时态的基本用法 Track17

### 18 将来进行时态的基本用法 Track18

## Chapter 06 名词

### 19 名词短语 Track19

### 20 名词的定义及分类

### 21 可数名词与不可数名词 Track20

### 22 可数名词复数变化规则 Track21

[23 不可数名词](#)  
[24 不可数名词的度量](#)  
[25 名词所有格的构成](#)  
[26 名词所有格的用法 Track22](#)  
[27 of属格的用法 Track23](#)  
[28 所有格的意义](#)  
[Chapter 07 限定词（一）：名词的数量](#)  
[29 数量限定词](#)  
[30 数量词与of连用 Track24](#)  
[31 数量词 a few, few, a little, little Track25](#)  
[32 数量词some, any Track26](#)  
[Chapter 08 限定词\(二\)：冠词](#)  
[33 不定冠词a, an的位置 Track27](#)  
[34 名词与冠词使用的重要技巧 Track28](#)  
[35 冠词的用法 Track29](#)  
[36 何时不用冠词 Track30](#)  
[37 school/the school Track31](#)  
[38 “泛指概念”的四种表达方式 Track32](#)  
[Chapter 09 形容词](#)  
[39 -ing和-ed结尾的形容词 Track33](#)  
[40 单个形容词在句中的位置 Track34](#)  
[41 多个形容词修饰名词的词序问题 Track35](#)  
[42 比较级和最高级的构成形式 Track36](#)  
[43 形容词的原级 Track37](#)  
[44 形容词的比较级 Track38](#)  
[45 形容词的最高级 Track39](#)  
[46 不具有等级的形容词](#)  
[Chapter 10 人称代词](#)  
[47 人称代词的分类](#)  
[48 主格人称代词的用法 Track40](#)  
[49 宾格人称代词的用法 Track41](#)  
[50 物主代词的形式和用法 Track42](#)  
[51 反身代词的形式与用法 Track43](#)  
[Chapter 11 英文基本主谓一致](#)  
[52 基本规则 Track44](#)  
[53 “数量词+名词”结构的主谓一致 Track45](#)  
[Chapter 12 副词](#)



[54 副词的种类 Track46](#)  
[55 副词在句中的位置（概述） Track47](#)  
[56 时间副词 Track48](#)  
[57 地点副词 Track49](#)  
[58 频度副词 Track50](#)  
[59 程度副词 Track51](#)  
[60 方式副词 Track52](#)  
[61 句子副词 Track53](#)  
[62 副词的其他位置 Track54](#)

## [Chapter 13 介词](#)

[63 介词的特点 Track55](#)  
[64 介词的种类 Track56](#)  
[65 表示时间、日期的介词 Track57](#)  
[66 表示地点、方位的介词 Track58](#)  
[67 表示方式、手段的介词 Track59](#)  
[68 与动词搭配的短语](#)  
[69 与形容词搭配的短语 Track60](#)  
[70 与名词搭配的短语](#)

## [英语语法新思维 基础版2](#)

### [版权信息](#)

### [前言 Preface](#)

## [Chapter 01 英语句子分析](#)

### [第一节 句子的结构类型](#)

[1 主语+谓语动词（+状语） Track 001](#)  
[2 主语+系动词+主语补足语 Track 002](#)  
[3 主语+谓语+宾语 Track 003](#)  
[4 主语+谓语+双宾语 Track 004](#)  
[5 主语+谓语+复合宾语 Track 005](#)

### [第二节 句子的种类](#)

[6 陈述句 Track 006](#)  
[7 疑问句 Track 007](#)  
[8 祈使句 Track 008](#)  
[9 感叹句 Track 009](#)

## [Chapter 02 名词性从句](#)

[10 四类名词性从句 Track 010](#)  
[11 三种句子充当四种名词性成分 Track 011](#)  
[12 陈述句分别充当四种句子成分 Track 012](#)

[13 一般疑问句分别充当四种句子成分 Track 013](#)

[14 特殊疑问句分别充当四种句子成分 Track 014](#)

### [Chapter 03 定语从句](#)

#### [第一节 定语从句概述](#)

[15 定语从句概述 Track 015](#)

#### [第二节 关系代词的用法](#)

[16 先行词指人，用关系代词who/whom Track 016](#)

[17 表示人或物的所属关系，用whose Track 017](#)

[18 先行词指物，用关系代词which Track 018](#)

[19 that可以指代人，也可以指代物 Track 019](#)

[20 在从句中作宾语的关系代词可以省略 Track 020](#)

#### [第三节 关系副词的用法](#)

[21 关系副词when的用法 Track 021](#)

[22 关系副词where的用法 Track 022](#)

[23 关系副词why的用法 Track 023](#)

#### [第四节 限制性和非限制性定语从句](#)

[24 不用逗号隔开——限制性定语从句 Track 024](#)

[25 用逗号隔开——非限制性定语从句 Track 025](#)

[26 用或不用逗号隔开，句义有差别 Track 026](#)

#### [第五节 that引导定语从句和同位语从句时的区别](#)

[27 that引导定语从句和同位语从句时的区别 Track 027](#)

### [Chapter 04 状语从句](#)

[28 状语从句概述 Track 028](#)

[29 状语从句的省略 Track 029](#)

[30 时间状语从句 Track 030](#)

[31 地点状语从句 Track 031](#)

[32 原因状语从句 Track 032](#)

[33 目的与结果状语从句 Track 033](#)

[34 条件状语从句 Track 034](#)

[35 让步状语从句 Track 035](#)

[36 比较状语从句 Track 036](#)

[37 方式状语从句 Track 037](#)

### [Chapter 05 时态（一）：完成时态](#)

[38 完成时态概述 Track 038](#)

#### [第一节 现在完成时 \(have/has done\)](#)

[39 现在完成时用法（一）：延续到现在的动作或状态 Track 039](#)

[40 与现在完成时搭配的时间状语 Track 040](#)

[41 现在完成时用法（二）：发生在过去但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态 Track 041](#)

[42 现在完成时在表示发生在过去但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态时的使用技巧 Track 042](#)

[43 现在完成时用法（三）：到截至目前的一个时间段内重复发生的动作 Track 043](#)

[44 其他需要使用现在完成时的结构 Track 044](#)

[45 现在完成时与一般过去时的用法比较 Track 045](#)

[第二节 过去完成时 \(had done\)](#)

[46 过去完成时的用法 Track 046](#)

[47 一般过去时与过去完成时的比较 Track 047](#)

[第三节 将来完成时 \(will have done\)](#)

[48 将来完成时动作开始的时间 Track 048](#)

[49 将来完成时的三种用法 Track 049](#)

[Chapter 06 时态（二）：完成进行时态](#)

[50 完成进行时概述 Track 050](#)

[第一节 现在完成进行时 \(have/has been doing\)](#)

[51 现在完成进行时用法（一）：表示从过去持续到现在，并且仍然在持续的动作 Track 051](#)

[52 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（一） Track 052](#)

[53 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（二） Track 053](#)

[54 现在完成进行时用法（二）：表示持续到现在，刚刚结束的动作 Track 054](#)

[55 现在完成进行时用法（三）：表示过去一段时间重复发生的动作 Track 055](#)

[56 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（三） Track 056](#)

[57 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（四） Track 057](#)

[第二节 过去完成进行时 \(had been doing\)](#)

[58 过去完成进行时的用法 Track 058](#)

[第三节 将来完成进行时 \(will have been doing\)](#)

[59 将来完成进行时的用法 Track 059](#)

[Chapter 07 动词不定式](#)

[第一节 不定式的语法功能（一）——作主语、宾语、定语、补语和独立成分](#)

[60 不定式作主语：It + ... + to do sth. Track 060](#)

[61 不定式作宾语：动词+ to do sth. Track 061](#)

[62 不定式作宾语补足语：动词+ sb. to do sth. Track 062](#)

[63 不定式作后置定语：名词+ to do sth. Track 063](#)

[64 不定式作独立成分 Track 064](#)

[第二节 不定式的语法功能（二）——作状语](#)

[65 不定式作目的状语 Track 065](#)

[66 不定式作结果状语 Track 066](#)

[第三节 不定式的语法功能（三）——用在形容词后](#)

[67 形容词后的不定式 Track 067](#)

[第四节 不带to的不定式](#)

[68 省略to的不定式作宾语补足语 Track 068](#)

[69 一些短语句型中to的省略 Track 069](#)

[70 do + nothing/anything/everything + but do句型中to的省略 Track 070](#)

[Chapter 08 动名词](#)

[第一节 动名词作主语](#)

[71 动名词用作主语 Track 071](#)

[第二节 动名词作宾语](#)

[72 只能接动名词作宾语的动词 Track 072](#)

[73 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词 Track 073](#)

[74 其他后面接动名词的结构 Track 074](#)

[第三节 动名词复合结构](#)

[75 动名词复合结构的构成：my doing / Tom' s doing Track 075](#)

[76 动名词复合结构的用法 Track 076](#)

[Chapter 09 被动语态](#)

[第一节 被动语态的构成](#)

[77 被动语态的构成 Track 077](#)

[第二节 被动语态的用法](#)

[78 被动语态中的介词短语by sb.可以省略 Track 078](#)

[79 不及物动词没有被动语态 Track 079](#)

[80 双宾语句子的被动语态 Track 080](#)

[81 静态被动形式 Track 081](#)

[82 get与过去分词连用 Track 082](#)

[83 have/get sth. done Track 083](#)

[Chapter 10 情态动词](#)

[第一节 情态动词概述](#)

[84 情态动词概述 Track 084](#)

[第二节 情态动词的用法](#)

[85 表示能力或可能性：can/could/be able to Track 085](#)

[86 表示许可: may/might/can/could Track 086](#)  
[87 表示请求: May I...? / Would you...? Track 087](#)  
[88 表示必须: must/ have to / have got to Track 088](#)  
[89 表示忠告或责任: should/ ought to / had better Track 089](#)  
[90 表示提议或建议: Shall I/we/he...? Track 090](#)  
[91 shall的用法 Track 091](#)  
[92 表示意愿: will/would Track 092](#)  
[93 表示过去的重复动作: would / used to Track 093](#)  
[94 情态动词表示推测 Track 094](#)  
[95 “情态动词+完成式”的用法 Track 095](#)

## [Chapter 11 限定词](#)

### [第一节 限定词的用法](#)

[96 数量形容词some/any Track 096](#)  
[97 个体形容词each/every Track 097](#)  
[98 个体形容词another/other Track 098](#)  
[99 个体形容词either/neither Track 099](#)

### [第二节 限定词的搭配](#)

[100 限定词与名词的搭配](#)  
[101 限定词之间的位置搭配](#)  
[102 限定词与形容词的区别](#)

## [Chapter 12 主谓一致](#)

[103 单数形式的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式 Track 100](#)  
[104 复数形式的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式 Track 101](#)  
[105 当两个名词性结构作并列主语时, 谓语动词的形式 Track 102](#)  
[106 of结构作主语时谓语动词的单复数形式 Track 103](#)  
[107 特殊句式中的主谓一致问题 Track 104](#)

## [英语语法新思维 基础版3](#)

### [版权信息](#)

### [前言| Preface](#)

## [Chapter 01 名词从句](#)

[1 名词从句的本质: 三种句子充当四种成分 Track01](#)  
[2 主语从句 Track02](#)  
[3 宾语从句 Track03](#)  
[4 表语从句 Track04](#)  
[5 同位语从句 Track05](#)

## [Chapter 2 定语从句](#)

[6 全面理解“先行词” Track06](#)

- [7 关系词 Track07](#)
- [8 常见关系代词 Track08](#)
- [9 as的用法 Track09](#)
- [10 what的用法 Track10](#)
- [11 than作关系代词的用法（考研常考题） Track11](#)
- [12 but的用法 Track12](#)
- [13 when的用法 Track13](#)
- [14 where的用法 Track14](#)
- [15 why的用法 Track15](#)
- [16 根据定语从句中的线索来判断介词 Track16](#)
- [17 根据先行词来判断介词 Track17](#)
- [18 表示所属关系或部分与整体关系时用介词of Track18](#)
- [19 in which to do结构 Track19](#)
- [20 that在名词从句与定语从句中 Track20](#)
- [21 which在名词从句与定语从句中 Track21](#)
- [22 各种复杂定语从句 Track22](#)
- [Chapter 3 状语从句](#)
- [23 状语从句的本质](#)
- [24 时间状语从句 Track23](#)
- [25 地点状语从句 Track24](#)
- [26 原因状语从句 Track25](#)
- [27 目的状语从句 Track26](#)
- [28 结果状语从句 Track27](#)
- [29 so和such的用法区别 Track28](#)
- [30 条件状语从句 Track29](#)
- [31 让步状语从句 Track30](#)
- [32 比较状语从句 Track31](#)
- [33 方式状语从句 Track32](#)
- [Chapter 4 动词不定式](#)
- [34 非谓语动词概述](#)
- [35 句型一：It is... + to do sth.（作主语） Track33](#)
- [36 句型二：动词+ to do（作宾语） Track34](#)
- [37 句型三：动词+ sb./sth. to do sth.（作宾语补足语） Track35](#)
- [38 句型四：名词+ to do sth.（作定语） Track36](#)
- [39 句型五：形容词+ to do sth.（作主语补足语） Track37](#)
- [40 不定式作状语 Track38](#)
- [41 用作独立成分 Track39](#)

[42 不定式的逻辑主语 Track40](#)

[43 不定式的时态 Track41](#)

[44 不定式的语态 Track42](#)

[45 不带to的不定式 Track43](#)

[46 分裂不定式 Track44](#)

[Chapter 5 动名词](#)

[47 动名词作主语 Track45](#)

[48 动名词作宾语 Track46](#)

[49 动名词的复合结构 Track47](#)

[50 动名词的时态和语态 Track48](#)

[51 there be的动名词及不定式形式 Track49](#)

[Chapter 6 分词](#)

[52 现在分词的意义 Track50](#)

[53 过去分词的意义 Track51](#)

[54 三种表示被动的结构（考试重点） Track52](#)

[55 关于分词短语作状语时的逻辑主语问题 Track53](#)

[56 分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义 Track54](#)

[57 带有连词或介词的分词短语 Track55](#)

[58 分词的完成式 Track56](#)

[59 现在分词与动名词的区别 Track57](#)

[60 动名词复合结构与现在分词短语的区别 Track58](#)

[61 分词作补足语 Track59](#)

[62 现在分词构成的复合形容词 Track60](#)

[63 过去分词构成的复合形容词 Track61](#)

[Chapter 7 从句的简化](#)

[64 名词从句的简化 Track62](#)

[65 定语从句的简化 Track63](#)

[66 状语从句的简化 Track64](#)

[Chapter 8 虚拟语气](#)

[67 非真实条件虚拟语气句 Track65](#)

[68 名词从句虚拟语气句 Track66](#)

[69 其他虚拟语气句型 Track67](#)

[Chapter 9 倒装](#)

[70 部分倒装 Track68](#)

[71 全部倒装 Track69](#)



新东方  
XDF.CN

New Perspective Grammar  
英语语法新思维

基础版1

Basic

张满胜 / 著

连续热卖10余年的语法系列重装上市  
百万读者推崇的经典之作不容错过

英语语法新思维，改变你的“英语世界观”

浙江教育出版社  
JINGJI JIAOYU CHUBAN SHE

# 版权信息

---

书名：英语语法新思维 基础版1

作者：张满胜

出版社：浙江教育出版社

出版日期：2018-08-01

ISBN：978-7-5536-7366-0

## 前言 Preface

---

★语法即是造句规则。学习语法有两个目的：首先，便于我们读懂句子；其次，教会我们造句。

★语法不是“死”的造句规则，而是“活”的语言思维。

一般语法书都是只讲“死”的规则，而不去追究规则背后合乎逻辑的语法思维，致使很多英语学习者花费大量时间学英语，学语法，记死规则，最后又很快遗忘，终难修成英语学习的正果。本套书力求不仅告诉你规则“是什么”，而且还要告诉你规则背后的“为什么”。从而达到既掌握规则又培养英文思维的目的。

★《英语语法新思维》“新”在何处？

### 新理念

笔者提出语法即思维的全新理念，并将这一理念贯穿于整个语法书创作的始终。语言是人们进行思维的载体；语法——作为语言遣词造句的规则，体现了用语者的思维。

### 新体系

本套书不再像传统语法书那样，以词法和句法两条主线对英语语法进行“大而全”、包罗万象的规则罗列，而是注重实用，循序渐进，科学地分为三册。具体思路体系安排如下：

《英语语法新思维 基础版1》：以动词和名词作为两大主线，介绍英文主要词类的正确使用，让读者能够熟练构造简单句，并且能够对各种主要词类运用自如。

《英语语法新思维 基础版2》：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者能够熟练地构造复合句，分析和读懂复杂的句子，进而使读者在下笔时不再是通篇简单句，而开始能够较灵活地把握句子的构造。

《英语语法新思维 基础版3》：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者更深入地比较各种复合句的特点，并掌握复合句与简单句之间的转化。教会读者征服复杂难句，简化复杂从句，做到使句子返璞归真。

### 新角度

笔者一直力图从全新的角度对传统的语法规则进行阐述，目的是使复杂的规则易学易用。比如，对于“名词性从句”，笔者的表述思路是：名词性从句的本质是把句子当作名词来用。名词在句中可充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语。因此，我们同样可用一个完整的句子来充当另一个句子的这四种成分，于是便有了主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句这四种名词性从句。问题的关键是：我们可以用三种句子（陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句）来分别充当这四种成分。于是，就把传统的介绍繁杂的连词用法的方式转化成了三种句子充当四种成分构成名词性从句的讲法。

### 新例句

规则毕竟是为语言服务的，精炼、明晰的规则披上美丽的语言外衣，使语法学习不再是枯燥乏味的死记规则，而是妙趣横生、驾轻就熟的语言实践。因此，笔者在例句的选择上真可谓煞费苦心，注重幽默性、知识性和思想性，使读者在欣赏语言之美的同时掌握语言表达规则。

另外，本系列图书还为读者配备了例句音频，可以扫描封底二维码或登录封底网址获取。所有例句均由发音纯正的美籍外教精心录制。希望能够帮助读者在学习语法的同时提高英语发音与听力水平。

本书是笔者在语法领域内的研究成果，水平有限，疏漏、错误在所难免。我真诚地希望，读者朋友们在阅读过程中若有疑问，或者对此书有任何建议，能够及时与我联系，我的微博地址是：

[www.weibo.com/zhangmansheng](http://www.weibo.com/zhangmansheng)

感谢您选读此书！

张满胜

## Chapter 01 英文基本句型



音频

- 1 英文句子构成：主语部分+谓语部分
- 2 主语+系动词+主语补足语（表语）
- 3 主语+谓语（+状语）
- 4 主语+谓语+宾语
- 5 主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语
- 6 主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语

语法就是遣词造句的规则，学习语法规则是为理解句子和造句服务的，因此语法的学习自然要从句子分析入手。

怎样分析句子？分析句子就是分析句子的各个组成部分，把句子的各个成分搞清楚，也就是把句子各部分的关系搞清楚。只有做到这一点，才可以准确地理解句子的意思或造出结构正确、意思明白的句子。

因此，为了读懂句子，进而自己造出句子，我们必须对英文句子的结构进行本质上的把握。



## 1 英文句子构成：主语部分+谓语部分 Track01

对于我们英语初学者来说，学英语的一个最大困惑就是：英文句子和我们汉语句子词序排列不一样。比如汉语说“上网聊天很有趣”，我们就不能按照汉语的语序把这句话翻译成“up net chat very interesting”，这根本就不是一个英语句子，你的外国朋友听了一定会皱起眉头，满脸疑惑。

这只是一个简单的例子，而英语句子有长有短，有简有繁，从表象来看，似乎千变万化，难以捉摸，但从本质上来说，有其内在规律。我们先看下面这些句子：

a. I am a webaholic. 我是一个网虫。

b. I like chatting online. 我喜欢网上聊天。

c. Chatting on the Internet is interesting. 网上聊天很有趣。

d. Chatting on the Internet brings me a lot of fun.

网上聊天给我带来很多乐趣。

e. We can call Internet addicts (上瘾的人) webaholics.

我们可以管网络瘾君子叫网虫。

f. Internet dating hurts. 网恋带来伤痛。

我们可以把这些句子以动词为分界线，分割成两部分：

陈述的对象 ( 主语部分 )	陈述的内容 ( 谓语部分 )	一个句子可以分为两个部分： 1) 以代词 ( I, we )、名词 ( Internet dating ) 或名词短语 ( chatting on the Internet ) 开头，来表明我们要陈述的对象，这就是句子的主语。 2) 在主语后边紧接动词，如： am, is, like, bring, can call, hurt, 来说明主语做什么，或描述主语的状况。动词及其后边的成分，我们称之为谓语部分。
I	am a webaholic.	
Chatting on the Internet	is interesting.	
I	like chatting online.	
Chatting on the Internet	brings me a lot of fun.	
We	can call Internet addicts webaholics.	
Internet dating	hurts.	

(1) 主语+谓语

从以上例句我们可以总结出，一个完整的句子都由两部分组成：“陈述对象+陈述内容”。

这里的陈述对象一般由名词或相当于名词的成分来充当，用语法术语来说叫作主语。而陈述内容则用来说明主语怎么样了，用动词来表达，我们称之为谓语。因此，一个完整的英文句子就是：“主语+谓语”或“名词+动词”。所以，英文句子结构有自己鲜明的规律，总是要有“主语+谓语”。

我们还可以进一步思考：英文句子为什么非得要有主语和谓语动词呢？

其实，我们可以从哲学的高度来找到答案。辩证唯物主义认识世界的基本出发点是：①世界统一于物质，即世界是由物质组成的；②物质的存在形式是运动。因此，人们对世界的认识可归结为“物质的运动”或“运动的物质”。而语言作为人类思维认识的载体，自然也得体现这一客观规律：“物质+运动”“名词+动词”“主语+谓语动词”。

因此，我们写英文句子，通常既要写出主语，还要写出谓语动词，既要有“陈述对象”，又要有“陈述内容”，这样才能表达一个完整的意思。

## (2) 五种基本句型

进一步研究，我们还会发现，上述句子动词后边所接的成分长短不一，于是我们又可以把这些句子进一步细分为五种句型：

五种句型	主语	谓语动词		
主 + 系动词 + 表语	I	am	a webaholic. (表语)	
	Chatting on the Internet	is	interesting. (表语)	
主 + 谓	Internet dating	hurts.		
主 + 谓 + 宾	I	like	chatting online. (宾语)	
主 + 谓 + 间宾 + 直宾	Chatting on the Internet	brings	me(间接宾语)	a lot of fun. (直接宾语)
主 + 谓 + 宾 + 宾补	We	can call	Internet addicts (宾语)	webaholics. (宾语补足语)

上面表格中，有一些术语（如表语、间接宾语、直接宾语、宾语补足语）读者也许不太熟悉，我们在后边马上就有详细的解释。在此，我们先要了解上述五种英文基本句型。之所以有这五种句型，关键在于谓语动词。比如有的动词后边不带宾语，例如：

Internet dating（主语） hurts（谓语）。网恋带来伤痛。

有的动词要有宾语，例如：

I（主语） like（谓语） chatting online（宾语）。我喜欢网上聊天。

有的动词后边要接两个宾语，例如：

Chatting on the Internet（主语） brings（谓语） me（间宾） a lot of fun（直宾）。

网上聊天给我带来很多乐趣。

有的动词后边仅有一个宾语还不能够表达完整的意思，在宾语后边还需接一个补充宾语的成分，例如：

We（主语） can call（谓语） Internet addicts（宾语）  
webaholics（宾语补足语）。

我们可以管网络瘾君子叫网虫。

因此，我们可以说，动词构成了一个句子的骨架结构。因为是动词决定了一个句子是否有宾语，有几个宾语以及其他句子成分。在下面的句型分析中请读者特别关注动词的用法。

## 2 主语+系动词+主语补足语（表语） Track02

- a. I **am** a webaholic. 我是一个网虫。
- b. Chatting on the Internet **is** interesting. 网上聊天很有趣。
- c. Learning English **is** important. 学习英文很重要。
- d. He **looks** happy. 他看起来很高兴。
- e. The music **sounds** nice. 这音乐很好听。
- f. He **became** a teacher. 他成了一名老师。
- g. The leaf will **turn** yellow in autumn. 树叶在秋天会变黄。

### （1）系动词

**系动词**（linking verb）：又叫连系动词，顾名思义，这种动词并没有具体的动作，而只是起连接主语和后边的成分的作用。这种动词后面所接的成分是用来说明主语的特点的，表明主语的性质特征。我们以下句为例来进行思维分析：

He looks happy.

比如，我们要描写“他（he）”，说他怎么样了，如果没有happy跟在looks后边，只是说：

He looks...他看起来……

这样句子显然不能表达完整的意思。而我们现在把happy这个形容词用在looks后边，通过looks来连接he和happy，来说明“他”的状况，即补充说明了主语的特征。因此，我们把系动词后边的成分叫作主语补足语，因为是补充主语的。语法术语又把它称为表语——能表示主语特征的成分。

## (2) 常用系动词

英文中最常见的系动词是be动词，具体形式有：

$$\text{be} \begin{cases} \text{am ( I am )} \\ \text{is ( he is, she is, it is )} \\ \text{are ( you are, we are, they are )} \end{cases}$$

另外还有：

look 看起来是    sound 听起来是

smell 闻起来是    taste 尝起来是

feel 感觉是    seem 似乎是

appear 似乎是    become 变成为

turn 转变为

## (3) 作表语的常用词

由例句我们可以看出，用作表语的词通常是名词和形容词。副词一般不作表语，我们不能说：

He looks happily.\*<sup>[1]</sup>

---

注释

[1]\*号在本书中表示句子错误。

### 3 主语+谓语（+状语） Track03

- a. Internet dating **hurts**. 网恋带来伤痛。
- b. The fire **is burning**. 火在燃烧。
- c. These children **are playing**. 这些孩子正在玩耍。
- d. Children **giggle**. 孩子们咯咯地笑。
- e. He **died**. 他死了。
- f. The sun **rises** and the sun **sets**. Stars **glitter** and stars **vanish**.

日升日落，星闪星陨。

- g. The sun **sets** in the west. 太阳从西边落山。
- h. He **works** hard. 他工作很勤奋。

#### （1）不及物动词

不及物动词（intransitive verb）：这种动词所表示的动作没有作用对象，其本身意思完整，其后不需带宾语。在词典中标为vi.。

比如我们说“他死了（died）”，“死（died）”这个动作就只是主语自主完成的，并没有作用对象，并不是说他的死使另外一个人怎么样了。

再比如，我们说These children are playing.（这些孩子正在玩耍。）play本身已经表达了完整的意思，也没有作用的对象，这句话并没有告诉我们孩子们在玩什么。

#### （2）主谓句型动词后往往带状语



我们再看最后两个句子：

The sun **sets** in the west. 太阳从西边落山。

He **works** hard. 他工作很勤奋。

这种句型中的谓语动词后边虽然不接宾语，但通常会接副词（如hard）或介词短语（如in the west），来说明动作的程度、地点或时间等等。英文中把这种修饰动作的成分称作状语。例如：

a. They shouted loudly. （表示动作的程度）

b. He died last night. （表示动作的时间）

### （3）区分主系表和主谓状两种句型

注意比较：

a. He shouted loudly. （shouted是不及物动词，副词loudly修饰动作shouted，作状语。）

b. He looks happy. （looks是系动词，没有具体动作。形容词happy不是修饰looks的，而是补充主语he的特征的，作表语。）

## 4 主语+谓语+宾语 Track04

a. These children are playing football. 这些孩子正在踢足球。

b. I love English. 我喜欢英语。

c. I like chatting on the Internet. 我喜欢网上聊天。

d. He speaks English well. 他英语讲得很好。

### (1) 及物动词

及物动词 (transitive verb)：这种动词告诉我们由主语发出的动作所作用的对象是什么，这里所作用的对象我们通常称之为宾语，即宾语是主语动作的承受对象。因此这类动词是带有宾语的。英语中绝大多数动词都是及物动词。词典中标为vt.。

These children are playing football.

此句告诉我们孩子们在玩什么。football是动作play的作用对象，是宾语。

### (2) 很多动词既是及物动词又是不及物动词

比较：

a. These children are playing football.

这些孩子正在踢足球。（此句play用作及物动词。）

b. These children are playing.

这些孩子正在玩耍。（此句play用作不及物动词。）

这里play既是及物动词又是不及物动词，但意思不一样。

### (3) 宾语后也可接状语

这种句型的宾语后边也通常接副词或介词短语作状语。例如：

a. I like chatting on the Internet. (on the Internet修饰动作chatting, 作状语。)

b. He speaks English well. (well修饰动作speaks, 作状语。)

## 5 主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语 Track05

a. Chatting online **will bring** you a lot of fun.

网上聊天会给你带来很多乐趣。

b. He **lent** me ten yuan. 他借给我十块钱。

c. I **will buy** you a meal. 我会请你吃顿饭。

d. I **gave** him my book. 我把我的书给他了。

e. He **showed** the guard his passport. 他把护照给门卫看了。

### 双宾动词

**双宾动词** (dative verb)：这种动词后面所接成分有人又有物。一般这里的“人”表示动作的接受者，称作间接宾语 (indirect object)，如例句中的you, me, him, the guard都是间接宾语；

“物”表示动作作用的对象，是动作的承受者，称作直接宾语 (direct object)，如例句中的a lot of fun, ten yuan, a meal, my book, his passport都是直接宾语。

间接宾语和直接宾语合起来叫作双宾语。

## 6 主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语 Track06

a. We **can call** Internet addicts (上瘾的人) webaholics.

我们可以管网络瘾君子叫网虫。

b. We **elected** John our chairman. 我们选了约翰作主席。

c. I **found** this answer wrong. 我发现这个答案是错误的。

d. You **can leave** the door open. 你可以把门开着。

e. A hedge (树篱) between **keeps** friendship green.

保持距离，友谊长青。(这句话可引申为“君子之交淡如水”。)

### (1) 宾补动词

**宾补动词** (factitive verb): 这种动词后面接宾语，而此宾语后又接补充说明宾语的补足语 (object complement)。上面例句中加下划线的部分都是补足语，补充前面的宾语。

如果我们只说 “We elected John. (我们推选了约翰。)” ，这句话意思显然不太完整，于是我们还要对 John 补充一下，说成 “We elected John our chairman. (我们选了约翰作主席。)” ，这样句子意思才完整。

宾语和宾语补足语合起来叫作复合宾语。

### (2) 区分双宾语和复合宾语

比较:

a. I made John our chairman. 我让约翰当了我们的主席。

b. I made John a cake. 我给约翰做了一块蛋糕。

判断两种宾语的方法很简单：在间接宾语后边加上be动词，若能构成合乎逻辑的句子，后面的名词即是补足语。比如我们可以说“John is our chairman.”。所以第一句中的our chairman是宾语补足语。若加be动词无法构成合乎逻辑的句子，后面的名词则为直接宾语。比如我们不能说“John is a cake.（约翰是一块蛋糕。）”。所以，“I made John a cake.”是双宾语结构。

温故知新

英语句子有长有短，有简有繁，从表象上看，似乎千变万化，难以捉摸，但从实质来看，可以发现其内在联系，找出其共同规律。英语句子的基本结构可以归纳成五种基本句型，掌握这五种基本句型，是掌握各种英语句子结构的基础。因为英文中各种复杂的句子均是由这五种基本句型扩大、组合、省略或倒装等变化而来的。

掌握这五种基本句型，是读懂英文句子并进而造出英文句子的根本，必须熟练掌握！

本节有几个重要思维观念：

1. 动词决定了英文的句型。

动词种类	句型
linking verb 连系动词	主语 + 系动词 + 表语
intransitive verb 不及物动词	主语 + 谓语
transitive verb with direct object alone 只接一个宾语的动词	主语 + 谓语 + 宾语
transitive verb with indirect object and direct object 接间接宾语和直接宾语的动词	主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语
transitive verb with direct object and object complement 接宾语和宾语补足语的动词	主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

2. 表语：表语是对主语的补充，因此又称主语补足语。副词一般不作表语。

3. 双宾语和复合宾语。

### 英文基本句型练习

#### 一、找出下列句子的主语部分和谓语部分：

1. Studying English takes time.
2. The first step is always the hardest.
3. Chatting on the Internet brings me a lot of fun.
4. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
5. A poor man is not necessarily unhappy.
6. A good knowledge of grammar is important to good writing.
7. Living without an aim is like sailing without a compass (罗盘).
8. confidence (信心) in yourself is the first step to success.
9. The early bird catches the worm (虫子).
10. The novel won the author a Nobel Prize.

#### 二、判断下列句子属于何种句型并翻译成汉语：

11. Time flies by.
12. It slipped my mind.
13. I can't stand the heat.
14. Fools seldom differ.
15. I sent you an E-mail.



16. It cost me three dollars.
17. Old habits die hard.
18. You can leave the door open.
19. He speaks English well.
20. Teachers will make your English better.
21. They elected Donald Trump the US President.
22. The novel won the author a Nobel Prize.
23. That will save you a lot of time.
24. They found the dead boy.
25. They found the boy dead.
26. I found the book easily.
27. I found the book easy.
28. Tom found Jim an apartment.
29. We found John a loyal (忠心的) friend.
30. I will find you a good teacher.
31. I find you a good teacher.
32. She will make him a good wife.
33. She will make him a good husband.

### 三、翻译下列短文，并分析每个句子的类型：

A sentence normally has a subject (主语) and a predicate (谓语). The subject identifies a person, place or thing. The predicate tells what the subject does or is.

The predicate always includes a verb, and a verb is one of three types—linking, intransitive, or transitive verbs.

The most widely used linking verb is a form of be, such as am, is, are, was, or were. Other linking verbs include: seem, become, feel, sound, taste, smell. The word or phrase that follows a linking verb is called a subject complement.

### 英文基本句型练习答案

#### 一、找出下列句子的主语部分和谓语部分：

1. Studying English (主语) takes time (谓语) .
2. The first step (主语) is always the hardest (谓语) .
3. Chatting on the Internet (主语) brings me a lot of fun (谓语) .
4. A friend in need (主语) is a friend indeed (谓语) .
5. A poor man (主语) is not necessarily unhappy (谓语) .
6. A good knowledge of grammar (主语) is important to good writing (谓语) .
7. Living without an aim (主语) is like sailing without a compass (罗盘) (谓语) .
8. confidence (信心) in yourself (主语) is the first step on the road to success (谓语) .
9. The early bird (主语) catches the worm (虫子) (谓语) .
10. The novel (主语) won the author a Nobel Prize (谓语) .

#### 二、判断下列句子属于何种句型并翻译成汉语：

11. Time (主) flies by (谓) . 时光飞逝。
12. It (主) slipped (谓) my mind (宾) . 我忘记了。

13. I (主) can't stand (谓) the heat (宾). 我热得受不了。

14. Fools (主) seldom differ (谓). 傻瓜并无多大区别。

15. I (主) sent (谓) you (间宾) an E-mail (直宾). 我给你发了封邮件。

16. It (主) cost (谓) me (间宾) three dollars (直宾). 这花了我三美元。

17. Old habits (主) die hard (谓). 积习难改。

18. You (主) can leave (谓) the door (宾) open (宾补). 你可以把门开着。

19. He (主) speaks (谓) English (宾) well (状). 他英语说得很好。

20. Teachers (主) will make (谓) your English (宾) better (宾补).

老师会帮助你提高英语水平。

21. They (主) elected (谓) Donald Trump (宾) US President (宾补).

人们选举了唐纳德·特朗普当美国总统。

22. The novel (主) won (谓) the author (间宾) a Nobel Prize (直宾).

这部小说使作者获得了诺贝尔奖。

23. That (主) will save (谓) you (间宾) a lot of time (直宾). 这会节省你很多时间。

24. They (主) found (谓) the dead boy (宾). 他们找到了那个死去的男孩。

25. They (主) found (谓) the boy (宾) dead (宾补). 他们发现那个男孩死了。

26. I (主) found (谓) the book (宾) easily (状). 我轻而易举地发现了这本书。

27. I (主) found (谓) the book (宾) easy (宾补). 我觉得这本书很容易。

28. Tom (主) found (谓) Jim (间宾) an apartment (直宾). 汤姆给吉姆找了一套公寓。

29. We (主) found (谓) John (宾) a loyal (忠心的) friend (宾补).

我们发现约翰是个很忠心的朋友。

30. I (主) will find (谓) you (间宾) a good teacher (直宾). 我将会为你找到一位好老师。

31. I (主) find (谓) you (宾) a good teacher (宾补). 我发现你是个好老师。

32. She (主) will make (谓) him (宾) a good wife (主补). 她会成为他的好妻子。

33. She (主) will make (谓) him (宾) a good husband (宾补). 她会使他成为一个好丈夫。

### 三、翻译下列短文，并分析每个句子的类型：

A sentence (主语) normally has (谓语) a subject and a predicate (宾语). The subject (主语) identifies (谓语) a person, place or thing (宾语). The predicate (主语) tells (谓语) what the subject does or is (宾语).

The predicate (主语) always includes (谓语) a verb (宾语), and a verb (主语) is (系) one of three types—linking, intransitive, or transitive verbs (表语).

The most widely used linking verb (主语) is (系) a form of be, such as am, is, are, was, or were (表语). Other linking verbs (主语) include: (谓语) seem, become, feel, sound, taste, smell (宾语). The word or phrase that follows a linking verb (主语) is called (谓语) a subject complement (主语补足语).

一个句子一般都有一个主语和一个谓语。主语表示一个人、地方或者事物。谓语则告诉我们主语干什么或是什么。

谓语往往包括一个动词，一定是连系动词、不及物动词和及物动词中的一种。

最常用的连系动词是be的各种形式，比如：am, is, are, was, were。其他的连系动词包括：seem, become, feel, sound, taste, smell。连系动词后面所接的词或短语叫作主语补足语。

## Chapter 02 动词分类



音频

### 7 实义动词和（情态）助动词

## 7 实义动词和（情态）助动词 Track07

根据动词的词义和在谓语中的作用，我们可以把动词分为实义动词、助动词和情态助动词。这是英文中动词最基本的分类。

### （1）实义动词（notional verb）

实义动词的特点：

- 1) 从词义角度来看，实义动词具备完整的词汇意义；
- 2) 从在谓语中的作用的角度来看，实义动词能单独充当句子谓语。

英语中除了助动词和情态动词以外，其他动词均为实义动词。

### （2）助动词（auxiliary verb）

助动词的特点：

- 1) 从词义角度来看，助动词不具备词汇意义；
- 2) 从在谓语中的作用的角度来看，助动词不能单独充当句子谓语，它必须和实义动词连用，以构成各种时态、语态、语气、否定和疑问等（以后各章将详细讨论，在此仅举几例予以说明）。

助动词有：

{	be: am is are was were been being
	do: does did
	have: has had having

助动词	变化形式	功能	例句
be	am is are was were	帮助构成进行时态	a. I <b>am studying</b> grammar. 我正在学习语法。 b. He <b>is playing</b> football. 他正在踢足球。
		帮助构成被动语态	I <b>was cheated</b> . 我被骗了。

( 续表)

助动词	变化形式	功能	例句
do	does did	帮助实义动词构成否定	I <b>do not</b> like English. 我不喜欢英语。
		帮助实义动词构成疑问	<b>Do</b> you like English? 你喜欢英语吗?
have	has had	帮助构成完成时态	I <b>have studied</b> English for 3 years. 我学英语三年了。

注意：be，have，do既可作实义动词， 也可作助动词，不要混淆。



	例句	词义	词性及作用
be	I am a student. 我是学生。	“是”	系动词，用作句子谓语。
	I am studying grammar. 我在学语法。	无词义	助动词，帮助构成进行时态。
have	I have two brothers. 我有两个兄弟。	“有”	实义动词，用作谓语。
	I have studied English for 3 years. 我学英语三年了。	无词义	助动词，帮助构成完成时态。
do	I often do my homework at home. 我一般在家做功课。	“做”	实义动词，用作谓语。
	I do not like English. 我不喜欢英语。	无词义	助动词，帮助构成句子否定。

### (3) 情态助动词 (modal verb)

情态动词的特点：

1) 从词义角度来看，情态动词有别于助动词。情态动词有其自身的词汇意义，如用来表示可能、建议、愿望、必要、允许、能力、怀疑等等，以表示说话者对某种行为或状态的看法或态度。

2) 从在谓语中的作用的角度来看，与助动词一样，情态动词在句中不能单独作句子谓语，必须和实义动词一起构成复合谓语。

常见的情态动词有：

can/could    may/might    must    shall/should    will/would

have to    ought to    used to    need    dare

关于情态动词的详细用法，由于较为复杂，我们安排在《英语语法新思维 基础版2》一书中详尽讨论。在此不再赘述。

温故知新

英文中的动词有各种分类，在本章，我们只是根据动词的词义和它在谓语中的作用做出分类，而这也是英文中动词最基本的分类。这种动词分类方式主要是为下一章“句子的变化”打下基础。所以要求读者熟练掌握，学会辨别。

### 动词分类练习

#### 一、找出下列句子中的实义动词、助动词或情态动词：

1. Studying English takes time.
2. The first step is always the hardest.
3. The library was built last year.
4. I can't stand the heat.
5. You can leave the door open.
6. He speaks English well.
7. That can save you a lot of time.
8. I will find you a good teacher.
9. I find you a good teacher.
10. She will make him a good wife.

11. I often do my homework at the school, but yesterday I did it at home. Jim doesn't do that. He likes doing his homework at home.

12. I have two brothers. One brother has been out of school for many years. Now he is working in a dot-com company (网络公司). He is married and has his own family. The other brother is now at college and hasn't graduated yet. He has a girlfriend and they have known each other for 2 years.

#### 二、找出下列短文中的实义动词、助动词或情态动词并翻译成汉语：

Two men were standing at a bar (酒吧). One man turned to the other and said, "I'll bet you \$100 that I can bite (咬) my left eye." The wager (赌注) was accepted, and the man popped (突然挖出) out his glass eye and bit (bite的过去式) it.

"Now," he said, "I'll give you a chance to win your money back. I'll bet you another \$100 that I can bite my right eye."

"He can't have two glass eyes," thought the other man, and he plunked (重重甩下) down his money.

Then the first man took out his false teeth and bit his right eye.

### 动词分类练习答案

#### 一、找出下列句中的实义动词、助动词或情态动词：

1. takes 实义动词
2. is 系动词
3. was 助动词
4. can't 情态动词    stand 实义动词
5. can 情态动词    leave 实义动词
6. speaks 实义动词
7. can 情态动词    save 实义动词
8. will 情态动词    find 实义动词
9. find 实义动词
10. will 情态动词    make 实义动词
11. do 实义动词    did 实义动词    doesn't 助动词  
do 实义动词    likes 实义动词

12. have 实义动词 has 助动词 is 助动词

is 实义动词 has 实义动词 is 系动词

hasn't 助动词 has 实义动词 have 助动词

## 二、找出下列短文中的实义动词、助动词或情态动词并将短文翻译成汉语：

Two men were (助动词) standing at a bar. One man turned (实义动词) to the other and said (实义动词), "I' ll (情态动词) bet (实义动词) you \$100 that I can (情态动词) bite (实义动词) my left eye." The wager was (助动词) accepted (实义动词), and the man popped (实义动词) out his glass eye and bit (实义动词) it.

"Now," he said (实义动词), "I' ll (情态动词) give (实义动词) you a chance to win (实义动词) your money back. I' ll (情态动词) bet (实义动词) you another \$100 that I can (情态动词) bite (实义动词) my right eye." "He can't (情态动词) have (实义动词) two glass eyes," thought (实义动词) the other man, and he plunked (实义动词) down his money.

Then the first man took (实义动词) out his false teeth and bit (实义动词) his right eye.

两个男人站在酒吧里。一个转身对另一个说“我赌100美元，我能咬到自己的左眼。”对方接受了赌注，于是这个男人挖出自己的玻璃眼珠用牙咬了一下。

“现在，”他说，“我给你一个把钱赢回去的机会。我再赌100美元我能咬到自己的右眼。”对方想：“他不可能有两只玻璃眼吧。”于是重重甩下了钱。

第一个男人取出了他的假牙在右眼上咬了一下。

## Chapter 03 句子的变化



音频

8 陈述句的否定

9 一般疑问句

10 特殊疑问句

本章主要讨论的重点包括：陈述句的否定、一般疑问句、特殊疑问句。

## 8 陈述句的否定 Track08

陈述句的否定构成有两种：

### (1) 谓语动词含有be动词或情态动词

这时直接在be动词或情态动词后加否定词not即构成否定句。

肯定句	否定句
He <b>is</b> a teacher.	He <b>is not</b> a teacher.
I <b>can</b> swim.	I <b>cannot</b> swim.
He <b>will</b> come to the party.	He <b>will not</b> come to the party.

### (2) 谓语动词是实义动词

这时陈述句的否定要借助于助动词do+not来构成，若主语是单数第三人称则用does+not+动词原形。

肯定句	否定句
I <b>like</b> English.	I <b>do not like</b> English.
He <b>likes</b> English.	He <b>does not like</b> English.

### (3) 否定的缩写

( 情态 ) 助动词	分开写	缩写
I am	am not	没有缩写
we/you/they are	are not	aren't
she/he/it is	is not	isn't

( 续表 )

( 情态 ) 助动词	分开写	缩写
I/he/she/it was	was not	wasn't
we/you/they were	were not	weren't
I/you/we/they do	do not	don't
he/she/it does	does not	doesn't
did	did not	didn't
I/you/we/they have	have not	haven't
he/she/it has	has not	hasn't
had	had not	hadn't
will	will not	won't
would	would not	wouldn't
shall	shall not	shan't
should	should not	shouldn't
can	can not	can't
could	could not	couldn't
may	may not	没有缩写
might	might not	mightn't
must	must not	mustn't



## 9 一般疑问句 Track09

一般疑问句的构成有两种：

### (1) 谓语动词含有be动词或情态动词

这时要构成一般疑问句，只需将be动词或情态动词移到句首。

肯定句	一般疑问句	回答
<b>He is</b> a teacher. 他是老师。	<b>Is he</b> a teacher? 他是老师吗？	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.
<b>He can</b> swim. 他会游泳。	<b>Can he</b> swim? 他会游泳吗？	Yes, he can. No, he can't.

注意一般疑问句的回答方式。肯定回答用yes，否定回答用no。

### (2) 谓语动词是实义动词

这时要借助于助动词do或does，将do或does放在句首。

肯定句	一般疑问句	回答
<b>He likes</b> English. 他喜欢英语。	<b>Does he like</b> English? 他喜欢英语吗？	Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.
<b>I like</b> English. 我喜欢英语。	<b>Do you like</b> English? 你喜欢英语吗？	Yes, I do. No, I don't.

## 10 特殊疑问句 Track10

特殊疑问句是在上述一般疑问句的基础上变化而来的。

句式：特殊疑问词+一般疑问句或作主语的疑问词+谓语部分。

常见特殊疑问词：

who what when where how why which whose

### (1) 不可与名词连用的疑问词

1) 对人提问：who

a. He can sing in English. → **Who** can sing in English?

他会用英语唱歌。→ 谁会用英语唱歌啊？

b. I saw him at the party last night. → **Who** did you see at the party last night? 昨晚我在派对上见到他。→ 昨晚你在派对上见到谁了？

2) 对事物或相关事情提问：what

a. I like English. → **What** do you like? 我喜欢英语。→ 你喜欢什么？

b. I am studying English grammar. → **What** are you doing?

我在学英语语法。→ 你在干什么？

c. I am studying English grammar. → **What** are you studying?

我在学英语语法。→ 你在学什么？

d. I'd like to go swimming tomorrow. → **What** would you like to do tomorrow? 我想明天去游泳。→ 你明天想去干嘛？

3) 对时间提问: when

I was born in 1990. → **When** were you born?

我生于1990年。→ 你什么时候出生的?

4) 对地点提问: where

He lives in Beijing. → **Where** does he live? 他住在北京。→ 他住哪儿?

5) 对方式提问: how

He goes to school by bus. → **How** does he go to school?

他坐公共汽车去学校。→ 他怎么去学校?

6) 对原因提问: why

I often study at the library because it's quiet. → **Why** do you often study at the library?

我经常在图书馆学习, 因为那儿很安静。→ 你为什么总在图书馆学习?

## (2) 与名词连用的疑问词

1) which

当说话者提供多种选择对象供对方选择时, 我们就用which来提问。此时which通常与名词连用, 意思是“哪一个……”。

A: Could you lend me your pen? 能不能借你的笔给我用一下?

B: Sure. I have two pens. This pen has black ink. That pen has red ink. **Which pen/Which one/Which** do you want?

当然, 我有两支笔。这支是黑笔, 那支是红笔。你要哪一支?

A: That red one. Thanks. 那支红笔, 谢谢。

从以上例句可以看出，which后面也可以不接名词，此时which是用作代词。

## 2) whose

Whose后面必须接名词连用，表示“谁的……”。

a. This is his book. → Whose book is this?

b. I borrowed Jack's car last night. → Whose car did you borrow last night? 我昨晚借了杰克的车。→你昨晚借了谁的车?

## (3) how用法详解

1) how可以单独使用，此时how是对动作的方式进行提问。

如对交通工具提问：

a. How do you go to work? 你怎么去上班?

I drive./By car. 我开车去。

I take a taxi./By taxi. 我打车去。

I take a bus./By bus. 我乘公共汽车去。

I take a subway./By subway. 我坐地铁去。

I walk./On foot. 我步行去。

b. A: How did he break his leg? 他怎么摔断腿的?

B: He fell off the ladder. 他从梯子上掉下来了。

2) how还常与形容词或副词连用。

a. How old are you?

b. How tall is he?

c. How big is your new house?

d. **How far** is it from your home to school? 你家到学校多远?

e. **How well** does he speak English? 他英语说得多好?

f. **How quickly** can you get here? 你多快能到这儿?

3) 对动作发生的频率提问: How often/How many times...?

a. I call my parents once a week. → **How often** do you call your parents?

我每星期给父母打一次电话。→ 你多久给父母打一次电话?

b. I call my parents once a week. → **How many times a week** do you call your parents?

我每星期给父母打一次电话。→ 你一个星期给父母打几次电话?

c. I go shopping twice a week. → **How often** do you go shopping?

我一个星期购物两次。你多久购物一次?

d. I go shopping twice a week. → **How many times a week** do you go shopping?

我一个星期购物两次。→ 你一个星期购物几次?

其他表示频率的短语:

every	}	day/week/month/year
every other (每隔...)		
once a		
twice a		
three times a		

温故知新

本章讨论了英文句子的三种变化：如何否定一个句子；如何提出一般疑问；如何构造特殊疑问句。这三种句子的变化是与助动词或情态动词密切相关的，所以我们首先应该熟练掌握上一章所讨论的动词分类。

英文中的句子还有其他各种变化，我们将在《英语语法新思维 基础版2》一书中详细讨论。

### 句子的变化练习

一、将下列句子先改成否定句，然后改为一般疑问句，并做出肯定及否定回答。然后再对划线部分提出一个特殊疑问句：

1. She lives there.
2. Kennex lived there.
3. I'm living here.
4. I often get up at 7:00 in the morning.
5. He likes swimming.
6. He is reading English.
7. I will graduate next year.
8. I saw Jack at the party last night.
9. George is going to study in his dormitory tonight.
10. I am going to visit my grandmother this summer vacation.

二、Which/what辨析：

11. A: \_\_\_\_ do you want to buy?

B: I want to buy a pen.

A: We have a lot of different pens. Their prices vary from 10 *yuan* to 300 *yuan*. \_\_\_\_ are you going to buy?

B: That one.

12. A: There are flights to Kunming at 7:30 a.m. and 11:30 a.m.

B: \_\_\_\_ are you going to take?

A: The 7:30 flight.

### 三、Work in pairs:

口头练习：用why提问下列句子，并根据想象做出回答。

Example:

A: I didn't go to school yesterday.

B: Why didn't you go to school yesterday?

A: Because I didn't feel good.

13. I'm going to the bank after class.

14. I need to go to the drugstore.

15. I took a taxi to school this morning.

16. I was absent from class yesterday.

17. I like going to the net café.

18. I am not coming to class tomorrow.

19. I can't come to your party this weekend.

20. I didn't eat breakfast this morning.

21. I don't like the weather in this city.

22. I didn't do my homework last night.

### 四、对下列活动的频率进行提问：

23. go to a movie
24. go shopping
25. go to a net café
26. play cards
27. write a letter to your parents
28. cut classes
29. get your hair cut
30. cook your own dinner
31. dine out
32. date girls

### 句子的变化练习答案

一、将下列句子先改成否定句，然后改为一般疑问句，并做出肯定及否定回答。然后再对加下划线的部分提出一个特殊疑问句：

1. She lives there. 她住在那里。

否定句 She doesn't live there.

一般疑问句 Does she live there?

肯定回答 Yes, she does.

否定回答 No, she doesn't.

特殊疑问句 Where does she live?

2. Kennex lived there. 肯尼克斯在那里住过。

否定句 Kennex didn't live there.

一般疑问句 Did Kennex live there?



肯定回答 Yes, he did.

否定回答 No, he didn't.

特殊疑问句 Where did Kennex live?

3. I'm living here. 我正住在这里。

否定句 I'm not living here.

一般疑问句 Are you living here?

肯定回答 Yes, I am.

否定回答 No, I am not.

特殊疑问句 Where are you living?

4. I often get up at 7:00 in the morning. 我常常早晨七点钟起床。

否定句 I don't often get up at 7:00 in the morning.

一般疑问句 Do you often get up at 7:00 in the morning?

肯定回答 Yes, I do.

否定回答 No, I don't.

特殊疑问句 When do you often get up?

5. He likes swimming. 他喜欢游泳。

否定句 He does not like swimming.

一般疑问句 Does he like swimming?

肯定回答 Yes, he does.

否定回答 No, he doesn't.

特殊疑问句 Who likes swimming?

6. He is reading English. 他正在读英语。

否定句 He isn't reading English.

一般疑问句 Is he reading English?

肯定回答 Yes, he is.

否定回答 No, he isn't.

特殊疑问句 What is he reading?

7. I will graduate next year. 我明年就要毕业了。

否定句 I will not graduate next year.

一般疑问句 Will you graduate next year?

肯定回答 Yes, I will.

否定回答 No, I will not.

特殊疑问句 When will you graduate?

8. I saw Jack at the party last night. 我昨晚在聚会上见到杰克了。

否定句 I didn't see Jack at the party last night.

一般疑问句 Did you see Jack at the party last night?

肯定回答 Yes, I did.

否定回答 No, I didn't.

特殊疑问句 Who did you see at the party last night?

Where did you see Jack last night?

When did you see Jack at the party?

9. George is going to study in his dormitory tonight.

乔治今晚打算在宿舍学习。

否定句 George isn't going to study in his dormitory tonight.

一般疑问句 Is George going to study in his dormitory tonight?

肯定回答 Yes, he is.

否定回答 No, he is not.

特殊疑问句 What is George going to do in his dormitory tonight?

Where is George going to study tonight?

10. I am going to visit my grandmother this summer vacation.

我打算今年暑假去看望奶奶。

否定句 I'm not going to visit my grandmother this summer vacation.

一般疑问句 Are you going to visit your grandmother this summer vacation?

肯定回答 Yes, I am.

否定回答 No, I'm not.

特殊疑问句 What are you going to do this summer vacation?

When are you going to visit your grandmother?

## 二、Which/what辨析:

11. What, Which

12. Which

### 三、Work in pair:

13. Why are you going to the bank after class?
14. Why do you need to go to the drugstore?
15. Why did you take a taxi to school this morning?
16. Why were you absent from class yesterday?
17. Why do you like going to the net café?
18. Why aren't you coming to class tomorrow?
19. Why can't you come to my party this weekend?
20. Why didn't you eat breakfast this morning?
21. Why don't you like the weather in this city?
22. Why didn't you do your homework last night?

注：回答略

### 四、对下列活动的频率进行提问：

23. How often do you go to a movie?
24. How often do you go shopping?
25. How often do you go to a net café?
26. How often do you play cards?
27. How often do you write a letter to your parents?
28. How often do you cut classes?
29. How often do you get your hair cut?
30. How often do you cook your own dinner?

31. How often do you dine out?

32. How often do you date girls?

## Chapter 04 英文时态（一）：一般时态



音频

- 11 一般现在时态的两种基本用法
- 12 一般现在时态的其他用法
- 13 一般过去时态的基本用法
- 14 一般将来时态的三种用法

英文中把动作分两个方面来讨论：一个是“时”，即表示动作发生的时间；另一个是“态”，即表示动作进行到何种程度。这就是所谓的“时态”。

“时”又可进一步分为四种时间：现在、过去、将来和过去将来。

“态”也进一步分为四种动作程度：一般动作、进行动作、完成动作和完成进行动作。

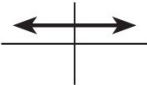
因为每一个时间规定下都有四种不同的动作完成程度，于是构成了英文的16个时态。在本书中我们只讨论三个时间下的两种动作，见下表：

	现在	过去	将来
一般动作	一般现在时态	一般过去时态	一般将来时态
进行动作	现在进行时态	过去进行时态	将来进行时态

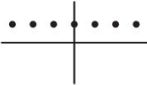
## 11 一般现在时态的两种基本用法 Track11

一般现在时态主要有两种基本用法：

- 1) 表示客观事实或真理。
- 2) 表示习惯性动作。图解如下：

<p>形式：do 或 does（单数第三人称）</p> <p>意义：一般现在时态表示客观的、普遍性的真理以及经常性的、习惯性的动作。（<b>The present simple tense</b> is used to express a general truth or fact, or an action that occurs regularly or habitually. Generally, <b>the present simple tense</b> verb conveys a sense of permanence.）</p>			
用法	图解	例句	说明
对客观事实或真理进行陈述，这些事实过去、现在和将来均可能存在。		<p>a. The sun <b>rises</b> in the east and <b>sets</b> in the west.</p> <p>b. The earth <b>moves</b> around the sun.</p>	太阳或地球的运转规律在过去、现在或将来都是一样的，不会改变。

（续表）

用法	图解	例句	说明
表示某项活动习惯性、经常性地发生。		<p>a. I often <b>spend</b> two hours reading English in the morning. 我早上经常花两个小时读英文。</p> <p>b. Classes <b>begin</b> at nine in the morning. 上午九点钟开始上课。</p>	两个例句都用来表示一种日常习惯性的活动。



进一步详解：

**用法1：**表示不受时间限制的事实陈述或客观性的真理，这些动作或状态的发生不限于某特定的时间，即它们可发生于任何时间，包括现在、过去和将来。

a. The earth **is** round. 地球是圆的。

b. The earth **moves** around the sun. 地球绕着太阳转。

c. The sun **rises** in the east and sets in the west. 太阳东升西落。

d. Water **consists** of hydrogen and oxygen.

水是由氢、氧两种元素组成。

e. Knowledge **is** power. 知识就是力量。

**用法2：**表示经常发生的、习惯性的动作（action）或者是存在的状态（state）。

a. He **doesn't work** hard. 他工作不努力。

b. He often **goes** to the gym. 他经常去健身房。

c. I **like** rice for dinner. 我晚饭喜欢吃米饭。

d. I **go** to the gym twice a week. 我一星期去两次健身房。

这一用法常和一些表示动作频率的时间副词连用。

表示肯定的频度副词有：always, frequently, usually, sometimes, generally, occasionally, often等。

表示否定的频度副词有：never, seldom, rarely等。

这些副词在句子中的位置通常在be动词之后、实义动词之前。

a. He **is always** late.

b. He always goes to school by bike.

## 12 一般现在时态的其他用法 Track12

以上是“一般现在时态”最常见、最普通的用法，除此之外，一般现在时态还有如下一些用法：

**用法3：**有时一般现在时态表示正在发生的动作。

用在以there或here开头的句子中，表示目前短暂的动作：

a. Here comes your wife. 你太太过来了。

不能说：Here is coming your wife.\* 可以说：Your wife is coming.

b. There goes our bus; we'll have to wait for the next one.

我们要坐的那辆车开走了，我们得等下一辆。

不能说：There is going our bus.\* 可以说：Our bus is going.

**用法4：**一般现在时态有时可表示将来发生的动作。主要用在条件状语从句（if, unless）和时间状语从句（when, as soon as, before, after等）中。（**考试重点**）

a. Please let me know when he comes back. 他回来时，请告诉我一声。

b. What are you going to do after you leave school?

毕业之后你打算做什么？

c. I'll be glad if she comes over to visit me.

如果她过来看我，我会很高兴的。

d. I'll give the book to him as soon as I see him.


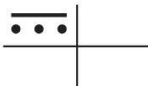
我一见到他就把书给他。

e. I will get everything ready before you come back.

在你回来之前，我会将一切准备就绪。

上述从句中动作come，see均是将在未来发生的动作，但要用一般现在时态表示将来。

## 13 一般过去时态的基本用法 Track13

形式: did 意义: 一般过去时态表示在过去的某一特定时间发生和结束的活动或情况。 ( <b>The past simple tense</b> is used to express a completed action which took place at a specified time in the past. The specified time is either stated or implied. )			
用法	图解	例句	说明
表示在过去的某特定时间发生和结束的活动。		a. I <b>saw</b> him in the library yesterday morning. b. I <b>began</b> to learn English ten years ago.	这两句均有特定的过去时间状语, 如: yesterday morning 和 ten years ago。
也可表示过去某一段时间内重复发生并结束的动作。		a. I <b>slept</b> for eight hours last night. b. She <b>lived</b> in our town for three years, but now she is living in Beijing.	表示在过去的某一段时间内持续的动作, 但这一动作现已结束。

进一步详解:

**用法1:** 常表示过去时间所发生的动作或存在的状态, 常和过去特定的时间状语连用。这些时间状语有: yesterday, yesterday evening, last night, the night before last (前天晚上), last year, last spring (去年春天), three days/months/years ago等等。注意这些时间状语之前不需加介词, 比如不能说: at last night\*, in last year\*, in three years ago\*。

- a. He **was** late for school this morning. 他今早上学迟到了。
- b. I **bought** this computer three years ago. 我三年前买了这台电脑。
- c. I **was** tired last night, so I **went** to bed early.

我昨晚很累，所以很早睡了。

**用法2:** 表示过去某一段时间一直持续或反复发生的动作，此时可与表示频度的时间副词连用。

a. I **lived** in the country for ten years.

我在农村生活过十年。（我现在不在农村了。）

b. He **used to do** morning exercises.

他过去常常晨炼。（他现在不这么做了。）

c. She **lived** in our town for three years, but now she is living in Beijing. 她在我们镇上住了三年，但现在她住在北京。

d. He **worked** in that dot-com company for one year. Now he is studying in America.

他在那家网络公司工作过一年，现在在美国上学。

e. I **wrote** a letter once a week to my family when I was in my first college year. 在大一的时候我一星期给家里写一封信。

## 14 一般将来时态的三种用法 Track14

从严格意义上来讲，英语中没有将来时态。这是因为表示将来的动作往往是与各种情态意图联系在一起的，比如：估计将发生某事；计划将来做某事；或表示愿意去做某事。因此，对于将来时态的学习，理解以下三个概念是至关重要的：

1) 预测：表示说话人认为将来会发生某件事。

2) 事先计划：说话人在头脑里已经做出决定将来要做某件事。


3) 意愿：说话人既不是预计某事将会发生，也不是预先经过考虑决定将做某事，而是在说话的时刻立即做出决断表明他将去做某事。

不仅如此，英文中还有其他各种可以表示一般将来动作的时态和结构。但为了方便起见，通常把will/shall do或be going to do称作一般将来时。图解如下：

形式: will do 或 be going to do 意义: 一般将来时态表示在未来的某个时间将要发生的某个动作或状态。( <b>The future simple tense</b> is used to express an action that will occur at some time in the future. )			
用法	图解	例句	说明
表示预测, 或估计将来要发生某事, 此时我们可以用: <b>will</b> 或 <b>be going to</b> 。( <b>Will or be going to</b> can be used to express sort of certainty. )		a. According to the weather report, it <b>will be</b> windy tomorrow. b. According to the weather report, it <b>is going to be</b> windy tomorrow. 根据天气预报, 明天会刮风。	天气预报对明天的天气做出预测, 此时 <b>will</b> 或 <b>be going to</b> 都可以使用, 意思上没有区别。
当我们表达确定的计划或事先的打算时, 一般只用 <b>be going to</b> 。( Generally <b>be going to</b> is used to express a definite plan. )		I have bought a computer and I'm <b>going to</b> learn computer science. 我买了台电脑, 我打算学计算机科学。	说话人显然在过去就做出了“要学计算机科学”的决定。并且现已买了电脑, 即为自己“将要学计算机科学”做了准备。因此, “学 计 算 机 科 学”明显是一个事先确定的计划 ( definite plan )。此时只能用 <b>be going to</b> 。

( 续表 )



用法	图解	例句	说明
当我们表达未经过预先计划或考虑的行动，即表示一种在说话时刻做出的抉择，也即表达的是说话人的一种意愿时，通常只用 <b>will</b> 。 (Generally <b>will</b> is used to express a willingness.)		A: The telephone is ringing. B: I <b>will</b> answer it. A: 电话铃响了。 B: 我去接。	B 要去接电话，既不是他预测有电话要打进来，也不是事先计划好要接这个电话。他是在说话的此刻做出的决定“要去接电话”。

进一步详解：

1) 表示预测时，我们可以用will或be going to。但两者还存在以下两点区别：

①be going to意指根据目前的明显迹象来推断某件事将要发生；will则只表明说话人认为或相信某件事将要发生。

②be going to通常用来表示说话人预期所说的事件马上或在相当近的将来就要发生；而will所表示的动作发生的时间可近可远。

a. Look at those black clouds! It' **s going to** rain. (不宜用will)

b. I feel terrible. I think I' **m going to** be sick. (不宜用will)

c. John **is going to** fall into that hole! 约翰马上要掉进那个洞了!

d. Oh, my dear! They' **re going to** bump against that tree!

天哪！他们很快要撞到那棵树了。

e. You look very pale. I am sure you **are going to** get sick.

f. The bridge **will** collapse. (说话人意指将来的某一天这座桥会坍塌，也许是因为他是造桥专家，他知道这座桥设计明显不合理或工程

质量上有问题。)

g. The bridge **is going to** collapse. (说话人意指这桥目前人或车走在上面都会摇晃,或是看见多处有裂纹,或是远远地在看这座桥被炸掉。)

总之,在表示预测时,用be going to和will也存在着上述思维上的差异。

2) 表示行动计划时,要用be going to; 表示意愿时,要用will。二者主要差别是:

①be going to表示说话人对未来行动的计划或打算,通常是经过事先考虑并含有已经为这一行动做了某些准备的意思。

②will表示意愿,即表示在说话的时刻立即做出决定将去做某事,并没有经过事先考虑,更没有为这一活动做出事先准备。

a. I have bought a computer and I' **m going to** learn computer science.

b. My wife has bought some wool and she **is going to** knit a sweater for me. 我太太买了一些毛线,她要给我织一件毛衣。

c. A: Why are you taking the camera?

B: I' **m going to** take some pictures.

以上每一句都含有预先准备的明显证据,故都不能用will代替be going to。

d. A: Someone is knocking at the door.

B: I' **ll** go and open it.

e. A: The box is too heavy.

B: I' **ll** help you to carry it.

f. A: I've left my watch upstairs.

B: I' ll go get it for you.

g. A: I am thirsty.

B: I will make you a hot cup of tea.

以上每一句都表示说话的此刻做出的决定，故都不能用be going to代替will。

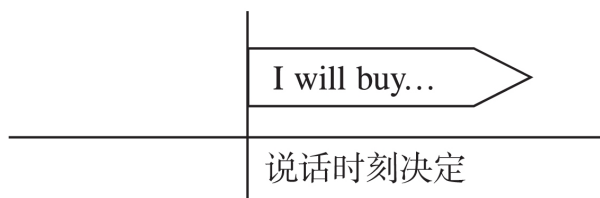
此外，若一个句子没有以上句子那样明显的计划或意愿的证据，则用will或 be going to均可，但思维上依然有上述区别。

h. Husband: There isn't any milk left in the fridge.

Wife: I' ll buy some after work. （说话此刻做出的决定。）

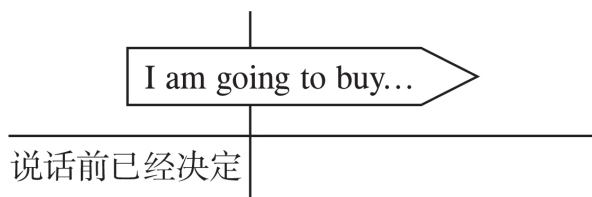
丈夫：冰箱里没有牛奶了。

妻子：我下班后去买一些。（意指在她丈夫发现之前她也并不知道没有牛奶了，她丈夫提出后她才决定去买一些。）



Wife: I' m going to buy some after work. （预先考虑的决定。）

妻子：我打算下班后去买一些。（意指在她丈夫发现之前她就知道没有牛奶了，并已经决定要去买一些。）



## 温故知新

英文中把动作分两个方面来讨论：一个是“时”，即表示动作发生的时间；另一个是“态”，即表示动作进行到何种程度。这就是所谓的“时态”。在这一章我们只讨论三个时间下的“一般动作”，下一章我们继续讨论三个时间下的“进行动作”。

时态一直是英文教学中的一个难点，也是中国学生不易掌握的内容。在本书中，我们主要分析和讲解各种时态最常见的思维用法，请读者细心体会。时态深刻反映了说话人的思维，在短时间内难以很好把握，需要在学习过程中仔细比较和推敲时态用法的规律，才能真正灵活掌握各种时态的用法。

## 一般时态练习

### 一、用动词的适当形式填空：

1. Vegetarians (素食者) \_\_\_\_ (not, eat) meat.
2. An atheist (无神论者) \_\_\_\_ (not, believe) in God.
3. Constant dripping (滴水) \_\_\_\_ (wear) away a stone.
4. The stock market \_\_\_\_ (rise) and \_\_\_\_ (fall) as its internal feature (内在规律).
5. John \_\_\_\_ (always, not, go) to school late. That is to say, he \_\_\_\_ (sometimes, attend) school late. He \_\_\_\_ (be, generally) a good student. He \_\_\_\_ (be, always) ready to help others.
6. If it \_\_\_\_ (rain) tomorrow, we'll have to put off our sports meet.
7. The front page of a newspaper \_\_\_\_ (contain) the most important news of the day.
8. The mother \_\_\_\_ (often, take) her son to school before she \_\_\_\_ (go) to work.
9. Look! Here \_\_\_\_ (come) your boyfriend!

10. A: Look! It \_\_\_\_ (snow).

B: It's wonderful! This is the first time I've ever seen snow. It \_\_\_\_ (snow, not) in my hometown.

11. A: When \_\_\_\_ (often, you, get) up in the morning?

B: I \_\_\_\_ (usually, wake) up at 6:30 and then \_\_\_\_ (stay) in bed until 7:00 o'clock.

A: Then what?

B: Then I \_\_\_\_ (put) on my clothes. I \_\_\_\_ (eat) breakfast.

A: \_\_\_\_ (always, you, eat) breakfast?

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. I think that's good for your health.

A: What \_\_\_\_ (often, you, have) for breakfast?

B: Bread and milk.

## 二、用适当的时态形式填空:

12. A: This letter is in French, and I don't speak a word of French. Can you help me?

B: Sure. I \_\_\_\_ (translate) it for you.

13. A: Have you decided what to do during the summer break?

B: Oh, yes. Everything is planned. I \_\_\_\_ (take) a holiday for a few weeks and then I \_\_\_\_ (take) a grammar course in New Oriental School.

14. A: Clint is in hospital.

B: Oh really? I didn't know. I \_\_\_\_ (go) and visit him.

B: Yes, I know. I've bought some flowers and I \_\_\_\_ (go) to visit him this afternoon.

15. A: Do you want to go shopping with me? I \_\_\_\_ (go) to the shopping mall downtown.

B: Sure. What time do you want to leave?

16. A: Oh, no! I've spilled coffee on my shirt.

B: Just a minute. I \_\_\_\_ (get) a damp cloth for you.

17. A: Do you mind if I turn the TV off? I \_\_\_\_ (make) a long distance call, and it's hard to hear if the TV is on.

B: No, that's fine. I wasn't watching it anyway.

18. A: Why are you turning on the television?

B: I \_\_\_\_ (watch) the news.

19. A: Oh. I've just realized. I haven't got any money.

B: Haven't you? Well, don't worry. I \_\_\_\_ (lend) you some.

20. A: I've decided to repaint the room.

B: Oh, have you? What color \_\_\_\_ (paint) it?

21. A: Why do you have an eraser in your hand?

B: I \_\_\_\_ (erase) the board.

22. John: Would you call a taxi to take me to the airport, Joe?

Joe: Call a taxi? I \_\_\_\_ (take) you myself. What time is your flight?

John: 8 o'clock this evening.

Joe: OK, we \_\_\_\_ (leave) at about 6 o'clock.

Later that day, Ann offers to take John to the airport.

Ann: Do you want me to take you to the airport, John?

John: No, thanks. Joe \_\_\_\_ (take) me there.

### 三、用适当的时态形式填空:

23. Mozart (莫扎特) \_\_\_\_ (write) more than 600 pieces of music.

24. I \_\_\_\_ (go) to the cinema three times last week.

25. A: \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (go) out last night?

B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_ (go) to the cinema but I \_\_\_\_ (not, enjoy) the film much.

26. I \_\_\_\_ (be) very tired last night, so I \_\_\_\_ (go) to bed early.

27. \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (go) anywhere on Labor Day?

28. I \_\_\_\_ (begin) to learn English ten years ago, but I still can't speak it well now.

29. When I was young, I \_\_\_\_ (want) to be a bus driver.

30. I \_\_\_\_ (live) in this village for ten years, and then \_\_\_\_ (move) to Beijing.

### 一般时态练习答案

#### 一、用动词的适当形式填空:

1. don't eat

2. doesn't believe

3. wears

4. rises, falls

5. doesn't always go, sometimes attends, is generally, is always

6. rains

7. contains

8. often takes, goes

9. comes

10. is snowing, doesn't snow

11. do you often get, usually wake, stay, put, eat, Do you always eat, I do, do you often have

## 二、用适当的时态形式填空：

12. will translate

13. am going to take, am going to take

14. will go, am going

15. am going

16. will get

17. am going to make

18. am going to watch

19. will lend

20. are you going to paint

21. am going to erase

22. will take, will leave, is going to take

## 三、用适当的时态形式填空：



23. wrote

24. went

25. Did, go, went, didn't enjoy

26. was, went

27. Did, go

28. began

29. wanted

30. lived, moved

## Chapter 05 英文时态（二）：进行时态



音频

- 15 进行时态的构成与意义
- 16 现在进行时态的基本用法
- 17 过去进行时态的基本用法
- 18 将来进行时态的基本用法

## 15 进行时态的构成与意义 Track15

### (1) 进行时态的构成

其构成是：be+doing，注意这里的be动词不是系动词，而是助动词，没有“是”的意思。

三种时间的进行时态	形式
现在进行时态	I am doing... We/You/They are doing... He/She/It is doing...
过去进行时态	I/He/She/It was doing... We/You/They were doing...
将来进行时态	will be doing

### (2) 进行时态的意义

强调在某个特定的（现在、过去或将来）时间点，某项活动正在发生。比如：

- a. I am watching CCTV news right now.
- b. I was watching CCTV news when he arrived yesterday.
- c. I will be watching CCTV news at 7:15 pm tomorrow.

因此，进行时态通常和某一特定时刻（如上文中的right now, 7:15pm）连用，来表示某一个活动在该时刻正在进行。这个特定的时刻可以是某一具体的时间或另一具体活动。

① 给出具体时间：

- a. I am listening to the English program right now.

我现在正在收听英语节目。

b. I will be watching CCTV news at this time tomorrow evening. 明天晚上这个时间，我将正在看中央台新闻。

② 通过另一活动表达这一特定时刻：

a. I was watching CCTV news when he arrived.

b. I will be studying English when you come tomorrow.

## 16 现在进行时态的基本用法 Track16

用法1：表示说话此刻正在进行。

a. What program **are** you **watching**? 你正在看什么节目？

b. He is not available now. He **is talking** on another phone.

他现在没空，他正在打电话。

c. Please don't make so much noise. I **am studying**.

请不要吵闹，我在学习。

d. A: What **are** you **reading** now? 你在读什么？

B: I **am reading** today's *Evening News*. 我在看今天的《晚报》。

用法2：表示现阶段正在持续的动作。这时进行时态表示的是一个一般性的活动，在说话时刻这个动作并不一定正在发生。

a. A: What **are** you **doing** these days?

B: I **am learning** the usage of verb tenses.

我正在学习动词的时态用法。

b. These days I **am translating** a book. 这几天我在翻译一本书。

c. A: **Are** you **working** this week?

B: No, I am on holiday.

d. How **are** you **getting** along with your English? Is your English **getting** better? 最近你英文学得怎么样? 有提高吗?

用法3: 表示最近的将来已定的安排。通常含有“计划”、“安排做”之意。

a. A: What **are** you **doing** on Saturday night?

B: I' **m doing** some shopping with Jane.

b. I **am taking** a makeup test tomorrow. 我明天要补考。

用法4: 现在进行时常与always, forever, continually, constantly等连用, 往往表示抱怨、厌烦、不合情理或使人不愉快的事。

a. Jack **is always borrowing** money and **forgetting** to pay you back.

杰克常常借钱忘还。

b. He' s **continually asking** me for money. 他老是找我要钱。

c. My wife is **forever looking** for her keys.

我太太总是在找她的钥匙。

d. How come Joe is **always groaning** about things?

乔为什么总是在抱怨?

e. He' s **always messing up** the kitchen! 他总是把厨房弄得乱七八糟。

## 17 过去进行时态的基本用法 Track17

用法1：用来描述一个过去特定的时刻正在发生的事情。

a. I **was discussing** my thesis with my director at this time last night. （特定时刻）

b. A: What were you **doing** at 10 o'clock last night?

B: I **was having** dinner with my friends.

用法2：过去进行时态还常常和一般过去时配合使用。此时，过去进行时态通常表示一个历时较长的体现“背景”的动作或状态；而一般过去时态则表示此“背景”下发生的、短暂的动作或状态。过去进行时态动作先发生，一般过去时态动作后发生。

a. Mrs. Jones **was still cleaning** the house when her husband came back from work. She **was wearing** dirty, old clothes and no stockings; her hair was not tidy; she had dust on her face, and she looked dirty and tired. Her husband looked at her and said, “Is this what I come home to see after a hard day's work?”

琼斯太太在她丈夫下班回家的时候仍在打扫房间。她穿一身又脏又旧的衣服，没穿长筒袜，披头散发，满脸灰尘，显得又脏又累。丈夫看见她这副模样就说：“难道我辛苦工作了一天，回到家就为了看你这副模样吗？”

b. The phone rang while I **was having** my bath, as usual.

像往常一样，我正在洗澡，电话铃响了。

c. I cut my finger when I **was cooking** dinner last night.

昨晚做饭时我割了手指。

d. I **was watching** TV when the phone rang.

我当时正在看电视，这时电话铃响了。

试比较：

e. I **was telephoning** Harry when she arrived.

（在我打电话过程中，她到了。先telephone，后arrive）

f. I **telephoned** Harry when she arrived.

（她到之后，我才打电话。先arrive，后telephone）



## 18 将来进行时态的基本用法 Track18

用法：表示在将来某一特定时刻正在进行的活动。

a. I' ll be lying on a beach in Sanya this time tomorrow.

明天这个时候我会躺在三亚的海滩上。

b. Don't telephone after eight tomorrow. I' ll be having a meeting.

明天八点钟后不要打电话，那时我将正在开会。

c. Wait until seven o'clock so that they won't still be eating.

等到七点，这样他们那时不会仍在吃饭。

d. Don't call me at nine tomorrow because I will be studying at the library.

明天九点钟不要给我打电话，因为我那时将在图书馆里学习。

### 温故知新

本章介绍了进行动作，进行动作通常和某一特定时刻连用，以强调在说话的这一时刻，某个活动正在进行。本章重点是掌握“现在进行时态”和“过去进行时态”的用法2。

### 进行时态练习

#### 一、用适当时态填空：

1. How fast \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (drive) when the accident happened?

2. I \_\_\_\_ (walk) along the street when suddenly I \_\_\_\_ (hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody \_\_\_\_ (follow) me. I was frightened and I started to run.

3. Why \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (stare) at me like that? Is there anything wrong with me?

4. \_\_\_\_ anybody \_\_\_\_ (watch) TV? If not, I \_\_\_\_ (turn) it off.

5. I \_\_\_\_ (want) to lose weight. So this month I \_\_\_\_ (not, eat) lunch. I am only eating fruits.

6. Clint phoned me last night. He is on holiday in Qingdao. He \_\_\_\_ (have) a good time and \_\_\_\_ (not want) to come back until the end of this month.

7. You \_\_\_\_ (always, watch) TV. You should do something more active.

8. A: When do you leave for Hainan?

B: Tomorrow. Just think, two days from now I \_\_\_\_ (lie) on the beach in the sun.

A: Sounds great!

9. Don't phone me between 7 and 8. We \_\_\_\_ (have) dinner then. You can phone me after 8 o'clock. We \_\_\_\_ (finish) dinner by then.

10. Leon is never satisfied. He \_\_\_\_ (always, complain).

11. Normally I \_\_\_\_ (finish) work at 5:00, but this week I \_\_\_\_ (work) until 7:00.

12. A: Oh, I have left the lights on again.

B: Typical! You \_\_\_\_ (always, leave) the lights on.

13. A: \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (listen) to the radio?

B: No, you can turn it off.

14. A: \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (listen) to the radio every day?

B: No, just occasionally.

## 二、用适当时态填空:

15. The television was on but nobody \_\_\_\_ (watch) it.

16. I \_\_\_\_ (fall) asleep while I \_\_\_\_ (read) the novel.

17. A: What \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (do) at 7:15 yesterday evening?

B: I \_\_\_\_ (watch) CCTV news then.

18. I \_\_\_\_ (see) you in the park yesterday afternoon. You \_\_\_\_ (sit) on the grass and \_\_\_\_ (talk) with some people.

19. Hurry up! Everybody \_\_\_\_ (wait) for you.

20. The water \_\_\_\_ (boil). Can you turn it off?

21. Water \_\_\_\_ (boil) at 100 degrees Celsius (摄氏度).

22. The train is never late. It \_\_\_\_ (always, leave) on time.

23. Kennex is very untidy. He \_\_\_\_ (always, leave) his things all over the room.

24. After three days of rain, I'm glad that the sun \_\_\_\_ (shine) again today.

25. Every morning the sun \_\_\_\_ (shine) in my bedroom window and \_\_\_\_ (wake) me up.

26. I \_\_\_\_ (ride) home yesterday when suddenly an old lady \_\_\_\_ (walk) out into the road in front of me. I \_\_\_\_ (go) quite fast but luckily I was able to stop in time and \_\_\_\_ (not, hit) her.

27. Look! There \_\_\_\_ (go) our bus; we'll have to wait for the next one.

28. I'll give the book to him as soon as I \_\_\_\_ (see) him.

29. I'll be glad if she \_\_\_\_ (come) over to visit me.

30. It \_\_\_\_ (rain) hard, but no one stopped working.

### 三、单项选择:

31. I'll go with you as soon as I \_\_\_\_ my homework.

A. will finish

B. finish

C. am finishing

D. have finished

32. He \_\_\_\_ at 8 o'clock every morning.

A. is going to work

B. went to work

C. goes to work

D. will go to work

33. When I see Jean in the street, she always \_\_\_\_ at me.

- A. smiled
- B. has smiled
- C. was smiling
- D. smiles

34. Look, here \_\_\_\_ the famous player.

- A. comes
- B. came
- C. has come
- D. come

35. The year \_\_\_\_ four seasons.

- A. has been divided into
- B. is divided into
- C. has divided in
- D. was divided into

36. She is going to be a nurse when she \_\_\_\_ up.

- A. grows
- B. is giong to grow
- C. growing
- D. will grow

37. If it \_\_\_\_ tomorrow, I won't go to the cinema.

- A. will rain
- B. rains
- C. will be rain
- D. is raining

38. I don't feel good. I \_\_\_\_ at home tomorrow.

- A. stay
- B. stayed
- C. am staying
- D. will have stayed

39. My bicycle \_\_\_\_ down just when I need it most.

- A. always breaks
- B. always broke
- C. is always breaking
- D. has always broken

40. Nobody likes her because she \_\_\_\_ to carry favor with the boss.

- A. has always tried
- B. does always try
- C. always tries
- D. is always trying

41. Next month when there \_\_\_\_\_ a full moon, the ocean tides will be higher.

- A. is
- B. is being
- C. will be
- D. will have been

### 进行时态练习答案

#### 一、用适当时态填空：

1. were, driving
2. was walking, heard, was following
3. are, staring
4. Is, watching, 'll turn
5. want, am not eating
6. is having, doesn't want
7. are always watching
8. will be lying
9. will be having, will finish/will have finished
10. is always complaining
11. finish, am working
12. are always leaving
13. Are, listening

14. Do, listen

## 二、用适当时态填空：

15. was watching

16. fell, was reading

17. were, doing, was watching

18. saw, were sitting, talking

19. is waiting

20. is boiling

21. boils

22. always leaves

23. is always leaving

24. is shining

25. shines, wakes

26. was riding, walked, was going, didn't hit

27. goes

28. see

29. comes

30. was raining

## 三、单项选择：

31. B 32. C 33. D 34. A 35. B 36. A 37. B 38. C  
39. C 40. D 41. A



## Chapter 06 名词



音频

- 19 名词短语
- 20 名词的定义及分类
- 21 可数名词与不可数名词
- 22 可数名词复数变化规则
- 23 不可数名词
- 24 不可数名词的度量
- 25 名词所有格的构成

26 名词所有格的用法

27 of属格的用法

28 所有格的意义

## 第一节 引言

### 19 名词短语 Track19

概念：名词与它前面的修饰语一起即构成名词短语。

- a. *These red roses* are for you. 这些红玫瑰是送给你的。
- b. I have *three close friends*. 我有三个知心朋友。
- c. I really need *a new computer*. 我真的需要一台新电脑。
- d. I can't find *the best answer*. 我找不到最佳答案。
- e. He is *my best friend*. 他是我最好的朋友。
- f. There are *some red roses* on *that small table*.

那张小桌上有一些红玫瑰。

#### (1) 名词短语的功能

名词短语是英语造句中不可或缺的元素。比如简单句的主语（a句）、宾语（b, c, d句）或表语（e句）通常由名词短语来充当。另外，英文中介词不能单独使用，其后面必须接宾语，所接的宾语也往往是名词短语（f句）。总之，名词短语是英文句子的重要组成部分。

#### (2) 名词的修饰语

名词短语是由名词与它前面的修饰语一起构成的。一般来讲，名词前面有两种修饰语。其一是限定词，用来限定名词所指的范围，对名词起泛指或特指、定量或不定量等限定修饰作用。比如上文中的 *these, three, a, the, my, that*。其中，冠词（*a, an, the*）是一类很重要的限定词，也是英语初学者觉得较难使用的，我们将在第八

章详细讨论。其二是形容词，形容词则是用来表示名词的性质、特征的，比如上文中的red, close, new, best, small。

### (3) 名词修饰语的位置

从以上例句我们还可看出，名词的这两种修饰语通常都只能放在名词的前面，而且限定词要在形容词前面，结构是：限定词+形容词+名词（重要造句规则）。比如下面这些说法就不正确：

red these roses\*   close three friends\*   new a computer\*  
best the answer\*   small that tree\*

最后，附带说明的是，名词短语通常由三部分（限定词+形容词+名词）组成。但这并不意味着三个部分必须同时出现。比如我们可以说：red roses或these roses，这同样是名词短语，只不过意思上有差别。

弄清名词短语的构成和用法以后，我们将在以后的章节中分别就名词短语的三个构成部分（名词、形容词和限定词）予以详细讨论。我们的思路是：先来研究名词的基本用法，然后是限定词，最后讨论形容词。

## 第二节 名词的可数与不可数

### 20 名词的定义及分类

#### (1) 名词的定义

名词是用来表示人、事物、地点以及抽象事物的名称的词。

人: John sister father

事物: water air sun computer

地点: London theater

抽象事物: love happiness imagination hope

#### (2) 名词的分类

英语中的名词通常分为两大类: 专有名词 (proper noun) 和普通名词 (common noun)。进一步分类, 请参见下表:

			意义	例词
专有名词			表示特定的人、物、机构、场所等的名词（首字母须大写）	Paris, the United States, Bill Gates
普通名词	可数名词	个体名词	表示同类人或物中的个体	student, tree, hospital, house, piano
		集体名词	表示若干人或物的总称	team, committee, police, group, family
	不可数名词	物质名词	表示物质和材料的总称	paper, water, cotton, air
		抽象名词	表示动作、性质、状态、情感等抽象概念的名称	birth, happiness, evolution, technology, management, imagination, hope, sport

名词还根据是否可以被分割而分为可数名词（countable noun）和不可数名词（uncountable noun）。这是需要我们掌握的一种分类，因为名词的这种分类与我们今后造句密切相关。这也是名词这一章的重点内容。

此外，根据名词的构成，我们可将名词分为简单名词和复合名词。  
如：

简单名词：story student teacher

复合名词：girlfriend roommate mother-in-law（岳母或婆婆）

## 21 可数名词与不可数名词 Track20

### (1) 不能按汉语思维理解英文名词的可数与不可数

英文中的名词分为可数名词 (countable noun) 和不可数名词 (uncountable noun)。但初学者千万要注意：英文中名词的可数与不可数是不能按照我们汉语的逻辑思维去理解的。比如我们汉语中的“家具”，显然是可数的，我们可以说“一件家具”或“两件家具”等。但在英文中家具一词“furniture”是不可数的，我们不能说“a furniture, two furnitures”。大家在今后的英文学习中应特别注意，遇到名词若对其可数性不敢肯定，可以查词典。词典中标有C表示可数，标有U表示不可数。

### (2) 可数与不可数的相对性 (名词可数性的重要理念)

在英文中，有相当多的名词既可以用作可数名词又可以用作不可数名词，只不过此时词义往往不同。在此仅举几例予以说明。对于这样的名词，在今后的学习中应特别给予关注。

paper:

a. I need some paper to write a letter.

我需要一些纸来写信。(paper “纸”，不可数)

b. I have a term paper to write on weekends.

我周末有一篇学期论文要写。(paper “论文”，可数)

c. I bought a paper.

我买了一份报纸。(paper=newspaper, “报纸”，可数)

room:

There's plenty of room for everybody to sit down in this room.

这房间有足够的空间让每个人都能坐下。（room作“空间”时不可数；作“房间”时可数）

(3) 可数名词与不可数名词的比较

我们现在以可数名词book和不可数名词furniture为例来做比较。

区别	book	furniture
单复数之别	可数名词既然可数，就有单复数之分。比如： a book, two books。	不可数名词没有复数概念，不能在词尾加 -s 或 -es 变复数，所以只有一种拼写形式。如 furniture 就只有这一种形式，没有 furnitures 这种拼写。

( 续表)

区别	book	furniture
可否与不定冠词连用之别	可数名词前可加 a, an 及数词。比如：a book, one book, two books。	不可数名词前不用 a, an 及数词。不能说：a furniture, one furniture, two furnitures。



## 22 可数名词复数变化规则 Track21

对于可数名词的学习，重点是要掌握可数名词的复数变化规律。

1) 一般在词尾加-s

desk/desks book/books hand/hands dog/dogs

bee/bees face/faces orange/oranges

2) 以-s, -x, -ch, -sh结尾的名词加-es

class/classes box/boxes match/matches bush/bushes

特别注意：以-ch结尾的名词，若-ch发[k]音，则加-s。例如：  
stomach/stomachs。

3) 以辅音字母加-y结尾的名词，变-y为-i，再加-es；而以元音字母加-y结尾的名词，则直接加-s

country/countries family/families baby/babies  
lady/ladies

play/plays boy/boys guy/guys donkey/donkeys

monkey/monkeys key/keys

4) 其他特殊变化的名词

①以o结尾的名词：

potato/potatoes tomato/tomatoes hero/heroes

piano/pianos photo/photos radio/radios

studio/studios bamboo/bamboos zoo/zoos

②以f或fe结尾的名词:

A. 变f, fe为v, 再加es

half/halves一半 knife/knives小刀 leaf/leaves树叶

life/lives生命 self/selves自身 shelf/shelves架子

thief/thieves贼 wife/wives妻子 wolf/wolves狼

B. 直接加s

belief/beliefs信仰 chief/chiefs首领 cliff/cliffs悬崖

proof/proofs证据 roof/roofs屋顶

③单复数同形:

aircraft飞行器 deer鹿 giraffe长颈鹿 sheep绵羊

④man/woman及“man/woman+名词”构成的复合名词:

man/men woman/women

“man/woman+名词”构成的复合名词, 两个词均须变为复数:

man teacher/men teachers男老师

man doctor/men doctors男医生

man servant/men servants男仆

woman pilot/women pilots女飞行员

woman journalist/women journalists女记者

⑤“名词+介词或介词短语”构成的复合名词变复数时, 将主体名词(或叫中心名词)变为复数。例如:

passer-by/passers-by过路人

runner-up/runners-up亚军

looker-on/lookers-on旁观者

mother-in-law/mothers-in-law岳母/婆婆

editor-in-chief/editors-in-chief总编

bride-to-be/brides-to-be即将成为新娘的人

What Is Bigamy?

Lawyer: Do you know what bigamy is?

Jackson: Yes. I'll have two [mothers-in-law](#).

何谓重婚罪？

律师：你知道什么是重婚罪吗？

杰克逊：知道，就是我会有两个岳母。

## 23 不可数名词

英文中的不可数名词很不容易把握，因为我们不能按照汉语的思维去判断一个名词到底是可数还是不可数。因此，对于不可数名词，需要强化记忆。但总的来说不可数名词有以下规律：

### (1) 物质名词通常不可数

液体：

beer blood coffee cream gasoline honey

juice milk oil tea water wine

固体：

bread butter cheese ice ice-cream meat beef

chicken fish chalk copper cotton glass gold

iron paper

气体：

air fog oxygen smoke

### (2) 抽象名词通常不可数

advice anger beauty confidence fun happiness

health honesty information love luck peace

### (3) 总称的名词通常不可数

不可数名词通常还指由很多单独的部分组成的一组事物。如：

总称名词（不可数）	部分名词（可数）
furniture（家具）	chair, table, bed ...
fruit（水果）	apple, orange, banana ...
jewelry（珠宝）	ring（戒指）, earring（耳环）, necklace（项链）, bracelet（手镯）...
luggage（行李）	bag（包）, suitcase（手提箱）...

其他常见总称名词有：machinery/machine（机器），  
equipment/tool

（设备工具），poetry/poem（诗歌）等。

## 24 不可数名词的度量

### (1) 不可数名词注意事项:

1) 它们的前面不能加a/an:

不能说: a bread\* an advice\* a nice weather\* a furniture\*

2) 它们没有复数形式, 不能和数词连用:

不能说: two breads\* ten advices\* five furnitures\*

### (2) 不可数名词与量词

虽然我们不能用具体数字(比如one, two, three, four等)来表示不可数名词的数量, 但我们可以借用量词来表示其量的概念。不同类型的不可数名词所使用的量词也不一样, 一般规则如下:

1) 常用piece修饰以下抽象名词和物质名词

advice bread baggage chalk equipment furniture

information jewelry luggage music news

例如:

a piece of news two pieces of news

several pieces of furniture three pieces of luggage

2) 用bottle, cup, drop, glass修饰液态物质:

beer blood coffee milk tea water wine

例如:

several drops of blood   a glass of milk   two cups of  
coffee

3) 其他的量词:

a loaf of bread   a tube of toothpaste   a slice of meat

### 第三节 名词所有格

#### 25 名词所有格的构成

##### (1) 单数名词

在词尾加 “’s” :

my sister's boyfriend the people's choice 人民的选择

the actress's boyfriend a woman's intuition 一个女人的直觉

(像actress这样以-s结尾的单数名词同样是在词尾加 “’s” )

##### (2) 复数名词

1) 不以-s或-es结尾的特殊变化的复数名词, 在词尾加 “’s” :

Children's Day 儿童节 children's book 儿童读物

women's wear 女装 men's names 男性的名字

2) 以-s结尾的复数名词, 在词尾加 “’ ” 构成所有格:

her friends' money

the stars' concert 明星们的音乐会

##### (3) 复合名词:

在最后一个词的词尾加 “’s” :

my father-in-law's company 我岳父的公司



everyone else's viewpoints 其他人的看法

Henry the Eighth's wives 亨利八世的妻子们

the President of America's secretary 美国总统的秘书

(4) 对于由and连接的并列名词，当表示共有的情况时，只需在最后一个名词词尾加“'s”；若表示各自所有，则须在每个名词词尾加“'s”。

John and his wife's bank savings 约翰和他妻子的共同存款

John's and his wife's bank savings 约翰和他妻子各自的存款

Clint and John's bedroom 克林特和约翰共有的卧室

Clint's and John's bedrooms 克林特和约翰各自的卧室

## 26 名词所有格的用法 Track22

### (1) 用于有生命名词

名词所有格“'s”主要用来表示有生命的名词的所属关系，如以上所述例子。所以它通常用在姓名、人称、不定代词、集体名词、国家和高等动物等这样的名词后面。

姓名: Mary's brother Jones's car

人称: my brother's car the lawyer's office women's wear  
女装

不定代词: nobody's fault everyone's responsibility

集体名词: the committee's decision the company's  
accounts

国家: China's exports and imports in January 中国一月份的  
进出口额

动物: the dog's mouth the horse's stable马棚 a bird's  
nest鸟窝

### (2) 用于无生命名词

名词所有格除了用于以上“有生命名词”，还可以用于以下“无生命名词”：

1) 表示时间、距离：

today's newspaper

tomorrow's weather

tonight's TV

last night's storm 昨晚的暴风雨

a day's work 一天的工作

a week's holiday 一星期的假期

a week's absence 一星期的缺席

a month's salary 一个月的薪水

three hours' delay 三小时的耽搁

a. I am very tired after a hard day's work.

经过一天辛苦劳作，我觉得很累。

b. My birthday is in two weeks' time. 我的生日在两周后。

c. Let's have ten minutes' break/a ten-minute break.

让我们休息十分钟。

d. My college is fifteen minutes' ride from my home.

从学校到我家有十五分钟车程。

2) 表示重量、度量或价值等：

two pounds' weight

a ton's weight

a ton's steel

two dollars' worth of sugar 两美元的糖

ten dollars' worth of gasoline 十美元的汽油

3) 表示国家、城市、国际组织、地理等：

China's population 中国人口

China's industrial development 中国的工业发展

America's West Coast 美国西海岸

Shanghai Tower, Shanghai's tallest building 上海最高建筑  
——上海中心大厦

the city's weather 城市天气

the European Union's exports 欧盟出口额

the world's three most famous tenors 世界最著名的三大男  
高音

the world's seven wonders 世界七大奇迹

the earth's surface 地球表面

the sea's depth 大海深度

the moon's shadow 月亮阴影

the sun's ray 太阳光线

4) 用于交通工具及其部件的所属关系:

the car's exhaust 汽车的排气管

the plane's engine 飞机的发动机

the yacht's mast 游艇的桅杆

the ship's boiler 轮船上的锅炉

### (3) 省去名词的所有格

1) 若名词所有格所修饰的名词已经出现, 则在第二次出现的所有格后的名词可省去, 以避免重复。例如:

a. This bike is mine, not Michael's (=Michael's bike).

这单车是我的, 不是迈克尔的。

b. This is my room and that is my sister's.

这是我的房间, 那是我姐姐的。

c. I don't know her name, but I can tell you her husband's.

我不知道她的名字, 但我可以告诉你她丈夫的名字。

2) 在一些表示店铺或教堂的名词的所有格后面可省去名词, 此时所有格表示相应的场所, 且一般要在所有格名词前加定冠词the。例如:

at the baker's 在面包店 at the butcher's 在肉铺

at the chemist's 在药店 at the florist's 在花店

at the dentist's 在牙医诊所 at the doctor's 在医生诊所

a. I want to pay a visit to the St. Paul's.

我想去参观一下圣保罗大教堂。

b. I'm going to the dentist's tomorrow afternoon.

明天下午我要去看牙医。

3) 在人名后的所有格省去名词时, 表示某人的住宅。例如:

go to my sister's 去我姐姐家

I called at my uncle's yesterday. 我昨天去我叔叔家了。

## 27 of属格的用法 Track23

一般来说，“of+名词”结构主要用于以下两种情形：

### (1) 表示无生命物体的名词的所有关系

the roof of the church 教堂的屋顶

the name of the song 歌名

the title of the book 书名

the leg of the table 桌子腿

### (2) 当有生命名词后面接短语或从句修饰时用of 属格

a. What is the name of the boy sitting next to her?

不能说：What is the boy sitting next to her's name?\*

b. I took the advice of an old man I met during a journey and decided to make something of myself.

我听从了一次旅行中遇到的一位老人的建议，决定干出一番事业。

c. The mother of the boy in a red suit is president of our company.

## 28 所有格的意义

所有格除了表示所属关系，还可以表示其他关系。

### (1) 主谓关系

the visitor's departure 客人的离开

the teacher's request 老师的要求

Britain's decision=Britain decided... 英国的决定

the arrival of the train 火车到达

the growth of agriculture 农业增长

the arrival of my mother=my mother arrived 我母亲的到来

### (2) 动宾关系

the children's education=(Somebody) educated the children  
对孩子的教育

the boy's punishment=(Somebody) punished the boy 对孩子的  
惩罚

the discussion of the plan 对该计划的讨论

the criticism of the teacher 对老师的批评

### 温故知新

本章重要造句理念：

名词可数与不可数的相对性：在英文中，有相当多的名词既可以用作可数名词又可以用作不可数名词，不过词义往往不同。

具体掌握的重点内容：

1. 基本能够区分常见的可数名词和不可数名词；
2. 名词复数变化规则；
3. 名词所有格的构成；
4. 名词所有格的具体用法。

这一章主要是讨论了名词本身的一些用法规则。当我们要表示一个名词的数量多少时，我们可以在名词前面加上相应的数量词。但数量词与名词搭配时要注意：

有些表达数量的词只可与可数名词连用；

有些只可与不可数名词连用；

有些则既可与可数名词连用，也可与不可数名词连用；

有些要与复数名词连用。

因此掌握名词可数与不可数概念，以及名词单复数变化，为我们下一章讨论数量限定词的用法打下了基础。

## 名词练习

### 一、找出下面短文中的名词短语：

How does a house become a home? An empty house is just a lifeless building. But once people move in, that house becomes a home. They add furniture and decorations to give each room a life of its own. Bedrooms become cozy. The living room or family room becomes a warm gathering place. But these changes don't happen by themselves—they take planning. And



interior designers can help. Their job is to make homes comfortable and beautiful.

## 二、单项选择:

1. Did you hear \_\_\_\_ just now?  
A. a noise  
B. noise
2. I can't work here. There's too \_\_\_\_ .  
A. many noises  
B. much noise
3. If you want to know the news in detail, you can buy \_\_\_\_ to read.  
A. a paper  
B. paper
4. I need some \_\_\_\_ to write on.  
A. a paper  
B. paper
5. There is \_\_\_\_ in my soup!  
A. hair  
B. a hair
6. These boys need to have their \_\_\_\_ cut.  
A. hair

B. hairs

7. I don't like keeping \_\_\_\_ .

A. a long hair

B. long hair C. long hairs

8. I can find some white \_\_\_\_ on your head.

A. hair

B. hairs

9. You can put up here tonight. We have \_\_\_\_ .

A. a spare room

B. spare room

10. There is \_\_\_\_ for 10,000 people to sit in this auditorium.

A. a room

B. room

11. More \_\_\_\_ will have to be made on the program for these performers.

A. rooms

B. room

12. I thought there was somebody in the house because there was \_\_\_\_ on inside.

A. a light

B. light

13. \_\_\_\_ comes from the sun.

A. A light

B. Light

14. I had some interesting \_\_\_\_ during the journey.

A. experiences

B. experience

15. He gained \_\_\_\_ in dealing with such people.

A. experience

B. experiences

16. They offered me the job because I had a lot of \_\_\_\_ .

A. experiences

B. experience

17. I have \_\_\_\_ to do.

A. a lot of work

B. a lot of works

18. This is a \_\_\_\_ to an end.

A. mean

B. means

19. Jane studies very hard in order to gain more \_\_\_\_ .

A. knowledge

B. knowledges

20. I saw four \_\_\_\_ at the exhibition.

A. Japanese

B. Japaneses

21. Two aircraft \_\_\_\_ badly damaged.

A. was

B. were

22. I opened the letter and it contained \_\_\_\_ .

A. an important information

B. an important piece of information

23. There are several \_\_\_\_ in this hall.

A. furnitures

B. pieces of furniture

24. Can you give me any \_\_\_\_ on this matter?

A. advice

B. advices

25. The streets are crowded with \_\_\_\_ .

A. traff ics

B. traff ic

26. Warm \_\_\_\_ is comfortable in winter.

A. clothings

B. clothing

### 三、将下列名词变成复数形式:

27. star \_\_\_\_ magazine \_\_\_\_ sheep \_\_\_\_

child \_\_\_\_ deer \_\_\_\_

28. class \_\_\_\_ box \_\_\_\_ match \_\_\_\_

stomach \_\_\_\_

29. country \_\_\_\_ family \_\_\_\_ baby \_\_\_\_

play \_\_\_\_ boy \_\_\_\_ monkey \_\_\_\_

key \_\_\_\_

30. tomato \_\_\_\_ radio \_\_\_\_ hero \_\_\_\_

piano \_\_\_\_ photo \_\_\_\_ studio \_\_\_\_

potato \_\_\_\_ bamboo \_\_\_\_

31. half \_\_\_\_ chief \_\_\_\_ leaf \_\_\_\_

life \_\_\_\_ thief \_\_\_\_ wife \_\_\_\_

belief \_\_\_\_ knife \_\_\_\_ roof \_\_\_\_

32. man teacher \_\_\_\_ man servant \_\_\_\_

woman pilot \_\_\_\_ passer-by \_\_\_\_

looker-on \_\_\_\_ mother-in-law \_\_\_\_

#### 四、在所需的地方加上 “’ ” 或 “’ s” :

33. One student asked me a question after class. I answered the students question.

34. Many students asked me questions after class. I answered the students questions.

35. Is this Johns dictionary?

36. My brothers paintings are interesting.

37. Johns job was more difficult than Dick.

38. John and Mike school is the same as Tom.

39. My best friends father job is very interesting.

40. My brother-in-laws sister house is near mine.

41. Are you going to Dave party?

42. We thought all of the teacher speeches were brilliant.

43. The Browns house is bigger than the Greens.

44. The thief stole both John mother-in-law and his sister-in-laws handbags.

45. They were all tired after five hours walk in the woods.

46. She told me of her fathers illness the other day.

47. He is very tired. He needs a night rest.

48. The earths surface is about seventy per cent water.

49. The whale (鲸) is the world largest mammal (哺乳动物).

### 五、用名词所有格简化下列句子中加下划线的部分:

50. This is my room and that is occupied by my sister.

51. I don't know her name, but I can tell you what her husband is called.

52. I've read John's letter, but where are you keeping the one from Mary?

53. I've read most of Dickens' novels and some of those written by Thackeray.

54. The accident was the driver's own fault and not that of the cyclist.

55. He has been staying for a few weeks at the house of his uncle.

56. She prefers my plan to the plan which my brother offers.

57. He is fond of stories for children.

58. Are you going to the concert that will take place this afternoon?

59. The president arrived at Tsinghua University in Beijing on February 22, 2018; the news was reported in yesterday's newspaper. (合并成一句)

### 六、分析下列名词所有格的意义:

60. the legs of the table

61. the company's money

- 62. the promise of the government
- 63. the failure of his brother
- 64. the teacher's speech
- 65. the president's visit
- 66. the volcano's eruption
- 67. the increase of population
- 68. the criticism of the teacher
- 69. Edison's invention of the light bulb
- 70. the president's China visit

## 七、综合练习：

71. Clint will give us \_\_\_\_ on our grammar study.
- A. an advice
  - B. some advice
  - C. some advices
  - D. advices
72. I want \_\_\_\_ .
- A. a dollar worth candy
  - B. a dollar worth's candy
  - C. candy a dollar's worth
  - D. a dollar's worth of candy



73. I'll go to the sea for \_\_\_\_ .

- A. a holiday of a month
- B. a month holiday
- C. a months' holiday
- D. a month's holiday

74. There are many \_\_\_\_ on the scene of the accident.

- A. lookers-on
- B. lookers-ons
- C. looker-ons
- D. looker-on

75. I am afraid there isn't \_\_\_\_ for you in my car.

- A. room
- B. place
- C. seat
- D. corner

76. In ten years' time, all those youngsters will become \_\_\_\_ .

- A. grown-up
- B. grown-ups
- C. grows-up
- D. grows-ups

77. Ten years had elapsed, I found she had \_\_\_\_ .

- A. a few white hairs
- B. much white hair
- C. a little white hairs
- D. few white hair

78. \_\_\_\_ are grazing in the f ields.

- A. Ten heads of cattle
- B. Ten head of cattle
- C. Ten heads of cattles
- D. Ten head of cattles

79. I walked too much yesterday and \_\_\_\_ are still aching now.

- A. my leg's muscles
- B. my muscles of leg
- C. my leg muscles
- D. my muscles of the leg

80. My home is only twenty \_\_\_\_ from New Oriental School.

- A. minute walk
- B. minutes walk
- C. minutes' walk
- D. minute's walk

81. The woman over there is \_\_\_\_ mother.

- A. Julia and Mary
- B. Julia and Mary's
- C. Julia's and Mary's
- D. Julia's and Mary

82. He is very tired. He needs \_\_\_\_ .

- A. a night rest
- B. rest night
- C. a night's rest
- D. rest of night

83. \_\_\_\_ is too much for a little boy to carry.

- A. A bike's weight
- B. Bike's weight
- C. The weight of a bike
- D. The weights of bikes

84. In this medical team there are \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ .

- A. three man doctors, two woman nurses
- B. three men doctors, two women nurses
- C. three man doctor, two women nurse
- D. three men doctor, two women nurse

85. The old house belongs to \_\_\_\_ .

- A. Jack's and his brother
- B. Jack's and his brother's
- C. Jack and his brother's
- D. Jack and his brother

86. Are these \_\_\_\_ who are playing volleyball over there?

- A. the bikes of the students
- B. the students' bikes
- C. the bikes of the students'
- D. the student's bikes

87. The policeman is investigating the \_\_\_\_ about the traffic accident.

- A. passer-by
- B. passers-by
- C. passer-bys
- D. passers-bys

88. Our university has bought \_\_\_\_ for the laboratory.

- A. a new equipment
- B. a new piece of equipment
- C. some new equipments
- D. new equipments

89. There are \_\_\_\_ in the Central Park.

- A. lots of children
- B. lots of childs
- C. a lot children
- D. a lot childs

90. Suddenly \_\_\_\_ fire broke out in the warehouse and everything in it was on \_\_\_\_ fire.

- A. 不填, a
- B. the, 不填
- C. a, 不填
- D. 不填, the

91. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_ in the f ield.

- A. sheeps and cows
- B. sheeps and cow
- C. sheep and cows
- D. sheep and cow

### 名词练习答案

#### 一、找出下面短文中的名词短语:

How does a house become a home? An empty house is just a lifeless building. But once people move in, that house becomes a home. They add furniture and decorations to give each room a life of its own. Bedrooms become cozy. The living

room or family room becomes a warm gathering place. But these changes don't happen by themselves—they take planning. And interior designers can help. Their job is to make homes comfortable and beautiful.

一幢房子怎样摇身变为一个家呢？空荡荡的房子只不过是一座没有生气的建筑物罢了，然而一旦有人入住，它马上就会成为一个家。人们添置家具，进行各种装修，从而使每个房间各具特色，鲜活起来。卧室变得温暖舒适；客厅或起居室成了一家人热热闹闹的地方。但这些变化并非自然而然产生的，它们需要周详的设计规划。而室内设计师能够帮助你，他们的工作就是让家舒适又漂亮。

## 二、单项选择：

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A  
10. B 11. B 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. A 16. B 17. A 18.  
B 19. A 20. A 21. B 22. B 23. B 24. A 25. B 26. B

## 三、将下列名词变成复数形式：

27. stars, magazines, sheep, children, deer  
28. classes, boxes, matches, stomachs  
29. countries, families, babies, plays, boys, monkeys,  
keys  
30. tomatoes, radios, heroes, pianos, photos, studios,  
potatoes, bamboos  
31. halves, chiefs, leaves, lives, thieves, wives,  
beliefs, knives, roofs  
32. men teachers, men servants, women pilots, passers-  
by, lookers-on, mothers-in-law

## 四、在所需的地方加上 “' ” 或 “' s” :

33. One student asked me a question after class. I answered the student's question.

34. Many students asked me questions after class. I answered the students' questions.

35. Is this John's dictionary?

36. My brother's paintings are interesting.

37. John's job was more difficult than Dick's.

38. John and Mike's school is the same as Tom's.

39. My best friend's father's job is very interesting.

40. My brother-in-law's sister's house is near mine.

41. Are you going to Dave's party?

42. We thought all of the teacher's/teachers' speeches were brilliant.

43. The Browns' house is bigger than the Greens' .

44. The thief stole both John's mother-in-law's and his sister-in-law's handbags.

45. They were all tired after five hours' walk in the woods.

46. She told me of her father's illness the other day.

47. He is very tired. He needs a night's rest.

48. The earth's surface is about seventy per cent water.

49. The whale (鲸) is the world's largest mammal (哺乳动物) .

## 五、用名词所有格简化下列句子中加下划线的部分：

50. my sister's 51. her husband's

52. Mary's 53. Thackeray's

54. the cyclist's 55. his uncle's

56. my brother's 57. children's stories

58. this afternoon's concert

59. The president's arriving at Tsinghua University in Beijing on February 22, 2018 was reported in yesterday's newspaper.

## 六、分析下列名词所有格的意义：

60. the legs of the table 所有关系

61. the company's money 所有关系

62. the promise of the government 主谓关系

63. the failure of his brother 主谓关系

64. the teacher's speech 主谓关系

65. the president's visit 主谓关系

66. the volcano's eruption 主谓关系

67. the increase of population 主谓关系

68. the criticism of the teacher 动宾关系（别人对这位老师的批评）

比较：the criticism of the teacher's （老师对别人的批评）



69. Edison's invention 主谓关系 invention of the light bulb 动宾关系

70. the president's China visit 主谓关系

## 七、综合练习:

71. B 72. D 73. D 74. A 75. A 76. B 77. A

78. B 79. C 80. C 81. B 82. C 83. C 84. B

85. D 86. A 87. B 88. B 89. A 90. C 91. C

## Chapter 07 限定词（一）：名词的数量



音频

- 29 数量限定词
- 30 数量词与of连用
- 31 数量词 a few, few, a little, little
- 32 数量词some, any

## 29 数量限定词

英文中常用的数量词有：

只与可数名词连用	只接单数	one each every	one boy each boy every boy
	只接复数	two, three, ... both a couple of a few few several many a number of	two boys both boys a couple of boys a few boys few boys several boys many boys a number of boys
只与不可数名词连用		a little little much a great deal of a large amount of	a little water little water much water a great deal of water a large amount of water
与可数名词复数或不可数名词连用均可		not any some a lot of lots of plenty of most all	not any boys not any water some boys some water a lot of boys a lot of water lots of boys lots of water plenty of boys plenty of water most boys most water all boys all water

## 30 数量词与of连用 Track24

在上述数量词中，有些还可以接of短语连用。具体用法如下：

<p>all/most/some/any of+ 特指限定词 + 复数可数或不可数名词</p> <p>比较：</p> <p>a. <b>Most books</b> are interesting.</p> <p>Most of books are interesting. *</p> <p>b. <b>Most of my/these/the/John's books</b> are interesting.</p>	这里“特指限定词”包括：the, this, that, these, those, my, their, John's 等名词所有格。
<p>many/a few/few/several/both/two/three of+ 特指限定词 + 复数可数名词</p> <p>比较：</p> <p>a. <b>Many students</b> are good at English.</p> <p>Many of students are good at English.*</p> <p>b. <b>Many of these students</b> are good at English.</p>	
<p>much/a little/little of+ 特指限定词 + 不可数名词</p> <p>a. <b>Much water</b> is wasted.</p> <p>Much of water is wasted.*</p> <p>b. <b>Much of the water</b> is wasted.</p>	
<p>其他数量词如：a lot of, lots of, a couple of, plenty of, a number of, a great deal of 一般直接与名词连用。如： a lot of books, a great deal of water, a couple of days</p>	

**特别注意：**all（三个或以上都）/both（两个都）的用法。

研究下列句子：

正确：All students are smart. 所有的学生都很聪明。

All of my students are smart.

All my students are smart. （all的独特用法）

不正确：All of students are smart.\*

但其他数量词不能像上面第三个例句这样用。如我们不能说：most my students\*, most the students\*, many these students\*。

both和all的用法类似。

## 31 数量词 a few, few, a little, little

### Track25

#### (1) 与名词搭配

a few, few后面只能接可数名词复数；而a little, little后面只能接不可数名词。例如：

a few days    few boys

a little water    little money

#### (2) 肯定/否定之别

a few, a little意思是肯定的，相当于some，表示“有一些”。而few, little意思是否定的，表示“很少，几乎没有”。例如：

a. His theory is rather difficult; **few** people understand it.=...almost no people understand it. 他的理论很深奥，没什么人能够理解。

b. His theory is rather difficult, but **a few** people understand it.

他的理论很深奥，但却有一些人能够理解。

c. I have **little** interest in English, so I am very poor at it.

我对英文没什么兴趣，所以学得很不好。

d. I have **a little** interest in English, so I like learning it.

我对英文有些兴趣，所以我喜欢学。

### (3) 与only或very搭配

我们只能说: only a little, only a few; 而不能说: only few\*, only little\*。但为了强调否定意义, 我们可以说: very few, very little。

His theory is rather difficult and \_\_\_\_ students can understand it.

- A. only few
- B. only a few
- C. only little
- D. only a little

正确答案: B



## 32 数量词some, any Track26

(1) 从与名词搭配来看，some和any均可以与不可数名词和可数名词复数连用，表示“一些”。some一般用在肯定句中；而any一般用在否定句中。

a. Clint is busy. He always has some work to do. But John is lazy. He never does any work.

b. Last night I was very hungry and I wanted some food to eat. But now I am not hungry and I don't want any food to eat.

c. I need some medicine to cure my cough. 我需要一些药治咳嗽。

d. I want to buy some computer books.

e. I don't have any friends here.

(2) 在疑问句中，我们多数情况下用any，但是在表示我们期待一个正面回答或要鼓励对方说“是”时要用some。

a. Have you got any medicine to cure your cough?

b. Would you like to give me some advice?

c. Can I have some more wine? 我能再喝一些红酒吗？

(3) any可以表示“无论哪一个，任何一个”，此时可用于任何类型的句子中。

You can catch any bus. They all go to the railway station.

你可以随便搭一辆公交车，它们都去火车站。

### 名词的数量练习

#### 一、选择题（数量限定词与名词的搭配）：

1. Ann is wearing \_\_\_\_ rings. (可从A—K中多选)
2. Ann is wearing \_\_\_\_ jewelry. (可从A—K中多选)
  - A. five
  - B. several
  - C. some
  - D. lots of
  - E. too many
  - F. too much
  - G. a few
  - h. a little
  - I. no
  - J. every
  - K. each
3. He doesn't have \_\_\_\_ money.
  - A. much
  - B. many
  - C. a few

D. little

4. There \_\_\_\_ bad news on television tonight.

A. is too much

B. are too much

C. is too many

D. are too many

5. \_\_\_\_ people left early.

A. A lot

B. A few

C. A little

D. Less

6. Only \_\_\_\_ dollars have been borrowed from the manager.

A. a few

B. few

C. some

D. little

7. The letter was short because there wasn't \_\_\_\_ .

A. many news

B. much news

C. a lot news

D. a lot of news

## 二、填空题：

（在必要的地方加上of）

8. Some \_\_\_\_ students are lazy and some \_\_\_\_ students are hard-working.

9. Some \_\_\_\_ my students are a little lazy.

10. I bought a few \_\_\_\_ books yesterday.

11. I read a few \_\_\_\_ those books yesterday.

12. Most \_\_\_\_ people need six to eight hours of sleep every night.

13. Most \_\_\_\_ the people in this class like English.

14. Jack asked me many \_\_\_\_ questions. Most \_\_\_\_ his questions are about grammar.

15. I'm new here. I don't know many \_\_\_\_ people.

16. I'm new in this class. I don't know many \_\_\_\_ my classmates.

（判断下列空格哪些不能加of，哪些可加可不加）

17. Almost all \_\_\_\_ children like stories.

18. All \_\_\_\_ my children are clever.

19. Both \_\_\_\_ those books are mine.

20. Not all \_\_\_\_ people are friendly, but most \_\_\_\_ people have kind hearts.

21. Not all \_\_\_\_ the people in my class are smart, but most \_\_\_\_ the people in my class are smart.

22. All \_\_\_\_ birds have wings, but not all \_\_\_\_ birds can fly.

(用a few, a little, few, little填空)

23. A: Are you finished?

B: Not yet. I need \_\_\_\_ more minutes.

=Not yet. I need \_\_\_\_ more time.

24. Do you have \_\_\_\_ minutes? I'd like to ask you \_\_\_\_ questions. I need \_\_\_\_ more information.

25. He is very poor and he has \_\_\_\_ clothes.

26. I like music. I like to listen to \_\_\_\_ music after dinner.

27. Jane is very shy. She seems to have \_\_\_\_ friends in her new school.

28. I had \_\_\_\_ food this morning. Now I am very hungry.

29. Clint's grammar lecture is very clear. As a result, very \_\_\_\_ students have questions at the end of class.

30. English is not hard. Only \_\_\_\_ students are not good at it.

31. I had only \_\_\_\_ money with me.

32. Only \_\_\_\_ dollars have been borrowed from the manager.

(用some, any填空)

33. Last night I was very hungry and I wanted \_\_\_\_\_ food to eat. But now I am not hungry and I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ food to eat.

34. I need \_\_\_\_\_ medicine to cure my cough.

35. I want to buy \_\_\_\_\_ computer books.

36. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ friends here.

### 名词的数量练习答案

#### 一、选择题（数量限定词与名词的搭配）：

1. A B C D E G I

2. C D F H I

3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. B

#### 二、填空题：

8. 不填，不填 9. of

10. 不填 11. of

12. 不填 13. of

14. 不填，of 15. 不填

16. of 17. 不填

18. of或不填 19. of或不填

20. 不填，不填 21. of或不填，of

22. 不填，不填 23. a few, a little

24. a few, a few, a little 25. few

26. a little 27. few

28. little 29. few

30. a few 31. a little

32. a few 33. some, any

34. some 35. some

36. any

## Chapter 08 限定词(二): 冠词



音频

- 33 不定冠词a, an的位置
- 34 名词与冠词使用的重要技巧
- 35 冠词的用法
- 36 何时不用冠词
- 37 school/the school
- 38 “泛指概念”的四种表达方式



### 33 不定冠词a, an的位置 Track27

不定冠词a用在以辅音音素（并非辅音字母）开头的名词前；不定冠词an用在以元音音素开头的名词前。例如：

a boy a student

a university a unique person

an hour an unkind old lady

a. An apple a day keeps the doctor away. 一天一苹果，医生远离我。

b. Old hen（母鸡）：Let me give you a piece of good advice.

Young hen: What is it?

Old hen: An egg a day keeps the ax away.

一天一个蛋，不把斧头见。

c. Telling lies is a fault in a boy, an art in a lover, an accomplishment in a bachelor, and second nature in a married man.

说谎是男孩的错误、情人的艺术、单身男人的技能、已婚男人的第二天性。

an 还用在发音以元音开头的单个字母前面。例如：

an SOS sign

An L letter is in the word “letter”.

## 34 名词与冠词使用的重要技巧 Track28

从名词角度来看，对于名词与冠词的使用，以下几条是核心：

### (1) 单数可数名词

单数可数名词不能单独使用，必须与冠词或其他限定词连用。

我们可以说： the boy, a boy, his boy, the woman's boy, a clever boy

但一般不说： boy

I really need a new computer.

### (2) 复数名词和不可数名词

对于复数名词和不可数名词，以下两点须掌握：

1) 不能与不定冠词a(n)连用。

不能说： a bread\* an information\* a ships\* an oranges\*

2) 复数名词或不可数名词在表示泛指时，不可用the。复数名词或不可数名词在表示特指时，要用the。

a. Life is hard sometimes.

(泛指) 生活有时会很艰难。不说： The life is hard sometimes.\*

b. Life is education in itself. (泛指) 生活本身就是教育。

c. The writer is writing a book about the life of blacks in America.

（特指）这位作家正在写一本关于美国黑人生活的书。

d. I love music, poetry and art. （泛指一切音乐、诗歌及艺术）

不说：I love the music, the poetry and the art.\*

e. I don't like the film, but I like the music (of the film).

（特指这部电影的音乐）

f. Air is a colorless and tasteless gas. 空气是一种无色无味的气体。

g. The air in this room is stuffy. Please open the windows.

这房间里空气不好，请把窗户打开。

h. Books become more and more expensive. （泛指一切书都在涨价）

i. Put away the books on your desk.

（特指）把你书桌上的那些书都摆整齐了。

j. Pencils contain lead. 铅笔里含有铅。

k. Who put the pencils on the table? 谁把铅笔放在桌上的？

l. Sugar isn't very good for you. 糖对你不太有好处。

m. Can you pass me the sugar, please? 请把糖递给我好吗？

请注意，表示特指的复数可数名词或不可数名词，一般带有各种短语或从句作后置定语，以限定这些名词所指的事物范围。如上句中的on your desk, of blacks in America, in this room。

## 35 冠词的用法 Track29

(1) 第一次提到的单数可数名词前面用不定冠词a或an，这一名词再次出现则要用定冠词the。

a. A man came up to a policeman and asked him a question. The policeman didn't understand the question, so he asked the man to repeat it.

b. I had a banana and an apple. I ate the banana and gave the apple to Clint.

(2) 在谈到说话人和听话人双方都知道的事物时，要用the。比如在自己家的房间里，我们要说the light, the floor, the door, the window, the carpet。

a. Can you turn off the light, please? (=the light in our room)

b. Shut the door, please! (听话的人知道指的是哪扇门，比如是卧室的门。)

c. How do you like the film? 你觉得这部电影怎么样?

d. A: Do you need the car today, honey?

B: Yes. I have a lot of things to do. Why don't I drive you to work today?

A: OK. But be sure to fill the car up with gas.

A: 亲爱的，今天你用车吗?

B: 用，我有很多事要做。我送你去上班怎么样?

A: 好的，记得把车加满油。

(3) 表示世界上独一无二的事物。

the earth the sky the equator the moon the world the universe

(4) 形容词或副词最高级、序数词以及only用作形容词与名词连用时，它们前面一般要用the。

the only/best way to cope with the problem

唯一的/最好的解决这个问题的方法

This is **the first time** I've come to Beijing.

(5) 在乐器、乐团、合唱团及流行音乐团体前加the。

the Beatles 甲壳虫乐队

the Philadelphia Orchestra 费城管弦乐队

play/learn the guitar 弹吉他

learn the piano 学弹钢琴

**注意：**运动项目 前不用the。如play chess, play football/basketball/table tennis。

## 36 何时不用冠词 Track30

### (1) 表示独一无二的身份前一般不用冠词。

Elizabeth II , Queen of England 英国女王伊丽莎白二世

a. They elected Henry chairman.

b. Henry was elected chairman of the committee.

亨利被选为协会主席。

c. He was elected president for the second time.

d. She is chairman of the committee.

e. For the first time I am king of myself. 第一次我成为了自己的主人。

f. Mr. Smith used to be president of our bank.

史密斯先生过去是我们银行的行长。

### (2) 表示球类、棋类运动项目时不加冠词。

play football play chess play tennis

### (3) 下列这些限定词彼此排斥，不能同时出现在名词前面。

1) 冠词: the an a

2) 物主形容词: my your his her our their

3) 指示形容词: this that these those

4) 名词属格: Tom's John's

不能说: the my book\* the Tom's book\* my the money\*

#### (4) the在一些特殊的名词前省略。

1) nature: 泛指自然界(动、植物及无生命物质的世界)不用冠词。

If you destroy nature you will suffer for it.

谁要是破坏大自然, 谁就要遭受恶果。

2) society: 泛指我们在其中生活的这个社会, 一般不用冠词。

Society turns people into criminals and then locks them up.

社会使人犯罪, 然后又把他们关进监狱。

3) space: 泛指星球之间的空间, 不用冠词。

Man has just taken his first steps into space.

对于太空的探索, 人类才刚刚迈出了第一步。

4) man: 泛指整个人类时, 不用冠词。

a. Man can conquer nature. 人定胜天。

b. From early times man has used garlic (大蒜). Through the years man has tried to cope with (处理) the smell of garlic. But no herb,

mouthwash, chewing gum, or toothpaste seems to help much.

5) history: 泛指人类整个历史时, 不用冠词。

a. History may repeat itself.

b. Throughout **history** man has had to accept the fact that all living things must die.

#### (5) 在一日三餐名词前不用冠词。

have something for **breakfast/lunch/supper/dinner**

invite somebody to **dinner**

I was invited to **dinner**.

若三餐名词前有形容词时，则一般加不定冠词。例如：

We often have **a big lunch** and **a nice dinner**.

我们通常午饭吃得较多，晚饭则吃得较好。

#### (6) 交通工具名词前不用冠词。

by bicycle by boat by bus by car

by plane by train by metro

但若用介词on，则须用冠词：on the train/plane/boat（特别注意：on foot 不加冠词）。

#### (7) 在一些固定介词搭配中不用冠词。

face to face arm in arm hand in hand shoulder to shoulder

side by side inch by inch day after day



## 37 school/the school Track31

表示地点的名词如：

bed church court hospital prison school

college university sea work office

当人们去这些地方做在这些地方应该做的事时，这些词前面不加冠词。因为这时这些名词只表示一种抽象概念，说话人并非特指具体的地点。如果我们去这些地方不是要做特定的事，而是由于其他原因，则要用the。例如：

a. His mother is **in hospital** and he has been **in the hospital** to take care of her. 他妈妈生病住院了，他就一直在医院里照顾她。

b. He is often invited to **the prison** to give lectures.

他经常受邀去监狱给囚犯做演讲。（我们想到的是某些特定的监狱）

c. He is **in prison** for bribery. (He is a prisoner. 我们想到的并不是某一个特定的监狱)

d. Donald Trump **came into office** in 2017.

唐纳德·特朗普2017年上台当总统。

e. The headmaster came into the office and saw his secretary working there.

其他类似的还有：

to school/college/university (to study) 去学校/学院/大学  
读书

to church (to pray) 去教堂祷告

to hospital (as patients) 去医院就医

in class 在上课/ in the class 在这个班

当然我们也可以用其他介词：

at/from/in/to school/college/university

at/from/in/to class

to/in/into/from church

to/in/into/out of prison/hospital/bed

to/at/from work 去上班/在上班/下班

to/at sea 出海/在海上

to/in/from/out of town

at/from home

go to sea (as sailors) (作为水手) 出海

go to the sea=go to the seaside 去海边，去海滨

be at sea (as passengers or crew) (作为旅客或船员) 乘船  
旅行/航海

be at the sea=be at the seaside 在海边

by sea=by ship 乘船

by the sea=by the seaside 在海边

be in office 在任职

be in the office 在办公室里

be out of office 离职

be out of the office 离开办公室

## 38 “泛指概念”的四种表达方式 Track32

(1) 不带the的不可数名词表示泛指。

a. I like music.

b. Gold is a metal. 黄金是一种金属。

不正确: The gold is a metal.\*

(2) 不带the的复数可数名词表示泛指。

a. Bananas are yellow. 香蕉是黄色的。

b. I am afraid of dogs. (表示泛指概念, 不用the dogs。)

(3) “the+单数可数名词”可以表示泛指(当然也可以表示特指)。

a. The whale is the largest mammal on earth.

(泛指) 鲸是地球上最大的哺乳动物。

b. The whale is dead. (特指) 这头鲸已经死了。

c. The elephant is the largest land mammal.

(泛指) 大象是陆地上最大的哺乳动物。

d. The elephant over there has only one tusk.

(特指) 那边的那只大象只有一颗象牙。

(4) 不定冠词“a/an+单数可数名词”可以表示泛指。当然也可以含有“one”这一数量意义。注意比较下列句子:

- a. I ate a banana this morning. (一个香蕉)
- b. A banana is yellow. (任何一个香蕉, any banana, all bananas, bananas in general泛指)
- c. I saw a dog enter the room.
- d. A dog makes a good pet. (泛指)
- e. A teacher should be patient with his or her students. (相当于 all teachers或any teacher。)
- f. A growing child needs great nourishment.
- 正在长身体的孩子需要很多营养。(相当于 all growing children或any growing child。)
- g. A child needs love.=Children need love.=Any child needs love.

### 冠词练习

一、在必要的地方加上the (特指的陈述用the, 泛指的陈述不用。):

1. \_\_\_\_ flowers in that vase are beautiful.
2. \_\_\_\_ flowers are beautiful.
3. \_\_\_\_ water consists of hydrogen and oxygen.
4. I don't want to go swimming today. \_\_\_\_ water is too cold.
5. \_\_\_\_ health is more important than money.
6. Doctors are concerned with \_\_\_\_ health of their patients.

7. \_\_\_\_ gold is a precious metal.
8. \_\_\_\_ gold in Mary's ring is 24 karat gold.
9. \_\_\_\_ vegetables are good for you.
10. \_\_\_\_ vegetables we had for dinner last night were overcooked.

## 二、名词第一次出现用a/an，第二次出现用the:

11. Yesterday I saw \_\_\_\_ dog and \_\_\_\_ cat. \_\_\_\_ dog was chasing \_\_\_\_ cat. \_\_\_\_ cat was chasing \_\_\_\_ mouse. \_\_\_\_ mouse ran into \_\_\_\_ hole, but \_\_\_\_ hole was very small. \_\_\_\_ cat couldn't get into \_\_\_\_ hole, so it ran up \_\_\_\_ tree. \_\_\_\_ dog tried to climb \_\_\_\_ tree too, but it couldn't.

12. Yesterday I saw \_\_\_\_ man and \_\_\_\_ woman. They were having \_\_\_\_ argument. \_\_\_\_ man was yelling at \_\_\_\_ woman, and \_\_\_\_ woman was shouting at \_\_\_\_ man. I don't know what \_\_\_\_ argument was about.

## 三、在必要的地方填上适当的冠词:

13. A: I have \_\_\_\_ idea. Let's go on \_\_\_\_ picnic Saturday.

B: Sounds great!

14. A: Did you have fun at \_\_\_\_ picnic yesterday?

B: Sure I did.

15. A: Where is my blue shirt?

B: It's in \_\_\_\_ washing machine. You'll have to wear \_\_\_\_ different shirt.

16. I hope I have \_\_\_\_ washing machine.

17. Everyone has \_\_\_\_ problems in \_\_\_\_ life.
18. My grandfather had \_\_\_\_ long life.
19. That book is about \_\_\_\_ life of Helen Keller.

#### 四、判断句子正误：

20. The life is hard sometimes.
21. I love music, poetry and the art.
22. I don't like the film, but I like music.
23. The air is a colorless and tasteless gas.
24. Air in this room is stuffy. Please open the windows.
25. The history may repeat itself.
26. The pencils contain lead.
27. Diamond is the hardest substance in the nature.
28. Man has just taken his first steps into the space.
29. A foreign language is a weapon in the struggle of the life, as Marx put it.

#### 五、单项选择：

30. \_\_\_\_ ballet dancers learn five basic positions for the arms and feet.
- A. All of
- B. Of every
- C. All

D. Every

31. In 1864 Nevada entered the United States as \_\_\_\_  
thirty-sixth state.

A. in the

B. to be the

C. was the

D. the

32. \_\_\_\_ are good for you.

A. Apple

B. An apple

C. Apples

D. The apples

33. Look at \_\_\_\_ on that tree! They're very big.

A. apple

B. an apple

C. apples

D. the apples

34. We had a very nice meal. \_\_\_\_ were especially good.

A. Vegetables

B. The vegetables

C. Vegetable



D. A vegetable

35. Most people believe that \_\_\_\_ are the basis of \_\_\_\_ .

A. marriage and family life...society

B. marriage and family life...the society

C. the marriage and the family life...society

D. the marriage and the family life...the society

36. Mary and John got married but \_\_\_\_ didn't last very long.

A. marriage

B. the marriage

C. a marriage

D. marriages

37. One of our biggest social problems is \_\_\_\_ .

A. the unemployment

B. unemployment

C. an unemployment

D. unemployments

38. Don't stay in that hotel. It's very noisy and \_\_\_\_ are very uncomfortable.

A. beds

B. the beds

C. this bed

D. a bed

39. \_\_\_\_ is a problem in most big cities.

A. Crime

B. The crime

C. Crimes

D. This crime

40. “What on earth is that?” “Don’t you know? That’s a whale, \_\_\_\_ .”

A. largest world’s mammal

B. largest mammal in the world

C. the world’s largest mammal

D. largest mammal of the world

41. A foreign language is a weapon in \_\_\_\_ , as Marx put it.

A. struggle of life

B. struggle of the life

C. the struggle of life

D. the struggle of the life

42. These books, which you can get at any bookshop, will give you \_\_\_\_ you need.

- A. all the information
- B. all the informations
- C. all of information
- D. all of the informations

43. It is reported that \_\_\_\_ adopted children want to know who their natural parents are.

- A. the most
- B. most of
- C. most
- D. the most of

44. Radio, televisions and press \_\_\_\_ of conveying news and information.

- A. are the most three common means
- B. are the most common three means
- C. are the three most common means
- D. are three the most common means

45. *The Grapes of Wrath*, a novel about the Depression years of the 1930s, is one of John Steinbeck's \_\_\_\_ books.

- A. most famous
- B. the most famous
- C. are most famous

D. and most famous

## 六、用所给单词的正确形式填空，在必要时加上冠词：

### School:

46. Every term parents are invited to \_\_\_\_ to meet the teachers.

47. Why aren't your children at \_\_\_\_ today? Are they ill?

48. When he was younger, Ted hated \_\_\_\_ .

49. What time does \_\_\_\_ start in the mornings in your country?

50. —How do your children get home from \_\_\_\_ ? By bus?

—No, they walk. \_\_\_\_ isn't very far.

51. What sort of job does Jenny want to do when she leaves \_\_\_\_ ?

52. There were some people waiting outside \_\_\_\_ to meet their children.

### Hospital:

53. She works as a cleaner at \_\_\_\_ .

54. When Ann was ill, we all went to \_\_\_\_ to visit her.

55. My brother has always been very healthy. He's never been in \_\_\_\_ .

56. Peter was injured in an accident and was kept in \_\_\_\_ for a few days.

57. Jack had an accident last week. He was taken to \_\_\_\_.  
He's still in \_\_\_\_ now.

### Church:

58. John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to \_\_\_\_ every Sunday.

59. John himself doesn't go to \_\_\_\_ .

60. John went to \_\_\_\_ to take some photographs of the buildings.

61. The workmen went to \_\_\_\_ to repair the roof.

### Prison:

62. In many places people are in \_\_\_\_ because of their political opinions.

63. The other day the fire brigade were called to \_\_\_\_ to put out a fire.

64. The judge decided to fine the man \$500 instead of sending him to \_\_\_\_ .

65. Ken went to \_\_\_\_ to visit his brother because he was in \_\_\_\_ for bribery.

### Sea:

66. There's a nice view from the window. You can see \_\_\_\_ .

67. It was a long voyage. We were at \_\_\_\_ for four weeks.

68. I love swimming in \_\_\_\_ .

69. Jack is a seaman. He spends most of his life at \_\_\_\_

.

70. —It is a nice day, isn't it?

—Yes, let's go for a walk by \_\_\_\_ .

## 七、冠词填空:

心灵鸡汤 *Chicken Soup for the Soul*

### Boy and His Apple Tree

71. \_\_\_\_ long time ago, there was \_\_\_\_ huge apple tree.

72. \_\_\_\_ little boy loved to come and play around it everyday. He climbed to \_\_\_\_ tree top, ate \_\_\_\_ apples, took \_\_\_\_ nap under \_\_\_\_ shadow... He loved \_\_\_\_ tree and \_\_\_\_ tree loved to play with him.

73. Time went by... \_\_\_\_ little boy had grown up and he no longer played around \_\_\_\_ tree everyday.

One day, the boy came back to the tree and he looked.  
“Come and play with me,” the tree asked the boy.

74. “I am no longer \_\_\_\_ kid, I don't play around \_\_\_\_ trees anymore.” The boy replied, “I want \_\_\_\_ toys. I need money to buy them.” “Sorry, but I don't have \_\_\_\_ money... but you can pick all \_\_\_\_ my apples and sell them. So, you will have \_\_\_\_ money.” The boy was so excited. He grabbed all \_\_\_\_ apples on the tree and left happily. The boy never came back after he picked the apples. The tree was sad.

75. One day, the boy returned and the tree was so excited. “Come and play with me.” the tree said. “I don't have time to play. I have to work for my family. We need \_\_\_\_ house for shelter. Can you help me?” “Sorry, but I don't have \_\_\_\_ house. But you can chop off \_\_\_\_ my branches to

build your house.” So the boy cut all the branches of the tree and left happily.

The tree was glad to see him happy but the boy never came back since then. The tree was again lonely and sad.

One hot summer day, the boy returned and the tree was delighted. “Come and play with me!” the tree said.

76. “I am sad and getting old. I want to go sailing to relax myself. Can you give me \_\_\_\_ boat?” “Use my trunk to build your boat. You can sail far away and be happy.” So the boy cut the tree trunk to make \_\_\_\_ boat.

He went sailing and never showed up for a long time.

Finally, the boy returned after he left for so many years.

“Sorry, my boy. But I don’t have anything for you anymore. No more apples for you...” the tree said.

77. “I don’t have \_\_\_\_ teeth to bite.” the boy replied.

“No more truck for you to climb on.” the tree said. “I am too old for that now.” the boy said.

78. “I really can’t give you anything... \_\_\_\_ only thing left is my dying roots.” the tree said with tears.

79. “I don’t need much now, just \_\_\_\_ place to rest. I am tired after all \_\_\_\_ these years.” The boy replied.

80. “Good! Old tree roots is \_\_\_\_ best place to lean on and rest. Come, Come sit down with me and rest.”

The boy sat down and the tree was glad and smiled with tears...

This is the story of everyone. The tree is our parent. When we were young, we loved to play with Mom and Dad...

When we grown up, we left them...only came to them when we need something or when we are in trouble.

No matter what, parents will always be there and give everything they could to make you happy.

You may think the boy is cruel to the tree but that's how all of us are treating our parents.

Time is too slow for those who wait, too swift for those who fear, too long for those who grieve, too short for those who rejoice, but for those who love, time is eternity.

### 冠词练习答案

一、在必要的地方加上the（特指的陈述用the，泛指陈述不用。）：

1. The 2. 不填 3. 不填 4. The 5. 不填

6. the 7. 不填 8. The 9. 不填 10. The

二、名词第一次出现用a/an，第二次出现用the：

11. Yesterday I saw a dog and a cat. The dog was chasing the cat. The cat was chasing a mouse. The mouse ran into a hole, but the hole was very small. The cat couldn't get into the hole, so it ran up a tree. The dog tried to climb the tree too, but it couldn't.

12. Yesterday I saw a man and a woman. They were having an rgument. The man was yelling at the woman, and the woman was shouting at the man. I don't know what the argument was about.

三、在必要的地方填上适当的冠词：



13. an, a 14. the 15. the, a 16. a

17. 不填, 不填 18. a 19. the

#### 四、判断句子正误:

20. 错误。应改为: Life is hard sometimes.

21. 错误。应改为: I love music, poetry and art.

22. 错误。应改为: I don't like the film, but I like the music.

23. 错误。应改为: Air is a colorless and tasteless gas.

24. 错误。应改为: The air in this room is stuffy. Please open the windows.

25. 错误。应改为: History may repeat itself.

26. 错误。应改为: Pencils contain lead.

27. 错误。应改为: Diamond is the hardest substance in nature.

28. 错误。应改为: Man has just taken his first steps into space.

29. 错误。应改为: A foreign language is a weapon in the struggle of life, as Marx put it.

#### 五、单项选择:

30. C 31. D 32. C 33. D 34. B 35. A 36. B 37. B

38. B 39. A 40. C 41. C 42. A 43. C 44. C 45. A

#### 六、用所给单词的正确形式填空, 在必要时加上冠词:

46. the school 47. school 48. school  
49. school 50. school, The school 51. school  
52. the school 53. the hospital 54. the hospital  
55. hospital 56. hospital 57. hospital, hospital  
58. church 59. church 60. the church  
61. the church 62. prison 63. the prison  
64. prison 65. the prison, prison 66. the sea  
67. sea 68. the sea 69. sea  
70. the sea

## 七、冠词填空:

71. A, a  
72. A, the, the, a, the, the, the  
73. The, the  
74. a, 不填, 不填, 不填, 不填, 不填, the  
75. a, a, 不填  
76. a, a  
77. 不填  
78. The  
79. a, 不填  
80. the

## Chapter 09 形容词



音频

- 39 -ing和-ed结尾的形容词
- 40 单个形容词在句中的位置
- 41 多个形容词修饰名词的词序问题
- 42 比较级和最高级的构成形式
- 43 形容词的原级
- 44 形容词的比较级
- 45 形容词的最高级

## 46 不具有等级的形容词

## 第一节 两种形容词的区别

### 39 -ing和-ed结尾的形容词 Track33

(1) -ing形容词主要是用来描述引起人某种感觉的事物。因此，句子主语通常是指事物或作定语修饰事物（指人的情况较少）。

an interesting story

the exciting news

The book is interesting.

(2) -ed形容词主要是用来描述人的感觉。表示“人对事物产生某种感觉”，句子主语通常是指人或有情绪的动物，或用来修饰人或有情绪的动物，一般不指事物。试比较：

a frightened bird/boy 受惊吓的鸟/男孩子

a frightening story 让人毛骨悚然的故事

the annoyed man 被激怒的人

the annoying words 令人气愤的话

My job is {  
boring. (乏味的)  
interesting. (有趣的)  
tiring. (令人疲倦的)  
satisfying. (令人满意的)  
depressing. (令人沮丧的)

以上各句可以分别解释为：

a. I'm **bored** with my job. 我很厌烦我的工作。

b. I'm **interested** in my job. 我对我的工作很有兴趣。

c. I'm always **tired** when I finish work. 我做完工作总是很累。

d. I'm **satisfied** with my job. 我对我的工作很满意。

e. My job makes me **depressed**. 我的工作让我很沮丧。

但若指人，则说明这个人能够引起别人的某种情绪。如：

f. If a person is **boring**, he or she makes other people **bored**.

g. The **interesting** children can make other people feel **interested** in them.

h. The **interested** children will show an interest in something **interesting**.

请思考比较a boring man和a bored man的区别。

## 第二节 形容词在句中的位置

### 40 单个形容词在句中的位置 Track34

在一个名词短语中，形容词作定语修饰一个名词时，位置是：限定词+形容词+名词。

限定词	形容词	名词
an	interesting	book
a	beautiful	smile
my	best	friend

- a. I am reading an interesting book.
- b. He has a beautiful smile.
- c. He is my best friend.

注意：修饰something, anything, nothing, everything, somebody/someone, anybody/anyone, nobody/no one, everybody/everyone等不定代

词的形容词要后置。

例如：

- a. I have something important to say. 我有重要的话要说。
- b. There is something wrong with my computer. 我的电脑出了点问题。

## 41 多个形容词修饰名词的词序问题 Track35

一个中心名词，若有多个形容词修饰，此时这些形容词前后位置关系要遵循一定的规则。这个规则一般是：

观点形容词 (opinion adjective) + 描绘形容词 (descriptive adjective)

观点形容词：即完全表述个人主观上对事物的看法的形容词。

如：good, lovely, beautiful, handsome, comfortable等等。

描绘形容词：又称为描述事实形容词 (fact adjective)，即用来描述事物本身固有特征的形容词，对事物进行客观表述。

如事物的颜色：blue, yellow, dark, white等等；

事物的形状：round, square等等。

观点形容词	描绘形容词
beautiful, good	white, red, old
观点形容词 + 描绘形容词	
a beautiful white table a good red apple The beautiful, old table was my grandmother's.	

由于事物的客观上的属性可以有多种，因此，描绘形容词又有以下进一步分类：



描绘形容词的分类及词序					
尺寸大小 ( size )	形状 ( shape )	新旧 ( age )	颜色 ( color )	国籍 / 出处 ( origin )	质地材料 ( material )
large big small long	wide round square	new old ancient	white red yellow	Chinese American	wood stone gold

综上所述，在名词短语中，名词前面修饰语的排序可能是：

限定词→观点形容词→尺寸大小→形状→新旧→颜色→国籍/出处→质地材料→中心名词

a. Li Bai is a famous ancient Chinese poet.

李白是一位中国古代的著名诗人。

b. This beautiful, big, old, red, Chinese wooden table was my grand-mother's.

这张红色的中式旧木桌是我奶奶的，它又大又漂亮。

c. On a table in my home library rests an attractive little old yellowed book printed in 1551.

在我家书房的桌上放着一本外观很精致、发黄了的旧书，它是1551年出版的。

d. There was a large round wooden table in the room.

房间里有一张大圆木桌。

e. The man was carrying a small black plastic bag.

那男人提着一个小黑塑料袋。

### 第三节 形容词的原级、比较级和最高级

#### 42 比较级和最高级的构成形式 Track36

一般来说，形容词和副词具有原级、比较级和最高级三个等级的比较。多数形容词具有这三种等级的比较（不具有比较等级的形容词见第46小节），而对于副词来说，具有比较等级的只有方式副词、时间副词和频度副词。

构成形容词和副词比较级和最高级的有两种方式：一是在词尾加-er构成比较级，加-est构成最高级；另一种是在形容词或副词前面加more构成比较级，加most构成最高级。具体规则如下：

##### （1）单音节词：

1）一般单音节词直接在词尾加-er和-est分别构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
bright	brighter	brightest
tall	taller	tallest
strong	stronger	strongest
long	longer	longest

2）以-e结尾的单音节词，直接在词尾加-r和-st分别构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
brave	braver	bravest
late	later	latest
large	larger	largest

3) 以-y结尾的单音节词应先变y为i，再加-er和-est分别构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
shy	shier	shiest

4) 以“一个元音+一个辅音”结尾的单音节词，要先双写词尾的辅音字母，然后再加-er和-est分别构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
fat	fatter	fattest
big	bigger	biggest
sad	sadder	saddest

## (2) 双音节词:

1) 以-y结尾的双音节形容词，要先变-y为-i，再加-er和-est分别构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
happy	happier	happiest
early	earlier	earliest
silly	sillier	silliest
heavy	heavier	heaviest
pretty	prettier	prettiest
其他的词: angry, dirty, busy, easy, funny, lucky, tiny 等。		

**注意：**像slowly这样的副词中的-ly，不同于像early这样的形容词中的-ly。前者是后缀-ly（slow+ly=slowly），而后者是该词不可缺少的组成部分（并不是ear+ly=early）。这种后缀-ly结尾的副词（尽管是以-y结尾的双音节词）通常是在词前加more和most来构成比较级和最高级。所以，slowly在构成比较级和最高级时，应为：more slowly和most slowly。再比如strongly的比较级和最高级分别为：more strongly和most strongly。

2) 其他绝大多数双音节词是在词前加more和most分别构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
tiring	more tiring	most tiring

3) 少数几个双音节词则分别可以用上述两种基本方法来构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
common	commoner/more common	commonnest/most common
clever	cleverer/more clever	cleverest/most clever
shallow	shallower/more shallow	shallowest/most shallow

这样的双音节词常见的有：

common cruel friendly funny handsome mature

noisy pleasant polite quiet stupid tired

以-ow结尾的词：hollow narrow shallow

以-er结尾的词：clever tender

以-le结尾的词：feeble gentle noble

此外，值得一提的是，在英文中，几乎所有的双音节形容词（除了以-y结尾的词以外）都可以在其前加more和most来分别构成比较级和最高级。

### （3）多音节词：

三个或更多音节的词都是在其前加more和most来构成比较级和最高级。

原级	比较级	最高级
interesting	more interesting	most interesting
excited	more excited	most excited
successful	more successful	most successful

### （4）特殊形式的比较级和最高级：

在英文中有少数词的比较级和最高级的变化是不规则的，对于这些词我们只能通过单独记忆来掌握。

原级	比较级	最高级
good/well	better	best
bad/ill	worse	worst
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
old	older/elder	oldest/oldest
little	less	least
many/much	more	most
late	later/latter	latest/last
up	upper	uppermost/upmost

对上述有两种不同形式的特殊比较级和最高级的用法做以下说明：

1) farther (farthest)/further (furthest)

这四个词都可以指实际的距离。不过，further (furthest) 可用于抽象意义，表示“进一步的，更多的，更深入的”，常与抽象名词连用。例如：

further discussion 继续讨论

further debate 继续争论

further delays 继续拖延/耽搁

further demands 进一步要求

further information 更多的信息

further study 深入研究

This was the **furthest** concession that he would make.

这是他愿意做的最大的让步。

## 2) older (oldest)/elder (eldest)

elder和eldest主要是用来表示家庭成员之间的长幼关系，而并非指年龄大小。

my elder brother/sister 我的哥哥/姐姐

his eldest son/daughter 他的长子/长女

而在有than的比较级句中一般不用elder，而要用older。例如：

I am seven years **older** than Rex. （不用elder）

## 3) later(latter)/latest(last)

later一般用来表示时间上“较迟的”。例如：

a. I am on the phone right now. Could you call me **later**?

latter则是表示顺序上的“后者”，与“former（前者）”相对应。例如：

b. Like all ecological systems, a forest is made up of a living environment and a nonliving environment, **the latter** composed of air, rocks, soil and water.

和所有的生态系统一样，森林是由生物环境和非生物环境构成的，后者包括空气、岩石、土地和水。

latest意思是“最近的，最新的”，主要用来表示新近的事物。例如：

the latest fashions 最新款式的服装

the latest news 最新消息

c. His **latest** novel is being published now.

last主要有两个意思，一是指“在目前之前的一个（the one or ones before the present one）”，或者指“一系列事物中的最后一个（after all others）”。例如：

d. —What do you think of the writer's latest novel?

—I like it much better than his last one.



## 43 形容词的原级 Track37

(1) 表示原级比较的句型：A+as+形容词或副词的原级+as+B。

a. Eyes are as eloquent as lips.

b. You are as lazy as she.

我们也可以说：

c. The work is not as difficult as you think. 这个工作没你想的那么难。

d. An adult human must take eight steps to go as far as a giraffe does in one stride. 长颈鹿迈一步相当于成人要迈八步。

e. The world's deepest cave in the mountain is almost three times as deep as the Empire State Building is high.

世界上最深的山洞几乎是帝国大厦高度的三倍。

(2) 在否定句中，我们还可以将第一个as用so来替换：A+not so (或as)+形容词或副词的原级+as+B。

a. He is not so/as clever as you.

b. No other modern nation devotes so small a portion of its wealth to public health as the United States does. (注意否定词在句首，故此句为否定句) 没有哪个国家像美国一样投入这么少的财富到公共健康事业上。

(3) 当我们要表示A是B的几倍或几分之几时，我们用句型：A+几倍 (three times) 或几分之几 (a third) as+形容词或副词的原级+as+B。

a. This book is twice as thick as that one.

b. The earth has a mass nearly one hundred times as much as that of the moon.

(4) 我们还可用the same...as句型来表示原级比较。这时句子结构为：A+the same+名词+as+B。注意在这个句型中，the same后面只能接名词，而非形容词。

I am as old as you.

不能说：I am the same old as you.\*

而要用与形容词old相对应的名词age。所以这句话应改为：

I am the same age as you.

下面列出的是各种性质的形容词与其对应的名词。

形容词	名词
big/small	size
old/young	age
high	height
deep/shallow	depth
long/short	length
wide/narrow	width
heavy/light	weight

## 44 形容词的比较级 Track38

具体句型可以归纳为以下几类：

### (1) than的比较级句型的用法

- 1) 在than前面必须有形容词或副词比较级形式;
- 2) 被比较的两个对象应该是同类事物，即事物具有可比性。

常见的句型是：A+比较级+than+B。A和B一般是两个同类的、彼此独立的人或事物。例如：

This question is **less difficult than** that question.

这个问题没那个那么难。

也可以是某一事物自身相比。此时句子结构为：A+比较级+情形1+than+情形2。例如：

a. He did **much better** in the finals this term **than** last term.

这个学期期末考他考得比上个学期好多了。

b. Since it has been repaired, the machine works **more efficiently than** it did before. 修过以后，那个机器工作效率比以前高多了。

若被比较的对象不是彼此独立的人或事物，而是具有一事物包含另一事物这样的所属关系，此时我们要用 **other, else** 将其与整体区别开来，以免造成逻辑上的矛盾。例如：

a. Iron is **more useful than any other** metal.

铁比任何其他金属都有用。

b. She works **harder than any other** student in her class.

若说 “She works harder than any student in her class.” 显然矛盾，因为 “she” 属于 her class 中的一员，而 any student in her class 则包括 “她自己”。

(2) 比较级前面一般不须加定冠词 the，但在有介词短语 “of the two” 出现在比较级句中的时候，比较级前面必须加定冠词 the。

I think this painting **is the more interesting** of the two. （定冠词不能省去）

比较：I think this painting is more interesting than that one.

(3) “**more and more**” 双重比较来表示事物持续不断的变化。相当于汉语中的 “越来越……”。

a. That female singer is getting **fatter and fatter**.

这个女歌手越来越胖了。

b. The city is becoming **more and more beautiful**.

这个城市越来越漂亮了。

c. As summer approaches, the days seem **longer and longer**.

夏日将近，白天似乎一天比一天长了。

用法特点：

more and more 不可用在单音节词前，如不能说：more and more fat\*。在 more and more 结构中不能重复使用形容词或副词，如不能说：more beautiful and more beautiful\*。

(4) 可以修饰比较级的词

形容词的比较级前可以用以下词进行修饰：

a bit a little bit a little a lot a great deal any  
even far by far much very much no  
rather still slightly

a. Are you feeling **any** better?

b. Things are **no** better than before. 情况并没有比以前改善。

c. He makes **far** fewer mistakes in spellings than before.  
他的拼写错误比以前少多了。

注意这些词一般不用来修饰比较级: very, many, quite, fairly 等。

不能说: My girlfriend is very older than me.\*

### (5) 否定意义的词+比较级

在英文中, 我们可以用“否定意义的词+比较级”这种句式来表达一个最高级的意思, 这样的词有few, nothing, never, not等。

a. —How have you been?

—It **couldn't** be **worse**. 糟透了。

b. **Few** are **better** qualified for the job than he is.

再没有谁比他更适合做这项工作的了。

另外, never与比较级连用, 是在对这个比较级词进行强调, 意思也相当于这个词的最高级。例如:

c. I have **never** heard **a better** song. 我从来没有听过像这样的好歌。言外之意: This is the **best** song that I have ever heard.

## 45 形容词的最高级 Track39

比较级一般是将彼此独立的人或事物进行比较；最高级则是把一个群体中的一员与该群体整体进行比较。其特点是：

最高级用于两者以上的事物之间进行比较；

其一般结构为the+形容词/副词最高级+比较范围。

最高级的句型有：

### (1) the+形容词/副词最高级+in+地方

不能说：It is the most expensive car of the world.\*

应改为：It is the most expensive car in the world.

### (2) the+序数词+最高级+in+地方

这一句型是在第一个句型的基础上演化而来的。

a. The Yangtze River is the longest river in China, but it is the third longest river in the world.

长江是中国最长的河流，是世界上第三大河流。

b. The Huanghe River is the second longest river in China.

黄河是中国第二大河流。

c. Saturn is the second largest planet after Jupiter, with a diameter nearly ten times that of Earth.

土星仅次于木星，是第二大行星，它的直径是地球的将近十倍。

d. Chicago is the third largest publishing center in the United States, exceeded only by New York City and San Francisco.

芝加哥是美国第三大出版中心，仅次于纽约和旧金山。

### (3) the+形容词/副词最高级+of+所属范围

a. Certain zoologists regard crows the most intelligent of birds.

有些动物学家认为乌鸦是所有鸟类当中最聪明的（一种鸟）。

分析：很多学生对这一句中的最高级the most intelligent of birds表示不理解，他们认为为什么不直接说：the most intelligent bird。其实，上一句可以看作是在最高级形容词后面省去了代词one，即是指bird。所以原句可改为“Certain zoologists regard crows the most intelligent one (bird) of birds.”。但在实际运用中常常是将这个代词one省去。

b. The youngest of the family is most successful.

全家年龄最小的那位最有成就。

分析：同理，原句相当于The youngest member of the family is most successful.（family在这里指整个家庭成员）。

c. Gold is the least useful of all metals.

在所有的金属中，黄金的用途最小。

d. The Atlantic is not the largest of the world's oceans.

世界上最大的洋不是大西洋。

e. Silk is the strongest of all natural fibers, ranking in strength with synthetic fiber nylon.

丝在所有自然纤维中是强度最大的，和人造纤维尼龙相当。

f. A good book is **the best** of friends, the same today and forever.

一本好书无论是现在还是将来都是最好的朋友。

另外，我们还可以把“of+范围”这一短语放置句首。例如：

g. Of all metals, gold is **the least useful**.

在所有的金属中，黄金用途最小。

h. Of all forms of energy, electricity is **most widely** used.

在各种能源中，电能是被最广泛利用的。

#### (4) 最高级前面定冠词the要与不要

1) 形容词最高级修饰名词用在名词之前，一般要加the。

This is **the most interesting** book **of** all.

2) 副词最高级前面定冠词the可以要也可以不要。

He works **hardest in** his class.

3) most有时用在形容词前，并非表示最高级，而是表示“非常，很”之意，相当于“very, very much”。此时，most前面一般不用定冠词the。例如：

a. The story is **most** interesting. 这个故事非常有趣。

b. It is a **most** difficult problem. 这是个很棘手的问题。



## 46 不具有等级的形容词

英语中有一小部分形容词，表示绝对的含义，因此没有比较级和最高级形式。常见的这些词包括：

absolute完全的，绝对的    alone单独的，独一无二的

dead死的，无感觉的    empty空的；空洞的

equal平等的    eternal永恒的，不变的

final最终的，决定性的    horizontal水平的

perfect完美的    primary第一位的

pregnant怀孕的；丰富的    round圆的，球形的

single单一的    square正方形的

straight直的    supreme最高的，至高的

unique唯一的，独特的    unanimous意见一致的，无异议的

尽管这些词没有“等级差别”，但我们还是可以用下列一些表示“接近”的副词来修饰。比如：nearly, almost, the most closely, more nearly等。

我们可以说：nearly perfect, almost fatal, nearly dead。

### 温故知新

对于形容词的用法，要求掌握以下几点：

1. 要能够区分-ed和-ing两种形容词思维上的差异；
2. 能够较好地掌握名词前面多个形容词位置的排列；

3. 掌握形容词比较级和最高级的构成方法以及各种用法句型。

### 形容词练习

#### 一、-ing/-ed形容词:

1. Don't bother to read that book. It's \_\_\_\_ and you will feel \_\_\_\_ to read it. (boring, bored)

2. The students are \_\_\_\_ in learning grammar because grammar is \_\_\_\_ . (interesting, interested)

3. The students are \_\_\_\_ , not because Clint doesn't explain things well, but because these things are \_\_\_\_ . (confusing, confused)

4. I am \_\_\_\_ . Let's do something. How about going to a movie? (boring, bored)

5. Clint bores me. I think he is a \_\_\_\_ person. (boring, bored)

6. I heard some \_\_\_\_ news on the radio. (surprising, surprised)

7. I read an \_\_\_\_ article in the newspaper this morning. (interesting, interested)

8. The nation's leader stole money. The scandal (丑闻) shocked the nation.

It was a \_\_\_\_ scandal. The \_\_\_\_ nation soon replaced the leader. (shocking, shocked)

9. The work exhausted the men. It was \_\_\_\_ work and the \_\_\_\_ men sat down to rest under the shade of a tree. (exhausting, exhausted)

10. The strange noise frightened the child. It was a \_\_\_\_ sound. The \_\_\_\_ child cried. (frightened, frightening)

11. The \_\_\_\_ student fell asleep during the \_\_\_\_ lecture. (boring, bored)

12. Seeing a \_\_\_\_ movie, the \_\_\_\_ child began to cry. (frightening, frightened)

## 二、形容词排序:

13. On a table in my home library rests \_\_\_\_ [old, yellowed, a(n), little, attractive] book printed in 1551.

14. There was a \_\_\_\_ (large, wooden, round) table in the room.

15. The man was carrying a \_\_\_\_ (plastic, small, black) bag.

16. a(n) \_\_\_\_ (china, blue, ugly, old) vase

17. a \_\_\_\_ (American, red, huge) automobile

18. a \_\_\_\_ (brown, paper, small, nice) bag

19. a \_\_\_\_ (big, square, metal) box

20. \_\_\_\_ (blue, round, big) eyes

21. a \_\_\_\_ (young, handsome, tall) man

22. the \_\_\_\_ (Egyptian, ancient, valuable) manuscript (手稿)

## 三、写出下列形容词的比较级和最高级:

23. tiny    24. simple    25. angry    26. convenient

27. cold 28. wide 29. fat 30. thin

31. slender 32. friendly 33. gentle 34. expensive

35. warm 36. small 37. good 38. bad

39. far 40. well

#### 四、综合练习：

41. Helium is \_\_\_\_ all gases to liquefy and is impossible to solidify at normal air pressure.

A. the most difficult

B. more than difficult

C. most difficult

D. the most difficult of

42. The art of landscape architecture is almost as old \_\_\_\_ of architecture itself.

A. as that

B. than

C. as

D. than that

43. The operating principles of the telephone are \_\_\_\_ they were in the nineteenth century.

A. the same as today

B. the same today

- C. the same today as
- D. today what the same

44. You sang well last night. We hope you'll sing \_\_\_\_ .

- A. more better
- B. still better
- C. nicely
- D. best

45. Do you enjoy listening to records? I find records are often \_\_\_\_ or better than an actual performance.

- A. as good as
- B. as good
- C. good
- D. good as

46. I felt \_\_\_\_ to death because I could make nothing of the chairman's speech.

- A. boredom
- B. boring
- C. bored
- D. tired

47. I find he is \_\_\_\_ to listen to.

- A. boring

- B. bored
- C. boredom
- D. interested

48. According to the third law of thermodynamics, \_\_\_\_\_ possible is  $-273.16$  degrees centigrade.

- A. that temperature is lowest
- B. the temperature is lowest
- C. lowest temperature
- D. the lowest temperature

49. The decimal numeral system is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ ways of expressing numbers.

- A. useful most world's
- B. world's most useful
- C. useful world's most
- D. most world's useful

50. The Pulitzer Prize has been \_\_\_\_\_ in American literature for more than seventy years.

- A. the award most famous that
- B. the most famous award
- C. a famous award that most
- D. most famous award

51. I couldn't find \_\_\_\_\_ , and so I took this one.

- A. a large enough cap
- B. a large cap enough
- C. an enough large cap
- D. a cap enough large

52. Brown rice has \_\_\_\_\_ nutritional value than white rice.

- A. great
- B. greater
- C. as great
- D. as great as

53. The foreign guest gave the student a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ stamp.

- A. American attractive black triangular
- B. black triangular attractive American
- C. attractive triangular black American
- D. attractive black triangular American

54. The lady picked \_\_\_\_\_ flowers.

- A. some lovely little bluish
- B. some little lovely bluish
- C. some bluish little lovely
- D. some bluish lovely little

## 开心一刻 *Humor and Jokes*

### Who Were the Other Two?

An adjective has three qualitative degrees: good, better and best.

The pernickety (爱挑剔的) English grammar teacher married a man of quality. “You are the best woman in my life.” announced the groom (新郎) on their wedding night.

“And who were the other two?” angrily snapped (不耐烦或愤怒时快速地说) the grammar-conscious bride (新娘).

### 另外两个是谁？

形容词有三个级：好、较好和最好。

一位爱挑剔的英语语法老师嫁给了一位上等绅士。新郎在新婚之夜宣称：“你是我一生中遇到的最好的女人。”

“那另外两个是谁？”这位语法概念十分清楚的新娘生气地回敬道。

## 形容词练习答案

### 一、-ing/-ed形容词：

1. boring, bored
2. interested, interesting
3. confused, confusing
4. bored



5. boring
6. surprising
7. interesting
8. shocking, shocked
9. exhausting, exhausted
10. frightening, frightened
11. bored, boring
12. frightening, frightened

## 二、形容词排序：

13. an attractive little old yellowed
14. large round wooden
15. small black plastic
16. ugly old blue china
17. huge red American
18. nice small brown paper
19. big square metal
20. big round blue
21. handsome tall young
22. valuable ancient Egyptian

## 三、写出下列形容词的比较级和最高级：

- 23. tinier, tiniest
- 24. simpler/more simple, simplest/most simple
- 25. angrier, angriest
- 26. more convenient, most convenient
- 27. colder, coldest
- 28. wider, widest
- 29. fatter, fattest
- 30. thinner, thinnest
- 31. slenderer/more slender, slenderest/most slender
- 32. more friendly, most friendly
- 33. more gentle, most gentle
- 34. more expensive, most expensive
- 35. warmer, warmest
- 36. smaller, smallest
- 37. better, best
- 38. worse, worst
- 39. farther/further, farthest/furthest
- 40. better, best

#### 四、综合练习：

- 4 1. D 42. A 43. C 44. B 45. A 46. C 47. A 48.  
D 49. B

50. B   51. A   52. B   53. C   54. A

## Chapter 10 人称代词



音频

- 47 人称代词的分类
- 48 主格人称代词的用法
- 49 宾格人称代词的用法
- 50 物主代词的形式和用法
- 51 反身代词的形式与用法

# 第一节 人称代词的分类

## 47 人称代词的分类

本章主要介绍人称代词的用法。人称代词的分类如下：

	单数			复数		
	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
主格人称代词	I	you	he she it	we	you	they
宾格人称代词	me	you	him her it	us	you	them
形容词性物主代词	my	your	his her its	our	your	their
名词性物主代词	mine	yours	his hers its	ours	yours	theirs
反身代词	myself	yourself	himself herself itself	ourselves	yourselves	themselves

## 第二节 主格人称代词和宾格人称代词

### 48 主格人称代词的用法 Track40

#### (1) 主格人称代词在句中用作主语

- a. She is my daughter.
- b. He won't come with me.

#### (2) 作并列主语时，主格人称代词的排列顺序

	英文的顺序	汉语的顺序
单数	you and I	我和你
	he and I	我和他
	you, he and I	你、我、他
	you and he	你和他
复数	we and you	我们和你们
	we and they	我们和他们
	we, you and they	我们、你们和他们
	you and they	你们和他们

注意：单数第一人称I总是要放在所有人称代词的最后位置。比如我们一般不说：

I, you and he\*    I and he\*    I and you\*

#### (3) 表示泛指的主格代词

- 1) one

one作不定人称代词，意思是“任何人”，因此只能用于谈论泛指的人们，而且是包括说话者本人在内。不能用来专指某一个人或某一特定的群体，也不能用来指不包括说话人在内的一群人。例如：

- a. One should always try to help people.
- b. One can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.

不把鸡蛋打破谁也做不了煎蛋卷（有得必有失）。

但是不能说：

One is knocking at the door.\* 有人在敲门。

此句中的one显然没有包括说话者本人在内，所以使用错误。应该改为：

Somebody is knocking at the door.

关于one后面使用的代词，在美国英语中，一般用he, him, himself或his；而在英国英语中常用one, oneself或one's。

- a. One should be careful in talking to his/one's boss.
- b. One can't succeed unless he/one tries hard.
- c. One never realizes how much and how little he knows until he starts talking.

人们只有在与别人进行交流时，才真正知道自己到底懂得多少。

2) we, you, they用来表示泛指

- a. We/You/One should never lose heart in face of difficulties.

在困难面前人们决不能灰心泄气。

they常意为“人们”，例如：they say=people say或it is said。

b. They say it is going to be a cold winter. 据说今年冬季会很冷。

(4) she (her) 可用于拟人化, 表示country, motherland, moon, earth, ship等等。

a. The Titanic turned just in time, narrowly missing the immense wall of ice that rose over 100 feet out of the water beside her.

“泰坦尼克号”客轮及时调转方向, 刚好避开她身旁的那座高出海面一百多英尺的巨大冰山。

b. The ship lost most of her rigging in the storm.

船在暴风雨中损失了大部分的设备。



## 49 宾格人称代词的用法 Track41

### (1) 宾格人称代词（如me, you, him, her）主要在句中作宾语

#### 1) 用在动词后边作直接宾语

a. I like her.

b. I love you.

#### 2) 用在动词后边作间接宾语

He bought me dinner that day. 那天晚饭是他请我吃的。

#### 3) 用作介词宾语

I am very fond of him.

### (2) 宾格代词也可用作表语

a. —Who is it?

—It's me.

不过，如果作表语的代词后面跟一个定语从句时，一般要用主格代词。如：

b. It was he who helped me when I was in trouble. (he在从句中作主语)

c. It was he in whom we had the greatest faith. (he在从句中作介词宾语)

### (3) 主格代词和宾格代词可以作同位语

a. We teachers should be patient with students. (我们即是老师)

b. Our teachers are all nice to us students. (我们即是学生)

#### (4) 宾格代词在句中作宾语的位置

1) 表间接宾语 (通常是表示人) 可在直接宾语之前。

a. He bought me a pen as a birthday gift.

b. I've lent him much money, but he's never mentioned to pay me back. 我借给他很多钱, 但他从来不提出还我。

此时也可将间接宾语放在直接宾语后面。如:

c. He bought a pen for me as a birthday gift.

d. I've lent much money to him, but he's never mentioned to pay me back.

2) 如果直接宾语是人称代词, 直接宾语应紧跟在动词之后。而间接宾语放在句末, 且在间接宾语前要用介词to或for。

a. I will give it to you.

不说: I will give you it.\*

b. —What beautiful flowers!

—My boyfriend sent them to me.

不说: My boyfriend sent me them.\*

但这一条规则不适用于不定代词one, some, any, none, something等。

c. I bought a pen for Rex, and I also bought Tom one.

我给雷克斯买了一支钢笔，也给汤姆买了一支。

d. I didn't give Rex **any**. 我一点儿也没给雷克斯。

e. I'll show you **something**. 我给你看一样东西。

### 3) 宾格代词的位置

只能说：

a. Hand **them** in. 把它们交上来。

b. Throw **it** away. 把它扔掉。

c. Pick **it** up. 把它捡起来。

不能说：hand in ~~them~~, throw away ~~it~~, pick up ~~it~~。

但是，作宾语的名词可以放在短语动词当中，也可以放在短语动词的末尾。

d. Hand **your papers** in. /Hand in **your papers**. 把你们的考卷交上来。

e. Throw **the trash** away. /Throw away **the trash**. 把垃圾扔掉。

### 第三节 形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词

#### 50 物主代词的形式和用法 Track42

(1) 物主代词其实就是人称代词的所有格形式，表示所有关系，分为形容词性和名词性。

形容词性物主代词：

my your his her its our your their

名词性物主代词：

mine yours his hers its ours yours theirs

#### (2) 形容词性物主代词的用法

1) 形容词性物主代词必须和名词连用，对名词起限定作用，不能单独使用。

a. Your book is over there.

b. His sister is lovely.

c. My car has broken down.

2) 若表示强调，我们可在形容词性物主代词后边加上own。例如：

a. I wish I had my own house. (own作形容词)

b. I wish I had a house of my own. (own作代词)

#### (3) 名词性物主代词的用法

1) 与形容词性物主代词相反，名词性物主代词只能单独使用，不能再与名词连用。因为名词性物主代词相当于形容词性物主代词+名词。我们用名词性物主代词主要是为了避免前面出现过的名词再次被重复提到。

a. This is not my book. **Mine** (=My book) is in my bag.

不能说: Mine book\*

b. This book is **mine** and **yours** is over there.

这本书是我的，你的在那儿。

c. When they found the child, to their great surprise and joy, they found he was alive and well. The mother had laid her body over **his** and given her life for her child, proving the depths of her mother love. (这里的his是名词性物主代词，相当于his body，为了避免body重复，采用了名词性物主代词)

当他们发现这个孩子时，让他们惊喜的是，这孩子还安然无恙地活着。他母亲用自己的身体挡在孩子身体的上方，为了儿子献出了生命，足以证明母爱的伟大。

2) 我们也可以用“of+名词性物主代词”这样的结构。例如：

a friend **of mine**=one of my friends

a teacher **of hers**=one of her teachers

不说: of my/your/her\*; 可以说: of my/your/his/her own。

## 第四节 反身代词

### 51 反身代词的形式与用法 Track43

#### (1) 反身代词的形式

反身代词有：

myself yourself himself herself

itself ourselves yourselves themselves

请注意第二人称反身代词单数形式yourself和复数形式yourselves的拼写。例如：

She said to her friends, “Please help \_\_\_\_ to these dishes.”

A. you

B. yourself

C. yourselves

D. them

答案：C。

此外还有不定反身代词oneself。例如：

One shouldn't think the most of oneself, but nothing of others.

一个人不应该只考虑自己，而不顾他人。（在美国英语中常用himself）

## (2) 反身代词用作宾语

一般来说，若动词所表示的行为施加到施动者自己身上时，也就是说主语和宾语为同一人时，我们用反身代词作动词的宾语。

- a. God helps those who help **themselves**. 天助自助者。
- b. I cut **myself** when cooking. 做饭的时候我把自己切到了。
- c. We enjoyed **ourselves** on holiday. 假期我们过得很开心。
- d. Take good care of **yourself**. 请多保重。

若主语和宾语不是同一人时，则不能用反身代词作宾语。不能说：

Researchers at the University of Colorado are investigating a series of indicators that could help themselves to predict earthquakes.\*

科罗拉多大学的研究人员们正在研究一系列可能帮助他们预测地震的各种参数指标。

分析：定语从句的主语是that，指indicators。而这里themselves显然是指researchers。两者不一致，故不能用反身代词，而应将themselves改为them。

## (3) 反身代词起强调作用

反身代词可强调主语和宾语。此时self要重读。

### 1) 强调主语

反身代词通常用来强调句子的主语，此时反身代词常位于主语之后。

- a. He **himself** went to visit the old lady.

是他亲自去看望那个老太太的。

b. I **myself** took my mother to the hospital. 我自己把妈妈送到医院。

c. Stress **itself** is not an illness, but prolonged stress can lead to sickness and absence from work.

压力本身不是什么疾病，但长期如此就会导致疾病，从而影响到工作。

在不引起句子歧义的情况下，我们可把反身代词置于句末。例如：

a. He went to visit the old lady **himself**.

b. I took my mother to the hospital **myself**.

而下边这句就会有歧义：

c. He spoke to the boss **himself**. 他和老板本人谈过了。

或者理解为：

a. He **himself** spoke to the boss. 他亲自找老板谈过了。

## 2) 强调宾语

强调宾语的反身代词只能紧跟在宾语后边。例如：

a. He saw Tom **himself**. 他看到汤姆本人了。

比较：He **himself** saw Tom. 他亲眼看见了汤姆。

b. I will send this gift to John **himself**.

我会把这礼物给约翰本人。（而不是通过别人转交。）

## (4) 介词+反身代词

1) by oneself: 单独地，独自一人地



I went there **by myself**. 我自己一人去了那儿。

比较: I went there **myself**. 我亲自去了那儿一趟。

2) of oneself: 自动地, 自然而然地

The door opened **of itself**. 门自动开了。

### 温故知新

本章主要介绍了人称代词的用法, 这也是英语初学者要熟练掌握的内容。重点是要能够区分人称代词的主格、宾格、物主代词及反身代词的用法。

### 人称代词练习

#### 一、单选题:

1. He must have mistaken Clint for \_\_\_\_ .

A. I

B. me

2. I bought a present and sent \_\_\_\_ to her.

A. one

B. it

3. This house is certainly bigger than my last \_\_\_\_ .

A. one

B. it

4. One should take care of \_\_\_\_ health.

A. his

B. ones

C. its

5. Clint is interested in mathematics and \_\_\_\_ application.

A. its

B. their

C. his

D. it's

6. It must have been \_\_\_\_ who gave the signal.

A. them

B. they

C. their

D. themselves

7. I don't use Tom's car because I don't like \_\_\_\_ .

A. his that car

B. that car of him

C. that car of his

D. that his car

8. Don't let me catch \_\_\_\_ doing that again.

A. your

B. yours

C. you

D. yourself

9. I like biting my nails. I must break \_\_\_\_ .

A. the habit to me

B. the habit with myself

C. myself of the habit

D. of the habit myself

10. I like to refresh \_\_\_\_ with a cup of tea.

A. mine

B. myself

C. my own

D. me

11. The students of your school work harder than \_\_\_\_ .

A. my school

B. mine

C. them of mine

D. those of mine

12. “I need a pencil.” “You can use one \_\_\_\_ .”

A. of me

B. of mine

C. mine

D. my own

13. This is your room and that is \_\_\_\_ .

A. her

B. her's

C. hers

D. her own

14. The principal responsibility of managing the dormitory rests with the students \_\_\_\_ .

A. itself

B. them

C. of itself

D. themselves

15. A country like China can be proud of \_\_\_\_ history and civilization.

A. his

B. their

C. it's

D. her

16. These women workers complained, “ \_\_\_\_ don't get equal pay. ”

- A. We women
- B. Us women
- C. Our women
- D. Women we

17. There are a lot of books on the desk. You had better \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. put them away
- B. put away them
- C. put it away
- D. put themselves away

18. Tom behaved so strangely today. I thought he wasn't acting like \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. him
- B. himself
- C. he
- D. his

## 二、选词填空：

19. Since you've left \_\_\_\_\_ (yourself, your, yours) camera at home, you can use \_\_\_\_\_ (mine, my, my own).

20. When \_\_\_\_\_ (they, them, their) found the child, to \_\_\_\_\_ (they, them, their) great surprise and joy, \_\_\_\_\_ (they, them, their) found \_\_\_\_\_ (his, him, he) was alive and well. \_\_\_\_\_ (Him, His, He) mother had laid \_\_\_\_\_ (she, hers, her)

body over \_\_\_\_ (his, him, he) and given \_\_\_\_ (she, her, hers) life for \_\_\_\_ (her, hers, she) child, proving the depths of \_\_\_\_ (she, her, herself) mother love.

21. \_\_\_\_ (My, I, Me) think of \_\_\_\_ (me, myself, mine) too much. \_\_\_\_ (My, I, Mine) mother thinks of \_\_\_\_ (me, my, mine) as well and often forgets to think of \_\_\_\_ (she, her, herself).

22. \_\_\_\_ (They, Them, Their) must do \_\_\_\_ (they, them, their) duty, as \_\_\_\_ (we, us, our) must do \_\_\_\_ (us, our, ours).

23. She knows \_\_\_\_ (hers, her, herself) own mind but \_\_\_\_ (hers, her, she) husband doesn't know \_\_\_\_ (his, he, himself) own at all. \_\_\_\_ (He, His, Him) often loses \_\_\_\_ (he, his, him) temper (脾气), while \_\_\_\_ (she, her, hers) always keeps \_\_\_\_ (her, hers, she). She keeps \_\_\_\_ (her, herself, she) under perfect control; but he can't control \_\_\_\_ (him, himself, his).

24. A butterfly (蝴蝶) has two beautiful wings on each side of (its, it's) body.

25. The dog is lying on \_\_\_\_ (it, its, it's) back and I can't tell if \_\_\_\_ (its, it's, it) dead or not.

### 三、辨别改错(提高题):

26. James Baldwin's short stories【 A】 established (确立了) them【 B】 as a leading person【 C】 in the United States civil rights【 D】 movement.

27. To stay warm【 A】 in cold weather【 B】, cold blooded animals【 C】 must expose (暴露) them【 D】 to a source of warmth.

28. Starfish【 A】（海星）move, feed【 B】 , and breathe【 C】 with its feet【 D】 .

29. Each cigarette which a person smokes does【 A】 some【 B】 harm, and eventually you【 C】 may get a serious disease from its【 D】 effect.

30. When a severe【 A】 ankle injury【 B】（严重的脚踝扭伤）forced herself【 C】 to give up reporting in 1926, Margaret Mitchell began【 D】 writing her novel *Gone with the Wind*.

31. The social games【 A】 of children help【 B】 to prepare themselves【 C】 for their【 D】 adult roles.

### 人称代词练习答案

#### 一、单选题：

1. B   2. B   3. A   4. A   5. A   6. B  
7. C   8. C   9. C   10. B   11. D   12. B  
13. C   14. D   15. D   16. A   17. A   18. B

#### 二、选词填空：

19. your, mine  
20. they, their, they, he, His, her, his, her, her, her  
21. I, myself, My, me, herself  
22. They, their, we, ours  
23. her, her, his, He, his, she, hers, herself, himself  
24. its

25. its, it's

### 三、辨别改错(提高题):

26. B/him 27. D/themselves 28. D/their feet

29. C/he 30. C/her 31. C/them



## Chapter 11 英文基本主谓一致



音频

52 基本规则

53 “数量词+名词”结构的主谓一致

## 52 基本规则 Track44

主谓一致：即指谓语动词人称和数上要 and 主语一致。具体规则如下：

(1) 在一般现在时中，若主语是单数第三人称，谓语动词要加-s或-es，具体变化同名词的单数变复数。

He goes to school at 8:00 every morning.

不说：He go... 因为这里的主语he就是单数第三人称。

1) 单数第三人称作主语的词如：

单数人称代词：he, she, it

不定代词：each, everyone

人名：John, Bill Gates

普通单数名词：my brother, English

2) 单数动词的变化有：

动词原形	单数形式
be	a. He/She/It is smart. b. Everyone is here. c. John is smart. d. English is easy.
have	a. She/He has a gift. b. Everyone/John has a gift.
其他动词在词尾加 -s 或 -es，具体变化同名词的单数变复数。 work/works      like/likes do/does          go/goes study/studies    cry/cries teach/teaches	a. My brother works hard. b. My brother studies hard. c. My brother teaches English.

若主语是单数第一、第二人称或复数，则谓语动词用原形，不需要加-s或-es。这样的主语有：

单数人称代词：I, you（你）

复数人称代词：we, you（你们），they

复数名词：students, books……

动词原形	谓语形式
be	a. I am smart. b. You/We/They are smart. c. My students are smart.
have	They have gifts.（不用 has）
其他动词不需在词尾加 -s 或 -es，直接用动词原形。	a. My students work hard. b. My students study hard. c. My two brothers teach English at this school.

(2) 在助动词或情态动词后面，直接接动词原形。

a. She **can sing** in English. 不说: She can sings in English.\*

b. He **doesn't go** to school early. 不说: He doesn't goes to school early.\*

(3) There be句型须主谓一致。

a. There **is a book** on the desk.

b. There **are two books** on the desk.

There be句型是倒装结构，因此谓语动词的单复数要与be动词后面的名词一致。如上述例句。

## 53 “数量词+名词”结构的主谓一致 Track45

具体规则见下表：

只与可数名词连用	只接单数	one each every	one boy each boy every boy	单数谓语 a. Every boy is smart. b. Every boy has a gift. c. Every boy studies hard.
	只接复数	two, three, etc. both a couple of a few few several many a number of	two boys both boys a couple of boys a few boys few boys several boys many boys a number of boys	复数谓语 a. Many boys are smart. b. Many boys have a gift. c. Many boys study hard.
只与不可数名词连用		a little little much a great deal of a large amount of	a little water little water much water a great deal of water a large amount of water	单数谓语 a. Much water is clean. b. Much water has bacteria (细菌).
与可数名词复数或不可数名词连用均可		not any  some  a lot of  lots of  plenty of  most  all	not any boys, not any water some boys some water a lot of boys a lot of water lots of boys lots of water plenty of boys plenty of water most boys most water all boys all water	接可数名词复数时用复数谓语；接不可数名词时用单数谓语。 a. Some boys are smart. b. Some water is clean.

在上述数量词中，有些还可以接of短语连用。具体用法如下：

<p>all of most of some of any of</p> <p>} + 特指限定词 + 可数名词复数或不可数名词</p> <p>a. Most of my/these/the/John's books are interesting. b. Most of the information is useless.</p>	<p>总的规则： 接可数名词复数时用复数谓语；接不可数名词时用单数谓语。</p>
<p>many of a few of few of several of both of two of three of</p> <p>} + 特指限定词 + 可数名词复数</p> <p>Many of these students are good at English.</p>	
<p>much of a little of little of</p> <p>} + 特指限定词 + 不可数名词</p> <p>Much of the water is wasted.</p>	
<p>one of each of every one of</p> <p>} + 特指限定词 + 可数名词复数 + 单数谓语</p> <p>a. One of my students is good at English. b. Every one of my students is good at English.</p>	

### 温故知新

这里所介绍的主谓一致内容比较简单，主要内容有两点：

1. 常见的单数第三人称主语，与之搭配的谓语要加-s或-es，即用单数谓语。
2. 在使用数量词修饰名词这一结构作主语时，与之搭配的谓语形式较复杂，要准确记忆。

### 英文基本主谓一致练习

一、判断下列句子正误，错误的请改正：

1. My brother work for the post office.
2. He live with a couple of his friends.
3. I needs a job.
4. These teachers is good to students.
5. His feet is broken.
6. My sister have a job.
7. There is two dogs under the tree.
8. He can't speaks English well.
9. Most water are clean.
10. Most students is hard-working.
11. Each boys has a gift.
12. Each boy have a gift.
13. Each of boys has a gift.
14. Each of the boys have a gift.
15. Each of the boy has a gift.

二、选择正确答案：

16. Some of the fruit in this bowl (is, are) rotten.
17. Some of the apples in this bowl (is, are) rotten.
18. One of my best friends (is, are) coming to visit me next Sunday.
19. Each boy (have, has) his own book.



20. Each of the boys (have, has) his own book.
21. Every one of the students (is, are) going to the Summer Palace.
22. A number of students (is, are) absent today.
23. There (isn't, aren't) any letters for you today.
24. There (is, are) a lot of problems in the world.
25. There (is, are) a red pen on the desk.
26. There (is, are) no means of learning what is happening.
27. There (is, are) a lot of sheep in the field.
28. My alarm clock (ring, rings) at seven every morning.
29. Can she (sing, sings) in English?
30. (Do, Does) John's mother (live, lives) with him?
31. (Do, Does) most of the students (live, lives) on campus (校园)?
32. No news (is, are) good news.
33. An ironworks (stand, stands) at the foot of the mountain.
34. Every member of this class (speak, speaks) English well.
35. The police (is, are) making inquiries about the accident.
36. The cattle (is, are) grazing in the meadows.
37. Two aircraft (was, were) badly damaged.

### 英文基本主谓一致练习答案

#### 一、判断下列句子正误，错误的请改正：

1. 错误。应改为: My brother works for the post office.
2. 错误。应改为: He lives with a couple of his friends.
3. 错误。应改为: I need a job.
4. 错误。应改为: These teachers are good to students.
5. 错误。应改为: His feet are broken.
6. 错误。应改为: My sister has a job.
7. 错误。应改为: There are two dogs under the tree.
8. 错误。应改为: He can't speak English well.
9. 错误。应改为: Most water is clean.
10. 错误。应改为: Most students are hard-working.
11. 错误。应改为: Each boy has a gift.
12. 错误。应改为: Each boy has a gift.
13. 错误。应改为: Each of the boys has a gift.
14. 错误。应改为: Each of the boys has a gift.
15. 错误。应改为: Each of the boys has a gift.

## 二、选择正确答案:

16. is   17. are   18. is   19. has
20. has   21. is   22. are   23. aren't
24. are   25. is   26. is   27. are
28. rings   29. sing   30. Does, live   31. Do, live
32. is   33. stands   34. speaks   35. are

36. are 37. were

## Chapter 12 副词



音频

- 54 副词的种类
- 55 副词在句中的位置（概述）
- 56 时间副词
- 57 地点副词
- 58 频度副词
- 59 程度副词
- 60 方式副词

## 61 句子副词

## 62 副词的其他位置

对于副词的学习，关键是要掌握其在句中的位置，而副词在句中的位置又是与副词的种类紧密相关的，换句话说，不同种类的副词在句中的位置是不一样的。因此，我们首先要分清副词的种类。

**本章主要要求掌握：副词的种类和副词在句中的位置。**

## 第一节 副词的种类与位置（概述）

### 54 副词的种类 Track46

根据副词的词义，我们可以把副词做如下分类：

#### （1）时间副词

afterwards eventually recently lately soon then now  
at once since then till before early immediately

#### （2）地点副词

地点副词分为指方向的地点副词和指位置的地点副词。

down from in on over out of round away up here  
there somewhere anywhere nowhere everywhere

#### （3）频度副词

always continually frequently occasionally often  
once  
repeatedly sometimes usually ever never rarely  
seldom

#### （4）程度副词

absolutely almost barely completely enough  
entirely extremely  
fairly far hardly just much nearly only

quite rather really scarcely so too very

### (5) 方式副词

表示动作行为的方式。这类副词并不像其他副词那样数目较为固定，方式副词在数目上是不固定的，因为它可以由相应的形容词加-ly构成。如：

bravely calmly fast happily hard well intentionally

### (6) 句子副词

这样的副词用来修饰整个句子，而非句子中的谓语动词。通常表达说话人的观点。如：

actually apparently certainly clearly evidently

obviously probably undoubtedly definitely primarily

chiefly basically mainly principally fundamentally

normally hopefully

a. Basically I am an optimistic person.

b. Although Terry sometimes works as a plumber, he is chiefly/mainly an engineer.

c. I don't normally come to work on weekends.

## 55 副词在句中的位置（概述） Track47

一般来说，副词在句中的位置有三种：句中、句末和句首。例如：

- a. I have **never** been there before. （放在句中的时间副词）
- b. He went away **quickly**. （放在句末的方式副词）
- c. **Yesterday** I met her in the park. （放在句首的时间副词）

但是，并不是所有的副词都可以放在句中这三个位置。比如，有的副词不能放在句首，有的不能放在句末，有的既可以放在句首，也可以放在句末，等等。副词的这种复杂的位置关系主要取决于副词本身的种类。副词在句中的确切位置，还与句中的动词形式有关。总之，副词在句中的位置较为复杂且灵活多变。本章下一节将予以详细论述。



## 第二节 副词在句中的位置

### 56 时间副词 Track48

表示动作发生的时间。

#### (1) 时间副词的种类

##### 1) 表示确切时间的副词

yesterday today now tomorrow

##### 2) 表示不确切时间的副词

already recently lately before soon then afterwards

##### 3) 表示时间的副词短语

this morning last night in the  
morning/afternoon/evening

a week ago three months ago at once in a while in  
recent days

#### (2) 时间副词在句中的位置

1) 表示确切时间的副词和表示时间的短语一般不能用于句中，它们可用于句首或句末。用在句末更常见（尤其是在祈使句中只能用于句末）。

a. Tomorrow I'm leaving for Beijing on a business trip.

明天我去北京出差。

可以说: I'm leaving for Beijing on a business trip tomorrow.

不说: I'm tomorrow leaving for Beijing on a business trip.\*

b. I saw him a week ago. /A week ago I saw him.

不说: I a week ago saw him.\*

c. Come to my office this afternoon.

不说: Come this afternoon to my office.\*

2) 表示不确切的时间副词可用于句首、句中或句末。例如:

a. I've recently been busy.

b. Recently I have been busy.

c. I have been busy recently.

d. Very soon we'll be there.

e. We'll very soon be there.

f. We'll be there very soon.

3) before, early, immediately, late通常位于句末。例如:

a. I have never heard such a story before.

b. He came to school late.

总体来看:

1) 时间副词一般可用在句首,也可用在句末。而通常我们把时间副词放在句末较为保险。

- 2) 能用于句中的时间副词不多。
- 3) 在祈使句中时间副词只能用于句末。

## 57 地点副词 Track49

表示动作发生的地点或方位。

### (1) 地点副词的种类

地点副词分为指方向的地点副词和指位置的地点副词。

#### 1) 表示方向的地点副词

away down in off on over out round up

#### 2) 表示位置的地点副词

here there somewhere anywhere nowhere everywhere

表示地点的介词短语: in the park at home in the street

### (2) 地点副词在句中的位置

1) 方向地点副词一般用于“位置地点副词/介词短语”之前。例如:

He often walks around in the garden after supper.

2) 两个表示位置的介词短语连用时, 较大的地点位于句末。例如:

He works in a foreign-funded company in Beijing.

3) 方向地点副词away, down, in, off, on, over, out, round, up, 还有here, there可以用于倒装结构而放在句首。这时可以有两种倒装结构:

①副词+动态动词+名词主语。例如:

- a. Here comes the teacher.
- b. There goes your bus. 你要坐的那趟车刚开走。
- c. Round and round flew the plane. 飞机盘旋着。
- d. Down came the rain. 下起雨来了。

②副词+代词主语+动态动词。例如：

- e. Away they went. 他们离开了。
- f. Here he comes. 他来了。

4) 与上面的倒装结构类似，down, from, in, on, over, out of, round, up等用作介词时，引导的表示地点的介词短语用在句首，句子采用全部倒装结构（介词短语+动词+主语）。例如：

- a. From the trees hang a lot of monkeys. 树上有很多猴子。
- b. Down the street stand a lot of shops. 这条街道商店林立。
- c. On the table sits a cat.
- d. On the ground lies a man whose legs are broken.

地上躺着一个人，他的腿断了。

总的来说，地点副词在句中有两种位置：

- 1) 一般位于句末。
- 2) 对于一些特定的副词和副词短语，可用于倒装结构而置于句首。

## 58 频度副词 Track50

表示动作发生的频率或次数。

### (1) 频度副词的种类

1) 表示确切频率的副词或短语

daily weekly monthly yearly/annually twice a  
week/month/year

2) 表示不确切频率的副词

表示肯定:

always often usually sometimes occasionally

frequently continually repeatedly once ever

表示否定:

never rarely seldom

### (2) 频度副词在句中的位置

1) 表示不确切频率的副词通常是用在句中的。而其在句中的确切位置，还与句中的动词形式有关。具体来说有以下几种情况:

①用在实义动词之前，be (am, is, are, was, were) 动词和助动词 (will, should, have) 之后。

a. I **often** **do** some shopping on weekends.

b. She **is** **often** late for school.

c. I **have never** seen him since we parted. 自从分别后我就再没见过他。

②若句中的谓语动词由多个部分组成，比如：will be done, should have done等，这时副词一般要放在第一个助动词之后。例如：

a. This project **will never** be finished.

b. You **should never** have trusted him. 你永远都不应该相信他。

③在加强语气的句子中，我们一般是把副词放在第一个助动词之前或be动词之前。例如：

a. You **really will** get a reward one day. 总有一天你会遭到报应的。

b. —As a teacher, you should always be patient with students.

—I **always have** been patient.

④在只有助动词而省去了实义动词的句子中，副词一定要放在这个助动词之前。例如：

a. —You should have known better than to trust him.

你早就应该知道他这个人靠不住。

—I **never will**. （省去了trust him）我今后再也不会相信他了。

b. —Can you find a place to park your car in the street?

—Yes, I **usually can**.

c. Plenty of teenagers with computer skills are skipping school, or at least deferring for a few years. But while some

kids have found decent incomes without college, most **never will**.

很多具有电脑技术的青少年辍学或休学了，尽管有些孩子离开学校后找到了收入不菲的工作，但大多数永远不会。

副词也要用在省略了表语的be动词之前。

—I hear that his American girlfriend used to be his English teacher. 我听说他的美国女友曾是他的英语老师。

—No, she **never was**. 不，她从来不曾是。

2) 表示确切频率的副词一般只能用于句末。例如：

a. Milk is delivered **daily**. 牛奶每天都送来。

不说: Milk is daily delivered.\*

b. We have meetings twice a week.

比较: We **often** have meetings.

c. They will be paid **yearly**.

3) 上述表示不确切频率的副词，有些也可以用于句首或句末。例如：

**Often/Sometimes/Usually** I work late into the night.

我常常/有时/通常工作到深夜。

often一般不单独放在句末，而须加very或quite修饰。例如：

a. He comes late for school **quite often**.

b. **Often** he comes late for school.

c. He **often** comes late for school.



4) always可在句末,但不能放在句首,除非用在祈使句中。例如:

a. You always make the same mistakes.

b. You make the same mistakes always.

不说: Always you make the same mistakes.\*

但在祈使句中, 我们说:

Always remember not to argue with your boss.

5) 在否定句中的频度副词

在否定句中, 有的频度副词位于not之前, 有的频度副词位于not之后。这主要是从意思上来判断。一般来说, always要放在not之后(not always); 而often, sometimes, usually要放在not之前。例如:

a. He doesn't always leave before 6 o'clock, sometimes he works until 8 o'clock. (不总是)

b. His wife complains that he sometimes doesn't listen to her. (有时不)

c. The history lectures sometimes aren't interesting.

历史课有时很没劲。

不说: ...he doesn't sometimes listen to her.\*

...aren't sometimes interesting.\*

6) 否定频度副词never, rarely, seldom有两点须注意:

①不能再与否定词not连用。例如:

不说: He doesn't seldom go out at night.\*

应说：He **seldom** goes out at night. 他晚上很少出门。

②一般只用在句中。若放在句首，则句子要用部分倒装。例如：

a. I **have never** heard such a story. 我从来没听说过这样的故事。

b. **Never have** I heard such a story.

总的来说，对于频度副词在句中所使用的位置，我们应注意以下几点：

1. 表示不确切频率的副词通常用在句中，其在句中的具体位置又与句子的谓语动词形式有关。

2. 表示确切频率的副词一般只用在句末。

3. 要注意否定词与频度副词连用的位置关系。

## 59 程度副词 Track51

表示动作发生的大小和程度，绝大多数程度副词是用来修饰形容词、副词或动词的。有些还可以修饰名词。

### (1) 程度副词的种类

absolutely almost completely enough entirely  
extremely

fairly far just much nearly only

rather really so too very quite

表示否定: barely scarcely hardly

### (2) 程度副词在句中的位置

程度副词在句子里的使用位置较易掌握：放在它所修饰的词之前。

1) 一般直接放在所修饰的对象之前。例如：

修饰形容词：

a. You are **absolutely** wrong. 你绝对错了。

b. I'm **almost** ready. 我差不多准备好了。

修饰动词：

c. You can **hardly** expect her to be kind to you. 你很难指望她对你好。

d. I **really** like English.

修饰副词:

e. He speaks English quite well.

既然程度副词是放在所修饰的对象前面，在一个句子里，就会因为程度副词位置的不同而导致句义发生变化。例如：

a. Only I saw him at the party last night. (Nobody else saw him.)

昨晚在晚会上，只有我见到他了。

b. I only saw him at the party last night. (I didn't talk to him.)

昨晚在晚会上，我只是看到他了。（并没有跟他讲话）

c. I saw only him at the party last night. (I didn't see any other friends.) 昨晚在晚会上，我只看到他在场。（其他朋友没有来）

d. I saw him only at the party last night. (I didn't see him at other places.) 我昨晚只是在晚会上看到他了。（没有在其他地方看到）

e. I saw him at the party only last night. (I didn't see him until last night.) 我直到昨晚那个晚会上才看见他。

## 2) enough的特殊用法

enough是个例外，它要放在所修饰的形容词或副词之后。例如：

a. He is not old enough to go to school. 他还没到上学的年龄。

b. He didn't work quickly enough.

## 3) barely, scarcely, hardly不能与否定词连用。

Because of his hearing loss, he **scarcely** hears me when I speak.

注意与否定频度副词rarely区别开来。

不说: He hardly attends class.\*

应说: He **rarely** attends class. 他很少去上课。

### (3) 可修饰名词的程度副词

这样的程度副词主要有:

quite   only   even   particularly   especially   almost  
rather

quite some time   相当长的时间

quite an expert   相当了不起的专家

rather a bore   相当令人讨厌的人

rather a shame真可惜

注意: quite要置于a/an之前, rather可用在a/an前面或后面。

quite a nice day   天气不错   不说: a quite nice day\*

rather a long way/a rather long way

a. I didn't expect to see him. It was **quite** a surprise.

我没料到会见到他, 真是让人意外。

b. Vegetables, **especially** spinach (菠菜), are good for health.

蔬菜, 尤其是菠菜, 有益于健康。

- c. He is almost a child. 他差不多还是个孩子。
- d. Only the boy knew how to get to the destination.
- e. Even a boy knows the answer.
- f. I can speak only English.

## 60 方式副词 Track52

表示动作行为的方式。方式副词一般只修饰动词，是动词专用的。

### (1) 方式副词的种类

正如前面说过的，方式副词并不像其他副词那样数目较为固定，方式副词在数目上是不固定的，因为它可以由相应的形容词加-ly构成。例如：

bravely   calmly   fast   happily   hard   well   intentionally

### (2) 方式副词在句中的位置

方式副词主要是用来修饰动词的，它的位置通常在动词后边。

通常要放在动词后边	<p>a. He ran <b>fast</b>.</p> <p>b. He went away <b>quickly</b>.</p>
当动词带有宾语时，因为宾语是主要元素，因此宾语在前，副词后置	<p>a. I can't speak English <b>well</b>.</p> <p>b. He can finish the job <b>quickly</b>.</p> <p>不说：He can finish quickly the job.*</p> <p>He can quickly finish the job.*</p>
若动词后边所接的成分很长，为避免副词和它所修饰的动词之间距离太遥远，往往把副词放在动词前面	<p>a. He <b>firmly believes</b> that he will succeed. 他坚信自己一定能取得成功。</p> <p>b. He <b>firmly keeps</b> in mind what she said. 他牢牢记住她所说的话。</p> <p>c. I <b>happily pronounce</b> you husband and wife. 我很高兴宣布你们结为夫妇。（神父证婚时必说的一句话）</p> <p>d. He <b>earnestly recommended</b> me to adopt that method of learning English. 他真诚地推荐我采用那种学习英语的方法。</p> <p>e. He <b>passionately kissed</b> the girl he met for the first time on the train. 他热烈地吻了那个第一次在火车上认识的女孩。</p>

此外：

1) 在“动词+介词+宾语”结构里，方式副词可用于宾语后或介词前。例如：

- a. The class is listening to the teacher **carefully**.
- b. The class is listening **carefully** to the teacher.

2) 方式副词要放在被动分词之前。例如：

a. I was **badly paid** in that company after I had just graduated.

我刚毕业时在那个公司薪水很低。



b. When do you think you will have completely finished?

c. The party was very successfully organized.

这个派对组织得很成功。

比较: He organized the party very successfully.

不说: He very successfully organized the party\*.

## 61 句子副词 Track53

这样的副词通常放在句首，用来修饰整个句子，而非句子中的谓语动词。通常表达说话人的观点或说话的角度。

### (1) 表明说话的角度

比如如果有人说这样一句话：A thousand years is a short time.（一千年是一段很短的时间。）我们一定会觉得不太符合正常思维逻辑。但是，我们只要在句首加上一个句子副词，来说明我们是从什么角度说这句话的，就能增加这句话的合理性。

a. **Geologically**, a thousand years is a short time.

从地质学角度来讲，一千年是一段很短的时间。

这里的geologically就是句子副词，来修饰后边整个句子。

我们通常用有关学科的副词来表达说话者的角度。如：economically（从经济学角度来讲），objectively（客观地说），philosophically（从哲学角度来讲），Scientifically（从科学角度来讲），nutritionally（从营养学角度来说）。

类似的表达：

b. **Scientifically**, the experiment was a success.

从科学角度来说，这个实验成功了。

c. **Geologically**, five years may not be much, but in Internet time, it constitutes an entire history.

从地质学角度来讲，五年时间也许并不长，但是在网络时代，五年足以形成一整段历史。

d. **Nutritionally**, fats and oils are an important source of energy.

从营养学角度来说，动物脂肪和植物油是重要的能量来源。

## (2) 表达说话人的态度

actually   apparently   certainly   clearly   evidently  
obviously   presumably   probably   undoubtedly   definitely  
primarily   chiefly   basically   mainly   principally  
fundamentally   normally   hopefully

a. **Frankly**, I think he is dishonest.

老实说，我觉得他这人不够诚实。

b. **Hopefully**, we can get there in time. 希望我们能及时赶到那里。

c. **Obviously** you are wrong. 显然你错了。

d. **Basically** I am an optimistic person. 我基本上是一个乐观的人。

句子副词大多数情况下放在句首，不过放在句中也不少见。但很少放在句末。例如：

e. I am **basically** an optimistic person. 我基本上是个乐观的人。

f. Although Terry sometimes works as a plumber, he is **chiefly/mainly** an engineer.

尽管特里有时做些管道工的活，但他主要还是个工程师。

g. I don't **normally** come to work on weekends.

正常的情况下，我周末不上班。

## (3) 位置不一样可能会导致意思变化

<b>Happily</b> , he didn't die. 幸好，他还活着。	这里 happily 修饰整个句子，用作句子副词。
He didn't <b>die happily</b> . 他并不是安然地离开了这个世界。（比如，他带着遗憾甚至是痛苦地离开了人世。）	这里 happily 修饰动词 die，用作一个方式副词。

a. They **answered** the questions **foolishly**. 他们的回答很愚蠢。（Their answers were foolish.）

b. **Foolishly**, they answered the questions.

真是愚蠢，他们竟然回答了问题。（They were foolish to answer the questions.）

## 62 副词的其他位置 Track54

(1) 几个副词出现在句末时，一般采用如下顺序：方式副词+地点副词+时间副词。

a. She sang an English song nicely in the auditorium last night.

b. She checked the accounts carefully in the office this morning.

她上午在办公室里仔细查对账目。

(2) 确定性副词和不确定性副词，如：probably, possibly, perhaps, certainly, definitely, surely等，通常不用于句末，而是用于句首和句中。

a. He has probably not been there before.

b. I definitely know how to deal with this matter.

其中，perhaps和surely多用于句首。

### 温故知新

对于副词的学习，重点是掌握不同副词在句中的不同位置。由于这种位置较复杂，因此，在每一类副词用法讲解结束后，都有一个小节给出了某一类副词在句中常见的位置。请在学习过程中细心比较和体会。

### 副词练习

一、将下列副词放在句中合适的位置：

1. I'm leaving for Beijing on a business trip. (tomorrow)

2. Come to my office. (this afternoon)
3. We'll be there. (very soon)
4. I do some shopping on weekends. (often)
5. She is late for school. (often)
6. I have seen him since we parted. (never)
7. You should have trusted him. (never)
8. — Can you find a place to park your car in the street?  
— Yes, I can. (usually)
9. — I hear that his American girlfriend used to be his English teacher.  
— No, she was. (never)
10. He doesn't leave before 6 o'clock, sometimes he works until 8 o'clock. (always)
11. His wife complains that he doesn't listen to her. (sometimes)
12. He is not old to go to school. (enough)
13. He didn't work quickly. (enough)
14. I pronounce you husband and wife. (happily)
15. He believes that he will succeed. (firmly)
16. The class is listening to the teacher. (carefully)

17. I was paid in that company after I had just graduated. (badly)

18. The party was very organized. (successfully)

19. I think he is dishonest. (frankly)

20. We can get there in time. (hopefully)

21. He didn't die. (happily)

22. She checked the accounts in the office this morning. (carefully)

23. I know how to deal with this matter. (definitely)

## 二、单选题:

24. He had \_\_\_\_ on the subject.

- A. a rather strong opinion
- B. rather strong opinion
- C. rather the strong opinion
- D. the rather strong opinion

25. This solution works only for couples who are self-employed, don't have small children and get along \_\_\_\_ to spend most of their time together.

- A. so well
- B. too well
- C. well as
- D. well enough

26. Color and light, taken together, \_\_\_\_\_ the aesthetic impact of the interior of a building.

- A. very powerfully influence
- B. very influence powerfully
- C. powerfully very influence
- D. influence powerfully very

27. When Columbus reached the New World, corn was the \_\_\_\_\_ in the Americas.

- A. widely most grown plant
- B. most widely grown plant
- C. most grown widely plant
- D. plant widely grown most

28. Kunming is usually cool in the summer, but Shanghai \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. is rarely
- B. scarcely is
- C. hardly is
- D. rarely is

29. San Francisco is usually cool in the summer, but Los Angeles \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. is rarely
- B. hardly is



C. rarely is

D. is scarcely

30. Soapy stirred \_\_\_\_ .

A. on his bench uneasily in the park

B. on his bench in the park uneasily

C. uneasily on his bench in the park

D. uneasily in the park on his bench

### 副词练习答案

#### 一、将下列副词放在句中合适的位置：

1. I'm leaving for Beijing on a business trip tomorrow.

2. Come to my office this afternoon.

3. We'll be there very soon.

4. I often do some shopping on weekends.

5. She is often late for school.

6. I have never seen him since we parted.

7. You should never have trusted him.

8. — Can you find a place to park your car in the street?

— Yes, I usually can.

9. — I hear that his American girlfriend used to be his English teacher.

— No, she never was.

10. He doesn't always leave before 6 o'clock, sometimes he works until 8 o'clock.

11. His wife sometimes complains that he doesn't listen to her.

12. He is not old enough to go to school.

13. He didn't work quickly enough.

14. I happily pronounce you husband and wife.

15. He firmly believes that he will succeed.

16. The class is listening to the teacher carefully.

17. I was badly paid in that company after I had just graduated.

18. The party was very successfully organized.

19. Frankly, I think he is dishonest.

20. Hopefully, we can get there in time.

21. Happily, he didn't die. / He didn't die happily.

22. She checked the accounts carefully in the office this morning.

23. definitely, I know how to deal with this matter. / I definitely know how to deal with this matter.

## 二、单选题:

24. A   25. D   26. A   27. B   28. D   29. C   30. C

## Chapter 13 介词



音频

- 63 介词的特点
- 64 介词的种类
- 65 表示时间、日期的介词
- 66 表示地点、方位的介词
- 67 表示方式、手段的介词
- 68 与动词搭配的短语
- 69 与形容词搭配的短语

## 70 与名词搭配的短语

## 第一节 介词的基本特点

### 63 介词的特点 Track55

(1) 介词的宾语（用在介词后）：介词不能独立使用，在介词后面必须带有宾语。其宾语形式主要是名词，另外还有相当于名词的成分，比如代词、数词、动名词或动名词短语及名词性从句。

(2) 与介词搭配的词（用在介词前）：与介词连用，置于介词前面的词主要有动词（如depend on）、名词（如pay attention to）和形容词（如be kind to）。

(3) 介词是英语词类中的一种虚词，不能独立在句中充当句子成分。但介词与其宾语一起构成介词短语以后，就可以在句中充当多种句子成分。可以作主语、补足语、定语和状语等。

(4) 介词的作用：从以上得知，介词是把名词（或相当于名词的成分）与动词、形容词或其他名词联系起来，以表示前后词语之间的关系。例如：

The great Nobel Prize-winning Irish poet, Seamus Heaney, gave me a stanza **from** a poem he wrote that today hangs **on** the wall **of** my office **in** the upstairs **of** the White House.

伟大的诺贝尔奖获得者、爱尔兰诗人谢默斯·希尼送给我他写的一首诗中的一节。这节诗目前就挂在我白宫办公室的墙上。

对于上一句我们试着把介词去掉，则原句变为：

The great Nobel Prize-winning Irish poet, Seamus Heaney, gave me a stanza a poem he wrote that today hangs the wall my office the upstairs the White House.\*

于是，该“句”中词与词之间的关系混乱、不明确，造成句子意思难以理解。

因此，可以这么说，任何一个去掉了介词的英语句子，都只能是词语的零乱堆砌。

## 64 介词的种类 Track56

### (1) 简单介词 (simple preposition)

词形单一的介词。如：

at by for from in near of off on

### (2) 复合介词 (compound preposition)

1) 由两个简单介词连在一起固定构成的介词，如：

inside into onto outside throughout upon within  
without

2) 由两个介词搭配连用的介词，如：

from above from behind from beneath

from under until after except for

a. **Until after** World War II, the new science was neglected.

直到二战以后，人们还不是很重视新科学的发展。

b. First artifacts rescued **from within** rotten hull.  
Salvage experts have recovered the first artifacts **from inside** the doomed Titanic ocean liner, which sank in the north Atlantic in 1912 on its much-publicized maiden voyage.

### (3) 短语介词 (phrasal preposition)

短语介词主要是由名词与介词构成的。如：

at the cost of at the mercy of at odds with by means  
of

by reason of by virtue of by way of in place of

in favor of in spite of with an eye to

另外表示“关于……”的有：

in/with reference to in/with respect to in/with regard  
to



## 第二节 常用介词的意义与用法

在英文中，介词的用法极为复杂，因此很难就所有介词的各种用法作一一列举。本节仅就常用的介词的意义和用法做简单介绍。

### 65 表示时间、日期的介词 Track57

#### (1) at, in, on

1) at (主要表示时间点)

①用来表示在特定的某一时刻。例如：

at nine a.m. 在上午九点钟    at nine after ten 在十点零九分

②用来表示不确定的某一时刻。例如：

at night    at dawn    at midnight    at that time    at the moment

at the beginning/end of    at Christmas 在圣诞节期间

at Easter 在复活节期间

注意：on Christmas Day 在圣诞节当天

③用来表示年龄段。例如：

at the age of eight/at eight

He got married at twenty. 他二十岁结婚。

2) in (主要表示时间段)

①一般指在相对较长的一段时间内。例如：

in the morning/afternoon/evening

in spring/summer/autumn/winter

in the past/in the past ten years 在过去/在过去十年中

in the twenty-first century 在二十一世纪

a man in his thirties 一个三十几岁的男子

②in还可表示“在……时间之内/之后”，通常用于将来时态中。  
例如：

a. He said he would come back in a month.

b. The train is leaving in a minute.

③in+动名词：in doing sth.

这一用法的意思相当于：during the course of doing sth.，即“在做……的过程当中”，例如：

a. In crossing the river, we caught some fish.

b. In working, we can learn a lot.

3) on（主要表示具体的某一天）

①表示具体的日期和星期。例如：

on Monday  
(Tuesday/Wednesday/Thursday/Friday/Saturday/Sunday)

on my birthday

on their wedding anniversary

The People's Republic of China was founded **on October 1st, 1949**.

**注意：**如果不是具体的几月几日，而只是说几月，我们要用介词 in，如：in October。

②表示特定某一天的上午、下午、凌晨或半夜等。例如：

on the night/morning/afternoon of December 31, 1999

on the eve of Christmas/New Year

on a hot midnight in July

on the afternoon of April 1, 1990

on a cold afternoon in January

a. I like going out for a walk **on a fine day**. 我喜欢在好天气出去散步。

b. **On that particular evening**, there was a strange excitement in the air.

**注意：**如上所述，如不是特定的某一天的某一时刻，则用at。

③表示“在第几天”。例如：

on his first day to school

**On the tenth** day I was in Beijing.

④ on+动名词或名词：on doing sth.

这一用法的意思相当于when somebody does sth. 或as soon as somebody does sth.，即“在做……的时候”或“一……就……”，例如：

a. **On hearing the bad news**, she burst into tears.

一听说这个坏消息，她禁不住哭了起来。

b. **On arriving**, I came directly to visit you.

我一到达，就直接来看你了。

4) in the beginning/end与at the beginning/end

at the beginning表示“在……的开头”，例如：

**At the beginning of a book** there is often a table of contents.

一本书的开头，通常有个目录。

at the beginning of the concert

at the beginning of January

in the beginning意思相当于at first或in the early stages，“在最初，起初”，暗含着以后会有所变化。例如：

**In the beginning**, I wrote to my family regularly; later I just gave up. 一开始，我定期给家里写信，后来就不写了。

同样，at the end表示“在……末尾，在……最后”，例如：

a. But **at the end of this process**, unfortunately, the students are none the wiser.

遗憾的是，经过这段时间的培训，这些学生并没有聪明多少。

b. **At the end of a book** there may be an index.

书的结尾可能会有个索引。

at the end of the concert 演奏会的尾声

at the end of January 一月底

in the end则与in the beginning相对应，表示“最终……”，相当于eventually或at last。例如：

a. At first his mother opposed the marriage, but **in the end** she gave her consent. 一开始他母亲反对这桩婚事，但最后还是同意了。

b. Jim couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He didn't go anywhere **in the end**. 吉姆不知道去哪里度假，最后他哪里都没去。

c. He got more and more angry. **In the end** he just walked out of the room. 他越来越生气，最后径直走出房间。

at the beginning/end通常与of连用。而in the beginning/end一般不能接of短语，我们不能说：in the beginning/end of something\*。

5) last/next/this/every前不用at/on/in:

a. I'll see you next Friday. (不说: on next Friday\*)

b. Do you work every Sunday? (不说: on every Sunday\*)

## (2) **during, for**

上面三个表示时间的介词，主要是表示某一时刻（in可表示一段时间）。而during和for则表示一段时间。他们后面接表示“时间段”的名词。

1) during表示“在……期间内”，强调在某一期间发生了什么事。表示事件发生的过程，不表示在此过程中事件发生的起止时间。for则表示这件事延续时间的长短，指出了事件发生的开始时间。

a. I had lived in the countryside **for 8 years** before I moved to Beijing. 在搬到北京之前，我在乡下住了八年。

b. I studied in this university **for 4 years**. **During that time** most of my time was spent in learning English.

我在大学学习了四年，在这期间，大多数时间我都花在学英语上了。

c. My father was in hospital for six weeks during the summer.

夏天，我父亲在医院住院六个星期。

2) during可接表示事件延续一段时间的名词，如stay, visit, travel等；for一般不能这样用。如：

during my visit to China 在我访问中国期间

during the travel to the south 在去南方途中

during the Middle Ages 在中世纪

during his childhood 在他童年时期

during my holidays 在我的假期

而for一般只接具体的时间量。如：

for six years

for two months

for ever

for two hours

### (3) from, since, for

1) from

from通常要和介词to或till/until连用。如：

Most people work from nine to five. 多数人过着朝九晚五的生活。

## 2) since

since+时间点，表示“从那一时刻起”，事件开始发生，它通常要与现在完成时或过去完成时连用。

a. He has been here **since last Sunday**.

自从上星期日起，他就一直在这儿。

b. I haven't seen him **since two years ago**. 我两年没见他了。

c. I haven't seen him **for two years**.

d. It's two years **since I last saw him**.

## 3) for

for+时间段，表示动作延续到说话的那一时刻。通常也要与现在完成时或过去完成时连用。如上面例句所示，“for+一段时间”可与“since+动作开始的时刻”替换。

a. I have lived here **for a year**.

b. I have lived here **since this time last year**.

## (4) before, after, till/until

这几个词即可作介词接短语，又可用作连词接从句。它们后面所接的时间一般是“时间点”，以表示“在某一时刻之前（before）”、“在某一时刻之后（after）”、“一直到某一时刻为止（till/until）”。例如：

a. We finished the work **before** 10 o'clock.

b. I'll wait for you **till** 10 o'clock.

需要注意的是till/until的如下用法特点：

1) 延续性句子谓语（用肯定）+till/until+时间点（若是从句，则从句中的谓语动词是短暂性动词）

2) 短暂性句子谓语（用否定）+till/until+时间点（若是从句，则从句中的谓语动词是短暂性动词）

c. He **didn't finish** the work **until** 10 o'clock. （finish短暂性动词，用否定）

d. He **didn't leave** the office **till** 12 o'clock.

e. He will **stay** here **until** next Sunday. （stay延续性动词，用肯定）

#### (5) by

1) by的意思是no later than，表示“不迟于某个时间”、“到了某个时间”。例如：

by the end of next year 到明年年底为止

2) by引导的时间状语常与将来完成时态或过去完成时态连用。例如：

a. **By the end of next year I'll have learned** 2,000 words.  
（将来完成时）

b. **By the end of last year I had learned** 2,000 words.  
（过去完成时）



## 66 表示地点、方位的介词 Track58

这样的介词主要有：

at in on over above

under below beneath before in front of

after behind about around round

out out of outside outside of

### (1) at, in

1) 在表示地点或场所时，一般来讲，in表示较大的地方；at表示较小的地方。例如：

at home at the office at school at the bridge

at the crossroads at the bus stop at the doctor's at  
the hairdresser's

in a country in a town in a village in the street

in the forest in a field in a desert

此外，常用in的情形有：

in a line/in a row/in a queue

in a photo/in a picture

in a mirror

in the sky/in the world

in a book/in a newspaper/in a magazine/in a letter

in the front/back row (但也可以说: at the front/back)

in the front/back of the car

(at the front/back of the building/cinema/classroom)

2) 我们可以用in或at来谈论建筑物, 比如: at a restaurant或in a restaurant。但用at通常表示某事发生的场合。例如:

a. I met him **at the cinema** last night. 我昨晚在电影院见到他了。

而用in往往表示建筑物本身情形, 例如:

b. I enjoyed the film but it was very cold **in the cinema**. (不说: at the cinema)

另外, 我们用in强调“在建筑物里面”, 而用at则笼统地指“在这个地点”, 包括建筑物的里面及周围。例如:

at the restaurant 可以是在餐馆里面, 也可以是在餐馆附近。

in the restaurant 强调在餐馆里面。

at the cinema 在电影院, 但不一定是电影院里面。

in the cinema 强调在电影院里面, 所以上面一句用 very cold in the cinema。

再比如下面的例句:

c. There were a lot of people **in the shop**. It was very crowded.

商店里有很多人, 很挤。

d. Go along this road, then turn left **at the shop**.

沿着这条路直走，然后在商店那儿左转。

## (2) on, over, above

三个词均有“在……之上”的含义，但意思有区别。

1) on表示两事物表面接触。

a. Put away the books **on the desk**. 把桌上的书收好。

b. The dictionary **on the table** is not mine. 桌上的字典不是我的。

c. There is a label **on the bottle**. 瓶子上有个标签。

比较：

d. There is somebody **at the door**. Shall I go and see who it is?

门口有人，我要去看看是谁吗？

e. There is a notice **on the door**. It says “Do Not Disturb”.

门上有个标牌，上面写着“请勿打扰”。

此外，常用on的情形有：

on the left/on the right

on the first/second floor (在一/二楼)

on a map

on the page/on Page Seven (但说：at the top/bottom of the page)

on the menu

on the list

on a farm

on the way to school

on the corner of the street (但也可以说: **in** the corner of the room)

2) over表示两事物表面不仅有接触, 而且有覆盖的含义。

a. Spread the cloth **over the table**.

b. Mom put a rug **over me** when I was asleep.

我睡着的时候, 妈妈在我身上盖了一块小毛毯。

over还可以表示“正上方”, 如:

c. There is a bridge **over the river**. 河上有一座桥。

d. There is a lamp **over the desk**. 桌子正上方有个电灯。

3) above仅表示上下方位关系, 且事物表面不接触, 也不是“正上方”。

a. The sun rose **above the horizon**.

用于抽象概念表示职位高低时, over和above的差别:

b. He is **over me**. = He is my immediate superior.

他是我的顶头上司。

c. He is **above me**. 他是我的上司。(一般不是直接上司)

### (3) below, under, beneath

1) under表示“在……下方”，两物体可以接触，也可以隔开一定的距离。

a. I put the money **under the mattress**. 我把钱放在了床垫底下。

b. The dog is groveling **under the table**.

2) below则一般表示在两个表面之间间隔一定的距离。

They live **below us**.

3) beneath可用来替换under，但在表示抽象含义时，最好用beneath。

a. He would think it **beneath him** to tell a lie.

他认为说谎有失他的身份。

b. She married **beneath her**. 她嫁给了一个比她社会地位低的人。

## 67 表示方式、手段的介词 Track59

这样的介词有：by, with, through, in

### (1) by

注意：by后面接动名词或不带冠词的单数名词。如by boat，而不是by a boat\*。

1) 表示行为方式。例如：

send something by post

do something by hand

pay by check/by credit card （但要说：pay in cash）

我们还可以说某事发生是by mistake/by accident/by chance  
（但要说：on purpose）

2) 接交通工具。

by car by train by plane/air by boat/sea/ship by  
bus by bicycle

by metro/subway/underground （但要说：on foot）

注意：

①by car，不说by a car\*，by my car\*，by the car\*，但说：  
in a car, in my car, in the car。

I don't mind going by car but I don't want to go in your car.

我不介意乘车去，但我又不想坐你的车。

②car, taxi前用介词in。

They didn't come in their car. They came in a taxi.

他们没开自己的车来，而是打车来的。

③自行车和公共交通设施前使用on。

on the train/by train, on his bicycle/by bicycle

3) 表示通过某种手段以达到预期的结果。（与with相区别）

a. We succeeded by cooperating with them.

通过与他们合作，我们取得了成功。

b. Our Mission is to help our clients achieve their business goals by providing a service for the timely delivery of qualified staff to support their operational needs.

我们的宗旨是根据客户的业务需求及时地提供合格的人才，从而帮助客户达到商业目的。

## (2) with

主要是表示用具体的工具做某事。with接单数可数名词时，需要带冠词。例如：

a. I killed a fly with a flyflap. 我用苍蝇拍打死了一只苍蝇。

b. We can see with our eyes and write with our hands.

## (3) in

表示以某种方式做某事。例如：

a. Write in pencil/ink.

- b. Express this **in your own words**.
- c. Speak **in a low voice**.
- d. Pay **in installments**. 以分期付款的方式支付。

#### (4) **through**

其用法与by相近，只是through一般多跟名词连用，by则多与动名词搭配。

They talked to each other **through** an interpreter.



### 第三节 常见的介词短语

前文说过，与介词连用的词主要有动词、名词和形容词。因此，我们把常见的介词短语也如此分类。

#### 68 与动词搭配的短语

1) 动词+介词:

accuse of    apply for

ask for    believe in

blame for    begin with

compare with    compare to

comply with    conform to

consist of    consist in

consist with    cooperate with

deal in    depend on

differ from    differ in

dream of    insist on

lead to    live on

listen to    object to

occur to    persist in

prefer to    prepare for

refer to    rely on

remind of    resort to

result from    result in

succeed in    think about/of

wait for    warn of

2) 动词+名词+介词:

play a role in    take advantage of

take part in

3) 动词+副词+介词:

catch up with    come up with

make up for    put up with

be fed up with

## 69 与形容词搭配的短语 Track60

### 1) 常与to连用的形容词:

equal favorable faithful familiar good hostile  
loyal

parallel opposite responsible sensible useful  
similar used

### 2) 常与about连用的形容词:

anxious careful careless certain considerate  
enthusiastic

guilty happy mad sad sure

### 3) 常与for连用的形容词:

available bad convenient eager eligible good  
grateful homesick famous hungry necessary noted  
ready responsible sorry suitable

### 4) 常与with连用的形容词:

angry acquainted bored careful popular ill  
strict busy familiar impatient sympathetic

### 5) 常与of连用的形容词:

恐惧: afraid frightened terrified scared

好恶: ashamed envious fond jealous proud tired

态度: suspicious critical tolerant ignorant

意识: aware conscious

此外: capable/incapable full guilty hopeful  
independent

6) 常与at连用的形容词:

angry bad clever disappointed disgusted good

marvelous quick skilful useless weak

对于上述与介词搭配的形容词, 我们注意到, 同一个形容词有的可与不同的介词进行搭配使用, 此时构成的短语一般在意思和使用上均有所不同。例如:

sth. be familiar to sb. 某事为某人所熟悉

sb. be familiar with sth. 某人对某事熟悉

a. I was familiar with nobody at the meeting.

我在会上一个人都不熟悉。

b. Nobody at the meeting was familiar to me.

c. I am familiar with all the flowers.

d. All the flowers are familiar to me.

再比如:

good at 擅长于

good to 对……友好

good for 对……有益

- e. Clint is quite good at English.
- f. Clint is very good to his students.
- g. Swimming is good for your health.

因此，在熟悉使用这些短语的同时，还要注意区分和比较同一形容词与不同介词搭配在意义上的差别。

## 70 与名词搭配的短语

由上述动词或形容词演变而来的名词，与同样的介词搭配。如：

loyal to — loyalty to

object to — objection to

具体如下：

1) 名词+for:

a reason for

a demand for

a need for

2) 名词+in:

主要表示“在某方面”。

a change in the costs

an increase/a rise/a decrease/a fall in the costs

a difference/similarity in this aspect

3) 名词+to:

an answer to a question

a key to a door

a solution to a problem

a reply to a letter

a reaction to my advice/suggestion/news

an attitude to a job

an invitation to the party

devotion to

contribution to

4) 名词+with/between:

A has a relationship/contact/connection with B

a relationship/contact/connection/difference/similarity  
between A and B

### 温故知新

介词用法极为灵活，一直是英语学习中的一个难点。在此，只求初学者重点掌握各种表示时间和地点的介词的用法。至于各种带有介词的名词短语、动词短语和形容词短语，绝不是一朝一夕能掌握的，这需要我们在今后的学习过程中留心体会和不断积累。

### 介词练习

#### 一、用适当的介词填空：

at/on/in（表示时间）：

1. Henry is 63. He'll be retiring from his job \_\_\_\_ two years' time.

2. Mary and Henry always go out for a meal \_\_\_\_ their wedding anniversary.

3. My car is being repaired at the garage. It'll be ready \_\_\_\_\_ two hours.

4. I might not be at home \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday morning but I'll probably be there \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.

5. The course begins \_\_\_\_\_ 7 January and ends sometime \_\_\_\_\_ April.

6. We traveled overnight to Paris and arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 5 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.

7. I don't like traveling \_\_\_\_\_ night.

8. I hope the weather will be nice \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend.

9. There are usually a lot of parties \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Eve.

10. I'm busy just now but I'll be with you \_\_\_\_\_ a moment.

11. He's out of work \_\_\_\_\_ the moment.

12. Hurry up! We've got to go \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes.

13. We often have a short holiday \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas.

14. They have to work \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday evenings.

15. What are you doing \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend?

16. It took me a long time to find a job. \_\_\_\_\_ the end I got a job in a hotel.

17. Are you going away \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of August or \_\_\_\_\_ the end?

18. I couldn't decide what to buy Mary for her birthday. I didn't buy her anything \_\_\_\_\_ the end.



19. I'm going away \_\_\_\_ the end of this week.

20. I felt more and more fed up with my boss. I resigned \_\_\_\_ the end.

21. \_\_\_\_ my return, I learned that Professor Smith had been at the Museum and would not be back for several hours.

in/at/on (表示地点) :

22. Write your name \_\_\_\_ the top of the page.

23. There was an accident \_\_\_\_ the crossroads this morning.

24. I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name \_\_\_\_ the door.

25. You'll find the sports results \_\_\_\_ the back page of the newspaper.

26. I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting \_\_\_\_ a desk.

27. My brother lives \_\_\_\_ a small village \_\_\_\_ the southwest of England.

28. The man the police are looking for has a scar \_\_\_\_ his right cheek.

29. She was wearing a silver ring \_\_\_\_ her little finger.

30. Some people \_\_\_\_ the river are looking at those people swimming \_\_\_\_ the river.

31. In most countries people drive \_\_\_\_ the right.

32. I couldn't hear the teacher very well. She spoke quietly and I was sitting \_\_\_\_ the back of the class.

33. It is a good idea to write your name and address \_\_\_\_ the back of the envelope.

34. It can be dangerous when children play \_\_\_\_ the street.

35. If you walk to the end of the street, you'll see a small shop \_\_\_\_ the corner.

36. "Where shall we sit?" "Over there, \_\_\_\_ the corner."

37. Is Tom \_\_\_\_ this photograph? I can't find him.

38. My office is \_\_\_\_ the first floor. It's \_\_\_\_ the left as you come out of the lift.

39. We normally use the front entrance but there's another entrance \_\_\_\_ the back.

40. —Is there anything interesting \_\_\_\_ the paper today?

—Well, there's an unusual photograph \_\_\_\_ the back page.

41. It's a very small village. You probably won't find it \_\_\_\_ your map.

42. When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit \_\_\_\_ the front.

**名称+介词:**

43. Everything can be explained. There's a reason \_\_\_\_ everything.

44. Money isn't the solution \_\_\_\_ every problem.

45. There has been an increase \_\_\_\_ the number of road accidents recently.

46. When I opened the envelope, I was delighted to find a check \_\_\_\_ \$500.

47. The advantage \_\_\_\_ having a car is that you don't have to rely on public transport.

48. There are many advantages \_\_\_\_ being able to speak a foreign language.

49. When Paul left home, his attitude \_\_\_\_ his parents seemed to change.

50. Bill and I used to be good friends but I don't have much contact \_\_\_\_ him now.

51. There has been a sharp rise \_\_\_\_ the cost of living in the past few years.

52. What was Clint's reaction \_\_\_\_ the news?

53. The company has rejected the workers' demands \_\_\_\_ a rise \_\_\_\_ pay.

54. The fact that Jane was offered a job has no connection \_\_\_\_ the fact that her cousin is the managing director.

**形容词+介词:**

55. I was delighted \_\_\_\_ the present you gave me.

56. It was very nice \_\_\_\_ you to do my shopping for me.

57. Why are you always so rude \_\_\_\_ your parents? Can't you be nice \_\_\_\_ them?

58. It was a bit careless \_\_\_\_ you to leave the door unlocked when you went out.

59. They didn't reply to our letter, which wasn't very polite \_\_\_\_ them.

60. We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up \_\_\_\_ it.

61. I can't understand people who are cruel \_\_\_\_ animals.

62. We enjoyed our holiday, but we were a bit disappointed \_\_\_\_ the hotel.

63. I was surprised \_\_\_\_ the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.

64. I've been trying to learn Spanish but I'm not very satisfied \_\_\_\_ my progress.

65. Linda doesn't look very well. I'm worried \_\_\_\_ her.

66. Are you angry \_\_\_\_ what happened?

67. I'm sorry \_\_\_\_ what I said. I hope you're not angry \_\_\_\_ me.

68. The people next door are furious \_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_ making so much noise last night.

69. Jill starts her new job next week. She's quite excited \_\_\_\_ it.

70. I'm sorry \_\_\_\_ the smell of paint in this room. I've just decorated it.

71. I was shocked \_\_\_\_ what I saw. I'd never seen anything like it before.

72. The man we interviewed for the job was intelligent but we weren't very impressed \_\_\_\_ his appearance.

73. Are you still upset \_\_\_\_ what I said to you yesterday?

74. He said he was sorry \_\_\_\_ the situation but there was nothing he could do.

75. I'm not ashamed \_\_\_\_ what I did. In fact I'm quite proud \_\_\_\_ it.

76. These days everybody is aware \_\_\_\_ the dangers of smoking.

77. The station platform was crowded \_\_\_\_ people waiting for the train.

78. She's much more successful than I am. Sometimes I feel a bit jealous \_\_\_\_ her.

79. I'm tired \_\_\_\_ doing the same thing every day. I need a change.

80. I'm not surprised she changed her mind at the last moment. That's typical \_\_\_\_ her.

81. Our house is similar \_\_\_\_ yours. Perhaps yours is a bit larger.

82. John has no money of his own. He's totally dependent \_\_\_\_ his parents.

83. I suggested we should all go out for a meal but nobody else was keen \_\_\_\_ the idea.

84. You look bored. You don't seem interested \_\_\_\_ what I'm saying.

动词+介词:

85. The school provides all its students \_\_\_\_ books.
86. A strange thing happened \_\_\_\_ me a few days ago.
87. Mark decided to give up sport so that he could concentrate \_\_\_\_ his studies.
88. I don't believe \_\_\_\_ working very hard. It's not worth it.
89. My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it \_\_\_\_ what I did before.
90. I hope you succeed \_\_\_\_ getting what you want.
91. As I was coming out of the room I collided \_\_\_\_ somebody who was coming in.
92. There was an awful noise as the car crashed \_\_\_\_ a tree.
93. Jim is a photographer. He specializes \_\_\_\_ sports photography.
94. Do you spend much money \_\_\_\_ clothes?
95. The country is divided \_\_\_\_ six regions.
96. I prefer traveling by train \_\_\_\_ driving. It's much more pleasant.
97. Somebody broke \_\_\_\_ my car and stole the radio.
98. I felt quite cold but Peter insisted \_\_\_\_ having the window open.

99. Some words are difficult to translate \_\_\_\_ one language \_\_\_\_ another.

100. What happened \_\_\_\_ the money I lent you? What did you spend it \_\_\_\_ ?

101. The teacher decided to split the class \_\_\_\_ four groups.

102. I f illed the tank but unfortunately I f illed it \_\_\_\_ the wrong kind of petrol.

103. Three students were suspected \_\_\_\_ cheating in the examination.

104. Sally is often not well. She suffers \_\_\_\_ very bad headaches.

105. You know that you can rely \_\_\_\_ me if you ever need any help.

106. I complimented her \_\_\_\_ her English.

107. They wore warm clothes to protect themselves \_\_\_\_ the cold.

108. The apartment consists \_\_\_\_ three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.

109. We warned our children \_\_\_\_ the dangers of playing in the street.

110. Janet warned me \_\_\_\_ the water. She said it wasn't safe to drink.

111. I love this music. It reminds me \_\_\_\_ a warm day in spring.

112. Our neighbors complained \_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_ the noise we made.

113. Ken was complaining \_\_\_\_ pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.

114. We complained \_\_\_\_ the manager of the restaurant \_\_\_\_ the food.

115. Modern man faces dangers completely unknown \_\_\_\_ his predecessors.

116. He always gives \_\_\_\_ to his wife's demands and does whatever she tells him to.

117. Those two families have been quarreling \_\_\_\_ each other for many years.

118. Michael found it difficult to get his British jokes \_\_\_\_ to American audiences.

## 二、单选题:

119. \_\_\_\_ all our kindness to help her, Sarah refused to listen to us.

- A. At
- B. For
- C. In
- D. On

120. Richard doesn't think he could ever take \_\_\_\_ what is called "free-style" poetry.

- A. on



- B. over
- C. to
- D. after

121. Bob was completely taken \_\_\_\_ by the robber's disguise.

- A. in
- B. away
- C. down
- D. to

122. I don't want to lend any more money to him; he's already in debt \_\_\_\_ me.

- A. to
- B. for
- C. of
- D. with

123. Californians and New Englanders speak the same language and abide \_\_\_\_ the same federal laws.

- A. to
- B. by
- C. in
- D. with

124. Although he thought he was helping us prepare the dinner, he was actually \_\_\_\_ the way.

- A. by
- B. on
- C. off
- D. in

125. The engineers are going through \_\_\_\_ their highway project, even though the expenses have risen.

- A. on
- B. with
- C. in
- D. out

126. Stressful environments lead to unhealthy behaviors such as poor eating habits, which \_\_\_\_ increase the risk of heart disease.

- A. in turn
- B. in return
- C. by chance
- D. by turns

127. I like to go to the cinema when I am \_\_\_\_ the mood for it.

- A. in

- B. on
- C. at
- D. with

128. It isn't so much whether he works hard; the question is whether he works \_\_\_\_ .

- A. above all
- B. in all
- C. at all
- D. after all

129. There is an incorrect assumption among scientists and medical people that everyone agrees \_\_\_\_ what constitutes a benefit to an individual.

- A. on
- B. with
- C. to
- D. in

130. All the information we have collected in relation to that case \_\_\_\_ very little.

- A. makes up for
- B. adds up to
- C. comes up with
- D. puts up with

131. Before the students set off, they spent much time setting a limit \_\_\_\_ the expenses of the trip.

- A. to
- B. about
- C. in
- D. for

132. A really powerful speaker can \_\_\_\_ the feeling of the audience to the fever of excitement.

- A. work out
- B. work over
- C. work at
- D. work up

133. Some teenagers harbor a generalized resentment against society, which \_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_ the rights and privileges of adults, although physically they are mature.

- A. deprives, from
- B. denies, of
- C. denies, 不填
- D. restricts, 不填

134. When the engine would not start, the mechanic inspected all the parts to find what was at \_\_\_\_ .

- A. wrong

- B. trouble
- C. fault
- D. difficulty

135. The farmers were more anxious for rain than the people in the city because they had more at \_\_\_\_ .

- A. danger
- B. stake
- C. loss
- D. threat

136. When workers are organized in trade unions, employers find it hard to lay them \_\_\_\_ .

- A. off
- B. aside
- C. out
- D. down

137. Although I had been invited to the opening ceremony, I was unable to attend \_\_\_\_ such short notice.

- A. to
- B. in
- C. with
- D. on

138. There are several huge trees \_\_\_\_ the temple.

- A. in the front of
- B. in front of
- C. on the front of
- D. on front of

139. He came early and sat \_\_\_\_ the class in order to hear the speaker clearly.

- A. in the front of
- B. in front of
- C. ahead of
- D. before

140. Mr. Bush visited the Great Wall \_\_\_\_ his stay in Beijing.

- A. during
- B. at
- C. on
- D. by

141. A foreign language can be learned only \_\_\_\_ practice.

- A. with
- B. through

C. in

D. on

142. \_\_\_\_ entering the classroom, she found everyone waiting for her.

A. At

B. On

C. In

D. For

143. She sat \_\_\_\_ the corner of the room reading.

A. to

B. in

C. with

D. on

144. She arrived \_\_\_\_ Beijing \_\_\_\_ 9:00 \_\_\_\_ April 1.

A. at, in, at

B. in, at, on

C. to, on, at

D. in, at, at

145. \_\_\_\_ Colonial period the great majority of Connecticut's settlers came from England.

A. Since

B. The time

C. During the

D. It was

### 介词练习答案

#### 一、用适当的介词填空：

1. in 2. on 3. in 4. on, in
5. on, in 6. at, in 7. at 8. at/on
9. on 10. in 11. at 12. in
13. at 14. on 15. at/on 16. In
17. at, at 18. in 19. at 20. in
21. On 22. at 23. at 24. on
25. on 26. at 27. in, in 28. on
29. on 30. at, in 31. on 32. at
33. on 34. in 35. on/at 36. in
37. in 38. on, on 39. at 40. in, on
41. on 42. in 43. for 44. to
45. in 46. for 47. of 48. to/in
49. to 50. with 51. in 52. to
53. for, in 54. with 55. with 56. of
57. to, to 58. of 59. of 60. with



61. to 62. with 63. at/by 64. with  
65. about 66. about 67. about/for, with 68. with, for  
69. about 70. about 71. at/by 72. with/by  
73. about 74. for 75. of, of 76. of  
77. with 78. of 79. of 80. of  
81. to 82. on 83. on 84. in  
85. with 86. to 87. on 88. in  
89. to 90. in 91. with 92. into  
93. in 94. on 95. into 96. to  
97. into 98. on 99. from, into 100. to, on  
101. into 102. with 103. of 104. from  
105. on 106. on 107. from/against 108. of  
109. of/about 110. about 111. of 112. to, about  
113. of 114. to, about 115. to 116. in  
117. with 118. across

## 二、单选题:

119. B 120. C 121. A 122. A 123. B 124. D 125. B  
126. A 127. A 128. C 129. A 130. B 131. A 132. D  
133. C 134. C 135. B 136. A 137. D 138. B 139. A  
140. A 141. B 142. B 143. B 144. B 145. C

新东方  
XDF.CN

New Perspective Grammar  
英语语法新思维

基础版2

Basic

张满胜 / 著

连续热卖10余年的语法系列重装上市  
百万读者推崇的经典之作不容错过

英语语法新思维，改变你的“英语世界观”

浙江教育出版社  
ZHEJIANG EDUCATION PUBLISHING HOUSE

# 版权信息

---

书名：英语语法新思维 基础版2

作者：张满胜

出版社：浙江教育出版社

出版日期：2018-08-01

ISBN：978-7-5536-7367-7

## 前言 Preface

---

★语法即是造句规则。学习语法有两个目的：首先，便于我们读懂句子；其次，教会我们造句。

★语法不是“死”的造句规则，而是“活”的语言思维。

一般语法书都是只讲“死”的规则，而不去追究规则背后合乎逻辑的语法思维，致使很多英语学习者花费大量时间学英语，学语法，记死规则，最后又很快遗忘，终难修成英语学习的正果。本套书力求不仅告诉你规则“是什么”，而且还要告诉你规则背后的“为什么”。从而达到既掌握规则又培养英文思维的目的。

★《英语语法新思维》“新”在何处？

### 新理念

笔者提出语法即思维的全新理念，并将这一理念贯穿于整个语法书创作的始终。语言是人们进行思维的载体；语法——作为语言遣词造句的规则，体现了用语者的思维。

### 新体系

本套书不再像传统语法书那样，以词法和句法两条主线对英语语法进行“大而全”、包罗万象的规则罗列，而是注重实用，循序渐进，科学地分为三册。具体思路体系安排如下：

《英语语法新思维 基础版1》：以动词和名词作为两大主线，介绍英文主要词类的正确使用，让读者能够熟练构造简单句，并且能够对各种主要词类运用自如。

《英语语法新思维 基础版2》：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者能够熟练地构造复合句，分析和读懂复杂的句子，进而使读者在下笔时不再是通篇简单句，而开始能够较灵活地把握句子的构造。

《英语语法新思维 基础版3》：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者更深入地比较各种复合句的特点，并掌握复合句与简单句之间的转化。教会读者征服复杂难句，简化复杂从句，做到使句子返璞归真。

### 新角度

笔者一直力图从全新的角度对传统的语法规则进行阐述，目的是使复杂的规则易学易用。比如，对于“名词性从句”，笔者的表述思路是：名词性从句的本质是把句子当作名词来用。名词在句中可充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语。因此，我们同样可用一个完整的句子来充当另一个句子的这四种成分，于是便有了主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句这四种名词性从句。问题的关键是：我们可以用三种句子（陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句）来分别充当这四种成分。于是，就把传统的介绍繁杂的连词用法的方式转化成了三种句子充当四种成分构成名词性从句的讲法。

### 新例句

规则毕竟是为语言服务的，精炼、明晰的规则披上美丽的语言外衣，使语法学习不再是枯燥乏味的死记规则，而是妙趣横生、驾轻就熟的语言实践。因此，笔者在例句的选择上真可谓煞费苦心，注重幽默性、知识性和思想性，使读者在欣赏语言之美的同时掌握语言表达规则。

另外，本系列图书还为读者配备了例句音频，可以扫描封底二维码或登录封底网址获取。所有例句均由发音纯正的美籍外教精心录制。希望能够帮助读者在学习语法的同时提高英语发音与听力水平。

本书是笔者在语法领域内的研究成果，水平有限，疏漏、错误在所难免。我真诚地希望，读者朋友们在阅读过程中若有疑问，或者对此书有任何建议，能够及时与我联系，我的微博地址是：

[www.weibo.com/zhangmansheng](http://www.weibo.com/zhangmansheng)

感谢您选读此书！

张满胜

## Chapter 01 英语句子分析



音频

- 1 主语+谓语动词 (+状语)
- 2 主语+系动词+主语补足语
- 3 主语+谓语+宾语
- 4 主语+谓语+双宾语
- 5 主语+谓语+复合宾语
- 6 陈述句
- 7 疑问句

8 祈使句

9 感叹句



## 第一节 句子的结构类型

英语句子按其结构的复杂程度可分为：简单句、并列句和复合句。

下面我们具体讨论**简单句的五种基本句型**。（重点掌握——分析句子结构的基础）

在《英语语法新思维 基础版 1》中我们讨论过这五种基本句型，在这里我们将更加全面、深刻地认识这五种句型，利用这些基本句型熟练分析和简化复杂的句子结构。

## 1 主语+谓语动词 (+状语) Track 001

subject+intransitive verb (+adverbial)

句型特点：既然该句型中动词后面不带宾语，那么用于此句型中的动词应该是不及物动词。

a. Man **proposes**; God **disposes**.

谋事在人，成事在天。

b. Modesty **benefits**; pride **hurts**.

谦受益，满招损。

c. The sun **rises** and the sun **sets**. Stars **glitter** and stars **vanish**. There are ups and downs in everyone's life.

日升日落，星闪星陨。人生难免有起有落。

在该句型中，谓语动词后往往**带有状语**：

d. Great minds think alike.

英雄所见略同。

e. The sun sets in the west.

太阳从西边落下。

## 2 主语+系动词+主语补足语 Track 002

subject+link verb+subject complement

句型特点：句中谓语一般是be动词或其他系动词，主语补足语也称作表语。

### (1) 最常见的是形容词、名词（短语）作表语

a. He looks unhappy.

他看起来不高兴。

b. The leaf will turn yellow in autumn.

树叶秋天会变黄。

c. I've got to return the book this afternoon; it falls overdue a week.

今天下午我得还书，已经过期一个星期了。

d. The best proof of love is trust.

爱的最好证明是信任。

e. Bread is the stuff of life.

民以食为天。

### (2) 也可以用介词短语作表语

Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.

情人眼里出西施。

### (3) 副词不能用作表语

He looks happily.\*<sup>[1]</sup>

### (4) 在英语中，除了be以外，还有其他系动词

1) 常见的单纯表示主语的特征、状态的：

feel look sound taste smell seem appear

a. The iron feels hot.

这熨斗摸起来很烫。

b. The rose doesn' t smell very sweet.

这玫瑰花闻起来不是很香。

2) 表示主语由一种状态转变为另一种状态的（这些系动词与形容词连用，通常具有固定的搭配关系）：

become grow get turn fall go come

a. Our supplies of sugar and rice fell short.

我们的糖和米供应不足。

b. The jokes fell flat.

这个玩笑毫无效果。

c. fall asleep 睡着; fall due 到期

d. go hungry 挨饿; go sour 变酸; go wrong 出错

e. Hope your dreams will come true.

希望你好梦成真。

f. The leaf will **turn** yellow in autumn.

树叶秋天会变黄。

g. I' ve got to return the book this afternoon; it **falls** overdue a week.

今天下午我得还书，已经过期一个星期了。

3) 常见的表示主语保持某种状态的：

continue remain stay keep hold rest prove

a. The weather **continued** fine for several days.

那几天，天气一直很晴朗。

b. He **held** silent for the whole day.

他一整天都沉默不语。

c. He has fallen into the habit of doing morning exercises to **stay** healthy.

(不能说stay healthily\*，因为副词不能作表语。)

为了保持身体健康，他养成了晨练的习惯。

d. You may **rest** assured that he will come to the party.

尽管放心，他会来参加聚会的。

4) 常见的近似于不及物动词的系动词（较难，只需了解，不求掌握）：

sit act arrive blush marry die be born

a. Mr. Bean often **acted** weird in public. (Mr. Bean was weird when he acted in public.)

在公共场合，憨豆先生经常表现出滑稽古怪的样子。

b. All the audience **sat** silent.

（不能用silently）整个观众席中鸦雀无声。

c. He **was born** poor.

他出生时，家里很穷。

d. The boy **blushed** scarlet.

那个男孩羞红了脸。

e. I **married** young. (I was young when I married.)

我很年轻时就结婚了。

f. He **died** young. (He was young when he died.)

他英年早逝。

比较：He works hard.

这里young是形容词，作表语（也可以说是主语补足语），是说明主语He的性质特征的。所以我们可将原句改写成“He was young when he died.”。此时young不是用来修饰谓语动词die的。而He works hard.中的hard是副词，作状语，用来修饰work，说明work这一行为的特征，而不是说明主语He的性质特征。所以，我们不能将其改写成“He is hard when he works.\*”，这显然说不通。

再比较：

g. Jane Austen died **a spinster**. (She was a spinster when she died.)

简·奥斯汀去世时，依然未嫁。

h. He died **a hero's death**. (a hero's death是同源宾语)

他英勇就义了。

同样的道理，a spinster是作表语，说明主语Jane Austen的性质。所以我们可以将原句改写成“*She was a spinster when she died.*”。而a hero's death则是作die的宾语，不是作表语来修饰主语He，因为我们不能说“*He was a hero's death when he died.\**”。

---

#### 注释

[1] 本书中\*字符号表示句子错误。

### 3 主语+谓语+宾语 Track 003

subject+transitive verb+object

英语中绝大多数动词都适用于这一句型，而且能作宾语成分的词类和结构很多。

#### 例句

a. Beauty will buy no beef. （名词作宾语）

漂亮不能当饭吃。

b. I want to go home now. （不定式作宾语）

我现在想回家

c. I've finished reading the book. （动名词作宾语）

我已经读完了这本书。

d. I'll pick you up this evening. （代词作宾语）

我今晚开车去接你。



## 4 主语+谓语+双宾语 Track 004

subject+dative verb+indirect object+direct object

有些动词后需要接两个宾语：一个指人的宾语，称之为间接宾语；一个指物的宾语，称之为直接宾语。间接宾语和直接宾语共称为双宾语。

### 例句

a. He **showed** the guard (间接宾语) his passport (直接宾语).

他把护照给门卫看了。

b. I will **buy** you (间接宾语) a meal (直接宾语).

能这样使用的动词有三类（根据间接宾语和介词的关系来分）：

1) 与give一样，当间接宾语后移时，间接宾语前需带介词to，表示间接宾语是动作的承受者。这样的动词有：

assign award bring deliver deny feed

give grant hand lend offer owe

pass pay promise post read recommend

sell send show take write

a. He **showed** his passport to the guard.

b. He **showed** the guard his passport.

他把护照给门卫看了。

2) 与buy一样，当间接宾语后移时，间接宾语前需带介词for，这样的动词有：

book (预订)    buy    build    change    choose    cook

fetch    find    get    keep    make    prepare

sing    order

a. I am going to buy a gift for her.

b. I am going to buy her a gift.

我要给她买个礼物。

3) 有个别动词只用于这样的结构：主语+动词+间接宾语（+直接宾语），而不能转换成带介词的结构。这样的动词有：charge, cost, bet等。

a. I' ll bet you ten dollars.

我跟你赌10块钱。

b. The repairman charged me ten dollars.

修理工收了我10块钱。

此外，较特殊的动词，如ask，间接宾语后移时，间接宾语前需带介词of。

c. Can I ask you a question?

d. Can I ask a question of you?

我能问你个问题吗？

## 5 主语+谓语+复合宾语 Track 005

subject+factive verb+object+object complement

### (1) 接复合宾语的动词

有些动词后面在单接宾语时句子意思不完整，因而在宾语后还需接补充说明宾语的补足语，宾语和宾语补足语一起构成复合宾语。

常见的带复合宾语的动词有：

appoint believe call choose consider

declare elect feel find keep

leave let make name nominate

prove see suppose vote

用作宾语补足语成分的词类和结构有很多，如：

a. They **appointed** John chairman.

他们任命约翰为主席。

b. I **believe** him to be true.

我相信他是诚实的。

c. The chairman **declared** the meeting over.

主席宣布会议结束。

d. They **elected** John chairman.

他们推举约翰作主席。

e. You can **leave** the door open.

你可以把门开着。

f. A hedge (树篱) between **keeps** friendship green.

保持距离，友谊长青。（可以引申为“君子之交淡如水。”）

## （2）区分双宾语和复合宾语

比较：

I made John our chairman.

我选了约翰当我们的主席。

I made John a cake.

我给约翰做了一个蛋糕。

判断两种宾语的方法很简单：在宾语后加上be动词，若能构成完整的句子，则是补足语。比如，我们可以说“John is our chairman.”。所以上句中的our chairman是宾语补足语。若无法构成完整的句子，则为直接宾语。比如，我们不能说：John is a cake.\* 所以，a cake是直接宾语。

## 第二节 句子的种类

英语句子按其用途可分为：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句四种。本节内容作为了解即可。

## 6 陈述句 Track 006

用来陈述事实、表明态度、阐述观点的句子。

### 例句

a. Studying English takes time.

学习英文需要时间。

b. The first step is always the hardest / the most difficult.

万事开头难。

c. Confidence in yourself is the first step on the road to success.

自信是成功的第一步。（阐述观点）

d. You can count on me.

你尽管放心。/你可以相信我。

e. You' ve got a point there.

你说得有道理。

f. I couldn' t agree with you more.

我非常同意你的观点。

g. I don' t agree with you.

我不同意你的看法。（表明态度）

h. I made an enemy.

我得罪了一个人。（陈述事实）

i. I enjoy your company.

我喜欢有你陪伴。

上述经典的口语句型，大家可以记住，最好能脱口而出。

## 7 疑问句 Track 007

### (1) 一般疑问句

其特点是：

- 1) 需要用yes或no来回答；
- 2) 语序一般为：助动词/系动词+主语+谓语/表语？

#### 例句

a. Is this seat taken?

这位置有人坐吗？（I' ll take this seat if you don' t mind.）

b. —Have you been there?

—Yes, I have. / No, I haven' t. / No, never.

c. —Didn' t you tell him about it yesterday?

你昨天难道没有把这件事告诉他？

— Yes, I did.

不，我告诉他了。

No, I didn' t.

是的，我没有。（注意翻译）

### (2) 特殊疑问句



其特点是：

1) 用来对句子中某一部分进行提问，或者用来对句中某一具体内容提问。总是涉及who, what, which, where, when, why, how其中之一；

2) 语序一般为：疑问词+一般疑问句，或作主语的疑问词+谓语词。

### 例句

a. What time is convenient for you?

你什么时间方便？

b. How late are you open?

你们营业到几点？

c. What was I just going to say?

我刚才想说什么来着？

d. What' s in your mind?

你在想什么？

e. What' s going on?

发生什么事了？/怎么回事？

f. When did you begin to study English?

你什么时候开始学习英语的？

### (3) 选择疑问句

其特点是：

1) 提供两种或两种以上情形供对方选择;

2) 不用yes或no来回答。

### 例句

a. —Do you like tea or (do you like) coffee?

—Tea. Thanks.

b. —Did you speak to them, or did the manager?

—I did.

c. —Which ice cream would you like, chocolate, vanilla or strawberry?

—Chocolate, please.

—你喜欢哪种冰激凌，巧克力的、香草的、还是草莓的？

—请给我巧克力的。

## (4) 反义疑问句

其特点是：

1) 附在陈述句之后，对陈述句所说的事实和观点提出疑问；

2) 一般来说有两种形式：陈述句肯定，则所附问句否定；陈述句否定，则所附问句肯定。即“前肯后否”或“前否后肯”。

### 例句

a. The Embarrassed Magician

尴尬的魔术师

Magician: Now, my boy, you have never seen me before, have you?

魔术师：小朋友，你以前从没见过我，对吧？

Boy: No, Daddy.

男孩：是的，爸爸。

b. I am going to look like a lemon, aren' t I?

我会看上去像个傻瓜，是吗？

c. You have completed that job, haven' t you?

你把那项工作完成了，对吧？

d. You have not completed that job, have you?

你还没完成那项工作，对吧？

## 8 祈使句 Track 008

其特点是：

- 1) 用以表示请求、命令、劝告、建议等;
- 2) 主语you常省略，只以动词原形开头;
- 3) 一般没有时态变化，不与情态动词连用。

### 例句

a. Stop bugging me!

别烦我！

b. Don' t judge a book by its cover.

不要以貌取人。/人不可貌相，海水不可斗量。

c. Don' t get me wrong.

不要误会我。

d. Let' s just have a rest.

我们休息一会儿吧。

e. Let' s hope for the best.

让我们往好处想吧。

f. Let' s talk over dinner.

我们边吃边谈吧。

g. Let bygones be bygones.

过去的事就让它过去吧。

h. Strike while the iron is hot.

趁热打铁。

i. Make hay while the sun shines.

晒草要趁太阳好。/莫失良机。

## 9 感叹句 Track 009

1) 主要由what和how引导;

2) what结构主要有三种:

A. What a (n| 2)+形容词+可数名词单数+主谓部分! 如:

What a lovely boy he is!

他真是个可爱的男孩!

B. What+形容词+不可数名词/可数名词复数+主谓部分! 如:

What foolish mistakes you have made!

你犯了多么可笑的错误啊!

What nice weather (it is)!

天气真好!

C. What+a (n| 2) +可数名词单数!

当我们用“what+a (n| 2)+可数名词单数”这一结构来表示感叹时, 根据名词的不同, 又有两种情况, 一种是不具有感情色彩的普通名词:

a. What a day!

b. What a night!

以上两句中的名词day和night不具有感情色彩, 此时句子有两种理解方式, 既可以理解为褒义“今天天气多好啊!”和“今晚真美!”, 也可以理解为贬义“今天天气真糟糕!”和“今晚真差劲!”。

另一种是具有感情色彩的名词：

c. What a moron!

d. What a mess!

以上两句中的名词moron, mess已具有感情色彩，即已经把说话人的感情表达出来了。我们则按名词的原意翻译为：“真是白痴！”和“多乱啊！”

3) how结构主要有三种：

A. How+形容词/副词+主谓部分！如：

How lovely the boy is!

这男孩真可爱！

How fast time flies!

时光飞逝！

B. How+形容词+a (n) +可数名词单数+主谓部分！

How lovely a boy he is! （注意冠词的位置）

C. How+主谓部分（实义动词作谓语）！

How he snores! （how修饰动词）

他鼾声如雷。

How I hate exams!

我真烦考试！

### 温故知新

1. 本章重点内容在第一节，要求熟练掌握五种基本句型。

2. 了解除be动词以外的其他四种系动词。

3. 对于接双宾语的动词，要求知道直接宾语前带介词to或for的分别是哪些动词。

4. 要求能够区分双宾语和复合宾语。

这一章主要对英文中的简单句作了详细分析。从第二章开始，我们将连续分析、讨论英文中的三大主从复合句：名词性从句、定语从句和状语从句。掌握这一章内容是为后面学习和理解从句打基础。

### 英语句子分析练习

#### 一、分析下文中画线句子的成分。

Two men were standing at a bar (酒吧). One man turned to the other and said, “I’ ll bet you \$100 that I can bite (咬) my left eye.” The wager (赌注) was accepted, and the man popped out (突然挖出) his glass eye and bit (bite的过去式) it.

“Now,” he said, “I’ ll give you a chance to win your money back. I’ ll bet you another \$100 that I can bite my right eye.” “He can’ t have two glass eyes.” thought the other man, and he plunked down (重重甩下) his money.

Then the first man took out his false teeth and bit his right eye.

#### 二、分析下列各句的句子成分，并判断句子结构类型。

1. Time flies by.

2. I’ m on a diet.

3. I owe you one.

4. It slipped my mind.



5. Old habits die hard.
6. I enjoy your company.
7. I can' t stand the heat.
8. Chatting on the Internet brings me a lot of fun.
9. He speaks English well.
10. You can learn your English well.
11. They found the dead boy.
12. They found the boy dead.
13. I found the book easily.
14. I found the book easy.
15. Tom found Jim an apartment.
16. We found John a loyal (忠心的) friend.
17. I will find you a good teacher.
18. I find you a good teacher.
19. She will make him a good wife.
20. She will make him a good husband.

### 三、分析下列句子中的双宾语，并试着用适当的介词改写句子。

21. Give a thief enough rope and he' ll hang himself.
22. Can you recommend me a good novel?
23. He built them a hut.

24. He ordered himself a bottle of champagne.
25. Will you choose me an interesting novel?
26. Can you spare me a few minutes of your valuable time?
27. Jack doesn' t owe me anything.
28. May I ask you a favor?
29. That will save you a lot of time.
30. The novel won the author a Nobel Prize.
31. It cost me three dollars.

#### 四、分析下列句子中的宾语补足语。

32. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
33. The telescopes of the 1600' s magnified objects thirty-three times their original size.
34. The boy' s sharp remark left the teacher speechless.
35. The chairman has declared the meeting over.
36. I prefer my steak medium.
37. Dick set the caged animals free.
38. The pot calls the kettle black.

#### 五、单项选择。

39. Willa Cather considered her novel of life in nineteenth century Nebraska, My Antonia\_\_\_\_\_.

A. washerbestwork

B. her best work

C. her best work it was

D. being her best work

40. The photographs of Carrie Mae Weems, in which she often makes her family members\_\_\_\_\_, are an affectionate and incisive representation of the African American experience.

A. are her subjects

B. her subjects

C. are subjects

D. which her subjects

41. One of Ulysses S. Grant's first acts as President of the United States was to name the Seneca chief Donehogawa\_\_\_\_\_of Indian Affairs.

A. as was Commissioner

B. Commissioner

C. was Commissioner

D. him Commissioner

42. The novelist Edith Wharton considered the writer Henry James\_\_\_\_\_.

A. that a strong influence on her work

B. as strong influence on her work

C. a strong influence on her work

D. was a strong influence on her work

43. In 1993 the Library of Congress appointed author Rita Dove\_\_\_\_\_of the United States.

A. as was Poet Laureate

B. was Poet Laureate

C. Poet Laureate

D. and Poet Laureate

44. In 1952 Ernest Hemingway published *The Old Man and the Sea*,\_\_\_\_\_.

A. won him the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1954

B. and the Nobel Prize in Literature won in 1954

C. in 1954 won the Nobel Prize in Literature for this work

D. a work that won him the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1954

45. Her work in genetics won United States scientist Barbara McClintock\_\_\_\_\_in 1983.

A. was the Nobel Prize

B. the Nobel Prize was

C. the Nobel Prize

D. for the Nobel Prize

## 一、分析下文中画线句子的成分。

Two men (主) were standing (谓) at a bar (状) .

I (主) 'll bet (谓) you (间宾) \$100 (直宾) ...

The wager (主) was accepted (谓) ...

I (主) 'll give (谓) you (间宾) a chance (直宾) ...

I (主) 'll bet (谓) you (间宾) another \$100 (直宾) ...

He (主) can't have (谓) two glass eyes (宾) ...

...the first man (主) took out (谓) his false teeth (宾) and bit (谓) his right eye (宾) ...

## 二、分析下列各句的句子成分，并判断句子结构类型。

1. Time (主) flies by (谓) .

2. I (主) 'm (系) on a diet (表) .

3. I (主) owe (谓) you (间宾) one (直宾) .

4. It (主) slipped (谓) my mind (宾) .

5. Old habits (主) die (谓) hard (状) .

6. I (主) enjoy (谓) your company (宾) .

7. I (主) can't stand (谓) the heat (宾) .

8. Chatting on the Internet (主) brings (谓) me (间宾) a lot of fun (直宾) .

9. He (主) speaks (谓) English (宾) well (状) .

10. You (主) can learn (谓) your English (宾)  
well (状) .

11. They (主) found (谓) the dead boy (宾) .

12. They (主) found (谓) the boy (宾) dead (宾补) .

13. I (主) found (谓) the book (宾) easily (状) .

14. I (主) found (谓) the book (宾) easy (宾补) .

15. Tom (主) found (谓) Jim (间宾) an apartment (直  
宾) .

16. We (主) found (谓) John (宾) a loyal (忠心的)  
friend (宾补) .

17. I (主) will find (谓) you (间宾) a good  
teacher (直宾) .

18. I (主) find (谓) you (宾) a good teacher (宾补) .

19. She (主) will make (谓) him (间宾) a good wife (主  
补) .

20. She (主) will make (谓) him (宾) a good  
husband (宾补) .

### 三、分析下列句子中的双宾语，并试着用适当的介词改写句子。

21. Give enough rope to a thief and he' ll hang himself.

22. Can you recommend a good novel to me?

23. He built a hut for them.

24. He ordered a bottle of champagne for himself.

25. Will you choose an interesting novel for me?

26. Can you spare a few minutes of your valuable time for me?

27. Jack doesn't owe anything to me.

28. May I ask a favor of you?

29. That will save a lot of time for you.

30. The novel won a Nobel Prize for the author.

31. 不能改

#### 四、分析下列句子中的宾语补足语。

32. grow fonder 作宾语补足语。

33. thirty-three times their original size 作宾语补足语。

34. speechless 作宾语补足语。

35. over 作宾语补足语。

36. medium 作宾语补足语。

37. free 作宾语补足语。

38. black 作宾语补足语。

#### 五、单项选择。

39. B 40. B 41. B 42. C 43. C 44. D 45. C

## Chapter 02 名词性从句



音频

- 10 四类名词性从句
- 11 三种句子充当四种名词性成分
- 12 陈述句分别充当四种句子成分
- 13 一般疑问句分别充当四种句子成分
- 14 特殊疑问句分别充当四种句子成分



## 10 四类名词性从句 Track 010

在英语中，**名词或名词短语**主要充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语（见下表第一列）。如果我们把**句子**当作名词来用，让它们分别在另一个句子中作主语、宾语、表语和同位语（见下表第二列），那么充当这四种成分的句子就会构成对应的从句：主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。这四种从句在本质上相当于名词的作用，所以我们把它们统称为名词性从句。

简单句	主从复合句	解释
a. The book is interesting.	b. What I am reading is interesting. (主语从句)	a 句中, book 为名词作主语; b 句中, 完整句子 what I am reading 作主语, 因此称之为主语从句。该从句有自己的主语 (I) 和谓语 (am reading), what 在从句中作 am reading 的宾语。
a. I believe his words.	b. I believe what he said. (宾语从句)	a 句中, his words 作宾语; b 句中, 完整句子 what he said 作宾语, 因此称为宾语从句。该从句有自己的主语 (he) 和谓语 (said), what 在从句中作 said 的宾语。
a. English is a useful tool.	b. The book is what I want. (表语从句)	a 句中, a useful tool 作表语; b 句中, 完整句子 what I want 作表语, 因此称为表语从句。该从句有自己的主语 (I) 和谓语 (want), what 在从句中作 want 的宾语。
a. I like the book, <u>Gone with the Wind</u> .	b. The mother must accept the fact <u>that her baby is deaf</u> . (同位语从句)	a 句中, Gone with the Wind 作 the book 的同位语; b 句中, 完整句子 that her baby is deaf 作 the fact 的同位语, 因此称为同位语从句。该从句有自己的主语 (her baby) 和谓语部分 (is deaf), that 在同位语从句中不作成分。

11 三种句子充当四种名词性成分 Track 011

上文提到，**用一个完整的句子**来充当另一个句子的某一名词性成分（主语、宾语、表语或同位语），便构成了相应的名词性从句（主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句或同位语从句）。

那么，我们可以用什么样的句子来充当这四种成分呢？

我们可以用三种句子来充当这四种成分：陈述句、一般疑问句或特殊疑问句。（名词从句的本质）

陈述句	The Earth is round.	<b>That the Earth is round</b> is a fact. (陈述句作主语，构成主语从句)
一般疑问句	Does he need my help?	I don't know <b>if he needs my help</b> . (一般疑问句作宾语，构成宾语从句)
特殊疑问句	Where did he go?	I don't know <b>where he went</b> . (特殊疑问句作宾语，构成宾语从句)

引导名词从句的常用连词：

连词 that	对应陈述句	that 在从句中不作成分，也无词义
连词 whether 和 if	对应一般疑问句	whether, if 在从句中不作成分，但有词义
连接副词 when, where, why, how; 连接代词 who, whom, what, which, whose	对应特殊疑问句	when, where, why, how 在从句中作状语; who, whom, what 在从句中作主语、宾语或表语; which, whose 在从句中作定语，后面接名词。

## 12 陈述句分别充当四种句子成分 Track 012

注：本小节为重点内容，大家注意掌握。

### (1) 陈述句转换为名词性从句时，句首要加that

从上表中可以看到，我们并不是直接用三种句子来作另一个句子的某一成分，而是要分别对三种句子稍加转换。

对于陈述句，我们需要在句首加上that，然后把“that+陈述句”结构分别放在另一个句子的四种位置，即构成四种名词性从句。

#### 1) 主语从句

把“that+陈述句”结构放在主语位置即构成主语从句，例如：

English is difficult.

That English is difficult (主语从句) is not my idea (谓语部分) .

我不认为英语很难。

#### 例句

a. That he doesn't understand English is obvious.

显然他不懂英语。

b. That the Earth is round is a fact.

地球是圆的，这是事实。

c. That the moon itself does not give off light is common knowledge.

月球本身不发光，这是常识。

更常见的是用it作形式主语置于句首，而将主语从句放在句末。

d. It is obvious that he doesn' t understand English.

e. It is a fact that the Earth is round .

f. It is common knowledge that the moon itself does not give off light.

g. It is common knowledge that the whale is not a fish.

鲸不是鱼类，这是常识。

h. It is common knowledge that a flash of lightning is seen before a clap of thunder is heard .

我们先看到闪电后听到雷声，这是常识。

i. It is a shame that you did not pass the test.

你没通过这次考试，真遗憾。

下面是一些常见的主语从句句型：

① It is +过去分词+that从句：

It' s reported that... 据报道……

It' s believed that... 人们相信……

It is generally thought that... 人们普遍认为……

It should be noted that... 应当注意……

It has been found that... 现已发现……

It must be pointed out that... 必须指出……

同样可以这么用的动词还有say, expect, know, estimate, forecast等。

② It is +形容词+that从句:

It is clear that... 显然……

It is possible that... 很可能……

It is likely that... 很可能……

It is natural that... 很自然……

It is certain that... 可以肯定……

It is strange that... 奇怪的是……

It is fortunate that... 幸运的是……

It is necessary that... 有必要……

③ It is +名词短语+that从句:

It is a pity that... 可惜的是……

It is a fact that... 事实是……

It is good news that... .....真是太好了。

It is a good thing that... .....真是件好事。

It is no wonder that... 难怪……

It is a shame that... 遗憾的是……

It is an honor that... 真荣幸……

It is common knowledge that... .....是常识。

It is my belief that... 我相信.....

It is a miracle that... .....真是奇迹。

## 2) 宾语从句

把“that+陈述句”这一结构放在宾语位置即构成宾语从句：

a. I think (that) you are right.

b. We know (that) the Earth is round.

c. I think that a sound knowledge of grammar is indispensable to good writing.

我认为扎实的语法功底对英文写作极为重要。

只有宾语从句中的that才可以省略，主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句中的that一般不可以省略。

## 3) 表语从句

把“that+陈述句”这一结构放在表语位置即构成表语从句：

My idea is that the child should be sent to school.

我认为这孩子应该被送到学校去上学。

## 4) 同位语从句

把“that+陈述句”这一结构放在同位语位置即构成同位语从句。

所谓同位语，就是对另一个名词进行解释和补充说明的名词成分。当我们用一个完整的陈述句来充当同位语时，即构成同位语从句。所以同位语从句都是位于一个名词之后，形式上便构成“名词+that+陈述句”。

## 例句

a. He was prepared to prove his theory that two different weights would fall to the ground at the same time.

他想证明他的这一理论：两个不同重量的物体将同时落地。

b. The fact that he succeeded in the experiment pleased everybody.

他的试验取得了成功，这让大家很高兴。

c. The rumor that Tom was a thief turned out to be untrue.

谣传汤姆是小偷，结果证明这是不实的。

注意： 同位语从句可能与所修饰的名词被其他成分隔开。例如：

d. They spread the lie everywhere that Tom was guilty of theft.

他们到处散布谣言 说汤姆犯有盗窃罪。

e. A saying goes that practice makes perfect.

俗话说熟能生巧。

f. Dreary months dragged by before the tragic news reached her that her beloved brother had been killed for anti-Nazi activities .

在狱中挨过数月苦闷的日子后，突然一天传来噩耗：她敬爱的哥哥因参加反法西斯活动被杀害。

这种被分割开来的情形在阅读文章中是常见的，遇到时一定要认真分析，正确理解句子意思。



## (2) 陈述句句首加that的原因

一般的语法书多侧重讲“死”的规则，而不去深究规则背后合乎逻辑的语言思维。这致使很多学生花费了大量时间去学语法，记死规则，最后不会运用又很快遗忘，难修成英语学习的正果。在此我要强调，对于英语的学习，我们一定要多去追问规则背后的“为什么”，一定要think much（多思考）！

言归正传，我们为什么要加that呢？为什么在宾语从句中that又是可以省略的呢？

首先，that是直接加在陈述句开头的，因此，that显然不需要在从句中充当任何成分，只起连接作用。

先看这个例句：

That English is difficult（主语从句） is not my idea（谓语部分）。

假如我们把that去掉，上句则变成：

English is difficult is not my idea.\*

这句话就有两个中心谓语部分：is difficult和is not my idea。

在英文中，句子的核心意思主要靠谓语部分来表达，一个句子只表达一个核心意思，也就只能有一个谓语部分。现在句子有两个谓语部分，势必会造成混淆，因为读者会先读出：

English is difficult.

就觉得：“嗯，我懂了，你是要说‘英文很难学。’”

可是当他继续往下读时，又出现了is not my idea这个谓语部分。

English is difficult is not my idea.\*

这就让人感觉“丈二和尚摸不着头脑”：这句话的意思到底是在说 something is difficult, 还是要说 something is not my idea?

为了避免这种歧义，我们在句首加上一个标志性词that，that一出现就等于是在告诉读者：that后面紧接着的句子是要作为另一个句子的某一个成分来使用，不是我要表达的核心意思。因此，读者读到：

That English is difficult...

他也知道你的句子核心意思还没有讲出来，会期待接下来的内容，以了解句子的中心意思。

That English is difficult is not my idea.

读到这里，他知道了，你要表达的思想是“...is not my idea.”。

再比如：

He said no word at the meeting was strange.

对于这个句子，人们自然会想到宾语从句：

He said that no word at the meeting was strange.

他说，会上人们的发言都很正常，并没有什么奇怪的。

而你要是写主语从句，则一定要写成：

That he said no word at the meeting was strange.

他在会上一言不发，这让人觉得有些奇怪。

由此可见that的重要性。

对于同位语从句和表语从句，若没有that作标志，同样会存在这种意思混淆不清的问题。例如：

My concern is that the child should be sent to school.

我所关心的是，这孩子应该去上学。

若没有that，句子写成：My concern is the child should be sent to school.

读者先读到My concern is the child，他还以为你是在说：我担心的是这个孩子。

而后边又接了should be sent to school让人觉得奇怪。

而对于宾语从句则不然，因为谓语已经出现，谓语后边所接的成分自然是宾语。that省去不会影响对句子意思的理解。如：

I think you are right.

I think that you are right.

## 13 一般疑问句分别充当四种句子成分 Track 013

(1) 一般疑问句要变成陈述语序，并且用whether或if来作引导词

1) 主语从句

Whether he comes or not makes no difference to me.

他来不来对我来说无所谓。

2) 宾语从句

I don't know if/whether he needs my help.

我不知道他是否需要我帮忙。

3) 表语从句

My concern is whether he comes or not.

我关心的是他到底来不来。

4) 同位语从句

They are faced with the problem whether they should continue to work.

他们面临是否应该继续干下去这个问题。

(2) 引导词用if还是whether

1) if一般只用于引导宾语从句，而whether可引导包括宾语从句在内的各种名词从句。

a. If he comes or not makes no difference.\* (不用if引导主语从句)

b. The question is **if** he will come.\* (不用if引导表语从句)

2) if不和or not直接连用, 即一般不说if or not, 但可以说if...or not。而whether没有此限制。

a. I don' t know if or not he will come.\*

b. I don' t know **whether or not** he will come.

## 14 特殊疑问句分别充当四种句子成分 Track 014

### (1) 特殊疑问句须转换成陈述句语序，不用倒装或疑问语序

a. There arose the question **where we could get the loan**.

问题来了：我们从哪里弄到这笔贷款。

b. I have no idea **when he will return** .

我不知道他何时回来。

c. **Why he refused to cooperate with us** is still a mystery.

他为什么拒绝与我们合作，这还是个谜。

上面的句子我们不能说成：

There arose the question where could we get the loan.\*

I have no idea when will he return.\*

Why did he refuse to cooperate with us is still a mystery.\*

### (2) 充当四种句子成分

#### 1) 主语从句

a. **What happened on the morning of September 11, 2001** will be forever etched (铭刻) in our memories.

2001年9月11日上午发生的事（9• 11事件）将会永远印刻在人们的记忆中。

b. What we need is a CEO like Steve Jobs, who is with great foresight.

我们需要一位像史蒂夫·乔布斯这样高瞻远瞩的首席执行官。

c. What he told you is true.

他告诉你的是真的。

d. Who will chair the meeting has not been decided yet.

由谁来主持会议尚未决定。

e. When the meeting is to be held has not yet been decided.

会议何时举行还没决定。

f. How a person masters his fate is more important than what his fate is.

对于一个人来说，重要的是如何掌握自己的命运而不是纠结于命运本身。

## 2) 宾语从句

a. The mother will buy whichever books her son wants.

不论儿子喜欢哪本书，那位母亲都会买下。

b. You should vote for which candidate you assume best.

你应该把票投给你最看好的候选人。

c. I have not decided whom I should vote for .

我还没决定把票投给谁。

d. They gave who came to the meeting a pamphlet.

他们给与会者分发了小册子。

e. Could you tell me where the post office is?

请问邮局怎么走？

f. We don't know why he did not come yesterday.

我们不知道他昨天为什么没来。

### 3) 表语从句

a. Change is what keeps us fresh and innovative. Change is what keeps us from getting stale. Change is what keeps us young.

唯有变革才能使我们保持思维敏锐，富有创造性；唯有变革才能防止我们思想僵化；唯有变革才能使我们永葆青春。

b. The point is whose book is the most interesting.

重点是谁的书最有趣。

c. Money is what we are badly in need of.

我们急需的是钱。

d. Yesterday is history. Tomorrow is a mystery. Today is a gift. That's why it's called the present!

昨天已成为历史。明天还是个谜。今天是一件礼物。因此它才被称为“present”！

e. The point is when you will become rich.

问题是你什么时候才会变得富有。

f. This is where our basic interest lies.



这是我们的根本利益所在。

g. My question is where we are going to have our holidays.

我想知道我们要去哪里度假。

4) 同位语从句

a. I have no idea who he is.

我不认识他。

b. The question who should go abroad on this business tour requires consideration.

派谁去国外出差这个问题还有待商榷。

c. I have no idea when he will return.

我不知道他什么时候回来。

d. There arose the question where we could get the loan.

那么问题来了：我们从哪里弄到这笔贷款。

### 温故知新

这里对名词性从句的讲解完全是一种全新的思维，可简单概括为这样一句话：名词从句就是用三种句子分别充当另外一个句子的四种句子成分。

这里的三种句子是指：陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句。

四种句子成分是指：主语、宾语、表语和同位语。

这三种句子并不是直接放在另一个句子中作成分的，而是要作以下调整：

1) 用陈述句作名词成分时，需要在句首加that（引导宾语从句的that可省略）；

2) 用一般疑问句作名词成分时，需要先将疑问句换成陈述语序，然后在句首加上whether或if（只用在宾语从句中），以保留原句的疑问含义；

3) 用特殊疑问句作名词成分时，只需要将特殊疑问句换成陈述句语序。

在了解以上名词性从句的本质之后，重点掌握that的用法。

### 名词性从句练习

#### 一、把下列句子改写成it作主语的句子。

1. That the Earth is round is a fact.
2. That smoking can cause cancer is true.
3. That English is becoming an international language is true.
4. That Clint failed his English exam was strange.
5. That they are still alive is a consolation.
6. That he has been late for work over and over again is a serious matter.

#### 二、将括号里的疑问句转换成名词性从句填入句中。

7. \_\_\_\_\_ is unimportant to me. (Does she come?)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ remains uncertain. (Shall we have the match?)
9. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_. (Should we wait for him?)

10. No one knows exactly\_\_\_\_\_. (Is there life on other planets?)

11. I am interested in the question\_\_\_\_\_. (Will human be able to live on the moon someday?)

12. My question is\_\_\_\_\_. (Do we have enough time to go to the movie?)

13. Do you know\_\_\_\_\_? (Does sound travel faster than light?)

14. I don' t know\_\_\_\_\_. (How old is he?)

15. \_\_\_\_\_was interesting. (What was he talking about?)

16. Do you know\_\_\_\_\_? (What' s on TV tonight?)

17. Please tell me\_\_\_\_\_. (Where do you live?)

18. I wonder\_\_\_\_\_. (Why did dinosaurs become extinct?)

19. \_\_\_\_\_wasn' t true. (What did she say?)

20. \_\_\_\_\_is true. (What did he tell you?)

21. \_\_\_\_\_is still a mystery. (Why did they refuse to cooperate with us?)

22. Do you know\_\_\_\_\_? (When are they coming?)

23. I can' t remember\_\_\_\_\_. (How much does it cost?)

24. Let' s ask him\_\_\_\_\_. (Which book does he want?)

25. I don' t know\_\_\_\_\_. (Who is coming to the party?)

26. I don' t know\_\_\_\_\_. (Who are those people?)

27. Do you know\_\_\_\_\_? (Whose pen is this?)
28. \_\_\_\_\_is a secret. (Why did they leave the country?)
29. \_\_\_\_\_is none of your business. (Where did she go?)
30. \_\_\_\_\_will be forever etched in our memories. (What happened on the morning of September 11, 2001?)
31. I don' t remember\_\_\_\_\_. (How many letters are there in the English alphabet?)
32. I need to find out\_\_\_\_\_. (How old does a person have to be to get a driver' s license?)
33. The little boy wants to know\_\_\_\_\_. (Do animals have the same emotions as human beings?)
34. The little boy wants to know\_\_\_\_\_. (Why is the water of the sea salty?)

### 三、单项选择。

35. No one knows exactly\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. how did the speech begin
  - B. how the speech began
  - C. how the beginning of the speech
  - D. of how beginning the speech
36. It is obvious\_\_\_\_\_on more important things.
- A. which the money should we spend
  - B. what the money should we spend

C. that the money should we spend

D. that we should spend the money

37. \_\_\_\_\_ hard water does not mix well with soap.

A. That is a well known fact

B. That is a well known fact in which

C. It is a well known fact that

D. It is a well known that

38. \_\_\_\_\_ every magnet is surrounded by a magnetic field.

A. It believes that

B. It believed that

C. It is believed that

D. It's believing that

39. \_\_\_\_\_ was to return to school.

A. That really interested him

B. What really interested him

C. Which really interested him

D. That interested him really

40. Stopping pouring polluted water into the river  
is \_\_\_\_\_ the factory has to solve at present.

A. what

B. that

C. which

D. why

41. A hinge joint is\_\_\_\_\_permits the forward and backward movement of a door.

A. what

B. which

C. that

D. where

42. It' s doubtful\_\_\_\_\_the government of that country can accept them as permanent residents.

A. whether

B. that

C. how

D. what

43. It has always puzzled me\_\_\_\_\_the old man tied a red silk ribbon on the young tree in his courtyard.

A. that

B. why

C. where

D. what

44. Scientists have reached a conclusion\_\_\_\_\_the temperature on Earth is getting higher and higher.

- A. what
- B. that
- C. which
- D. as

45. An idea came to her\_\_\_\_\_she might do the experiment in another way.

- A. that
- B. what
- C. when
- D. which

46. \_\_\_\_\_the mass of the nucleus is slightly less than the total mass of the protons and neutrons which made up the nucleus.

- A. Itfoundthat
- B. Itwas foundthat
- C. Itwas foundfor
- D. Itfinds that

47. He wondered\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. what will be his wife' s reaction
- B. what would his wife' s reaction be
- C. how would be his wife' s reaction

D. what his wife' s reaction would be

48. He asked me\_\_\_\_\_I intended to do after my graduation.

A. thatwhat

B. what

C. that

D. which

49. Listening carefully to\_\_\_\_\_in class means less work later.

A. what does the teacher say

B. what the teacher says

C. thatthe teacher says

D. whichthe teacher says

50. After the accident, I opened my eyes slowly and realized\_\_\_\_\_I was still alive.

A. that

B. whether

C. what

D. which

51. John didn' t say\_\_\_\_\_he would return, but I presume he' ll be back for dinner.

A. thatwhen



B. when

C. ifor not

D. where

52. He works too hard. That is\_\_\_\_\_is wrong with him.

A. thatwhich

B. thatwhat

C. what

D. the thingwhat

53. \_\_\_\_\_to space travelers is high acceleration or deceleration forces.

A. Danger canbe

B. Whatcanbedangerous

C. Theycanbedangerous

D. Whiledanger

54. According to some educators, the goal of teaching is to help students learn what\_\_\_\_\_to know to live a well-adjusted and successful life.

A. do theyneed

B. theyneed

C. theyare needed

D. as theymayneed

55. \_\_\_\_\_the trainer wanted to tell is\_\_\_\_\_Asian elephants are easier to tame than African ones.

A. That, those

B. What, that

C. What, the

D. That, the

56. \_\_\_\_\_the London Zoo will adopt as a measurement at the critical moment is to try all ways of preserving the animals in the zoo.

A. That

B. What

C. It' s

D. Whether

57. The problem now is\_\_\_\_\_we can adopt to overcome the difficulty of fund shortage.

A. whatmeasure

B. thatmeasure

C. measure that

D. measure which

### 名词性从句练习答案

#### 一、把下列句子改写成it作主语的句子。

1. It is a fact that the Earth is round.

2. It is true that smoking can cause cancer.
3. It is true that English is becoming an international language.
4. It was strange that Clint failed his English exam.
5. It is a consolation that they are still alive.
6. It is a serious matter that he has been late for work over and over again.

## 二、将括号里的疑问句转换成名词性从句填入句中。

7. Whether she comes is unimportant to me.
8. Whether we shall have the match remains uncertain.
9. I wonder whether we should wait for him .
10. No one knows exactly whether there is life on other planets.
11. I am interested in the question whether human will be able to live on the moon someday.
12. My question is whether we have enough time to go to the movie.
13. Do you know whether sound travels faster than light?
14. I don' t know how old he is .
15. What he was talking about was interesting.
16. Do you know what' s on TV tonight?
17. Please tell me where you live.

18. I wonder why dinosaurs became extinct.

19. What she said wasn' t true.

20. What he told you is true.

21. Why they refused to cooperate with us is still a mystery.

22. Do you know when they are coming?

23. I can' t remember how much it costs .

24. Let' s ask him which book he wants .

25. I don' t know who is coming to the party.

26. I don' t know who those people are.

27. Do you know whose pen this is?

28. Why they left the country is a secret.

29. Where she went is none of your business.

30. What happened on the morning of September 11, 2001 will be forever etched in our memories.

31. I don' t remember how many letters there are in the English alphabet.

32. I need to find out how old a person has to be to get a driver' s license.

33. The little boy wants to know whether animals have the same emotions as human beings.

34. The little boy wants to know why the water of the sea is salty.

### 三、单项选择。

35. B   36. D   37. C   38. C   39. B   40. A   41. A   42. A

43. B   44. B   45. A   46. B   47. D   48. B   49. B   50. A

51. B   52. C   53. B   54. B   55. B   56. B   57. A

## Chapter 03 定语从句



音频

- 15 定语从句概述
- 16 先行词指人，用关系代词who/whom
- 17 表示人或物的所属关系，用whose
- 18 先行词指物，用关系代词which
- 19 that可以指代人，也可以指代物
- 20 在从句中作宾语的关系代词可以省略
- 21 关系副词when的用法

- 22 关系副词where的用法
- 23 关系副词why的用法
- 24 不用逗号隔开——限制性定语从句
- 25 用逗号隔开——非限制性定语从句
- 26 用或不用逗号隔开，句义有差别
- 27 that引导定语从句和同位语从句时的区别

## 第一节 定语从句概述

### 15 定语从句概述 Track 015

#### (1) 形容词作定语和从句作定语

在英文中，很多时候我们都是用形容词作定语，来修饰一个名词（见下表例句）。但是若要表达更为复杂的意思，简单地用形容词作定语就无能为力了，我们就要借助于一个句子来修饰名词，作名词的定语，对名词进行限制。那么**作定语的这个句子就称为定语从句**。

两种定语	例句	比较
形容词作定语	I don' t like <b>lazy</b> people.	形容词作定语多置于名词之前。
完整句子作定语	a. I don' t like people <b>who are lazy</b> . b. I don' t like people <b>who are never on time</b> . 我不喜欢从不守时的人。 c. I don' t like people <b>who never keep their words</b> . 我不喜欢不守信用的人。	从句修饰名词要置于名词之后。从句往往表达更为复杂的意思。比如 b、c 两个句子就不使用形容词来作定语，而要采用句子作定语。

#### (2) 定语从句的两个重要概念：先行词和关系词

1) **先行词**：被定语从句修饰或限制的对象称为先行词。上表“完整句子作定语”的例句中people即为先行词。

2) **关系词**：指代先行词，起连接主句和从句的作用并且在定语从句中充当一定成分的连接词称为关系词。上表例句中的who即为关系词。因此关系词有两个作用：**代词作用**——指代先行词并且在定语从句中充当一定成分，上表例句中的who作主语；**连接作用**——一起连接主句和从句的作用。



3) 主句和从句: 上面例句中I don' t like people. 是独立的主句;  
who are lazy/never on time则是定语从句。

## 第二节 关系代词的用法

引导定语从句的关系代词有：

先行词指人：who, whom

先行词指物：which

先行词指人或物均可：that, whose

下面我们一一详细介绍这些词的用法。

## 16 先行词指人，用关系代词who/whom Track 016

### (1) 先行词指人时用who/whom

先看一个简单句：

The woman is a famous dancer and she lives next door.

这位女士是一名著名的舞蹈演员，她就住在我家隔壁。

上述简单句中有一个重复元素：she就指代the woman，这是两句之间的交叉点，而通过这个交叉点就可以建立起两句之间的关系，所以定语从句也称为**关系从句** (relative clause)。我们现在要用she lives next door来作定语修饰the woman，告诉对方哪个woman是舞蹈演员。而在定语从句中，指代人的关系词用who。前面说过关系词既有代词的作用又起着连词的作用，因此，上句可改写成：

The woman is a famous dancer who (=and she) lives next door.

定语从句一般紧跟在它所修饰的名词后边。因此，上句又可进一步写成：

The woman who lives next door is a famous dancer.

到此，一个标准的定语从句制造完毕！关系词who既指代先行词the woman，同时又在从句中作主语。

### 例句

a. Friendship is a very difficult thing. It is hard to handle. It creates many different problems. In fact I would say that friendship is as hard to handle as love is, or even marriage. Of course I am not talking about easy-comeeasy-go

friendship. I' m talking about friends who care deeply about each other, who support each other, who make life worth living. I' m talking about friends who you can share almost everything with.

b. Anger is a thief who steals away the nice moments.

愤怒是一个偷走美好时光的窃贼。

c. He who is not handsome at twenty, nor strong at thirty, nor rich at forty, nor wise at fifty, will never be handsome, strong, rich, or wise.

一个人若20岁不俊美、30岁不健壮、40岁不富有、50岁不睿智，那么他将永远也不会拥有这些。

d. There is this difference between happiness and wisdom: the person who thinks himself the happiest man really is so; but the person who thinks himself the wisest is generally the greatest fool.

幸福与智慧区别于此：认为自己最幸福的人，那他真的就是最幸福的；而认为自己最智慧的人，却往往是最大的傻瓜。

e. The world is a book, and those who do not travel read only one page.

世界犹如一本书，而那些从不出门旅行的人仅仅读了这本书的一页。

## (2) who和whom的区别

1) who在定语从句中可作主语、宾语或表语，但who之前不可用介词（如不能说with who，只能说with whom）。

a. I like the people who I work with. (who作介词with的宾语。)

我很喜欢同我一起工作的那些人。

b. I like the people **with whom** I work.

c. I' m talking about friends **who** you can share almost everything **with**.

我说的是那些几乎可以分享一切的朋友。

d. I' m talking about friends **with whom** you can share almost everything.e. I think you should stay faithful to the person **who** you' re married to.

我认为你应该对你的配偶忠诚。

f. I think you should stay faithful to the person **to whom** you' re married.

2) whom在定语从句中**不能作主语**，但可作宾语或表语。

a. A rich person is not one **who** has the most, but is one **who** needs the least. (不用...one **whom has**...)

一个人富有，并不是因为他拥有最多，而是因为他需要最少。

b. Only the people have the patience to do simple things perfectly will acquire the skill to do difficult things easily.

只有有耐心圆满完成简单工作的人，才能够轻而易举地完成困难的工作。

A. whom

B. who

正确答案：B。

## 17 表示人或物的所属关系，用whose Track 017

我们用whose表示所属关系，其作用就如同物主代词my, your, her, his, their以及our一样，whose后边**要接名词**。whose的先行词可是人也可可是物。“whose+名词”在从句中可作主语、动词宾语或介词宾语。

简单句	定语从句	whose 可指人或物
I know a friend. <b>His brother</b> is a pop singer.	I know a friend <b>whose brother</b> is a pop singer.	whose 代替了 his, 指人 friend。
These children sit in a schoolroom. <b>Its windows</b> are all broken.	These children sit in a schoolroom <b>whose windows</b> are all broken.	whose 代替了 its, 指物 schoolroom。

### 例句

a. When I looked through the window, I saw a girl **whose beauty** took my breath away. (作主语, whose指人a girl)

透过窗子，我看到了一个女孩，她的美丽令我惊叹。

b. It was a meeting **whose importance** I did not realize at the time. (作动词宾语, whose指事物a meeting)

我当时没有意识到这个会议的重要性。

c. Atlas (in Greek mythology) was a kneeling man **on whose shoulders** the world rested. (作介词宾语, whose指人a kneeling man)

阿特拉斯（古希腊神话中的人物）是一个跪着的人，世界端放在他的肩上。

## 18 先行词指物，用关系代词which Track 018

We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.

同样道理，我们用which代替they，来指代sentences，告诉对方我们正在学习什么类型的句子。

We are studying sentences which contain adjective clauses.

我们在学习带有形容词性从句的句子。

which可以指代由单个名词或代词构成的先行词：

a. Anger is a wind which blows out the lamp of the mind.

愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。

b. Perhaps it is human to appreciate little that which we have and to long for that which we have not.

或许，“不惜已获，贪求不得”是人类的共同弱点吧。（先行词是that，which指代单个代词。）

which可以指代一个短语：

c. He likes climbing mountains, which is a good exercise.  
(先行词是主句的一部分climbing mountains)

which还可以指代前面整个主句：

d. Tom was late, which surprised me.

汤姆迟到了，这让我很吃惊。

e. Jane tore up my photo, which upset me.

简撕毁了我的照片，这令我很伤心。

f. Jane wore her swimming things in the office, which shocked her boss a great deal.

简把泳装穿到办公室来，这着实让她的老板吃了一惊。

g. Tom ran all the way from the station, which I thought was incredible (难以置信).

我真不敢相信汤姆竟然一路跑到了车站。



## 19 that可以指代人，也可以指代物 Track 019

that既可指人，也可指物；that不用在非限制性定语从句中（关于限制性和非限制性定语从句，将在第四节详细讨论）；that不能用于介词之后，这同who一样。

The world\_\_\_\_\_we live is made up of matter.

我们所生活的世界是由物质组成的。

A. in which

B. in that

C. which

正确答案：A。

上句我们也可以说成：

The world that/which we live in is made up of matter.

在下列情况中最好用that：（重点记忆）

（1）当先行词既有人又有物时，关系代词用that

The writer and his novels that the article deals with are quite familiar to us.

我们对这篇文章中提到的作家及其作品耳熟能详。

（2）先行词为指物的all, little, few, much, none以及the first时，关系代词用that

a. All that glitters is not gold.

闪光的未必都是黄金。

b. This book contains little that is useful.

这本书中有用的东西不多。

c. There is not much that can be done.

可做的不多。

d. As long as you stand up to the difficulties, there are none that cannot be overcome.

只要你勇敢地去面对困难，就没有什么克服不了的！

(3) 先行词是不定代词something, anything, nothing, everything时，关系代词一般用that

a. Is there anything that I can do for you?

b. Greater expense does not always equal better gift. I would much rather receive a gift that was unique or that I knew my friend had put some thought into rather than something that cost a lot of money but that I didn't need or want. I would much rather receive something that made me laugh, made me reminisce, or fit my personality than something that cost a lot but that I will just throw in my closet and forget about.

礼物并不是价格越贵就越好。我倒希望收到的礼物是很别致的，或是我知道那是朋友为我精心准备的，而不是花费很多却不是我需要或想要的。我希望收到的是能够让我开心、让我追忆或是适合我口味的礼物，而不是价格不菲、看完之后随手就扔到储藏室而抛在脑后的礼物。

(4) 先行词被any, only, all, every, no, some, much, few, little, 序数词, 最高级, the only, the one, the very, the right以及the last 修饰时，关系代词用that。

- a. Tell us all things **that** you know.
- b. There is no difficulty (**that**) they can' t overcome.
- c. The only thing **that** we should do is find our way home.
- d. The very problem **that** I want to solve is like this.

## 20 在从句中作宾语的关系代词可以省略 Track 020

上述关系代词who, whom, which和that若在定语从句中作宾语, 往往可以省略。例如:

- a. Tina likes the present **which I gave** her for her birthday.
- b. Tina likes the present **that I gave** her for her birthday.
- c. Tina likes the present **I gave** her for her birthday.
- d. I like the people **who I work with**.
- e. I like the people **I work with**.
- f. I' m talking about friends **who you can** share almost everything with.
- g. I' m talking about friends **you can** share almost everything with.

### 第三节 关系副词的用法

在英语中，引导定语从句的关系副词主要有when，where和why，它们在从句中分别作时间状语、地点状语和原因状语。

## 21 关系副词when的用法 Track 021

### (1) 先行词指时间

when引导限制性和非限制性定语从句，其先行词须是表示**时间**的名词，如day, year, time等。when可用“时间介词+ which”来替换。

#### 例句

a. I' ll never forget the day **when** I met you.

b. I' ll never forget the day **on which** I met you.

c. April Fool' s Day is that special day of the year **when** you should play a joke on someone! Children' s favorites are to put salt in the sugar bowl for Dad' s morning coffee or put chalk on a desk chair at school so the teacher gets a white backside! But remember, if you play a joke after 12 noon, YOU are the April Fool!

d. We will put off the outing until next week, **when** we won' t be so busy.

e. March 10, 1876 was the day **when** (= **on which**) the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.

f. The day may soon come **when** we don' t bother to go to office but just work at home.

### (2) 关系副词when在从句中作时间状语

**注意：**表示时间的先行名词，若其定语从句不是缺状语，而是**缺主语或宾语**，关系词**要用which或that**。因为用when来引导定语从句

的前提条件是：when在其所引导的定语从句中作时间状语。

### 例句

a. The day, **which** began brightly, ended with a violent storm.

那天开始的时候还是晴空万里，后来却下起了暴风雨。（which作主语）

b. I' ll never forget the time **which** I spent on campus.  
(which作spent的宾语)

c. I' ll never forget the day **when** we first met in the park. (when作时间状语，修饰met)

## 22 关系副词where的用法 Track 022

### (1) 先行词指地点

where引导定语从句时，其先行词必须是表示地点的名词，如place, house等。

a. — Since you work in the theater, can' t you get me a free ticket now and then?

—既然你在剧院工作，你能否时常给我拿一些免费的票？

— Certainly if you bring me a few notes now and then from the bank where you work!

— 没问题，只要你能在你工作的那家银行时常给我拿出一些“票子”。

b. Do you know any\_place where I can buy Clint' s grammar book?

c. Do you know any\_place at which I can buy Clint' s grammar book?

d. This is the town where (= in which) I spent my childhood.

e. This is the restaurant where I often have my breakfast.

### (2) 关系副词where在从句中作地点状语

注意：与when类似，并非所有先行词表示地点的情况下，都得用where来引导定语从句。这得看关系词在从句中所充当的成分。where



在定语从句中作地点状语，但若定语从句缺主语或宾语，就要用which或that来引导。

### 例句

- a. This is the town where I spent my childhood.
- b. This is the town which I told you about before.  
(which作about的宾语)
- c. The library where students often study was on fire last night.
- d. The library, which was built in the 1930' s, needs to be renovated. (which作从句的主语)
- e. One of the places which I want to visit someday is Tibet. (which作visit的宾语)

## 23 关系副词why的用法 Track 023

用来表原因，只引导限制性定语从句，先行词是reason等表示原因的名词，why在定语从句中作状语。

This is the reason why I didn' t come here. （此处why = for which）

## 第四节 限制性和非限制性定语从句

英语中的定语从句有限制性和非限制性之分。二者在形式上的区别是：限制性定语从句与其先行词之间不用逗号分开，而非限制性定语从句与其先行词之间则有逗号分开。而具体有逗号还是没有逗号并不是随意的，二者在意义上有所区别。我们可以把定语从句分为三种情况来分析。

## 24 不用逗号隔开——限制性定语从句 Track 024

作用：用来提供必要的信息，以说明所修饰的先行词的身份或性质，或用来限制先行词所指的范围。若去掉限制性定语从句，则主句部分意义不明确，或不完整。

比如：I don' t like people. 这句话意思就是不明确的，因此其后必须加一个限制性定语从句，才能使得句义完整。比如：

- a. I don' t like people who are never on time.
- b. I don' t like people who never keep their words.
- c. I don' t like people who are lazy.
- d. I don' t like people who are selfish.

以上各句中的定语从句都是用来说明people的性质，是必不可少的信息。因此不能用逗号把它变为非限制性定语从句。再比如：

e. There are two factors which determine an individual' s intelligence.

决定人的智力的因素有两方面。

f. He is a man who is of value to the people.

他是一个有利于人民的人。

g. People who live in glasshouses shouldn' t throw stones.

不要五十步笑百步。

## 25 用逗号隔开——非限制性定语从句 Track 025

作用：用来提供**附加而非必要**信息，只是对先行词作进一步的解释、补充或说明。若去掉此定语从句，整个主句意义仍然很明确，不会引起误解和歧义。

### 例句

a. Beijing, **which is the capital of China**, has developed into an international city.

b. My mother, **who is 50 this year**, lives with me now.

c. Einstein, **who was a great Jewish scientist**, came up with the theory of relativity.

d. Hawaii, **which consists of eight principal islands**, is a favorite vacation spot.

以上各句中的定语从句都是在对其前面的先行词进行补充说明，向读者提供附加信息，均不能变为限制性定语从句。比如，若说My mother **who is 50 this year** lives with me now.则让人理解为“我有好几位母亲，目前和我住在一起的是今年50岁的那位。”

总的原则：如果定语从句修饰一个专有名词，我们一般要用逗号隔开，也就是说要用非限制性定语从句。这是因为专有名词本身意思已经很完整，不需要限制，定语从句只是对它进行补充。

26 用或不用逗号隔开，句义有差别 Track 026

在英语中，还有一类句子用限制性或非限制性定语从句都可以，但强调的意义不同，句义有区别。试比较：

限制性	非限制性	解释
a. He has a daughter who works in a hospital.	b. He has a daughter, who works in a hospital.	a 句表示他有多多个女儿，其中一个女儿在医院工作。 b 句强调他有一个女儿，不是儿子，“在医院工作”纯粹是为了补充信息。
a. The food which wasn't in the fridge all went off.	b. The food, which wasn't in the fridge, all went off.	a 句表示没有放在冰箱里的那部分食物坏了。 b 句强调所有食物都坏了，因为没有放在冰箱里。此时定语从句补充说明了食物变质的原因。

a. The cab drivers who knew about the traffic jam took another road.

知道那里堵车的出租车司机换了另一条路。（言外之意：不知道的司机则没有换路线，只有部分司机换路线了。）

b. The cab drivers, who knew about the traffic jam, took another road.

出租车司机知道那里堵车了，他们都换了另一条路。（全部司机都知道，都换了行驶路线。）

最后，请注意上述两种定语从句在翻译上的差别。

限制性定语从句一般翻译成定语的形式“……的”，而非限制性定语从句往往译成各种状语。例如：

c. The food, which wasn' t in the fridge, all went off.

所有食物都坏了，因为没有放在冰箱里。（译成原因状语从句）

d. The ambassador gave a dinner to the scientists, with whom he especially wished to talk.

大使宴请了那些科学家，因为他特别想与他们交流一下。（译成原因状语从句）

e. The people were desperate for work, any work, which could support their family.

人们急于找到工作，什么工作都行，只要能养家糊口。（译成条件状语从句）

f. The millionaire had another house built, which he didn' t need at all.

那位百万富翁又建了一幢房子，尽管他并不需要。（译成让步状语从句）

## 第五节 that引导定语从句和同位语从句时的区别

### 27 that引导定语从句和同位语从句时的区别 Track 027

#### (1) that是否作成分

that在定语从句中充当成分，而在同位语从句中不作任何成分，仅起连接作用。

a. The rumor that he spread everywhere turned out to be untrue.

b. The rumor that Tom was a thief turned out to be untrue.

以上两句先行词都是the rumor，引导词都是that。但a句中的that在从句he spread everywhere中作spread的宾语。故a句中that引导的是定语从句。b句中的that在从句Tom was a thief中不作任何成分，故b句中that引导的是同位语从句，作the rumor的同位语，补充说明the rumor的具体内容。

c. The fact that we talked about is very important.  
(that作 talk about的宾语，定语从句)

d. The fact that he succeeded in the experiment pleased everybody. (that不充当成分，同位语从句)

#### (2) 从句的作用

定语从句相当于形容词，它对先行词起修饰、描述、限制的作用；同位语从句相当于一个名词，它是前面名词的内容的具体表述，与前面名词是同位关系。



- a. The news that you heard is not true. (定语从句)
- b. The news that Lincoln was murdered at a theatre is true. (同位语从句)
- c. The fact which you pointed out made me interested. (定语从句)
- d. The fact that there are no lives on the moon is known to us all. (同位语从句)

### 温故知新

定语从句是英文造句规则中的一个难点，也是重点。它有两个重要概念：先行词和关系词。定语从句的核心内容都是围绕着这两者之间的关系展开的，重点是讨论先行词和关系词之间的搭配关系，比如先行词指人，关系词要用who或that；先行词指物，关系词要用which或that；指时间一般用关系词when（只作状语）等等。

其次，在写文章时，一定要真正会判断何时用限制性定语从句，何时用非限制性定语从句。这两种从句形式上的不同其实是它们在思维差异上的反映。

最后，还有一个重点：学会区别that引导的定语从句和同位语从句。

### 定语从句练习

一、将下列各题中的两个简单句合并为一个主从复合句，用第二个句子作定语。

1. The girl is happy. She has won the race.
2. The student is from America. He sits next to me.
3. The boy was not badly hurt. The boy fell from a tree.
4. The taxi driver was friendly. He took me to the airport.

5. I can' t remember the name of the person. I gave the money to him.

6. The employees had to retire. They had reached the age of sixty-five.

7. The teacher spoke to the boys. Their work was below standard.

8. The couple were friendly. I rented their house.

9. He is the professor. I am taking his grammar course.

10. That is the man. His son died in that air crash.

11. The man called the police. His car was stolen.

12. The man is famous. His picture is in the newspaper.

13. I have a neighbor. His dog barks all day long.

14. The girl is a good friend of mine. I borrowed her camera.

15. The church was built in 1400. We were married in the church.

16. She told me her address. I wrote it down on a piece of paper.

17. We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.

18. The exhibition was not very interesting. My friend took me to see it.

19. John isn' t home yet. That worries me.

20. Jack was fired from his job. That surprised all his co-workers.

21. My roommate always plays music at the dorm. That really gets on my nerves.

二、将下列各句中的定语从句引导词that改为who或which，或省略。

22. The girl that answered the phone was polite.

23. I didn't know any of the girls that Bill invited to his party.

24. The woman that I saw in the park was feeding the pigeons.

25. I like the barber that usually cuts my hair.

26. The person that I admire most is my father.

27. The girls that I met at the party last night were very nice.

28. The couple that live next to me have three cars.

29. The soup that I had for lunch was too salty.

30. The pill that I took made me sleepy.

31. My daughter asked me a question that I couldn't answer.

32. The man that my sister goes out with is tall, dark and handsome.

33. I couldn't understand the woman that I talked to on the phone.

三、将下列各题中的两个简单句合并为一个主从复合句，用第二个句子作定语。

34. Monday is the day. We will come on that day.

35. He arrived in Shanghai on October 1. On the same day I left.

36. July is the month. The weather is usually the hottest in that month.

37. April Fool's Day is that special day of the year. On the day you may play a joke on someone.

38. March 10, 1876 was the day. On that day the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.

39. The city was beautiful. We spent our vacation there.

40. That is the restaurant. I will meet you there.

41. The town is small. I grew up there.

42. This is the house. They put their tools in it.

四、用where, when或which填空。

43. I'll never forget the day\_\_\_\_\_I met you for the first time.

44. I'll never forget the days\_\_\_\_\_I spent with you.

45. The day,\_\_\_\_\_began brightly, ended with a violent storm.

46. The day\_\_\_\_\_we don't bother to go to the office but just work at home may come soon.

47. I arrived in Beijing on the day\_\_\_\_\_it was snowing heavily.

48. This is the town\_\_\_\_\_I was born.

49. This is the town\_\_\_\_\_I want to visit most someday.

50. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place\_\_\_\_\_contains much carbon dioxide so that it won' t decay rapidly.

51. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place\_\_\_\_\_there is much carbon dioxide so that it won' t decay rapidly.

52. The library,\_\_\_\_\_was built in the 1930' s, needs to be renovated.

53. I guess you can find him in the library\_\_\_\_\_he works.

## 五、判断下列各句中定语从句的正误，如有错误，请改正。

54. He is the man who he taught me English.

55. I gave the book that he needed it to him.

56. The airline has a booklet who will tell you most of the important things about a trip to Europe.

57. The man which told me the news refused to give me his name.

58. The book which I bought it at the bookstore was very useful.

59. The woman was nice that I met yesterday.

60. The couple which live next to me are friendly.

61. I met a woman whose husband is a famous lawyer.
62. Let ABC be a triangle whose sides are of unequal length.
63. Do you know the people who live in that house?
64. The boys whom I met at the party last night were interesting.
65. I enjoyed the music which we listened to.
66. He dropped in on an old friend that day when he visited his club.
67. The day, which began brightly, ended with a violent storm.

六、分析下列各句中定语从句分别属于第四节所述3种情形中的哪一种，必要时添加逗号。

68. I don't like the stories that have unhappy endings.
69. A dictionary is a book that gives you the meaning of words.
70. It seems that the Earth is the only planet that can support life.
71. The teacher who comes from Canada teaches us English.
72. We are studying sentences which contain adjective clauses.
73. I saw him stand under the apple tree which was behind the house.
74. The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers.

75. He has a daughter who works in a hospital.
76. An elephant which is the earth's largest land mammal has few natural enemies other than human beings.
77. One of the elephants which we saw at the zoo had only one tusk.
78. The rice which we had for dinner last night was very good.
79. Rice which is grown in many countries is a staple food throughout much of the world.
80. Jane was delighted when she opened the present which was from her exboyfriend.
81. A child whose parents are dead is called orphan.

七、翻译下列句子，句中要含有定语从句。

82. 我昨天买了一本书，该书的作者是一位盲人。
83. 我的办公室在这栋大楼的二层，它很小。
84. 你昨天借给我的那本书很有趣。
85. 那位老师教我英文，他来自加拿大。
86. 和我一起工作的那个女孩有男朋友。
87. 告诉我今天早晨你迟到的原因。
88. 他们到的那天正在下雨。
89. 他是一个值得信赖的人。
90. 你住的那家酒店叫什么名字？

91. 接电话的那位男士告诉我你不在。

## 八、单项选择。

92. The professor and her achievement\_\_\_\_\_you told me about are admired by us all.

- A. who
- B. which
- C. that
- D. whom

93. I don' t suppose anything happens\_\_\_\_\_he doesn' t foresee.

- A. that
- B. which
- C. what
- D. as

94. They shouted with the loudest voice\_\_\_\_\_they could.

- A. when
- B. that
- C. which
- D. what

95. She and her family bicycle to work,\_\_\_\_\_helps them keep fit.



A. which

B. who

C. as

D. that

96. He' s written a book\_\_\_\_\_name I' ve completely forgotten.

A. whose

B. which

C. ofwhich

D. that

97. The meeting was postponed,\_\_\_\_\_was exactly what I wanted.

A. that

B. whichit

C. andthat

D. this

98. Mr. Jones,\_\_\_\_\_John was working, was very generous about overtime payment.

A. forwhom

B. forwho

C. whom

D. forthat

99. There is not much\_\_\_\_\_can be done now.

A. that

B. which

C. who

D. what

100. He showed me a book, \_\_\_\_\_I could tell that it was pretty old.

A. whichcover

B. ofwhichcover

C. the coverwhich

D. fromthe cover ofwhich

101. This kind of solar cooker can be used only in the daytime\_\_\_\_\_the sun is shining.

A. when

B. as

C. while

D. since

102. Solomon was diligent, responsible and hardworking, \_\_\_\_\_he was promoted from a clerk to a manager.

A. forwhich

B. which

C. for

D. that

103. What is\_\_\_\_\_ordered the English book?

A. the lady' s address in Beijing who

B. the lady' s address in Beijing which

C. the address of the lady in Beijing who

D. the address of the lady in Beijing which

104. There comes a time in every man' s life\_\_\_\_\_.

A. then he has to think about the future

B. which he needs

C. when he has to think about the future

D. therefore he has to work hard

105. No sample\_\_\_\_\_we have received is satisfactory.

A. which

B. what

C. that

D. who

106. Obviously there was little certainty\_\_\_\_\_the chairman would agree to this proposal.

A. which

B. why

C. what

D. that

107. There can' t be any life on Venus, \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature is as high as 900°F.

A. which

B. when

C. where

D. there

108. The reason \_\_\_\_\_ he died was lack of medical care.

A. which

B. for that

C. as

D. why

109. This is the shop \_\_\_\_\_ I often buy foodstuff.

A. where

B. which

C. of which

D. to which

110. The reason \_\_\_\_\_ he gave for his being late was unacceptable.

A. why

B. that

C. who

D. forwhich

111. The shop\_\_\_\_\_I told you about before has closed down.

A. where

B. in which

C. atwhich

D. which

112. Those guilty of a serious crime\_\_\_\_\_refuse to reform must be severely punished.

A. which

B. whom

C. when

D. who

113. Yet no firm evidence had come to light\_\_\_\_\_the men arrested were actually responsible.

A. which

B. as

C. what

D. that

114. Another food crop raised by Indians\_\_\_\_\_strange to the Europeans was called Indian corn.

A. who were

B. that were

C. that was

D. who was

115. They helped us time and again,\_\_\_\_\_very kind of them.

A. who were

B. which was

C. that was

D. which were

116. —Do you like the book your father gave you?

—Very much. It' s exactly\_\_\_\_\_I wanted.

A. one which

B. that

C. one what

D. the one

117. When reports came into London Zoo\_\_\_\_\_a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.

- A. what
- B. as
- C. which
- D. that

118. Many birds have feathers\_\_\_\_\_with their surroundings.

- A. colors blend
- B. that colors blend
- C. whose colors blend
- D. ofwhich the colors that blend

119. Civil rights are the freedoms and rights\_\_\_\_\_as a member of a community, state, or nation.

- A. may have a person
- B. a person who may have
- C. a person may have
- D. and a person may have

120. In the early twentieth century, the “Model T” automobile was mass produced and sold at a price\_\_\_\_\_could afford.

- A. the average person who
- B. that the average person who
- C. and the average person

D. the average person

## 九、用适当的连词填空（名词从句与定语从句辨析）。

### 心灵鸡汤 Chicken Soup for the Soul

#### Rose

Real love lies not in 121 (what/which/that) is done and known, but in 122 (what/which/that) is done but not known.

Red roses were her favorites; her name was also Rose. And every year her husband sent her some, tied with pretty bows. The year he died, the roses were delivered to her door. The card said, “Be my Valentine,” like all the years before.

Each year he sent her roses, and the note would always say, “I love you even more this year than last year on this day.” “My love for you will always grow with every passing year.” She knew 123 (what/which/that) this was the last time that the roses would appear.

She thought 124 (what/which/ 不填) he had ordered roses in advance before this day. Her loving husband did not know 125 (what/which/that) he would pass away. He always liked to do things early before the time. Then, if he got too busy, everything would work out fine.

She trimmed the stems and placed them in a very special vase and then put the vase beside the portrait of his smiling face. She would sit for hours in her husband’s favorite chair, staring at his picture, with the roses sitting there.

A year went by, and it was hard to live without her mate, but with loneliness and solitude, 126 (what/which/that) had become her fate. Then the very hour as on Valentines before, the doorbell rang, and there were roses, sitting by her door.



She brought the roses in, and then just looked at them in shock. Then went to get the telephone to call the florist shop. The owner answered and she asked him if he would explain 127 (what/which/that/why) someone would do this to her, causing her such pain.

“I know 128 (what/which/不填) your husband passed away more than a year ago,” the owner said, “I knew you’d call, and you would want to know.” “The flowers 129 (what/which/that) you received today were paid for in advance.” “Your husband always planned ahead. He left nothing to chance.”

“There is a standing order 130 (what/which/that) I have on file down here. He has paid well in advance, and you’ll get them every year. There is also another thing 131 (what/which/that) I think you should know. He wrote a special little card…he did this years ago.”

“Then should ever I find out 132 (what/which/that) he’s no longer here, it’s the card 133 (what/which/that) should be sent to you the following year.” She thanked him and hung up the phone, her tears now flowing hard. Her fingers were shaking, as she slowly reached to get the card.

Inside the card, she saw 134 (what/which/that) he had written her a note. Then as she stared in total silence, this is 135 (what/which/that) he wrote… “Hello my love, I know it’s been a year since I’ve been gone. I hope it hasn’t been too hard for you to overcome.”

“I know it must be lonely, and the pain is very real. For if it was the other way, I know 136 (what/which/that/how) I would feel. The love 137 (what/which/that) we shared made everything so beautiful in life. I loved you more than words can say, you were the perfect wife.”

“You were my friend and lover. You fulfilled my every need. I know it’s only been a year, but please try not to grieve. I want you to be happy, even when you shed your tears. That is 138 (what/which/how/why) the roses will be sent to you for years.”

“When you get these roses, think of all the happiness 139 (what/which/that) we had together, and how both of us were blessed. I have always loved you and I know I always will. But, my love, you must go on. You have some living still.”

“Please...try to find happiness, while living out your days. I know it is not easy, but I hope 140 (what/which/that) you find some ways. The roses will come every year, and they will only stop when your door’s not answered, or when the florist stops knocking.”

“He will come five times that day, in case you have gone out. But after his last visit, he will know without a doubt to take the roses to the place where I’ve instructed him, and place the roses where we are together once again.”

### 定语从句练习答案

一、将下列各题中的两个简单句合并为一个主从复合句，用第二个句子作定语。

1. The girl who has won the race is happy.
2. The student who sits next to me is from America.
3. The boy who fell from a tree was not badly hurt.
4. The taxi driver who took me to the airport was friendly.

5. I can' t remember the name of the person to whom I gave the money.

6. The employees who had reached the age of sixty-five had to retire.

7. The teacher spoke to the boys whose work was below standard.

8. The couple whose house I rented were friendly.

9. He is the professor whose grammar course I am taking.

10. That is the man whose son died in that air crash.

11. The man whose car was stolen called the police.

12. The man whose picture is in the newspaper is famous.

13. I have a neighbor whose dog barks all day long.

14. The girl whose camera I borrowed is a good friend of mine.

15. The church where we were married was built in 1400.

16. She told me her address, which I wrote down on a piece of paper.

17. We are studying sentences which contain adjective clauses.

18. The exhibition which my friend took me to see was not very interesting.

19. John isn' t home yet, which worries me.

20. Jack was fired from his job, which surprised all his co-workers.

21. My roommate always plays music at the dorm, which really gets on my nerves.

二、将下列各句中的定语从句引导词that改为who或which，或省略。

22. The girl who answered the phone was polite.

23. I didn' t know any of the girls (who) Bill invited to his party.

24. The woman (who) I saw in the park was feeding the pigeons.

25. I like the barber who usually cuts my hair.

26. The person (who) I admire most is my father.

27. The girls (who) I met at the party last night were very nice.

28. The couple who live next to me have three cars.

29. The soup (which) I had for lunch was too salty.

30. The pill (which) I took made me sleepy.

31. My daughter asked me a question (which) I couldn' t answer.

32. The man (who) my sister goes out with is tall, dark and handsome.

33. I couldn' t understand the woman (who) I talked to on the phone.

三、将下列各题中的两个简单句合并为一个主从复合句，用第二个句子作定语。

34. Monday is the day when we will come.
35. He arrived in Shanghai on October 1 when I left.
36. July is the month when the weather is usually the hottest.
37. April Fool' s Day is that special day of the year when you may play a joke on someone.
38. March 10, 1876 was the day when the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.
39. The city where we spent our vacation was beautiful.
40. That is the restaurant where I will meet you.
41. The town where I grew up is small.
42. This is the house where they put their tools.

#### 四、用where, when或which填空。

43. I' ll never forget the day when I met you for the first time.
44. I' ll never forget the days which/that I spent with you.
45. The day, which began brightly, ended with a violent storm.
46. The day when we don' t bother to go to the office but just work at home may come soon.
47. I arrived in Beijing on the day when it was snowing heavily.
48. This is the town where I was born.

49. This is the town which I want to visit most someday.

50. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place which contains much carbon dioxide so that it won' t decay rapidly.

51. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place where there is much carbon dioxide so that it won' t decay rapidly.

52. The library, which was built in the 1930' s, needs to be renovated.

53. I guess you can find him in the library where he works.

### 五、判断下列各句中定语从句的正误，如有错误，请改正。

54. 错误。改为：He is the man who taught me English.

55. 错误。改为：I gave the book that he needed to him.

56. 错误。改为：The airline has a booklet which will tell you most of the important things about a trip to Europe.

57. 错误。改为：The man who told me the news refused to give me his name.

58. 错误。改为：The book which I bought at the bookstore was very useful.

59. 错误。改为：The woman that I met yesterday was nice.

60. 错误。改为：The couple who live next to me are friendly.

61. 错误。改为：I met a woman whose husband is a famous lawyer.

62. 错误。改为：Let ABC be a triangle whose sides are of unequal length.

63. 错误。改为: Do you know the people who live in that house?

64. 错误。改为: The boys who I met at the party last night were interesting.

65. 错误。改为: I enjoyed the music which we listened to.

66. 错误。改为: He dropped in on an old friend that day when he visited his club.

67. 错误。改为: The day, which began brightly, ended with a violent storm.

六、分析下列各句中定语从句分别属于第四节所述3种情形中的哪一种,必要时添加逗号。

68. 限制性定语从句

69. 限制性定语从句

70. 限制性定语从句

71. 非限制性定语从句

The teacher, who comes from Canada, teaches us English.

72. 限制性定语从句

73. 限制性定语从句或非限制性定语从句均可

I saw him stand under the apple tree, which was behind the house.

(暗示房子周围只有一棵树。)

I saw him stand under the apple tree which was behind the house.

（暗示房子周围有很多棵树。）

74. 限制性定语从句或非限制性定语从句均可

The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers.

（限制性定语从句，对部分学生表示感谢。）

The teacher thanked the students, who had given her some flowers.

（非限制性定语从句，补充说明感谢的原因。）

75. 限制性定语从句或非限制性定语从句均可

He has a daughter who works in a hospital.

（限制性定语从句，暗示他有多个女儿。）

He has a daughter, who works in a hospital.

（非限制性定语从句，暗示他只有一个女儿。）

76. 非限制性定语从句

An elephant, which is the earth's largest land mammal, has few natural enemies other than human beings.

77. 限制性定语从句

78. 限制性定语从句

79. 非限制性定语从句

Rice, which is grown in many countries, is a staple food throughout much of the world.

80. 限制性定语从句或非限制性定语从句均可



Jane was delighted when she opened the present which was from her ex-boyfriend.

（限制性定语从句，暗示有多份礼物。）

Jane was delighted when she opened the present, which was from her ex-boyfriend.

（非限制性定语从句，暗示只有一份礼物。）

81. 限制性定语从句

## 七、翻译下列句子，句中要含有定语从句。

82. I bought a book yesterday whose author was blind.

83. My office, which is small, is on the second floor of this building.

84. The book that you lent me yesterday is very interesting.

85. The teacher who teaches me English comes from Canada.

86. The girl I work with has a boyfriend.

87. Please tell me the reason why you were late this morning.

88. They arrived on the day when it was raining.

89. He is the man who you can depend on.

90. What is the name of the hotel where you live?

91. The man who answered the phone told me that you were not in.

## 八、单项选择。

92. C 93. A 94. B 95. A 96. A 97. C 98. A 99. A  
100. D 101. A 102. A 103. C 104. C 105. C 106. D  
107. C  
108. D 109. A 110. B 111. D 112. D 113. D 114. C  
115. B  
116. D 117. D 118. C 119. C 120. D

九、用适当的连词填空（名词从句与定语从句辨析）。

121. what  
122. what  
123. that  
124. 不填  
125. that  
126. which/that  
127. why  
128. 不填  
129. which/that  
130. which/that  
131. which/that  
132. that  
133. that  
134. that

135. what

136. how

137. which/that

138. why

139. which/that

140. that

## Chapter 04 状语从句



音频

- 28 状语从句概述
- 29 状语从句的省略
- 30 时间状语从句
- 31 地点状语从句
- 32 原因状语从句
- 33 目的与结果状语从句
- 34 条件状语从句

35 让步状语从句

36 比较状语从句

37 方式状语从句

## 28 状语从句概述 Track 028

英语中的状语从句有九大类，分别表示：时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、比较以及方式。尽管种类较多，但理解起来并不难。

本质上，状语从句就是用连词将两个分句连接起来，以表达分句之间特定的逻辑关系。

### 例句

- a. I' ve brought my umbrella **in case** it rains.
- b. I' ve brought my umbrella **because** it' s raining.
- c. I' ve brought my umbrella **so that** I don' t get wet.
- d. I' ve brought my umbrella **even though** it' s not raining.
- e. You won' t need an umbrella **unless** it rains.

因此，学习状语从句的关键是要掌握引导九类状语从句的连接词。只要记住连接词及其表示的主从句关系，就能识别是何种状语从句，从而正确分析句子结构并理解句子意思。

状语从句类型	常用连接词
时间状语从句	when, while, as, before, after, since, till, until, as soon as
地点状语从句	where
原因状语从句	because, as, for, since
目的状语从句	so that, in order that
结果状语从句	so...that, so that, such...that
条件状语从句	if, unless
让步状语从句	although, though, even though, even if
比较状语从句	as, than
方式状语从句	as, the way

## 29 状语从句的省略 Track 029

在同时满足以下两点的情况下，可将从句的主语和be动词省略：

- 1) 主句的主语和从句的主语一致；
- 2) 从句谓语中含有be动词。

这种省略常见于时间、地点、条件及让步状语从句中。如：

a. Metals expand when (they are) heated and contract when (they are) cooled. (两个when后都省略了they are)

金属热胀冷缩。

b. When (he was) a student in the university, he read a lot.

c. While (he was) waiting, he took out a magazine to read.

d. A tiger can't be tamed unless (it is) caught very young.

若不能同时满足上述两个条件，则从句不能省略主语和动词。  
如：

e. When I was ten years old, my family moved to the city.

主句和从句的主语不同，故从句不可用省略形式：When ten years old, my family moved to the city.\*是错误的。

注：本节内容为TOEFL、研究生、四级、六级考试必考内容。



## 30 时间状语从句 Track 030

### (1) 时间状语从句要用一般现在时表示将来动作

a. I' ll speak to him when he arrives.

不说...when he will arrive.\*

b. I' ll tell him about it when he comes back.

不说...when he will come back.\*

### (2) when

when的意思相当于at that time（在……时刻），从句的谓语动词通常是**短暂性动词**，表示瞬时的动作。注意主句和从句的时态。

#### 例句

a. I' ll speak to him when he arrives.

b. I' ll tell him about it when he comes back .

c. When I arrived, he was talking on the phone.

我到的时候，他正在打电话。

d. When I got there, he had already left.

我到那儿的时候，他已经走了。

e. When I got there, he was leaving the office.

我到的时候，他正准备离开办公室。

从句的谓语也可用**延续性动词**，这时从句往往用过去进行时态，表示过去某一时间正在发生的动作。例如：

f. The doorbell rang when I was telephoning.

### (3) while

while的意思相当于during that time（在……期间），表示某一时间段内发生的动作。因此，从句谓语通常只用延续性动词。

#### 例句

a. The phone rang while I was taking my bath.

b. The doorbell rang while we were watching TV.

c. A detective（侦探）arrested a criminal and was about to handcuff（上手铐）him when a huge gust（一阵狂风）of wind blew off the detective's hat.

“Shall I go and fetch it?” the criminal asked.

“Do you take me for a fool?” asked the detective. “You wait here while I go and get it!”（此句中go and get虽然是短暂性动词，但两个动词连用表示的是一段时间内的活动。）

### (4) until

1) 当主句谓语动词是延续性动词时，主句通常用肯定形式。例如：

a. Wait until he comes back.（wait为延续性动词）

b. We'll stay here till it stops raining.（stay为延续性动词）

c. Until I came back, he had been waiting for me at my home.

2) 若主句谓语动词是短暂性动词，则主句要用否定形式。这就是我们常说的“not...until...（直到……才……）”结构。

#### 例句

a. I **did not realize** how special my mother was until I became an adult.

直到我长大成人以后，我才懂得母亲是多么不平凡。

b. Ice cream **did not reach** America until about the middle of the eighteenth century.

c. I **didn't go** to bed until 12 o'clock last night.

我昨晚直到12点钟才睡觉。

d. He **didn't leave** the office until his boss came back.

直到老板回来之后他才离开办公室。

3) 我们还可以把not...until转换成倒装句型：

a. **Not until** 12 o'clock last night **did I** go to bed.

b. **Not until** his boss came back **did he** leave the office.

可见，当Not until提前至句首时，主句用部分倒装。

### (5) 表示“一……就……”的连词

表示“一……就……”的连词有：as soon as, once, immediately, the moment。这些连词后通常**接短暂性动词**，表示**瞬间动作**。注意分析下列句子：

a. We will leave as soon as it **stops** raining.

雨一停，我们就动身离开。

b. Once it **stops** raining, we will leave.

c. It began to rain as soon as I **arrived** home.

我刚到家，天就下起雨来。

d. It began to rain immediately I **arrived** home.

e. It began to rain the moment I arrived home.

## (6) by the time

by the time的意思是“当……时候”，强调的是“一个动作在另外一个动作发生时已经完成”。因此，与by the time从句搭配的主句要用完成时态。注意下句时态搭配：

by the time 与两种完成时搭配	
a. By the time they arrived, we had already left. 那天他们到达的时候，我们已经走了。	从句中 arrived 表示过去动作，对应的主句用过去完成时。
b. By the time they arrive, we will have already left. 一会儿等他们来的时候，我们就已经离开了。	从句中 arrive 表示将来动作，对应的主句用将来完成时。

## 31 地点状语从句 Track 031

### (1) 通常由where引导

a. Stay **where** you are.

待在原地别动。

b. When you finish the book, put it **where** it was.

看完这本书后，放回原处。

c. A driver should slow down **where** there are schools.

在有学校的地方，司机应缓行。

d. The tree of this kind grows favorably **where** it is wet.

这种树在潮湿的地方长势更好。

### (2) 也可由wherever, anywhere和everywhere引导

a. **Wherever** he happens to be, Clint can make himself at home.

无论在什么地方，克林特总是很自在。

b. **Everywhere** they appeared, there were ovations.

他们无论在哪儿都会受到热烈欢迎。

### (3) 有时含有条件意味

a. Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者，事竟成。

b. Wherever there is water, air and earth, there is vegetation.

只要有水、空气和土壤，就会有植被。

c. Wherever there is love, there is also wealth and success!

只要有爱，就会有财富和成功。

## 32 原因状语从句 Track 032

引导原因状语从句最常用的连词有because, for, as和since。

### (1) because

1) 语气最强，只有它才能用来回答why引导的问句。所引出的原因往往是听话人所不知道的或最感兴趣的原因。

#### 例句

a. You want to know why I am leaving? I am leaving **because** I' m fed up with the job and the boss.

你想知道我为什么要辞职？我辞职是因为我厌倦了这份工作，受够了这里的老板。

b. My friends dislike me **because** I' m handsome and successful.

我的朋友都不喜欢我，因为我既帅气又事业有成。

2) 可与表示强调的only, just连用。

#### 例句

a. **Just because** I don' t complain, people think I' m satisfied.

b. You shouldn' t get angry **just because** some people speak ill of you.

### (2) since

表示人们已知的事实、不需强调的原因。所以常译成“既然……”。since从句通常放在主句之前。

### 例句

a. Since Monday is Bob' s birthday, let' s throw him a party.

既然周一是鲍勃的生日，那我们为他办一场聚会吧。

b. Since everyone is here, let' s get started.

c. Since you are free tonight, why not drop in and play chess with me?

d. Since we don' t have class tomorrow, why not go out for a picnic?

e. Since you are sleepy, you might as well go to bed.

f. Since you are an English major, I guess you can help me with this sentence .

### (3) as

as与since用法差不多，所引出的理由在说话人看来已经很明显，或已为听话人所熟悉，不需用because加以强调。

### 例句

a. She didn' t hear us come in as she was asleep.

b. I left a message as you weren' t there.

c. As Monday is a national holiday, all government offices will be closed.



d. I have to speak English with them **as** the guys I live with don' t know any Chinese.

#### (4) for

for表示推断的理由，是对前面分句的内容加以解释或说明。for所引出的分句通常放在主句之后。

#### 例句

a. The days are short, **for** it is now December.

b. It rained last night, **for** the ground is wet this morning.

试比较: **Because** it rained last night, the ground is wet this morning.

c. It must be morning, **for** the birds are singing.

d. Pay attention to your enemies, **for** they are the first to discover your mistakes.

## 33 目的与结果状语从句 Track 033

### (1) 目的状语从句常见的引导词

目的状语从句常见引导词有so that和in order that。从句中常含有情态动词will/would或can/could。

#### 例句

a. I turned off the TV so that my roommate could study in peace and quiet.

我关掉了电视，好让我的室友能安静地学习。

b. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.

c. We climbed high so that we could get a better view.

d. They carved the words on the stone so that / in order that the future generation would remember what they had done.

e. He has recently devoted much time to writing books on the subject so that the coming generation can learn the martial arts.

### (2) 结果状语从句常见的连接词

结果状语从句常见的连接词有so...that和such...that。从句中一般不带情态动词，且从句都要放在主句之后。如：

a. Sensible Sam: I saw you pushing your bicycle to work this afternoon. Foolish Fred: Yes, I was so late that I

didn't have time to get on it.

b. The food is **so** bad in the school cafeteria **that** flies go there to lose weight. 我们学校食堂饭菜质量太差，连苍蝇都去那儿减肥。

**注意：**不要受汉语思维的影响，而把这里的so改成very或too。这类题型常见于考试改错题。比如我们不能说：

The food is too/very bad in the school cafeteria that flies go there to lose weight.\*

### (3) 注意句中such和so的用法区别（重点掌握）

1) such为形容词，修饰名词或名词短语，表示“这样的……”，所修饰的名词或名词短语可以是单数意义、复数意义或不可数。如：

a. He is **such a good teacher** that everyone likes him.

b. He got **such heavy boxes** that he couldn't carry them by himself.

c. It was **such nice weather** that we went to the beach.

(It was so nice weather that we went to the beach.\*)

d. The weather was so nice that we went to the beach.

2) so为副词，不能直接修饰名词，而是修饰形容词或副词。如：

a. He is **so good a teacher** that everyone likes him.

b. The teacher is **so good** that everyone likes him.

c. The boy ran **so fast** that he caught the early bus.

3) so可与many, much, few以及little搭配，such不可以，如：

a. I made **so many mistakes** that I failed the exam.

- b. He has so few friends that he is always lonely.
- c. He lost so much money that he didn' t dare to go home.
- d. I had so little trouble with the test that I left half an hour early.

## 34 条件状语从句 Track 034

条件从句通常可由下列词或短语来引导：

as long as    supposing (that)    if

so long as    on condition that    unless

suppose (that)    providing / provided (that)

### 例句

a. If it rains tomorrow, I will take my umbrella. (条件从句中要用一般现在时表示将来)

b. Don' t worry about the mistakes you may make in conversation, so long as you can make yourself understood in English.

c. I may lend you the book on condition that you return it to me in time.

d. I will agree to go provided that my expenses are paid.

只要有人替我付钱，我就同意去。

e. Suppose flights are fully booked on that day—which other day could we go?

假定那天的航班都订满了——我们还可以在哪天走呢？

## 35 让步状语从句 Track 035

### (1) 常见的让步状语从句的引导词

常见的让步状语从句的引导词有though, although, even though 和even if。

注意：主句前不可用but，但可用yet或still。

#### 例句

- a. Though/Although he tried hard, (yet/still) he failed.
- b. Although I didn' t know anybody at the party, I had a very good time.
- c. The family is the essential presence—the thing that never leaves you, even if you find you have to leave it.
- d. 改错：Although Mr. Smith studied art (A) in Paris, but his (B) writings attracted much (C) more interest than (D) his paintings.

正确答案：B，应改为his，即去掉but。

### (2) 介词表示让步

上述连词后边只接从句（有时是省略形式的从句），而despite, in spite of和for all是介词性质，后边只接名词（短语），不接从句。注意比较下列句子：

- a. Though he was inexperienced, he did a very good job. = In spite of his inexperience, ...

b. Although **it was dangerous**, ... = Despite **the danger**, ...

c. Though **the weather was bad**, ... = In spite of **the bad weather**, ...

(3) **while** 位于句首时，一般表示“尽管……”，引导让步状语从句

a. **While** I sympathize with (同意) your point of view, I can not accept it.

b. **While** he has time, it doesn't mean he has capacity and patience.

c. **While** many countries of the world celebrate their own Mother's Day at different times throughout the year, there are some countries such as Denmark, Finland, Italy, Turkey, Australia, and Belgium which also celebrate Mother's Day on the second Sunday of May.

(4) **as**引导的倒装句，表示让步

句型：形容词+ **as** +主语+谓语

a. **Young as he is**, he is knowledgeable.

尽管他年龄小，知识却很渊博。

b. **Poor as he is**, he is kind and honest.

尽管他很贫穷，但他心地善良，为人诚实。

前置的也可以是名词或副词。例如：

c. **Much as I respect him**, I can not agree with him.

尽管我很尊重他，但我并不同意他的观点。

d. **Hard as he tried**, he failed the exam again.

e. Child as he is, he is knowledgeable. = Although he is a child, ...



## 36 比较状语从句 Track 036

### (1) 引导词as

结构1: as +形容词/副词+ as

a. The work is **not as difficult as** you think.

b. Eyes are **as eloquent as** lips (are).

结构2: as +形容词+ a (n) 2) +可数名词单数+ as

c. Americans tend to think from small to large. Let us take **as simple an example as** the addressing of envelopes.

美国人思维喜欢由小到大。我们以写信封地址这样一件小事为例。

d. I didn' t finish **as large a part** of the work **as** he did.

注意：在否定句中第一个as可用so代替。

### (2) 引导词than

1) 两个**同类事物**之间才能比较，如he和I。两个非同类事物之间是无法作比较的。

a. He is taller than I (am).

b. The weather of the South is wetter than the North.\*

b句是典型的错误句子，因为the weather of the South和the North是两个截然不同的事物，无法进行比较。只能是“南方的天气”和“北方的天气”两个同类事物才能比较。故原句应该改为：

The weather of the South is wetter than **that of** the North. (为 避免重复, 用that代替the weather)

c. Young readers, more often than not (A), find the novels of (B) Dickens far more (C) exciting than Thackeray (D).

正确答案: D, 应改为Thackeray's。这里比较的对象是两个作家的小说。Thackeray's等于Thackeray's novels。

2) 在有than的比较句子里, 主句中必须有**比较级形式**出现。

a. He has made **great** contributions to the company **than** anyone else.\*

(此句中应将great改为greater)

b. On the whole (A), ambitious students are much likely (B) to succeed in their studies than those (C) with little (D) ambition (are).

正确答案: B, 应改为more likely。

(3) “**the more... (主句), the more... (主句)**” 句型表示比较

a. **The more** she practiced, **the worse** she sang.

她练习得越多, 唱得越糟糕。

b. **The nearer** it is drawn to the surface of the earth, **the more** a body weighs.

一个物体离地球表面越近, 重量就越大。

c. **The higher** you go, **the less dense** air becomes.

你登得越高, 空气就会变得越稀薄。

d. The more we help others, the more we receive in return. We advance ourselves as we help others.

帮助别人越多，我们获得的回报也越多。帮助了他人就是在提升自己。

e. Friends are lights in winter: the older the friend, the brighter the light.

朋友犹如冬日里的暖阳，愈久弥珍。

f. The more you leave things to chance, the less chance there is for you.

你越是听天由命，留给自己的机会就越少。

## 37 方式状语从句 Track 037

方式状语从句表示主句动作的方式，常用的引导词有as, as if, as though和the way等。

### 例句

a. When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

入乡随俗。(When traveling, follow the customs of the local people.)

b. Do as you are told.

按照吩咐的去做。

c. Do as I say, not as I do.

= Follow my advice, but don't follow my example.

d. Do it the way you were taught.

按照教你的方式去做。

e. He acted as though / as if he had nothing to do with it.

他表现得好像这事与他无关。

### 温故知新

前面说过，学习状语从句的关键是要掌握引导九类状语从句的连接词。只要记住连接词及其表达的逻辑关系就能识别是何种状语从

句，从而正确分析句子结构并理解句子意思。但在应试中，多数情况是要求仔细分析各分句之间的逻辑关系，然后填入适当的连词。

同时，还要了解各状语从句在使用时自己独特的用法，比如 although不能和but连用；as表示让步要用倒装结构；时间状语从句中应特别注意时态搭配等等。

### 状语从句练习

#### 一、完成下列句子，注意动词的时态。

1. A black cat ran across the road when I\_\_\_\_\_ (drive) my car to work this morning.

2. Last night I\_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed until I finished my homework.

3. We\_\_\_\_\_ (stay) here until it stops raining.

4. Tonight I will go to bed after I\_\_\_\_\_ (finish) my homework.

5. By the time the firemen arrived, the whole building\_\_\_\_\_ (burn down).

6. By the time the firemen\_\_\_\_\_ (arrive), the whole building will have burned down.

7. By the time I leave this city, I\_\_\_\_\_ (live) here for four months.

#### 二、将下列各题中的两个简单句合并成一个带有目的状语从句的复合句，注意使用情态动词。

8. I am going to leave the party early. I want to get a good night' s sleep.

9. Harry brought his umbrella. He wanted to be sure he didn' t get wet.

10. I turned on the TV. I wanted to listen to the news.

11. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay away from school.

12. Clint took some change from his pocket. He wanted to buy a newspaper.

13. I put the milk in the refrigerator. I wanted to make sure it wouldn't spoil.

14. I unplugged the phone. I didn't want to be interrupted while I was sleeping.

### 三、用so...that 或such...that合并句子。

15. This tea is good. I think I'll have another cup.

16. The car was expensive. We couldn't afford it.

17. I had to wear my coat. It was a cold day.

18. I don't feel like going to class. We're having beautiful weather.

19. She talked too fast. I couldn't understand her.

20. The black leopard is very dark. Its spots are difficult to see.

21. I've met too many people in the last few days. I can't remember all of their names.

22. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.

23. There were few people at the meeting. It was cancelled.

24. I have too much trouble. I need your help.

25. The classroom has comfortable chairs. The students find it easy to fall asleep.

#### 四、单项选择。

26. We heard a loud sound of drums beating\_\_\_\_\_the parade marched.

A. till

B. while

C. the moment

D. where

27. \_\_\_\_\_he left, we began to have our dinner.

A. When

B. While

C. Until

D. Since

28. We shall call on her as soon\_\_\_\_\_.

A. as she will come

B. as she came

C. as she comes

D. she comes

29. \_\_\_\_\_ Charles started a job, he did it \_\_\_\_\_ it was finished.

- A. Since; where
- B. Once; till
- C. Each time; once
- D. The moment; as

30. They decided to chase the cow away \_\_\_\_\_ it did more damage.

- A. unless
- B. until
- C. before
- D. although

31. You see the lightening \_\_\_\_\_ it happens, but you hear the thunder later.

- A. the moment
- B. for a moment
- C. at the moment
- D. in a moment

32. \_\_\_\_\_, his family moved to America.

- A. When still a baby
- B. When a baby still



C. When he was still a baby

D. When being still a baby

33. Not until I shouted at the top of my voice \_\_\_\_\_ his head.

A. that he turned

B. did he turn

C. he didn' t turn

D. he had turned

34. They looked so happy today, \_\_\_\_\_ they had a good bargain.

A. for

B. in order that

C. when

D. except

35. \_\_\_\_\_ he has had a reputation for being a careful driver, his accident came as quite a surprise.

A. Since

B. Since that

C. Because

D. For

36. She didn' t hear what you said \_\_\_\_\_ she was completely absorbed in her work.

A. that

B. now that

C. because

D. lest

37. \_\_\_\_\_ he will not accept the offer, I have to find someone else.

A. Until

B. Though

C. As soon as

D. As

38. This is an ideal site for a university, \_\_\_\_\_ it is far from the downtown.

A. provided that

B. that

C. so that

D. for

39. It was \_\_\_\_\_ he was so young that he couldn' t do it.

A. as

B. since

C. for

D. because

40. \_\_\_\_\_we have all the materials ready, we should begin the new task at once.

A. Since that

B. Since now

C. By now

D. Now that

41. Dew is formed\_\_\_\_\_the grass is thick.

A. while

B. where

C. when

D. until

42. The picture is not hanging\_\_\_\_\_it should on the wall.

A. until

B. wherever

C. where

D. when

43. You can find him\_\_\_\_\_he works.

A. when

B. where

C. which

D. as

44. Poor\_\_\_\_\_he is, he is honest and kind.

A. as

B. however

C. because

D. although

45. \_\_\_\_\_lay eggs, but some give birth to live young.

A. Although most insects

B. Most insects

C. Despite most insects

D. Most insects that

46. Airsickness is produced by a disturbance of the inner car, \_\_\_\_\_psychogenic factors, such as fear, also play a part.

A. in spite of

B. neither

C. nor

D. although

47. He wrote down the address\_\_\_\_\_he should forget it.

A. in case not

B. lest

C. in order that

D. of fear that

48. Let' s take the front seats\_\_\_\_\_we may have a better view.

A. so as to

B. in order to

C. in order

D. so that

49. \_\_\_\_\_many children have bought balloons\_\_\_\_\_the store is now out of stock.

A. So; that

B. Such; that

C. Sucha; that

D. So; as to

50. It is\_\_\_\_\_weather that I would like to go to the beach.

A. so nice

B. such nice

C. such a nice

D. so nice a

51. She told us\_\_\_\_\_stories that we all laughed.

- A. so funny
- B. such funny
- C. funny such
- D. so fun

52. Let' s finish our work\_\_\_\_\_we can be free this evening.

- A. now that
- B. than
- C. because
- D. so that

53. Batteries must be kept in dry places\_\_\_\_\_electricity should leak away.

- A. where
- B. lest
- C. that
- D. unless

54. An adult human must take eight steps to go\_\_\_\_\_as a giraffe does in one stride.

- A. as far
- B. the farther
- C. how far

D. farther

55. The motorist looked over the engine carefully\_\_\_\_\_on the way.

A. so that it should go wrong

B. lest it should go wrong

C. in order that it should not go wrong

D. for fear that it should not go wrong

56. This approach is superior to that one\_\_\_\_\_it provides explicit accounts.

A. in which

B. in this way

C. in that

D. in order that

57. \_\_\_\_\_, he remains stupid.

A. Though his learning

B. Through all his learning

C. For all his learning

D. However his learning

58. \_\_\_\_\_, electrons are still smaller.

A. As small atoms are

B. Small as atoms are

C. As atoms are small

D. Are small atoms

59. It was not until the eleventh century that\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the detective found out the truth

B. did the detective find out the truth

C. had the detective found out the truth

D. has the detective found out the truth

60. \_\_\_\_\_, he failed to pass the test.

A. Hard although he tried

B. He tried hard though

C. Hard as he tried

D. Though hard as he tried

61. \_\_\_\_\_you fell in love with your boss, what would you do?

A. Provide

B. Supposing

C. Unless

D. Except

62. \_\_\_\_\_, the firemen were unable to quench the fire.

A. Try they would

B. As they tried



C. What they tried

D. Try as they would

63. Angiosperms inhabit relatively diverse environments and may be found\_\_\_\_\_higher plants can survive.

A. there

B. where

C. somewhere

D. then

64. You can arrive in Beijing earlier for the meeting\_\_\_\_\_you don' t mind traveling by air.

A. provided

B. unless

C. though

D. until

65. \_\_\_\_\_, he still retained the use of all his faculties.

A. Because he was old and weak

B. As he was old and weak

C. Unless he was old and weak

D. Old and weak as he was

66. The agency agreed to do the job\_\_\_\_\_that the fee was high enough.

A. so long

B. only

C. such

D. provided

67. It was not until she had arrived home\_\_\_\_\_remembered her appointment with the doctor.

A. when she

B. that she

C. and she

D. she

68. The European tourists tried cooking their meals\_\_\_\_\_American Indians had used to.

A. by the way

B. with the way

C. the way

D. in a way

69. \_\_\_\_\_no conclusive evidence exists, many experts believe that the wheel was invented only once and then diffused to the rest of the world.

A. Even

B. But

C. Although

D. So

70. \_\_\_\_\_ I admit that he is a good man, I don' t mean that he has no weak points.

A. Because

B. Unless

C. Suppose

D. While

71. Gorillas are quiet animals, \_\_\_\_\_ they are capable of making about 20 different sounds.

A. whether

B. which

C. even though

D. as well as

### 状语从句练习答案

#### 一、完成下列句子，注意动词的时态。

1. was driving

2. didn' t go

3. will stay

4. finish

5. had burned down

6. arrive

7. will have lived

二、将下列各题中的简单句合并成一个带有目的状语从句的复合句，注意使用情态动词。

8. I' m going to leave the party early so that I can get a good night' s sleep.

9. Harry brought his umbrella so that he would not get wet.

10. I turned on the TV in order that I could listen to the news.

11. The little boy pretended to be sick so that he could stay away from school.

12. Clint took some change from his pocket so that he could buy a newspaper.

13. I put the milk in the refrigerator so that it wouldn' t spoil.

14. I unplugged the phone so that I wouldn' t be interrupted while I was sleeping.

三、用so...that 或such...that合并句子。

15. This tea is so good that I will have another cup.

This is such good tea that I will have another cup.

16. The car was so expensive that we couldn' t afford it.

It was so expensive a car that we couldn' t afford it.

It was such an expensive car that we couldn' t afford it.

17. It was such a cold day that I had to wear my coat.

It was so cold a day that I had to wear my coat.

18. We are having such beautiful weather that I don' t feel like going to class.

19. She talked so fast that I couldn' t understand her.

20. The black leopard is so dark that its spots are difficult to see.

21. I' ve met so many people in the last few days that I can' t remember all of their names.

22. There was so little traffic that it took us only ten minutes to get there.

23. There were so few people at the meeting that it was cancelled.

24. I have so much trouble that I need your help.

25. The classroom has such comfortable chairs that the students find it easy to fall asleep.

#### 四、单项选择。

26. B 27. A 28. C 29. B 30. C 31. A 32. C 33. B

34. A 35. A 36. C 37. D 38. D 39. D 40. D 41. B

42. C 43. B 44. A 45. B 46. D 47. B 48. D 49. A

50. B 51. B 52. D 53. B 54. A 55. B 56. C 57. C

58. B 59. A 60. C 61. B 62. D 63. B 64. A 65. D

66. D 67. B 68. C 69. C 70. D 71. C

## Chapter 05 时态（一）：完成时态



音频

38 完成时态概述

39 现在完成时用法（一）：延续到现在的动作或状态

40 与现在完成时搭配的时间状语

41 现在完成时用法（二）：发生在过去但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态

42 现在完成时在表示发生在过去但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态时的使用技巧

43 现在完成时用法（三）：到截至目前的一个时间段内重复发生的动作

- 44 其他需要使用现在完成时的结构
- 45 现在完成时与一般过去时的用法比较
- 46 过去完成时的用法
- 47 一般过去时与过去完成时的比较
- 48 将来完成时动作开始的时间
- 49 将来完成时的三种用法

## 38 完成时态概述 Track 038

形式: have/has done; had done; will have done

意义: 完成时态表示的是在(现在、过去或将来的)某一特定时刻之前开始发生并持续到这一特定时刻或对这一特定时刻有影响的一个活动。

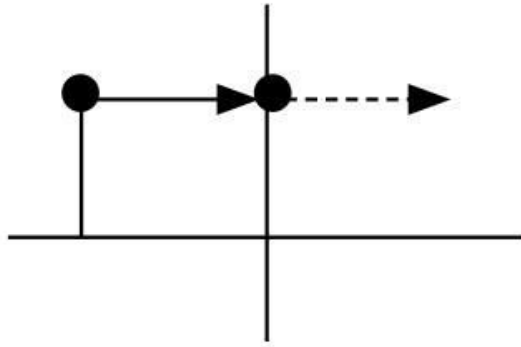
时态与用法	图解	例句	解释
现在完成时表示在现在之前(即过去)开始并持续到现在或对现在有影响的动作。		I have learned 2,000 words so far.	动作 learned 在“现在”之前开始发生并持续到现在。
过去完成时表示在过去的过去开始并持续到过去某一时间或对过去有影响的动作。		I had learned 1,000 words by the end of last year.	动作 learned 在 the end of last year 之前开始发生并持续到 the end of last year。
将来完成时表示在将来之前(可能是过去、现在或将来)开始并持续到将来或对将来有影响的动作。		I will have learned 3,000 words by the end of next year.	动作 learned 在 the end of next year 之前开始发生并持续到 the end of next year。



## 第一节 现在完成时 (have/has done)

### 39 现在完成时用法（一）：延续到现在的动作或状态 Track 039

现在完成时表示开始于过去的某一动作一直持续到现在，而且还可能继续持续下去。谓语动词一般为延续性动词。



注：黑点表示现在和过去两个时间点；实箭头表示动作的延续；虚箭头表示动作可能继续持续下去。

#### 例句

a. An old woman walked out into the middle of the street. The policeman yelled to her, “Don’ t you know what it means when I hold up my hand?” The lady said, “Sure I do. I **have been** a school teacher for 28 years now.”

b. I **have lived** here for 3 years.

到说话这一时刻，我仍住在这里，而且还可能继续住下去。如果是我现在正在搬家，则live这一事件只持续到目前为止。

c. The teacher **has taught** in this school since I came here.

d. I' **ve worked** in this company since I left school.

我毕业以后就一直在这家公司上班。

e. Since time began, man **has lived** in fear of fire.

自古以来，人们就害怕发生火灾。

或者，上下文明确告知，开始于过去的动作只持续到说话时刻为止。  
例如：

f. —**Have** you **waited** long?

—I' **ve waited** for three hours .

（见到了要等的人，所以wait动作就此结束。）

g. I' **ve waited** for him all day; I don' t want to wait any longer.

**这种现在完成时的特点：**

1) 谓语动词一般为延续性动词。

2) 动作发生的时间是过去，但这一动作持续到现在，而且还可能继续持续下去。

3) 这种用法的现在完成时态常与表示“一段时间”的时间状语连用，以说明某个动作或状态持续了多久。

## 40 与现在完成时搭配的时间状语 Track 040

下列时间状语均表示“从过去开始并一直延续到现在”（记住这些时间状语）。

### (1) since +时间点

- a. I' ve worked in this company since 2016.
- b. I' ve worked in this company since I left school. （从句用一般过去时）

### (2) for +时间段

- a. I' ve worked in this company for three years.
- b. Great changes have taken place in Beijing for the past few years.

近几年，北京发生了很大的变化。

### (3) 表示“到目前为止……”

until now   up until now   up to now   up till now   so far

#### 例句

We have up until now failed to take any action to decide on a common language that would further communication between nations.

到目前为止，我们尚未采取任何行动来确定一门国际通用语言，以促进国家间的交流。

#### (4) 表示“最近几世纪/年/月以来……”

for the past few years

over the past few years

during the last three months

for the last few centuries

through centuries

throughout history

#### 例句

a. Throughout history man **has had** to accept the fact that all living things must die, for the very nature of life includes death.

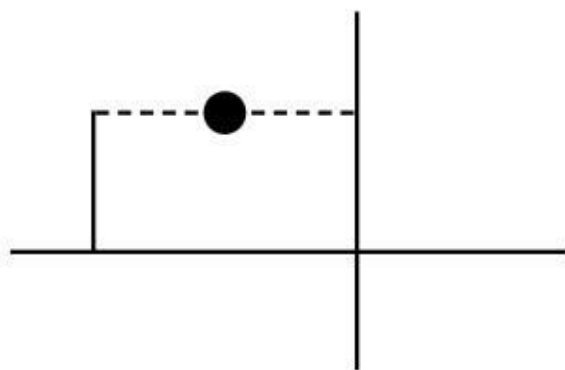
自古以来，人类就必须接受这样的事实：一切生命体最终都会消亡，因为生命的本质包含了死亡。

b. Through centuries the bizarre antics of sleepwalkers **have puzzled** police, **perplexed** scientists and **fascinated** writers.

几个世纪以来，梦游者古怪的行为让警察和科学家大为困惑，同时也让很多作家为之着迷。

## 41 现在完成时用法（二）：发生在过去但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态 Track 041

表示在不确定的过去发生的某一动作对现在仍有影响。谓语动词一般为短暂性动词。这种完成时态往往较难理解，也常常和一般过去时混淆不清。



注：图中黑点表示过去某一时刻发生的动作；虚线表示过去发生的动作对现在仍有影响。

### 例句

a. He **has broken** his leg.

他跌断了腿。（言外之意是：Now he is still in hospital, so he can't go for an outing with his classmates. 他现在还在住院，所以不能和同学们一起去郊游。）

b. He **broke** his leg.

他腿摔断过。（单纯表示一种过去的经历，但现在腿已经好了。）

c. A modern girl went to the theatre with a vest and a pair of slippers. The ticket-examiner turned her away very politely,

“Miss, NO ADMISSION WITH SLIPPERS.” “Really?” the girl took off the slippers and carried them in her hands, “Then I will go in bare-footedly.” “Oh, my god!” the ticket-examiner cried out, “Fortunately, I have not told her NO ADMISSION WITH A VEST.”

d. —What has happened to Jane? She is crying.

— She broke the dining-room window. She has to face the music (勇于承担后果) when her father gets home.

e. Mr. Odds works in a bank and lives on his own. The only family he has is in the next town: his sister lives there with her husband, and her son, Mark. Last week Mr. Odds had a surprise. He drove home from the bank at the usual time, driving neither too slowly nor too fast; he parked his car where he always parked it, out of the way of other cars, and he went inside to make his evening meal. Straight away, there was a knock at the door. Mr. Odds opened the door, to find a policeman standing on the doorstep.

“What have I done wrong?” Mr. Odds asked himself. “Have I driven on the wrong side of the road? Has there been some trouble at the bank?”

Have I forgotten to pay an important bill?”

“Hello, Uncle,” said the policeman, “My name’s Mark.”

欧兹先生在一家银行工作，独自生活。姐姐是他唯一的亲人，与其丈夫和儿子马克住在邻近的镇子上。上周欧兹先生遇上了一件让他吃惊的事。他照常从银行下班后开车回家，车速不快也不慢。他把车停在老地方，没有挡住其他车的路。然后进门就开始做晚饭。很快，就有人敲门。欧兹先生打开门，看见台阶上站着一位警察。

欧兹先生心想：“我做错什么了吗？是开车逆行了？是银行工作中出了问题？还是某个重要账单我忘了付钱？”

“你好，舅舅，”那位警察说道，“我是马克。”

f. You should have put the milk into icebox; I expect it \_\_\_\_\_ undrinkable by now.

A. became

B. had become

C. has become

D. becomes

正确答案：C

句意：你本该把牛奶放在冰箱里的，我想现在这牛奶已经不能喝了。

“牛奶变质”是过去某一时刻的动作，但其对现在有影响，即现在牛奶已经不能喝了。

这种现在完成时的特点下文将详细讨论。

## 42 现在完成时在表示发生在过去但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态时的使用技巧 Track 042

### (1) 这种完成时态的肯定句不与表示“一段时间”的状语连用

这种完成时态中，由于谓语动词通常是短暂性动词，即动作在短时间或瞬间内即已终止，不再延续。常见的这类动词有：

come go leave kill

die lose buy start

give marry join bring

因此与它连用不能是指“一段时间”的时间状语。比如下列句子都是典型的**错误句子**：

a. I have heard from my girlfriend since I came to America.\*

b. I have bought this pair of shoes for a year.\*

c. He has left his hometown for 3 years.\*

因为以上句子的谓语动词都表示短暂性动作，而非延续性动作，因而不能与since和for引导的表示一段时间的时间状语连用。这种错误句子的改正有多种方式，现以c句为例，该句可改为：

He left his hometown 3 years ago.

It' s been 3 years since he left his hometown.

He hasn' t come back since he left his hometown 3 years ago.

He **has been away from** his hometown for 3 years.

但是，含有短暂性动词的完成时句子若用否定式，表示尚未发生的事情，则可视作一种状态的延续，可与表示一段时间的时间状语连用。



### 例句

a. Beggar: Madam, I **haven' t seen** a piece of meat **for weeks**.

Lady: Mary, please show this poor man the ham we bought just now.

乞丐：夫人，我有好几个星期没见过一片肉了。

夫人：玛丽，把我们刚才买的那根火腿给他瞧瞧。

b. I **haven' t seen** a film **for weeks** .

c. I **haven' t heard** from my girlfriend **since I came to America**.

d. I **haven' t bought** a pair of shoes **for a year**.

### (2) 与不确定时间的时间状语连用

这种现在完成时态可以不与任何时间状语连用，也可以与一些表示不确定时间的时间状语连用，如：

already	已经
yet	只用在疑问句或否定句中，谈论尚未发生的事
lately	最近
often	经常
just	刚刚，方才
never	从不，从未

### 例句

a. —Would you like something to eat?

—No, thanks. I' ve just had dinner.

(刚吃过饭，现在不饿)

b. The leading expert on sleep in America claims that he has never seen a sleepwalker.

这位美国权威的睡眠研究专家声称，他从未见过梦游的人。

c. Has it stopped raining yet?

雨停了吗？

d. He hasn' t arrived yet.

他还没到。

e. He has already arrived.

他已经到了。

f. I have often thought that it would be perfect if we could fly without any aid.

我时常在想，如果我们能够独自飞翔该多好啊。

### (3) 用来宣布刚刚发生的事

这种现在完成时经常用来表示最近才发生的动作，提供最新消息，因而具有“新闻”性质。

a. The President has been assassinated.

总统被暗杀了。

b. He can' t go on holiday because he has broken his leg.

这种现在完成时态强调的是事件的内容，而不是事件发生的具体时间。因而，在实际生活对话中，通常用现在完成时开始问答，随着对话的继续，动作发生的过去时间在说话人的脑子里已经确定了。所以，继续讨论时则用一般过去时态。请认真体会下面的对话：

c. A: **Have** you **seen** the film Forrest Gump? (询问现在对电影《阿甘正传》的内容是否了解)

B: Yes, I **have**. (现在知道电影内容)

A: When **did** you see it? (询问看电影的过去具体时间)

B: I **saw** it last spring. (给出具体时间)

A: **Did** you see it alone? (询问当时情况)

B: No, I **saw** it with my boyfriend. (提供过去事实)

d. A: The President **has been assassinated** .

B: Really? When **did** that happen? (问具体的时间，用一般过去时)

A: He **was killed** last night when he spoke in crowd.

e. A: I hear that famous Chinese comedian **has died** .

B: Really? When **did** she die?

A: She **was dead** late last night.

f. A: **Has** the boss come yet?

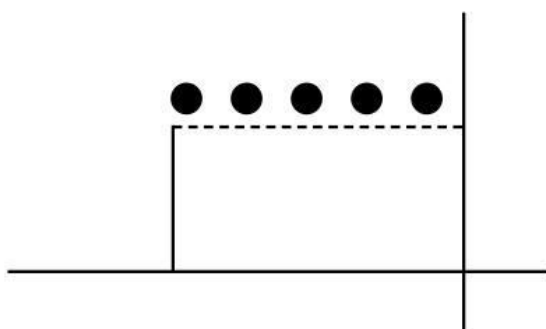
B: Yes, he has. He **is** in his office now.

A: When **did** he come?

B: He **came** at 9 o' clock. He **asked** about you.

### 43 现在完成时用法（三）：到截至目前的一个时间段内重复发生的动作 Track 043

表示到目前为止的一个时间段内重复发生的动作。



注：图中每一个黑点都表示一次动作；虚线表示与现在有联系。

我们来看看美国前总统克林顿在2001年1月18日卸任演说时，是怎样回顾自己的政绩的：

a. In all the work I **have done** as president, every decision I **have made**, every executive action I **have taken**, every bill I **have proposed** and **signed**, I' **ve tried** to give all Americans the tools and conditions to build the future of our dreams, in a good society, with a strong economy, a cleaner environment, and a freer, safer, more prosperous world.

（在过去的八年里，）作为总统，我所做的每项工作，包括做出的每一个决策，采取的每一个行政措施，以及提议并签署的每一个法案，都是在尽力为美国人民提供途径和创造条件，让他们能在经济强盛，环境清洁，全世界更自由、更安全、更繁荣的社会背景下，筑就理想的未来。

在这里，克林顿不厌其烦地使用完成时态，正是表示其八年总统任职期间，他“重复不断”地have done, have made decisions, have taken action以及have proposed and signed bills。

再看下面另一位美国前总统小布什2002年2月22日在清华大学的演说中，是如何使用完成时态的这一“重复动作”思维的：

b. During the 30 years since, America and China **have exchanged** many handshakes of friendship and commerce. And as we **have had** more contact with each other, the citizens of both countries **have gradually learned** more about each other. And that's important.

那之后的三十年（指尼克松于1972年首次访华到2002年这30年）当中，美国和中国已经多次握手，交换友谊并开展商业往来。随着我们两国之间接触的日益频繁，我们两国的国民也逐渐加深了对彼此的了解，这是非常重要的。

c. A total of 36,832 fires in China **have killed** 971 people during the first quarter of the year, injuring 1,228 and causing 310 million yuan in direct economic losses, a source with the statistics said.

统计显示，今年第一季度全国共发生火灾36, 832起，造成971人死亡，1, 228人受伤，造成直接经济损失3.1亿元。

d. For more than eighty years, scientists **have argued** over whether life exists on the planet Mars.

八十多年来，科学家们一直就火星上是否有生命存在这一问题争论不休。

e. Mary told her friend about her husband's poor memory.  
“My husband is losing his memory. But I can't complain. I **have had** three birthdays this year.”

f. We **have taken** three tests so far this week .

g. I **have made** many new friends since I came to Beijing.

h. I **have written** my girlfriend one hundred love letters since we met.

i. Great as Newton was, many of his ideas\_\_\_\_\_today and are being modified by the work of scientists of our time.

- A. are to challenge
- B. may be challenged
- C. are challenging
- D. have been challenged

正确答案：D。

最后，需要说明的是，这里的“重复发生”和现在完成时的第一种“一直在延续”的用法有时难以区分。但是，过分纠结这种动作是“重复发生”还是在“一直延续”是无意义的，我们只要真正理解现在完成时有这三种思维方式即可。

## 44 其他需要使用现在完成时的结构 Track 044

### (1) This/That/It is+序数词+名词+ that+现在完成时

#### 例句

- a. It is **the third** time that I' ve come to Beijing.
- b. It is **the fifth** time that someone has knocked at my door.
- c. —This is **the tenth** cup of coffee that I' ve drunk this evening.
- How are you going to be able to fall asleep later if you keep on like this?

### (2) This/That/It is +最高级/ only修饰的名词+现在完成时

#### 例句

- a. This is **the most interesting movie** that I' ve ever seen.
- b. “Oh Jesus, you' ve got **the biggest cavity** (洞) that I' ve ever seen!” the dentist exclaimed as he examined a new patient. “The biggest cavity I' ve ever seen!” The patient snapped (厉声说), “You don' t have to repeat it”. “I didn' t,” replied the dentist, “That was an echo.”

“天哪！这是我见过的最大的牙洞！”一位牙医在给一个病人检查时说道。“我见过的最大的牙洞！”病人厉声说：“你也用不着说两遍呀。”牙医回答说：“我没有呀，刚才那是回声！”

c. This is the best wine I have ever drunk.

d. It is the worst book I have ever read.

e. This is the hardest job I have ever had.

f. This is the only book he has written.

注意：在上述两种句型中，若是 “It was the second/best...” ，that后边的句子则用过去完成时态。例如：

It was the fifth time that someone had knocked at my door that night.

综上所述，现在完成时总是与现在有着密切的联系：或表示到现在为止这段时间“一直在延续”或“重复发生”的动作或状态；或是表示影响现状的事件。



## 45 现在完成时与一般过去时的用法比较 Track 045

常常让学生将“现在完成时”与“一般过去时”混淆不清的是现在完成时的第二种用法。因为此时完成时表示的也是过去的动作或情况，只是当我们强调过去的事情对现在仍有意义或仍产生影响时才用现在完成时。

试比较：

a. He can't go on holiday because he **has broken** his leg.

（言外之意Now he is still in hospital, so he can't go on holiday. 他现在还在住院，所以不能去度假。）

b. He **broke** his leg.

他腿摔断过。（单纯是表示一种过去的经历，但现在腿已经好了。）

c. One of your friends is driving a sports car but he seems to be very nervous and not sure what to do. You may ask: **Have you driven** a sports car before? He may reply: No, this is the first time that I' **ve driven** a sports car.

上句显然就是因为看到朋友**现在的表现**——他很紧张，你提出了怀疑：问他在此前是否“开过车”——于是将现在和过去联系起来了。

d. **Did** you drive to the party?

那天你是开车去参加晚会的吗？（这只是单纯表示过去）试比较：

a. I **haven't seen** him this morning.

b. I **didn't see** him this morning.

不同的时态，表明说话的时间不同：a句用了现在完成时，而完成时是要与“现在”发生联系的，故a句说话的时间是this morning。b句用的是一般过去时，说明this morning已经成为过去时间，故b句说话的时间是在“今天下午”或“今天晚上”。

c. I **have called** him three times this morning.

d. I **called him** three times this morning.

同理，c句用了完成时，强调的是到现在为止的一个时间段内重复的动作，故c句说话的时间是在this morning。d句用的是一般过去时，一般过去时表明事情发生在过去，与现在没有什么联系，故d句说话的时间是在“今天下午”或“今天晚上”。

### 延续性动词的两种时态的区别：

请比较以下例句：

a. He lives in Beijing. He **has lived** here for 3 years.

（还可能将继续住在这里）

b. He **lived** in Beijing for 3 years and then emigrated to America.

（曾经住过，但现在已搬走了。）

c. He **has been** in the army for 6 years.

（他入伍已有六年。）

d. He **was** in the army for 6 years.

（他当过六年的兵，现在不是了。）

e. I **have smoked** for 2 years.

（我已有两年的烟龄了，可能还要继续吸。）

f. I **smoked** for 2 years.

（我抽过两年的烟，但现在戒了。）

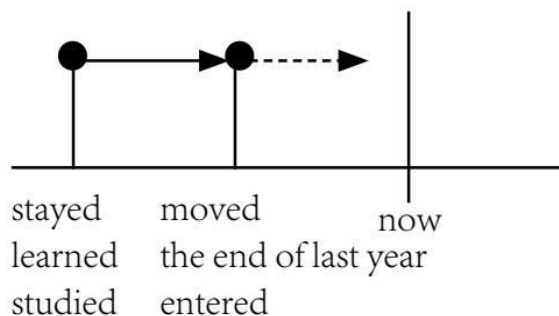
## 第二节 过去完成时 (had done)

### 46 过去完成时的用法 Track 046

现在完成时表示一个开始于现在之前（即过去）并且仍在持续或刚刚结束的动作。同理类推，过去完成时用来表示在过去某一时刻之前（即过去的过去）就已开始的动作，这一动作：①在该过去时刻仍然在继续或刚刚停止；②在该过去时刻之前的某一时刻已停止；③在该过去时刻之前的一段时间内重复进行。

（1）表示开始于过去某一时刻之前（即过去的过去）的动作或状态在过去这一时刻仍在持续

具体来说，就是一个动作或状态在过去某一时间之前已经开始，一直持续到这一过去时间，并且到这一过去时间还未结束并仍有可能继续持续下去。



（图中虚线箭头表示动作可能继续持续下去）

#### 例句

a. I **had stayed** in America for two years when he **moved** here.  
（moved是过去的动作，stayed发生在moved之前，即过去的过去；在moved之后stayed动作还将会继续。）

b. I **had learned** 1000 words by the end of last year.  
(learned在过去时间the end of last year之前已开始，到“去年底”之后还可能持续。)

c. He **had collected** ten books of stamps by the end of last month.

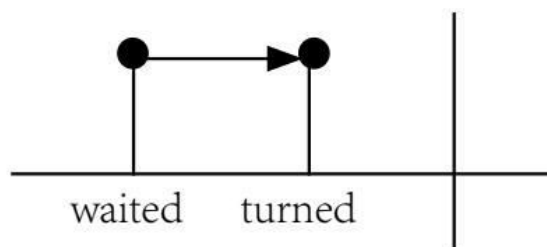
d. We **had studied** English for six years when we entered college.

e. It **had snowed** for a long time when I woke up.

f.— It's already 10 o'clock. I guess Bob and Amy won't be coming to the party.

—They called at nine to say that they'd **been held up**.

或由上下文明确告知动作或状态持续到过去这一时刻为止：



请看例句：

g. Former Japanese Prime Minister, who **had been** in a coma (昏迷) for six weeks, **died** of a cerebral (大脑的) infarction (梗死) at a Tokyo hospital.

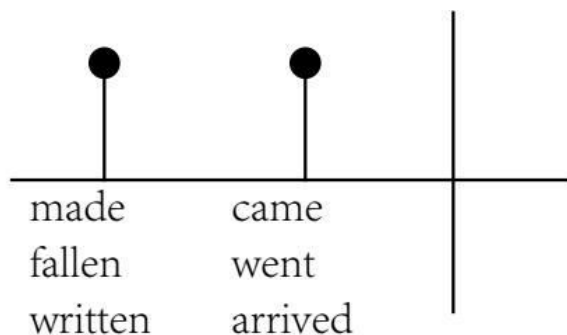
日本前首相在长达六星期的昏迷之后，因脑梗于东京的一家医院逝世。

h. I **had waited** for two hours in such a severe winter when she eventually turned up, which of course drove me mad.

i. There **had been** fifty colleges in our city up till 2013.

## (2) 表示开始于过去某一时刻之前的动作到过去这一时刻之前即已停止

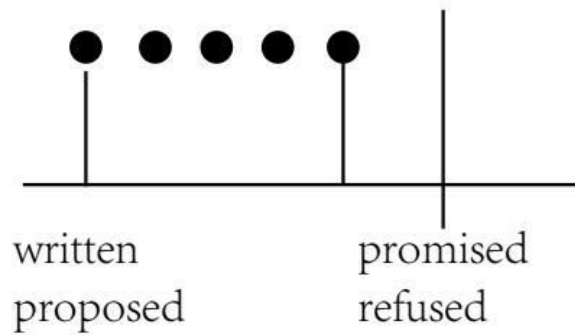
具体来说就是表示一个动作或状态在过去某一时间之前已经开始，并且到这一过去时间之前即告结束，而并没有持续到这一过去时刻。这时过去完成时的动作通常是短暂动作。



### 例句

- She **had made** everything ready before I came.
- Her baby **had fallen** asleep when she went into the room.
- Before John got home, Mary **had gone** to bed.
- I **had just poured** myself a cup of tea when the phone rang. When I came back from answering it, the cup was empty. Somebody **had drunk** the tea or **thrown** it away.

(3) 表示在过去某一时刻之前开始的动作，在过去这一时刻之前的一段时间内重复发生



### 例句

a. I **had written** her 100 letters when she finally promised to marry me.

b. I **had proposed** to her five times, but she still refused to marry me.

### (4) 过去完成时的其他用法

1) intend, mean, hope, want, plan, suppose, expect, think, propose, wish等动词的过去完成时, 可表示过去未能实现的计划、设想、意图或希望等。

### 例句

a. I **had planned** to go shopping with you but my mother came to see me just when I was about to go.

b. She **had hoped** that he would come to date her, but he didn' t show up.

c. I **had intended** to see you, but I was too busy.

d. They **had hoped** to see you off at the airport, but they got there too late.

2) 用在 “It was the +序数词/最高级+ that…” 句型中。例如：

Last week I attended an international conference and saw Mr. Machine. It was the third time that I **had met** him.



## 47 一般过去时与过去完成时的比较 Track 047

两个或两个以上相继发生的动作，用and或but按动作发生的先后顺序连接，此时要用一般过去时，而不用过去完成时。过去完成时则强调主语在过去某一时刻回顾更早的动作。具体来说，当我们在谈论过去某一事件时，想到了在这之前已发生的某事，这时可以用过去完成时态。

### 例句

a. He **opened** the door and **entered**, but **found** nobody.

b. He **served** in the army for ten years, then **retired** and **married**. His children are now at school .

他当过十年兵，然后退伍并结了婚。他的孩子都在上学。

c. He **had served** in the airforce for ten years before he died in the jet-crash incident.

他在一次撞机事故中牺牲了，事故之前他已在空军服役了十年。

d. I realized that we **had met** before. （不能说...we met before）

e. I **heard** voices and **realized** that there were several people in the next room.

我听见有人说话，知道隔壁房间里几个人。

f. I saw empty glasses and cigar butts on the table and realized that someone **had been** in the room.

我看见桌上有空杯子和雪茄烟蒂，知道屋子里有人来过。

在表示两个相继发生的动作时，用过去完成时可以表示在一个动作完成以后，另一个动作才开始发生，从而使得两个动作相互独立，彼此脱离开来。用一般过去时，则可能表示一个动作的发生“导致”另一个动作的发生，或两个动作之间有因果关系。

试比较：

a. When I **had opened** all the windows I sat down and had a cup of tea.

我把所有的窗子都打开后，就坐下来喝了杯茶。（不宜说When I opened…）

b. I **opened** the window and the cat jumped out.

我刚把窗子打开，那只猫就跳了出去。

c. When I **had written** my letters I did some gardening.

我把信写完后，到花园里干了些活。（不宜说When I wrote…）

d. When I **wrote** him a letter, he came at once.

我给他去了封信后，他立即就来了。

e. When the singer **had sung** her song, she sat down.

这位歌手唱完歌以后，就坐了下来。（若说成When the singer **sang** her song, she sat down. 则可能给人造成这种印象：这位歌手是坐着唱歌的。）

### 第三节 将来完成时 (will have done)

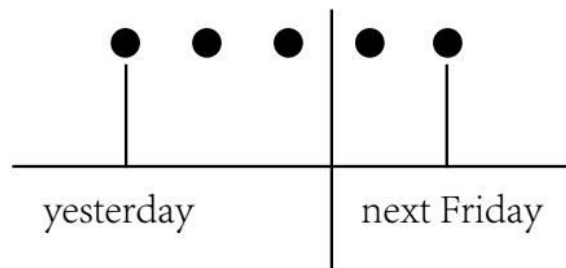
#### 48 将来完成时动作开始的时间 Track 048

现在完成时，是以“现在”为坐标时间，来描述开始于现在之前（即过去）的动作持续到现在。过去完成时，是以“过去”为坐标时间，来描述开始于过去某一时刻之前（即过去的过去）的动作持续到过去这一时刻。同理，将来完成时，是以“将来”为坐标时间，来表示开始于**将来之前**（可能是**过去**、**现在**或**将来**）的动作持续到将来。注意，这里说动作开始于“将来之前”，意味着动作开始的时间可能是：①过去某一时刻；②现在某一时刻；③将来某一时刻。但动作开始的时间并不重要，关键是说话人要站在**将来的某一时间**来谈某一动作的完成情况。例如：

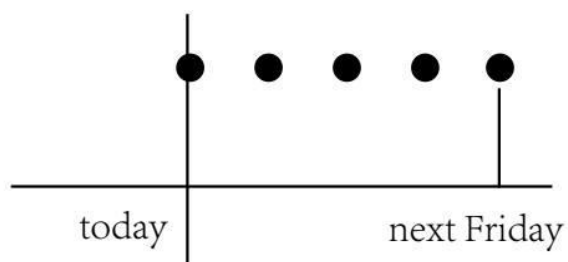
We **will have taken** five exams **by next Friday**.

到下个星期五之前，我们将完成五门考试。

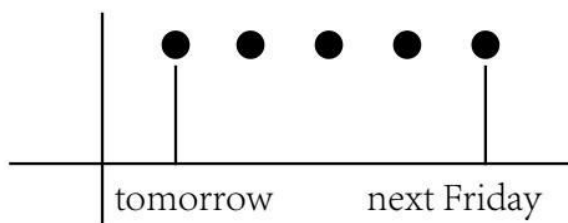
1) 我们可能是昨天开始考试的：We started our exams yesterday and we **will have taken** five exams by next Friday.



2) 我们可能是今天开始考试的：We have started our exams today and we **will have taken** five exams by next Friday.



3) 我们也可能是明天才开始考试: We will start our exams tomorrow and we **will have taken** five exams by next Friday.

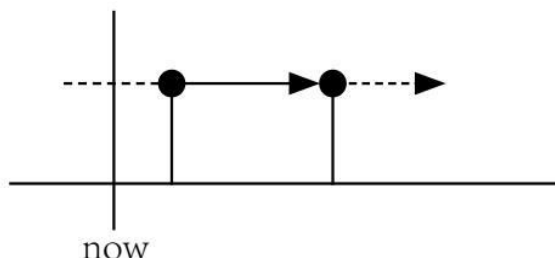


但具体是哪一天开始的并不重要, 说话人强调的是他们“星期五前要完成五门考试”。

## 49 将来完成时的三种用法 Track 049

同前面其他完成时态一样，将来完成时态也有三种基本用法。

### (1) 表示延续到将来某一时刻的动作或状态



注：虚线表示这一动作可能开始于现在、过去或将来；实箭头表示这一动作延续到将来某一时刻；虚箭头表示这一动作可能继续延续下去。

#### 例句

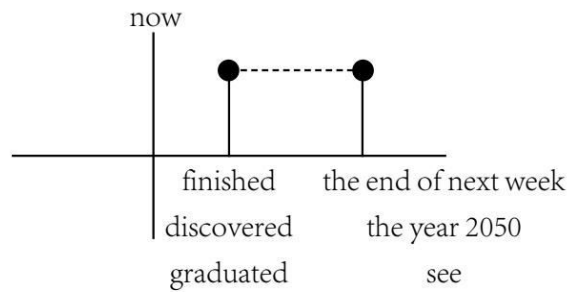
a. I **will have taught** English in New Oriental School for five years by the end of next month.

b. I **will have learned** 8,000 words by the end of next year.

c. I **will have waited** for her for two hours when she arrives at 14 o' clock.

d. The old man **will have worked** in this factory for 50 years when he retires next month.

### (2) 表示将来某一时刻之前发生的动作对将来有影响



(虚线表示这一动作对将来有影响。)

### 例句

- a. We **will have finished** our exams by the end of next week.
  - b. By the year 2050, scientists probably **will have discovered** a cure for cancer.
  - c. By the time I see you, I **will have graduated**.
  - d. I **will have finished** my homework by the time I go out on a date tonight.
  - e. The construction company **will have completed** the stadium by the end of next July, when the Olympic Games is to be held here.
  - f. —May I speak to your manager, Mr. Williams, at eight tonight?  
— I am sorry. Mr. Williams\_\_\_\_\_to a conference long before then.
- A. will have gone
  - B. had gone
  - C. would have gone
  - D. has gone

正确答案：A。

g. I hope you\_\_\_\_\_all the material before you make the final decision.

A.will have read

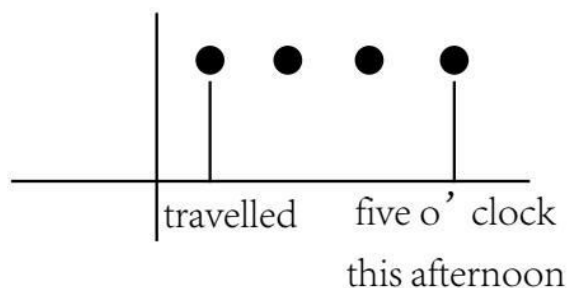
B.will be read

C.will be reading

D.would have read

正确答案：A。

(3) 表示在将来某一时刻之前开始的动作，在该时刻之前的一段时间内重复发生。



### 例句

By five o' clock this afternoon the spaceship **will have travelled** eleven times round the Earth.

### 温故知新

对于完成时态，首先应该真正理解现在完成时态的三种思维方法：

1. 始于过去，延续到现在的动作或状态；
2. 过去发生但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态；

3. 到目前为止的一个时间段内重复发生的动作。

其他两种完成时态在思维上与现在完成时在本质上是一样的，区别只是人们说话的时间坐标不同。另外要注意比较不同用法的完成时态与时间状语的搭配。

在下一章我们将会讨论和完成时态密切相关的另一种时态——完成进行时态。

## 完成时态练习

### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. I began to teach in New Oriental School in 2008. It is 2018 now. So far I \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) here for 10 years. By 2017, I \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) for 9 years. By 2020, I \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) for 12 years.

2. If you keep on like this, you \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) all your money before the end of the trip.

3. —Was Clint at the party when you arrived?

—No, he \_\_\_\_\_ (already, go) home.

4. —Was Clint at the party when you arrived?

—Yes, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home soon afterwards.

5. I felt very tired when I got home, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) straight to bed.

6. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed.

7. Sorry I' m late. The car \_\_\_\_\_ (break) down on my way here.

8. We \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) along the road when we saw a car that \_\_\_\_\_ (break) down. So we stopped to see if we could help.



9. Yesterday I had a phone call from Clint. I was very surprised. I \_\_\_\_\_(write) to him many times but he \_\_\_\_\_(never, reply).

10. I met Clint a few days ago. He \_\_\_\_\_(just, come) back from holiday. He looked very well.

11. The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. It was his first flight. He \_\_\_\_\_(never, fly) before.

12. The traffic is terrible. We' re going to be late. By the time we \_\_\_\_\_(get) to the airport, Bob' s plane \_\_\_\_\_(arrive, already), and he' ll be wondering where we are.

13. Last spring I went to France. It was the first time that I \_\_\_\_\_(be) there.

14. This is the only novel that he \_\_\_\_\_(write).

15. This is the first time that I \_\_\_\_\_(take) the flight.

16. This is the most difficult job that I \_\_\_\_\_(ever, do).

17. Clint is phoning his girlfriend again. This is the fourth time that he \_\_\_\_\_(phone) her this evening.

18. A: Look! Somebody \_\_\_\_\_(spill) milk on the carpet.

B: Well, it \_\_\_\_\_(be, not) me. I \_\_\_\_\_(do, not) it.

A: I wonder who it \_\_\_\_\_(be) then.

19. A: Clint \_\_\_\_\_(break) his leg.

B: Really? How\_\_\_\_\_that \_\_\_\_\_(happen)?

A: He \_\_\_\_\_(fall) off a ladder.

20. I \_\_\_\_\_(lose) my key. I can' t get into my house.

21. I \_\_\_\_\_(lose) my key, so I couldn' t get into my house.  
But now I \_\_\_\_\_(find) it.

## 二、改错。

22. I have entered the university for two years.

23. He has come here for three hours.

24. The old lady has died for ten years.

25. He has left his native place for three years.

26. I have married for a year.

27. He has joined in the army for five years.

28. I have come to Beijing for seven years.

## 三、用正确时态填空，必要时在合适的地方加入just, already, yet, before等。

29. A man sitting next to you on a flight seems very nervous but feels very excited. You can ask:\_\_\_\_\_? (take a flight)

30. Jack is skiing from the top of the mountain. He doesn' t look very confident. You can ask:\_\_\_\_\_? (ski from the top of the mountain)

31. After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says "Would you like something to eat?" You say: No, thank you.\_\_\_\_\_. (have lunch)

32. You know that a friend of yours is looking for a job. Perhaps he has been successful. Ask him:\_\_\_\_\_? (find a job)

33. You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away. You say: Wait a minute!\_\_\_\_\_. (not/finish)

34. John goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller asks “Can I speak to John?” You say: I am afraid\_\_\_\_\_. (go out)

#### 四、讨论下列完成时态是什么思维和用法。

35. Mary: How long have you been married?

Lisa: This time or altogether?

36. Teacher: Young man, you haven’ t handed in one homework assignment since we started this class. Won’ t you please do tonight’ s assignment?

George: What? And ruin a perfect record?

37. Lucy: Do you believe kissing is unhealthy?

Lily: I couldn’ t say—I’ ve never...

Lucy: You have never been kissed?

Lily: I’ ve never been sick.

38. Will He Lose His Job?

Clerk A: Poor old Watkins has completely lost his hearing. I’ m afraid he’ ll lose his job.

C.erk B: Nonsense. He’ s to be transferred to the Complaint  
D. partment.

39. A total of 36,832 fires in China have killed 971 people during the first quarter of the year, injuring 1,228 and causing 310 million yuan in direct economic losses, a source with the statistics said.

40. Former Japanese Prime Minister, who had been in a coma (昏迷) for six weeks, died of a cerebral (大脑的) infarction (梗死) at a Tokyo hospital.

41. It' s reported that by the end of this month the output of cement in the factory will have risen by about 10%.

42. —May I speak to your manager Mr. Williams at eight tonight?

—I am sorry. Mr. Williams will have gone to a conference long before then.

### 完成时态练习答案

#### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. have taught; had taught; will have taught

2. will have spent

3. had already gone

4. went

5. went

6. had gone

7. broke

8. were driving; had broken

9. had written; had never replied

10. had just come

11. had never flown

12. get; will have already arrived

13. had been

14. has written

15. have taken

- 16. have ever done
- 17. has phoned
- 18. has spilt; wasn' t; didn' t do; was
- 19. has broken; did; happen; fell
- 20. have lost
- 21. had lost; have found

## 二、改错。

22. I have been in the university for two years. / I entered the university two years ago.

23. He has been here for three hours. / He came here three hours ago.

24. The old lady has been dead for ten years. / The old lady died ten years ago.

25. He has been away from his native place for three years. / He left his native place three years ago.

26. I have been married for a year. / I got married a year ago.

27. He has been in the army for five years. / He joined in the army five years ago.

28. I have been in Beijing for seven years. / I came to Beijing seven years ago.

## 三、用正确时态填空，必要时在合适的地方加入just, already, yet, before等。

29. Have you taken a flight before?

30. Have you skied from the top of the mountain before?

- 31. I' ve already had lunch.
- 32. Have you found a job yet?
- 33. I haven' t finished yet.
- 34. he has gone out

#### 四、讨论下列完成时态是什么思维和用法。

- 35. 状态的持续
- 36. 过去动作对现在的影响
- 37. 过去动作对现在的影响
- 38. 过去动作对现在的影响
- 39. 重复动作
- 40. 状态的持续
- 41. 对未来的影响
- 42. 对未来的影响

## Chapter 06 时态（二）：完成进行时 时态



音频

50 完成进行时概述

51 现在完成进行时用法（一）：表示从过去持续到现在，并且仍然在持续的动作

52 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（一）

53 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（二）

54 现在完成进行时用法（二）：表示持续到现在，刚刚结束的动作

55 现在完成进行时用法（三）：表示过去一段时间重复发生的动作

56 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（三）

57 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（四）

58 过去完成进行时的用法

59 将来完成进行时的用法



## 50 完成进行时概述 Track 050

形式：have/has been doing；had been doing；will have been doing

意义：具有完成和进行两方面的特点；表示一个动作在现在、过去或将来的某一时刻之前的一段时间里一直在进行，或重复进行，强调动作的持续性。

时态与用法	图解	例句	解释
<b>现在完成进行时</b> 表示在现在之前的一段时间里一直在持续或重复进行的动作。	 <p>raining right now</p> <p>(图中黑点表示两个不同的时刻；箭头表示动作在持续。)</p>	It <b>has been raining</b> all day. It is still raining right now.	raining 是在 right now 之前的一段时间里 (all day) 一直在持续的动作。
<b>过去完成进行时</b> 表示在过去的某一时刻之前的一段时间里一直在持续或重复进行的动作。	 <p>waiting turned up</p> <p>(图中黑点表示两个不同的时刻；箭头表示动作在持续。)</p>	I <b>had been waiting</b> for her before she finally turned up.	turned up 是过去的活动，waiting 则是在 turned up 之前的一段时间里 (two hours) 一直在持续的动作。
<b>将来完成进行时</b> 表示在将来的某一时刻之前的一段时间里一直在持续或重复进行的动作。这个动作开始的时间可能是过去、现在或将来。	 <p>teaching retire</p> <p>(图中黑点表示两个不同的时刻；箭头表示动作在持续。)</p>	Professor Smith <b>will have been teaching</b> for 50 years when he retires next month.	retire 是将来的活动，teaching 则是在 retire 之前的一段时间里 (50 years) 一直在持续的动作。

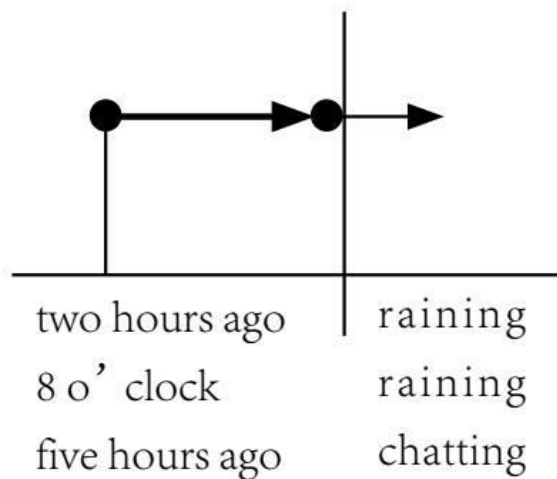
## 第一节 现在完成进行时 (have/has been doing)

### 51 现在完成进行时用法（一）：表示从过去持续到现在，并且仍然在持续的动作 Track 051

#### （1）与表示一段时间的时间状语连用

强调动作的持续，表示开始于过去的动作持续到现在，并且动作还没有结束，还将继续持续下去。此时的完成进行时常与“for +时间段”

“since+时间点”或all morning, all day, all week这样的表示“一段时间”的时间状语连用，以强调在这段时间，某项活动正在持续。



注：图中黑点表示现在和过去两个时刻；粗箭头表示动作在一直持续；细箭头表示该动作还将继续持续下去。

#### 例句

a. It began raining two hours ago and it's still raining.

It **has been raining** for the past two hours.

b. It began raining at 8 o' clock. Now it' s still raining.

It **has been raining** since 8 o' clock.

c. It **has been snowing** all day. I wonder when it will stop.

d. Clint is chatting on QQ now. He **has been chatting** on QQ for five straight hours. He must be tired.

e. These pop fans **have been waiting** for the famous singer for nearly three hours in the cold, but he still hasn' t shown up.

## (2) 可以不与表示一段时间的时间状语连用

上述例句均含有表示“一段时间”的时间状语，表示到说话时刻动作仍在持续。现在完成进行时还可以不带具体的表示一段时间的时间状语，此时它表示**最近一段时期内正在持续**的活动。

### 例句

a. I **have been thinking** about changing my job.

我最近一直在考虑换工作。

b. I **have been thinking** about what you said and I' ve decided to take your advice.

我一直在思考你说的话，并已决定听从你的建议。

c. All the students **have been studying** hard, for final exams will start next week.

学生们都在用功学习，因为下星期就要期末考试了。

## 52 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（一）

### Track 052

上述现在完成进行时的用法和现在完成时的第一种用法非常接近。即，都表示动作从过去某一时间持续到现在，并可能仍将持续。二者之间有相同点，也有不同点。

#### （1）相同点

1) 谓语动词都表示延续性的动作。如：live, learn, study, sleep, snow, wait, work, teach, stay等。

2) 都与表示“一段时间”的时间状语连用。这时，用两种时态几乎没有多大区别。例如：

a. I **have been learning** / **have learned** English for ten years.

十年来我一直在学习英语。

b. I **have been living** / **have lived** here since 3 years ago.

自从三年前开始，我就一直住在这里。

c. He **has been sleeping** / **has slept** for three hours.

d. I **have been working** / **have worked** in this company for 3 years.

e. It **has been snowing** / **has snowed** for a long time.

#### （2）不同点

现在完成时只有在与for three years, since three years ago等这样的表示一段时间的时间状语连用时才与现在完成进行时的意思相近。不加这样的时间状语时，现在完成时表示的是一个完成了的动作。例如：

a. I **have worked** / **have been working** in this company for 3 years.

b. I **have worked** in this company.

我在这家公司工作过。（现在不在了，表示过去的经历）

c. I **have been working** in this company.

我一直就在这家公司工作。（现在还在这家公司）

d. He **has been sleeping** / **has slept** for three hours.

他已睡了3个小时。（也可能还在睡）

e. He **has slept**.

他睡过了。（所以现在不困了）

f. He **has been sleeping**.

他一直在睡觉。（现在还在睡）

g. Have you ever **worked** in a foreign-funded company?

你在外企工作过吗？（问过去的经历，动作已结束）

h. You look tired. **Have you been working** hard?

你看起来很累，工作一直很辛苦吧？（问是否一直是这样辛苦）

从上面c, f, h三句我们可以看出，现在完成进行时既可与表示一段时间的状态连用，也可不连用，都可表达“一直在持续”这一含义。

## 53 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（二）

### Track 053

完成进行时强调动作的过程，完成时强调动作的结果。

现在完成进行时所强调的是在过去一段时期内某项活动的**持续性**，因此强调的是动作本身。现在完成时则是强调动作的结果。

a. My hands are very dirty. I' **ve been painting** the house.

我的手很脏，我一直在给房子刷漆。

b. I **have painted** the house green. (The house was white, but now it' s green.)

我把房子刷成了绿色。

c. Sorry about the mess—I' **ve been painting** the house.

(painting活动还没有结束，房子还没有收拾，所以屋子很乱。)

d. I' **ve painted** two rooms since lunchtime.

(painted的结果是“两间房子都已粉刷完毕”。)

e. I **have been reading** your grammar book. After I finish it, I' ll discuss some problems with you.

f. I **have read** your grammar book and I have questions to ask you.

g. I **have been reading** the book you lent me but I haven' t finished it yet.

h. I **have read** the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

i. — Oh, I **have been sitting** in the same position too long. My legs have fallen asleep.

噢，我一个姿势坐得太久了，两条腿都麻木了。

—Shake it a little before you get up.

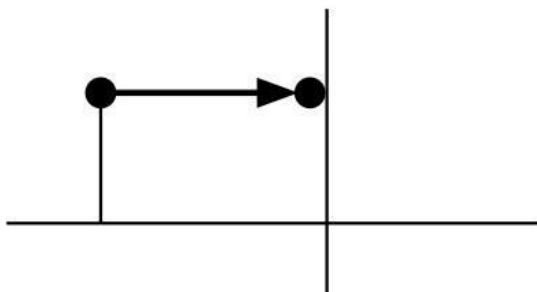
站起来之前，你先把腿抖一抖。

从上一句我们可看出：由于长时间持续地坐着 (have been sitting)，造成的结果是My legs have fallen asleep。因此，完成进行时表示活动的延续性；完成时强调动作的结果。



## 54 现在完成进行时用法（二）：表示持续到现在，刚刚结束的动作 Track 054

表示开始于过去的动作持续到现在为止不再继续，或表示不久前刚刚结束的动作。



注：图中黑点表示现在和过去两个时刻；箭头表示动作一直在持续；该动作到现在时刻即告终止。

### （1）表示动作持续到说话时为止

#### 例句

a. I' **ve been trying** to study for the past hours, but something always seems to interrupt me. I think I' d better go to the library.

b. Where have you been? I' **ve been looking** for you for the last half hour.

你到哪里了？我一直找了你好半个小时。（不再持续）

c. You have just arrived to meet a friend who is waiting for you. You ask, “**Have you been waiting** long?”

d. I' m so sorry I' m late. Have you been waiting long?

e. Thank you so much for the binoculars. I' ve been wanting a pair for ages.

非常感谢你送我这副望远镜，我多年来一直想要一副。

## (2) 表示不久前刚刚结束的动作（这是完成时所没有的用法）

### 例句

a. Have you been running?

你刚才是不是在跑步？

b. Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?

c. The little boy is dirty from head to foot because he has been playing in the mud.

## 55 现在完成进行时用法（三）：表示过去一段时间重复发生的动作 Track 055

现在完成进行时可表示说话时刻以前的一段时间内重复发生的动作。

### 例句

a. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They' **ve been going** there for years.

b. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States **have been joining** with neighboring communities to share the costs of government.

在近几年中，美国许多城镇不断合并，以降低政府费用开支。

c. We' **ve been writing** to each other for years. (Years ago we started writing to each other. We still write to each other regularly now.)

多年来，我们一直经常通信。

d. I' **ve been getting** up early since I entered the college.

自从上大学以来，我一直坚持早起。

e. The price **has been going** up recently. I wonder whether it will remain so.

最近物价一直在涨，不知是否会一直这样。

f. You' **ve been staying** up late again?

你最近又在熬夜？

g. Koreans **have been marrying** US soldiers stationed here since the 1950s. The peak years were during the 1970s, when more than 4,000 Koreans married US soldiers each year.

自20世纪50年代以来，就不断有韩国人与当地的美国驻军成婚。70年代达到了高峰，每年有4,000多人嫁给美国士兵。

## 56 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（三）

### Track 056

#### （1）用短暂性动词的完成进行时表示重复

我们在第42节讲过，短暂性动词的完成时不能与表示“一段时间”的时间状语连用。但是，短暂性动词的**完成进行时**可与表示“一段时间”的时间状语连用，表示重复动作。如上述例句：

a. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They' **ve been going** there for years.

不能说：

Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They' **ve gone** there for years.\*

b. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States **have been joining** with neighboring communities to share the costs of government.

不能说：

Over the past few years, many towns in the United States **have joined** with neighboring communities...\*

c. I' **ve been getting** up early since I entered the college.

不能说：

I' **ve got** up early since I entered the college.\*

#### （2）重复动作的分割性

现在完成进行时强调动作的持续性，因此它表示一种看起来不间断的动作。如果要表达做一件事的次数（即把动作分割为一次一次的动作），或一共做了多少件事情时，则不能用现在完成进行时。请比较：

a. I **have been sitting** in class since 8 o' clock this morning.

从早上8点钟到现在我一直在上课。

b. I **have had three** classes since 8 o' clock this morning.

从早上8点钟到现在我已经上了三节课。

c. It **has been snowing** all day. I wonder when it will stop.

下了一整天的雪，不知什么时候能停。

d. We **have had three** major snowstorms so far this winter. I wonder how many more we will have.

今年冬天已经下了三场大雪了，不知还会再下几场雪。

e. The phone **has been ringing** for almost a minute. Why doesn' t someone answer it?

f. The phone **has rung four times** this morning, and each time it has been for Clint .

g. I' **ve been writing** the letter this morning and won' t finish until noon.

h. I' **ve written three** letters so far this morning.

i. I' **ve written** them **three times**, but I still haven' t received a reply.

j. I' ve been chatting (表示重复动作, 没有说明具体聊天次数) online for a little over three years and have met (完成时表示重复, 这里动作已被分割, 因为下文提到了hundreds of people) hundreds of people. One common thing of those who have met (动作同样被分割, 所以用完成时表示重复) others in real life is: "Don' t base the rest of your life on a week or two", meaning "don' t spend a week or two with your online lover, then move in with them and get married."

我泡在网上和人瞎聊已经有三年多了, 也遇到了很多人。那些在现实生活中与网友见过面的人总要说: “别让一两个星期来决定你的下半生。”就是说, “别和你的网上情人相恋仅仅一两个星期就谈婚论嫁。”

## 57 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较（四）

### Track 057

不能用于进行时态的动词，往往可以用于现在完成时态，但同样不能用于现在完成进行时。

#### 例句

How long **have** you **known** Jane?

How long **have** you **been knowing** Jane?

解释：像know这样的表示心理活动的动词是没有进行时态的，因此不能用于现在完成进行时，但可以用于现在完成时。

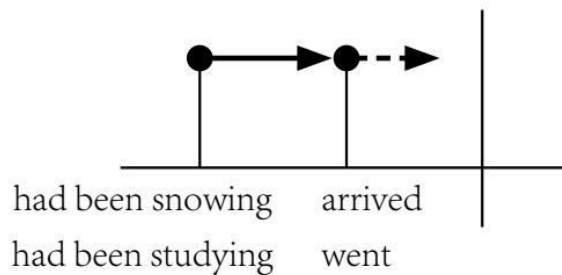


## 第二节 过去完成进行时 (had been doing)

### 58 过去完成进行时的用法 Track 058

过去完成进行时与过去完成时之间的关系，同现在完成进行时与现在完成时之间的关系一样。它的用法与现在完成进行时的用法基本相同，只是将“坐标时间”移到过去。同样是强调动作的持续性，表示开始于过去某一时刻之前的动作持续到过去这一时刻，并可能仍将继续持续下去。

(1) 强调在过去的某一时刻之前一直在持续的一项活动，且该活动可能仍将继续持续下去

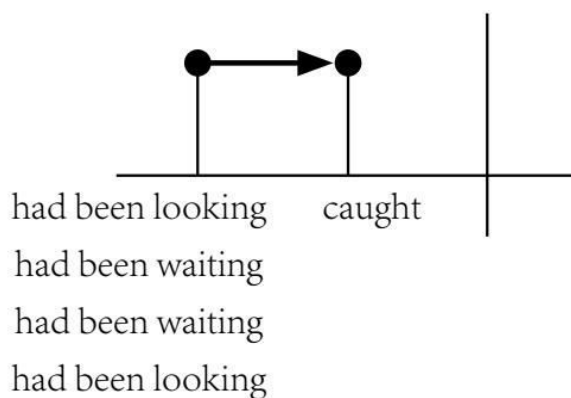


#### 例句

a. When I arrived in Inner Mongolia, it had been snowing for half a month.

b. She had been studying French for one year before she went to France.

(2) 强调在过去的某一时刻之前一直在持续的一项活动，活动持续到过去这一时刻为止，或者是在这一时刻之前刚刚结束



### 例句

a. The police **had been looking** for the murderer for two years before they caught him.

b. He finally showed up at nine o' clock. I **had been waiting** for him since six o' clock.

c. When she arrived, I **had been waiting** in the cold for three hours.

d. I **had been looking** for jobs for nearly half a year before I finally got a position in this dot-com company.

e. When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of them had a black eye. I knew they **had been fighting**.

f. There was nobody in the room but there was a smell of cigarettes. Somebody **had been smoking** in the room.

g. The plane, which **had been waiting** on the runway for hours, finally got clearance for take-off.

(3) 可表示过去某一时刻之前的一段时间内重复发生的动作

## 例句

a. He **had been gambling** for two years before his wife found out.

b. I **had been trying** to get her on the phone. Finally she gave me a call.

我一直试着打电话找她，最后她给我回了个电话。

同样，这里的重复动作不能说出具体的次数。我们可以说：

I **had tried five times** to get her on the phone before she finally gave me a call.

我打了五次电话去找她，她终于给我回了电话。

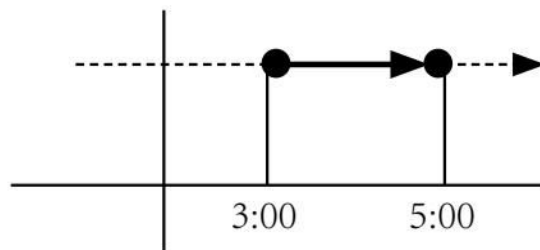
而不能说：I had been trying five times...\*

### 第三节 将来完成进行时 (will have been doing)

#### 59 将来完成进行时的用法 Track 059

将来完成进行时的用法与现在完成进行时的用法基本相同，只是将“坐标时间”移到将来。同样是强调动作的持续性，表示开始于将来某个时刻之前的动作持续到将来这一时刻，并可能继续持续下去。

##### (1) 强调在将来的某一时刻之前一直在持续的一项活动



##### 例句

a. My brother has promised to help me study for my exam tomorrow. I get home from school at 3:00 and he gets home from school at 5:00. I **will have been studying** for two hours by the time he gets home.

(到5:00, studying的活动仍将持续)

b. I'm retiring this fall. By then I' ll **have been teaching** for 30 years.

(到今年秋天, teaching的活动不再持续)

c. She **will have been taking care of** her blind husband for 20 years by then.

(taking care of的活动可能还会持续)

d. I' m getting tired of sitting in the car. Do you realize that by the time we arrive in Beijing, we **will have been driving** for twenty straight hours?

## (2) 表示在将来某个时刻之前经常重复的动作

### 例句

a. I **will have been attending** Professor Smith' s lectures for half a year by next week.

b. By tomorrow I **will have been doing** morning exercises for 100 days.

c. The old man **will have been getting up** at 4:00 for ten years by next month.

到下个月，这位老人坚持早晨4:00起床的习惯就保持10年时间了。

### 温故知新

对于完成进行时态，重点是理解现在完成进行时的三种用法：

1. 表示持续到现在、且可能仍在持续的动作；
2. 表示持续到现在、刚刚结束的动作；
3. 表示过去一段时间内重复发生的动作。

同时还要注意现在完成进行时与现在完成时的用法区别，对此前文已有详细比较。

至此，英文中的主要时态用法就介绍完毕了，这是动词作为谓语的变化形式。接下来，我们将讨论动词作为非谓语的变化形式：不定式、动名

词。而分词作为另一种非谓语形式，由于用法很复杂，我们将在《英语语法新思维 基础版3》一书中另行讨论。

### 完成进行时态练习

#### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. This morning I came to class at 9:00. Right now it is 10:00, and I am still in class. I \_\_\_\_\_(sit) at this desk for an hour. By 9:30, I \_\_\_\_\_(sit) here for half an hour. By 11:00, I \_\_\_\_\_(sit) here for two hours.

2. It is midnight. I \_\_\_\_\_(study) for five straight hours. No wonder I' m getting tired.

3. It was midnight. I \_\_\_\_\_(study) for five straight hours. No wonder I was getting tired.

4. Clint woke up in the middle of last night. He was frightened and didn' t know where he was. He \_\_\_\_\_(dream).

5. When I got home, I saw Clint was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off. He \_\_\_\_\_(watch) TV.

6. He finally showed up at nine o' clock. I \_\_\_\_\_(wait) for him since six o' clock.

7. We were good friends. We \_\_\_\_\_(know) each other for a long time.

8. When I arrived, my girlfriend was waiting for me. She was rather annoyed because she \_\_\_\_\_(wait) for a very long time on such a windy day.

9. Yesterday I saw Leon sitting on the ground. He was out of breath. He \_\_\_\_\_(run).

10. I \_\_\_\_\_(write) 3 letters since lunchtime.

11. I \_\_\_\_\_(write) letters since lunchtime and I' m still writing now.

12. How long\_\_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_\_(read) that book?
13. How many pages of that book\_\_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_\_(read)?
14. The novel is so interesting. I \_\_\_\_\_(read) for two hours and \_\_\_\_\_(read) 55 pages so far.
15. I know Jane is saving money to go on holiday. I ask her, “How long\_\_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_\_(save) money? How much money\_\_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_\_(save)?”
16. I \_\_\_\_\_(surf) online since 8 o’ clock A.M. I am very tired now.
17. I \_\_\_\_\_(surf) online five times this week.
18. I \_\_\_\_\_(knock) at the door six times, but nobody answers it.I don’ t think anybody is in.
19. I \_\_\_\_\_(knock) at the door for two minutes, but nobody answers it.
20. I \_\_\_\_\_(read) the book you lent me but I haven’ t finished it yet.
21. I \_\_\_\_\_(read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

## 二、单项选择。

22. He\_\_\_\_\_several novels since 1985. Most of them\_\_\_\_\_quite successful, but the last one\_\_\_\_\_very good reviews.

- A. has written; were; hasn’ t got
- B. wrote; have been; didn’ t get
- C. has written; have been; didn’ t get
- D. wrote; were; didn’ t get

23. By the time you get back, great changes\_\_\_\_\_in this area.

- A. will take place
- B. will be taken place
- C. will be taking place
- D. will have taken place

24. By the time you\_\_\_\_\_, I\_\_\_\_\_all my housework.

- A. returned; will have finished
- B. return; will finish
- C. return; will have finished
- D. returned; finished

25. When I\_\_\_\_\_the letter, I\_\_\_\_\_it to you.

- A. wrote; will show
- B. wrote; would show
- C. have written; will show
- D. have written; would show

26. I\_\_\_\_\_New York in 1986, but I\_\_\_\_\_there ever since.

- A. visit; hadn' t been
- B. visited; haven' t been
- C. visit; haven' t been
- D. visited; hadn' t been



27. I think by five o' clock the children\_\_\_\_\_from their work.

- A. will return
- B. had returned
- C. will have returned
- D. have returned

28. Someone\_\_\_\_\_my book. I\_\_\_\_\_for it for the last ten minutes, but I can' t see it anywhere.

- A. took; have been looking
- B. has taken; am looking
- C. took; was looking
- D. has taken; have been looking

29. Just imagine, if all goes well, by Christmas we\_\_\_\_\_in the new house for almost two months.

- A. are living
- B. have lived
- C. will live
- D. will have been living

30. I hope you\_\_\_\_\_all the possibilities before you make the final decision.

- A. are considered
- B. will be considering
- C. will have considered

D. would have considered

31. I\_\_\_\_\_to visit them yesterday, but someone came to see me just when I was about to leave.

A. planned

B. had planned

C. did plan

D. was planning

32. John and I\_\_\_\_\_neighbors since we\_\_\_\_\_children.

A. are; were

B. were; have been

C. have been; are

D. have been; were

33. Many years ago, he\_\_\_\_\_in Paris with his uncle for a long period of time.

A. had been living

B. had lived

C. lived

D. has been living

34. How long\_\_\_\_\_here? I\_\_\_\_\_you come in.

A. do you sit; haven' t seen

B. did you sit; did not see

C. have you sat; have not seen

D. have you been sitting; did not see

35. I\_\_\_\_\_a great deal\_\_\_\_\_I came to England.

A. have learned; before

B. have learned; since

C. learned; since

D. learn; after

36. I\_\_\_\_\_this crossword puzzle for the last hour, but I\_\_\_\_\_half of it yet.

A. am doing; haven' t finished

B. have been doing; haven' t finished

C. did; didn' t finish

D. had done; didn' t finish

37. Great as Newton was, many of his ideas\_\_\_\_\_today and are being modified by the work of scientists of our time.

A. are to challenge

B. may be challenged

C. are challenging

D. have been challenged

38. It' s reported that by the end of this month the output of cement in the factory\_\_\_\_\_by about 10%.

A. will have risen

B. has risen

C. will be rising

D. has been rising

39. That was the first time the old lady\_\_\_\_\_her suffering to others.

A. was telling

B. had told

C. have told

D. told

40. She will go shopping the moment she\_\_\_\_\_her work.

A. has finished

B. had finished

C. finishes

D. will finish

41. I\_\_\_\_\_to call on you, but was prevented from doing so.

A. mean

B. have meant

C. meant

D. had meant

42. The Olympic Games, first celebrated in Athens in 1896,\_\_\_\_\_every four years so far, except during the two world wars.

A. are held

B. were held

C. had been held

D. have been held

43. It' s the third time that I\_\_\_\_\_this particular aspect of grammar.

A. explain

B. explained

C. have explained

D. will explain

44. On her next anniversary she\_\_\_\_\_married for 25 years.

A. will be

B. will have been

C. has been

D. is being

45. In two years' time he\_\_\_\_\_his master' s degree in chemistry.

A. has completed

B. will be completing

C. will have completed

D. will have been completing

46. She ought to stop working; she has a headache because she\_\_\_\_\_for too long.

A. has been reading

B. had read

C. is reading

D. read

47. It seems that oil\_\_\_\_\_from this pipe for some time.  
We' ll have to take the machine apart to put it right.

A. had leaked

B. is leaking

C. leaked

D. has been leaking

48. \_\_\_\_\_a rapid development in the application of laser  
over the last twenty years.

A. There is

B. There will be

C. There has been

D. There had been

49. By the end of this term, David\_\_\_\_\_Chinese for four  
years, but he will still need more training and experience  
before he masters the language.

A. will be studying

B. has studied

C. will have been studying

D. has been studying

50. —I think the milkman sent us the wrong bottle.

—It' s likely. They\_\_\_\_\_that many times before.

A. do

- B. done
- C. have done
- D. are doing

51. By the year 2020, scientists\_\_\_\_\_a cure for cancer.

- A. have probably found
- B. will probably have found
- C. will probably be finding
- D. are probably finding

52. I was lucky actually because that was the second time I\_\_\_\_\_China that year.

- A. have visited
- B. visited
- C. had visited
- D. would visit

53. When the robber came in, carrying the sword, most of the passengers looked up in surprise, because they\_\_\_\_\_anything like it before.

- A. didn' t see
- B. have never seen
- C. never saw
- D. had never seen

54. If the population of the Earth goes on increasing at its present rate, by the middle of the 21st century, we\_\_\_\_\_all the

oil that drives our cars.

A. will use up

B. will have been using up

C. will have used up

D. have used up

55. —Let' s hurry. The manager is coming.

—Oh, I was afraid that we\_\_\_\_\_.

A. already miss him

B. had already missed him

C. will miss him already

D. have already missed him

56. This is the first time that I\_\_\_\_\_really relaxed for weeks.

A. had felt

B. feel

C. have felt

D. shall feel

57. By the time the fire engine arrived, the house\_\_\_\_\_to the ground.

A. burned

B. had burned

C. has burned



D. should have burned

58. Ever since the painter' s paintings went on exhibit, there\_\_\_\_\_large crowds at the museum every day.

A. is

B. has been

C. have been

D. are being

59. Until then, Jack' s family\_\_\_\_\_from him for more than a year.

A. hadn' t heard

B. hasn' t heard

C. didn' t hear

D. hasn' t been hearing

60. Pick me up at 6 o' clock. I\_\_\_\_\_my bath by then.

A. may have

B. can have had

C. will be having

D. will have had

61. By the time James\_\_\_\_\_back from his holiday the milkman will have left twenty bottles of milk outside his doors.

A. will get

B. gets

C. will be getting

D. will have got

62. It is amazing that the Leaning Tower of Pisa\_\_\_\_\_for so long.

A. have stood

B. stands

C. has been standing

D. should have stood

### 完成进行时态练习答案

#### 一、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. have been sitting; had been sitting; will have been sitting

2. have been studying

3. had been studying

4. had been dreaming

5. had been watching

6. had been waiting

7. had known

8. had been waiting/had waited

9. had been running

10. have written

11. have been writing

12. have...been reading

- 13. have...read
- 14. have been reading; have read
- 15. have...been saving; have...saved
- 16. have been surfing
- 17. have surfed
- 18. have knocked
- 19. have been knocking
- 20. have been reading
- 21. have read

## 二、单项选择。

- 22. C   23. D   24. C   25. C   26. B   27. C   28. D   29. D
- 30. C   31. B   32. D   33. C   34. D   35. B   36. B   37. D
- 38. A   39. B   40. A   41. D   42. D   43. C   44. B   45. C
- 46. A   47. D   48. C   49. C   50. C   51. B   52. C   53. D
- 54. C   55. B   56. C   57. B   58. C   59. A   60. D   61. B
- 62. C

## Chapter 07 动词不定式



音频

- 60 不定式作主语: It + ... + to do sth.
- 61 不定式作宾语: 动词+ to do sth.
- 62 不定式作宾语补足语: 动词+ sb. to do sth.
- 63 不定式作后置定语: 名词+ to do sth.
- 64 不定式作独立成分
- 65 不定式作目的状语
- 66 不定式作结果状语

67 形容词后的不定式

68 省略to的不定式作宾语补足语

69 一些短语句型中to的省略

70 do + nothing/anything/everything + but do句型中to的省略

## 第一节 不定式的语法功能（一）——作主语、宾语、定语、补语和独立成分

### 60 不定式作主语：It + ... + to do sth. Track 060

#### (1) It + ... + to do sth.

不定式作主语，常见的是用it作形式主语，放在句首，将真正的主语——动词不定式（短语）放在句子后面。

a. It is easier to spend money than to make money.

b. It takes time to study English well.

注意：此处形式主语it不能用this或that来替换。

This (A) is impossible for (B) people to stare directly (C) at the sun. 人们不可能直视太阳。

答案：A。This 改为It。

(2) 不定式结构也可直接置于句首作主语，此时谓语动词要用单数形式

#### 例句

a. To err is human; to forgive, divine.

犯错人皆难免，宽恕则属超凡。

b. To solve this problem takes a genius like Einstein.

c. To love for the sake of being loved is human, but to love for the sake of loving is angelic.

d. To send a letter is a good way to go somewhere without moving anything but your heart.

## 61 不定式作宾语：动词+ to do sth. Track 061

### (1) 跟在一个及物动词后面作宾语

此时句子有以下两个特点：

1) 句子主语与不定式的逻辑主语一致，即不定式和谓语动词所表示的动作都是由全句主语发出。

2) 这时句子的谓语动词多是**描写态度**；不定式的动词则**说明行为**。

#### 例句

a. I **hope** to see you again.

b. This company **refused** to cooperate with us.

c. He **promised** not to tell anyone about it.

英语中常接动词不定式作宾语的动词有：

agree appear beg begin dare decide

expect fail forget happen hate hesitate

hope intend like love manage mean

prefer prepare pretend promise propose refuse

regret remember seem start swear try

want wish



(2) 连接代词 (what, who, which)或连接副词 (how, when, where)及连词whether后可接一个带to的动词不定式, 置于某些动词之后时, 可以看作一个连接词引导的宾语从句的简略形式。

### 例句

- a. I wonder **who to invite** (= who I should invite) .
- b. Show us **what to do** (= what we can do) .
- c. I don' t know **whether to answer** his letter (=whether I should answer his letter) .

类似的动词还有:

ask consider decide discover explain

forget findout guess imagine know

learn observe remember see tell

teach think understand wonder

## 62 不定式作宾语补足语：动词+ sb. to do sth. Track 062

### 例句

- a. They don' t allow people to smoke in the theater.
- b. The chairman declared the meeting to be over.
- c. Allow me to drink to your success. 让我为你的成功干杯！
- d. Allow me to propose a toast to our friendship! 我提议为我们的友谊干杯！

能用于此结构的动词有：

advise allow ask beg cause encourage

expect forbid force get help wouldlike

order permit persuade remind teach tell

want warn wish

**注意：**hope不可用在此结构中，其常用结构为hope sb. do sth.

在let, make, have, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, listen to等动词后面，不定式作宾语补足语时，to要省略。若改为被动语态，则须将to还原。（详见本章第四节）

## 63 不定式作后置定语：名词+ to do sth. Track 063

### (1) 所修饰的名词在逻辑上与不定式成动宾关系

#### 例句

- a. She has four **children** to take care of .
- b. I had no **place** to live in.
- c. You just regard me as a thing, an **object** to look at, to use, to touch, but not to listen to or to take seriously.

你只把我当作一件东西，一件任你看、任你使用、任你抚摸的东西，但你就是不听我说话，不认真对待我。

- d. I gave the kid a **comic** to read.
- e. I have no **partner** to speak English with.
- f. I need a **pen** to write with.
- g. I need a piece of **paper** to write on.

注意：1) 不定式作定语时，一般用主动形式表达被动含义。

2) 不定式中的动词后不能再加宾语。

- a. I gave the kid a comic to read **it**.\*
- b. I need something to eat **it**.\*

3) 不定式中的动词后的介词不能省略。

a. I have no partner to speak English.\*

b. I need a pen to write.\*

(2) 被only, last, next, 序数词以及最高级形容词修饰的名词常用不定式作定语 (重点内容)

a. I don' t think he is the best man to do the job.

我认为他并不是做这个工作的最佳人选。

b. The next train to arrive is from New York.

下一列到达的火车是从纽约开来的。

c. Clint was the second person to fall into this trap.

克林特是第二个掉进陷阱的人。

d. Clint was the only person to survive the air crash.

克林特是这次空难事故中唯一的幸存者。

## 64 不定式作独立成分 Track 064

动词不定式可用作独立成分，用来修饰整个句子，常见的有：

to begin with

to tell the truth

to make a long story short

so to speak

to be brief/exact/frank/honest

to say nothing of（姑且不说）

to say the least（至少可以这么说）

以上所列短语均为口语中常用短语。请同学们牢记！

a. To begin with, on behalf of（代表） all of your American guests, I wish to thank you for the incomparable（无可比拟的） hospitality.

首先，我谨代表你们的所有美国客人向你们表示感谢，感谢你们无可比拟的盛情款待。（尼克松总统1972年访华时的祝酒词开篇）

b. —You're in pretty lousy mood, huh?

—To say the least.

c. I have a point there, to say the least.

d. To make a long story short, he is in hospital now.

## 第二节 不定式的语法功能（二）——作状语

动词不定式作状语，主要表示目的和结果。

## 65 不定式作目的状语 Track 065

### 例句

a. Hating people is like burning down your own house **to get** rid of a rat.

憎恨别人，就好像为了赶走一只老鼠而把自己的房子烧掉。

b. **To avoid** criticism, do nothing, say nothing, be nothing.

c. **To acquire** knowledge, one must study; but **to acquire** wisdom, one must observe.

d. We had better start early **to catch** the train.

e. I went to the post office **to mail** a letter.

我们可用in order to或so as to来**强调目的状语**。

### 例句

a. We had better start early **so as to** catch the train.

b. I went to the post office **in order to** mail a letter.

c. I quote others **in order to** better express my own self.

我引用别人的话，是为了更好地表达自己。

d. The teacher raised her voice **in order** for us **to** hear more clearly.

注意：so as to do一般不用在句首，但to do或in order to do可提到句首。



## 66 不定式作结果状语 Track 066

### (1) 直接用在句中作结果状语

#### 例句

- a. He lived **to be** a hundred years old.
- b. What have I done **to offend** you?
- c. He lived **to see** the Second World War.

### (2) **never to do**结构表示结果

#### 例句

- a. John left his hometown ten years ago, **never to return**.
- b. We parted **never to see** each other.

### (3) **only to do**引出意想不到或不愉快的结果 (四、六级考试重点内容)

#### 例句

- a. We hurried to the railway station, **only to find** the train had just left.

我们匆匆忙忙赶到火车站，结果却发现火车刚刚离站。

- b. All too often, women complain that they' re educated as equals, **only to go out** into the workforce to be treated as

inferiors.

女性常常抱怨说，她们和男性接受同样的教育，结果在职场上却被认为低人一等。

c. He worked very hard, \_\_\_\_\_ he had not finished half of the job.

A. to find

B. finding

C. just finding

D. only to find

正确答案：D。

#### (4) ...enough to

a. He is not old enough to go to school.

他还没有到上学的年龄。

b. The teacher speaks loudly enough to make himself heard clearly.

#### (5) too...to结构

这一结构我们常熟悉的意思是“太……以致不能……”，肯定形式表达否定意思。

a. The box is too heavy for me to move.

这箱子太沉了，我挪动不了。

b. The tea is too hot to drink .

c. An Interesting Maid 有趣的女仆

Mistress: Be careful not to drop those china dishes.

Maid: Don' t worry, madam. They are too light to hurt my feet.

女主人：小心别把那些瓷盘子打碎了。

女仆：别担心，夫人。它们不会砸伤我的脚，因为它们很轻。

### 第三节 不定式的语法功能（三）——用在形容词后

#### 67 形容词后的不定式 Track 067

##### （1）句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的主谓关系

这一句型中的形容词通常表示人的性格特征或行为表现。如：

brave careful careless clever considerate

cruel foolish generous kind modest

nice polite rude selfish silly

stupid thoughtful

##### 例句

a. He was surprised to learn how much he had spent.

b. The boy was careless to break the window.

##### （2）句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的动宾关系

a. She is interesting to listen to.

听她讲话很有趣。

= It is interesting to listen to her.

b. Relativity theory isn't easy to understand.

= It isn't easy to understand relativity theory.

c. She is very nice to talk to.

= It is very nice to talk to her.

d. Mary is easy to get on with.

= It is easy to get on with Mary.

e. English is difficult to speak.

f. Football is very interesting to watch.

句子主语与不定式动词为动宾关系时，我们要注意以下三点：

1) 不定式一般**不用被动式**（最容易出错），而**多用主动形式**表示被动含义：

a. English is difficult to be spoken.\*

b. Football is interesting to be watched.\*

2) 不定式后不能再加宾语：

a. Football is very interesting to watch it.\*

b. She is very nice to talk to her.\*

3) 不定式动词所带的介词不能省略：

a. She is interesting to listen.\*

b. She is easy to get on.\*

## 第四节 不带to的不定式

### 68 省略to的不定式作宾语补足语 Track 068

1) 感官动词的宾语补足语中不带to

see hear watch notice feel observe

2) 使役动词的宾语补足语中不带to

let make have

#### 例句

a. The teacher has us write a composition every week.

b. I saw a man enter the shop.

c. To calm the patient, the dentist offered him a shot of whiskey. The man tossed it down (一饮而尽), then had another. “Now,” said the dentist, “got your courage back?” “Yeah,” snarled (咆哮) the patient. “And I’d like to see anybody try to touch my teeth.”

为使病人平静下来，牙医给了他一杯威士忌。该男子一饮而尽，接着又喝了一杯。牙医说：“现在，你不再害怕了吧？”病人咆哮道：“是的，我倒要看看谁敢碰我的牙齿。”

上述动词若转换为被动结构时，其后不定式需将to还原回来：

d. A man was seen to enter the shop.

## 69 一些短语句型中to的省略 Track 069

had better

would rather

would sooner

would just as soon

might (just) as well

cannot but

cannot choose but

cannot help but

### 例句

a. I cannot but admire his courage.

b. We might as well put up here for tonight.

c. It all started so innocently that warm June night.  
When I first met you, you looked so beautiful and lovely that  
I couldn't help but fall in love with you, even though we  
both agreed our worlds were far apart, and could never be  
one.

## 70 do + nothing/anything/everything + but do句型中to的省略 Track 070

1) 若but前没有do, 则不定式要带to。

a. I have no choice but to wait .

b. He needs nothing but to succeed.

2) 若but前有do, but后的不定式省略to。

a. I have nothing to do but wait.

b. He will do anything but give in. 他决不会屈服。

3) 在解释do的精确含义时, be动词后直接加动词原形, 省略to。

a. All that I could do then was wait .

b. What I could do then was wait .

c. All you should do now is complete this form.

d. No mountain is too high for you to climb. All you have to do is have some faith. No river is too wide for you to make it across. All you have to do is believe it when you pray.

e. —I have a very demanding job. I' m always tired when I get home.

— I also have a demanding job, but I' m expected to come home from the office and cook, care for the children and clean the house. All you do is sit and watch television and complain about how tired you are.



## 温故知新

在三种非谓语动词当中，不定式所能充当的句子成分最为复杂：能够充当除谓语之外的任何成分，这也是“不定式”（不一定是什么词性）得名的由来。在本书中，我们比较全面地介绍了它作各种成分的用法，其他更广泛的用法，以及不定式的时态和语态变化，我们将在《英语语法新思维 基础版3》一书里详细讨论。

## 动词不定式练习

### 一、用it + ... + to do句型翻译下列句子。

1. 拥有一些亲密的朋友很重要。
2. 对别人要有礼貌，这点很重要。
3. 学习别国语言和文化很有趣。
4. 学外语难吗？
5. 很难交到真心朋友。
6. 做人要诚实，这很重要。
7. 鱼儿离开水不可能存活。
8. 学生学英文有必要多练习。
9. 老师应该对学生有耐心。
10. 人们不可能直视太阳。

### 二、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

11. The boy was made \_\_\_\_\_ (sing) the song once again.
12. Don' t make children \_\_\_\_\_ (work) too hard.
13. They would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (die) than \_\_\_\_\_ (surrender).

14. He could not choose but \_\_\_\_\_(love) her.

15. She could do nothing but \_\_\_\_\_(change) her name under the circumstances.

16. He had his son \_\_\_\_\_(play) the violin three hours a day.

17. There was nothing to do except \_\_\_\_\_(escape).

18. He has no alternative but \_\_\_\_\_(go) and ask his sister for help.

19. A: What can you see in a park?

B: I can see birds \_\_\_\_\_(fly) in the sky and sometimes I can see people \_\_\_\_\_(do) shadowboxing.

A: Do you hear anything in the park?

B: Yes, I can hear people \_\_\_\_\_(chat) here and there and sometimes I can hear young people \_\_\_\_\_(speak) English at the English corner.

### 三、单项选择。

20. I couldn' t do anything but\_\_\_\_\_there and hope.

- A. just sit
- B. just sitting
- C. just to sit
- D. just to sitting

21. After twenty years abroad, William came back only\_\_\_\_\_his hometown severely damaged in an earthquake.

- A. finding
- B. to find
- C. was finding
- D. was to find

22. He came all the way to help her \_\_\_\_\_ that she had drowned herself in a well.

- A. only to find
- B. to find
- C. in order to find
- D. so as to find

23. Caught in the act, he had no alternative but \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. confess
- B. confessing
- C. confessed
- D. to confess

24. The girl tried many times to sneak across the border to a neighboring country, \_\_\_\_\_ each time.

- A. having been caught
- B. always being caught
- C. had been caught
- D. only to be caught

25. He couldn' t help\_\_\_\_\_after he heard the news.

A.bursting into tears

B.burst into tears

C.bursting out tears

D.burstoutcrying

26. She\_\_\_\_\_admit that they were justified in this.

A.could help not

B.could not help but

C.could help but not

D.could not help

27. They would sooner\_\_\_\_\_for a drink.

A.going

B.to go

C.go

D.not to go

28. Sometimes\_\_\_\_\_to place physics and chemistry into separate categories.

A.that is difficult

B.is difficult

C.it is difficult

D.that it is difficult

29. They forbade\_\_\_\_\_to the park.

A.him to go

B.him from going

C.he should go

D.he went

30. The parents scolded the child and made her promise\_\_\_\_\_again.

A.never to do that

B.what to do never

C.that never to do that

D.so never to do that

31. The child may be able to attain his immediate goal\_\_\_\_\_that his method brings criticism from people who observe him.

A.only to find

B.only find

C.only finding

D.only have found

32. The total influence of literature upon the course of human history\_\_\_\_\_.

A. is difficult to evaluate

B. is difficult to evaluate it

C. difficult to evaluate it

D. it is difficult to evaluate

33. The first explorer\_\_\_\_\_California by land was Strong Smith, a trapper who crossed the southwestern deserts of the United States in 1826.

A. tha the reached

B. to reach

C. reached

D. reaching it

34. She could do nothing but\_\_\_\_\_her name under the circumstances.

A. to change

B. changing

C. change

D. to be changed

35. He had his son\_\_\_\_\_the violin three hours a day.

A. to play

B. play

C. playing

D. played

36. There was nothing to do except\_\_\_\_\_.

A. to escape

B. escape

C. escaping

D. having escaped

37. He has no alternative but \_\_\_\_\_ and ask his sister for help.

A. to go

B. go

C. going

D. goes

38. I need a piece of paper to \_\_\_\_\_.

A. write on

B. write

C. be written

D. write with

39. He was the first \_\_\_\_\_ and the last \_\_\_\_\_.

A. arriving; leaving

B. to arrive; to leave

C. arrive; leave

D. for arriving; for leaving

40. I' m not sure which restaurant \_\_\_\_\_.

A. to eat on

B. to eat at

C. eating at

D. for eating

41. I have no place\_\_\_\_\_and no food\_\_\_\_\_.

A. to live; to eat

B. to live in; to eat

C. to live in; to eat at

D. living in; eating

42. The teacher doesn' t allow\_\_\_\_\_on the exam.

A. his students to cheat

B. his students' cheating

C. to cheat

D. his students cheat

43. In 1938, Pearl S. Buck became the first American woman\_\_\_\_\_the Nobel Prize in Literature.

A. receive

B. received

C. to receive

D. she received



44. The teachers don' t know\_\_\_\_\_to start and run a school.

- A.what it takes
- B.what they take
- C.what does it take
- D.what takes

### 动词不定式练习答案

#### 一、用it + ... + to do句型翻译下列句子。

1. It' s very important to have some close friends.
2. It' s very important to be polite to others.
3. It' s really interesting to study the languages and cultures of other countries.
4. Is it hard to learn a foreign language?
5. It' s hard to get real friends.
6. It' s important to be honest.
7. It' s impossible for fish to live without water.
8. It' s necessary for students to do more exercise while learning English.
9. It' s necessary for teachers to be patient with students.
10. It' s impossible for people to stare directly at the sun.

## 二、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

11. to sing

12. work

13. die; surrender

14. to love

15. change

16. play

17. escape

18. to go

19. flying; doing; chatting, speaking

## 三、单项选择。

20. A 21. B 22. A 23. D 24. D 25. A 26. B 27. C

28. C 29. B 30. A 31. A 32. A 33. B 34. C 35. B

36. B 37. A 38. A 39. B 40. B 41. B 42. A 43. C

44. A

## Chapter 08 动名词



音频

- 71 动名词用作主语
- 72 只能接动名词作宾语的动词
- 73 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词
- 74 其他后面接动名词的结构
- 75 动名词复合结构的构成: my doing / Tom' s doing
- 76 动名词复合结构的用法

## 第一节 动名词作主语

### 71 动名词用作主语 Track 071

#### (1) 单个的动名词放在句首作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式

##### 例句

a. **Seeing** is believing.

b. **Reading** is like permitting a man to talk a long time, and refusing you the right to answer.

c. **Hating people** is like burning down your own house to get rid of a rat.

憎恨别人，就好像为了赶走一只老鼠而把自己的房子烧掉。

d. **Having a successful marriage** takes effort and patience, and communication is the key.

获得成功的婚姻需要努力和耐心，而交流就是关键。

e. **Going to the school dance** is a lot of fun. But sometimes, **deciding who to go with** isn't easy.

#### (2) **It is no good doing sth.** 句型

这里，it只是形式主语，真正的主语是后面的doing sth.。其中，no good可替换为：any/some good, any/some/no use, a waste of time等。

### 例句

- a. Is it **any good** trying to explain?
- b. It' s **no use** crying over spilt milk.
- c. It' s **not much use** my buying salmon if you don' t like fish.
- d. It' s simply **a waste of time and money** seeing that movie.

### (3) There be句型中动名词的使用

1) There is no point (in) doing sth. 干某事没有必要, 没有意义

a. There is no point in my buying salmon if you don' t like fish.

b. There is no point in my going out to date someone. I might really like it if I met him at the right time, but, right now, he has no chance of being anything to me but a transitional man.

现在让我出去和别人约会没有意义。如果我在对的时间遇到那个人, 我可能会很欣喜。可是在现在这个时候, 我跟他也不会有结果的, 除非是为了解解闷而已。

2) There is no use/good (in) doing sth. 干某事没有用

There is no use arguing with him.

和他争吵没有意义。

3) There is no doing sth. 意思是“不能……; 不可……”

a. There is no denying that... 毋庸置疑……

- b. There is no saying that... 说不准.....
- c. There is no telling what will happen tomorrow.
- d. There' s no knowing when she' ll come back.

## 第二节 动名词作宾语

### 72 只能接动名词作宾语的动词 Track 072

appreciate avoid consider delay dislike  
escape feel like finish can't help involve  
permit postpone practise risk can't stand  
tolerate understand enjoy overlook suggest

#### 例句

a. I will overlook your being so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.

这次你对我妹妹无礼，我不计较，但不要有下次。

b. Many of the things we do involve taking some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.

我们做的很多事都需要一点点冒险，才能获得令人满意的结果。

c. Being a bad-tempered man, he would not tolerate having his lectures interrupted.

他是一个坏脾气的人，不会允许自己的授课被打断。

## 73 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词 Track 073

在英语中，有很多动词后接动名词和接不定式作宾语均可，但在意思上往往有很大的差别，现将这样的动词分类归纳如下：

(1) 在demand, deserve, need, require, want等动词后，动名词的主动形式表示被动含义，若改接不定式作宾语，则必须用不定式的被动形式

a. The garden needs watering / to be watered.

不说：The garden needs being watered.\*

b. Your hair needs cutting / to be cut.

(2) 与remember, forget, stop, go on和regret连用时，动名词表示发生于这些动词之前的事，不定式表示发生在谓语动词之后的事

1) remember

remember doing sth. 用英文可以解释为remember/recall something that happened in the past, 即“记得已做过某事”。

a. I still remember being taken to Beijing for the first time.

我还记得第一次被带去北京的情景。

b. I don't remember/recall locking my suitcase.

我不记得我锁了行李箱。



remember to do sth. 用英文可以解释为remember to perform a responsibility, duty or task, 即“记得需要履行职责或完成任务”。

c. Remember to go to the post office, won' t you?

记得去邮局，好吗？

d. Remember to do some shopping after work.

下班记得去买东西。

e. Clint always remembers to turn off the lights when he leaves the room.

## 2) forget

forget doing sth. 用英文可以解释为forget something that happened in the past, 即“忘记了已做过的某事”。如：

a. I forgot locking the door. So when I came back, I was surprised to find the door locked.

forget to do sth. 用英文可以解释为forget to perform a responsibility, duty or task, 即“忘记要做的事”。如：

b. As well as getting on everybody' s nerves, he' s got a habit of borrowing money and forgetting to pay it back.

## 3) stop

stop doing sth. 表示停下经常做的或手头正在做的事，如：

a. I really must stop smoking.

我真的必须戒烟了。

stop to do sth. 表示中断下来去做某事（通常为另一件事），如：

b. Stop to have a rest. 停下来休息下。（不定式作目的状语，不作宾语。）

#### 4) go on

go on doing sth. 表示继续做一直在做的事，如：

a. The teacher went on explaining the text.

老师继续讲解课文。

b. Peter went on sleeping despite the noise.

go on to do sth. 表示继续做另一件事，如：

a. He welcomed the new students and then went on to explain the college regulations.

他对新同学表示了欢迎，然后接着讲校园里的规定。

b. Finishing the new words, the teacher went on to attack the text.

#### 5) regret

regret doing sth. 用英文可以解释为regret something that happened in the past, 即“对已发生的事感到后悔”。如：

a. I don't regret telling her what I thought, even if it upset her.

我并不后悔把自己的想法告诉她，尽管这让她很恼火。

b. I regret letting slip that opportunity.

我真后悔错失了那次机会。

c. I regret lending him so much money. He never paid me back.

我真后悔把那么多钱借给他，他从来没还过。

d. Now he regrets not having gone to university.

regret to do sth. 用英文可以解释为regret to say, to tell someone, or to inform someone of some bad news, 即“遗憾地告诉或通知某人某个坏消息”。如：

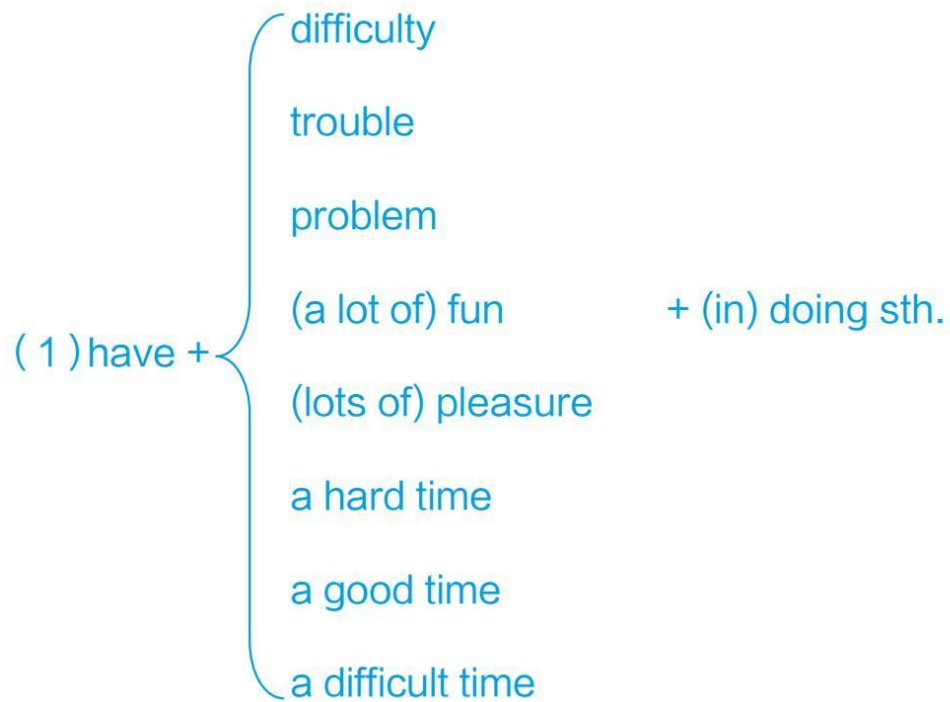
e. We regret to inform you that we are unable to offer you employment.

f. I regret to tell you that you failed the test.

我很遗憾地告诉你，你没能通过考试。

g. We regret to inform you that the flight has been cancelled.

## 74 其他后面接动名词的结构 Track 074



但要注意和以下结构进行区别:

take the trouble to do sth.

trouble to do sth.

have (no) time to do sth.

### 例句

a. I worked so late in the office last night that I hardly had time\_\_\_\_\_the last bus.

A. to have caught

B. to catch

C. catching

D. having caught

正确答案：B。

b. — How do you find your new apartment?

— Well, it's quite nice really, although I have a hard time getting used to living in a big place.

### (2) 表示“情不自禁……，不得不……”的短语

can't help doing

can't resist doing

can't keep from doing

can't hold back from doing

can't keep back from doing

例：No one can help liking Tom; he is such a cute boy.

但要注意下列短语要接不定式：

can't help but do

can't choose but to do

### (3) 主动形式表示被动含义：be worth doing “值得做……”

相当于be worthy of being done或be worthy to be done。

a. The book is worth reading.

b. The book is worthy of being read.

c. The book is worthy to be read.

### 第三节 动名词复合结构

#### 75 动名词复合结构的构成: my doing / Tom' s doing Track 075

名词性物主代词（如his, my, your等）或名词所有格（如Mary' s, Tom' s等）与动名词连用，即构成动名词的复合结构（his doing, Mary' s doing），用来交代动名词的逻辑主语，以区别于句子主语。请比较：

a. Clint insisted on reading the letter.

克林特坚持要看信。（克林特看了信）

Clint insisted on my reading the letter.

克林特坚持要我看信。（我不得不看信）

b. Would you mind telling us the whole story?

你是否愿意把事情的经过告诉我们？（telling的逻辑主语是you）

Would you mind Tom' s telling us the whole story?

= Would you mind if Tom tells us the whole story?

你是否愿意让汤姆把事情经过告诉我们？（telling的逻辑主语是Tom）

c. He disliked working late.

他不喜欢工作到很晚。

He disliked my working late.

他不喜欢我工作到很晚。

d. I object to making private calls on this phone.

我不赞成用这部电话机打私人电话。

I object to his making private calls on this phone.

我不赞成他用这部电话机打私人电话。

## 76 动名词复合结构的用法 Track 076

### (1) 动名词复合结构常在句中作主语或宾语

a. Tom' s coming home at last was a great consolation.  
(作主语)

b. Do you mind my making a suggestion? (作及物动词宾语)

c. Our discussion of earthquakes would be incomplete if we didn' t raise the possibility of their being caused by external forces.

要是我们没有考虑到外部力量造成地震的可能性，那么我们对于地震的研究还有所欠缺。(作介词宾语)

d. Clint insisted on my reading the letter.

e. What are the chances of a sleepwalker' s committing a murder or doing something else extraordinary in his sleep?

梦游者在睡梦中实施谋杀或做出一些其他反常活动的可能性有多大?

这种动名词复合结构在某些情况下，可以将其中的物主代词改为宾格代词(如him, me, you等)，或将其中的名词所有格(如Mary' s, Tom' s等)改为普通格名词(如Mary, Tom等)。如：

a. It' s no use Tom arguing with his boss.

b. Do you mind me making a suggestion?

c. I am annoyed about John forgetting to pay.



(2) 在使用动名词复合结构时，什么时候用普通格，什么时候用所有格，一般遵循以下原则：

1) 若动名词复合结构在句中作**主语**，最好用**所有格**形式：

a. **Tom's refusing** to accept the invitation upset me.

b. **His refusing** to accept the invitation upset me. (不宜用him refusing)

c. It was a great consolation **his coming** home at last. (不宜用him coming)

2) 动名词复合结构在句中作**宾语**时，用**普通格**或**所有格**均可。

a. Do you mind **me making** a suggestion?

b. I am annoyed about **John forgetting** to pay.

### 温故知新

在三种非谓语动词当中，动名词的用法相对来说较为简单。重点内容有：

1. 动名词作主语的句型，如It is no use doing sth.。

2. 动名词作宾语的各种句型我们需要熟记，这也是各类考试出题的重点所在。

3. 理解动名词复合结构。

在《英语语法新思维 基础版3》一书中，我们还将更深入地讨论动名词的时态和语态等用法。

### 动名词练习

#### 一、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. The text needs \_\_\_\_\_(explain) once again.

2. The movie is worth \_\_\_\_\_(see).
3. I' ve had a hard time \_\_\_\_\_(learn) English.
4. I still remember \_\_\_\_\_(take) you to Beijing for the first time.
5. Clint always remembers \_\_\_\_\_(turn) off the lights when he leaves the room.
6. Now he regrets \_\_\_\_\_(not, go) to university.
7. We regret \_\_\_\_\_(inform) you that the flight has been cancelled.
8. I regret \_\_\_\_\_(let) slip that opportunity.
9. Peter went on \_\_\_\_\_(sleep) despite the noise.
10. He welcomed the new students and then went on \_\_\_\_\_(explain) the college regulations.
11. The teacher has had some problems \_\_\_\_\_(decide) when they should return the final papers to the students.
12. Mr. Smith regretted \_\_\_\_\_(blame) his secretary for the mistake, for he later discovered it was his own fault.
13. The boy is constantly told not to scratch the paint off the wall, but he goes on \_\_\_\_\_(do) it all the same.
14. You must tell me the truth. I insist on \_\_\_\_\_(tell) the truth.

## 二、单项选择。

15. It' s no good\_\_\_\_\_money on make-up.

A. of you to waste

B. for you to waste

C. to waste

D. your wasting

16. \_\_\_\_\_ what John will be doing next.

A. No saying

B. There' s no to say

C. There' s no saying

D. Not to say

17. There is no point \_\_\_\_\_ the piano, unless you practice every day.

A. to learn to play

B. in learning to play

C. by learning to play

D. having learned to play

18. The teachers have had some problems \_\_\_\_\_ when they should return the final papers to the students.

A. to decide

B. deciding

C. decided

D. having decided

19. Although a teenager, Fred could resist\_\_\_\_\_what to do and what not to do.

- A. to be told
- B. having been told
- C. being told
- D. to have been told

20. I can' t understand\_\_\_\_\_a decision until it is too late.

- A. him to postpone to make
- B. his postpone making
- C. his postponing to make
- D. his postponing making

21. When a cat ran through the truck it narrowly escaped\_\_\_\_\_over.

- A. running
- B. to be run
- C. from running
- D. being run

22. It' s a waste of time\_\_\_\_\_with such a silly fellow.

- A. trying to reason
- B. tried to reason

C. for trying to reason

D. to trying reasoning

23. Ann prefers\_\_\_\_\_taking an examination.

A. writing a term paper than

B. writing a term paper to

C. to write a term paper and

D. to write a term paper than

24. The teacher said that he wouldn' t tolerate\_\_\_\_\_late every day.

A. for me to arrive

B. me arrived

C. me to arrive

D. my arriving

25. Many of the things we do involve\_\_\_\_\_some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.

A. taking

B. take care

C. to take

D. being taking

26. I don' t think you will have any difficulty\_\_\_\_\_a driving license.

A. for getting

B. to get

C. having got

D. getting

27. Urban mothers had difficulty\_\_\_\_\_their children into child care facilities.

A. in getting

B. to get

C. get

D. for getting

28. We regret\_\_\_\_\_you that the materials you ordered are out of stock.

A. informing

B. to inform

C. having informed

D. to have informed

29. Sam is getting\_\_\_\_\_to go to a party, but is having trouble\_\_\_\_\_what clothes to wear.

A. to dress; deciding

B. to be dressed; to decide

C. dressed; deciding

D. dressing; deciding

30. I will overlook\_\_\_\_\_so rude to my sister this time but don' t let it happen again.

A. you to be

B. your being

C. you to have been

D. you having been

31. Technology will play a key role in\_\_\_\_\_future lifestyles.

A. to shape

B. shaping

C. shape of

D. shaped

32. \_\_\_\_\_can help but be fascinated by the world into which he is taken by the science fiction.

A. Everybody

B. Anybody

C. Somebody

D. Nobody

33. When Jane fell off the bike, the other children\_\_\_\_\_.

A. were not able to help laughter

B. could not help but laughing

C. could not help laughing

D. could not help to laugh

34. Ted always escapes\_\_\_\_\_as he has got a very fast sports car.

A. to fine

B. to be fined

C. being fined

D. having been fined

35. There is\_\_\_\_\_that this has been a difficult year for the company.

A. not to deny

B. not denying

C. no denying

D. without denying

36. After the listening test, the students went on\_\_\_\_\_some sentences.

A. translating

B. translate

C. translated

D. to translate



37. It' s no good\_\_\_\_\_me. You' d better\_\_\_\_\_someone else.

A. to ask; to try

B. to ask; try

C. asking; tried

D. asking; try

38. My husband suggested\_\_\_\_\_to Scotland for holiday, but I favoured\_\_\_\_\_Wales instead.

A. to go; to visit

B. going; visiting

C. to go; visiting

D. going; to visit

39. Don' t worry. Philip is quite used\_\_\_\_\_in such heavy traffic as this.

A. to driving

B. to have driven

C. to be driving

D. to drive

40. No one then thought that Tom' s suggestion was worth\_\_\_\_\_.

A. to be considered

B. to consider

C. considering

D. being considered

41. The teacher doesn' t permit\_\_\_\_\_in class.

A. smoke

B. to smoke

C. smoking

D. to have a smoke

42. If he doesn' t give up cigarettes, he will risk\_\_\_\_\_even his present state of health.

A. lost

B. losing

C. being lost

D. having lost

43. My son simply doesn' t understand\_\_\_\_\_what' s best for him.

A. me in wanting

B. my wanting

C. me to want

D. I' ve wanted

44. Almost every night, just as I am going to sleep, my wife nudges me and asks me if I have remembered\_\_\_\_\_the alarm clock.

A. winding up

B. to wind up

C. having wound up

D. to have wound up

45. \_\_\_\_\_ to inanimate objects, such as machines, is a form of animism.

A. When attributing emotion

B. . Attributing emotion

C. Emotion is attributed

D. If emotion is attributed

### 动名词练习答案

#### 一、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. to be explained

2. seeing

3. learning

4. taking

5. to turn

6. not going

7. to inform

8. letting

9. sleeping

10. to explain

11. deciding

12. blaming

13. doing

14. your telling / being told

## 二、单项选择。

15. D   16. C   17. B   18. B   19. C   20. D   21. D   22. A

23. B   24. D   25. A   26. D   27. A   28. B   29. C   30. B

31. B   32. D   33. C   34. C   35. C   36. D   37. D   38. B

39. A   40. C   41. C   42. B   43. B   44. B   45. B

## Chapter 09 被动语态



音频

- 77 被动语态的构成
- 78 被动语态中的介词短语by sb. 可以省略
- 79 不及物动词没有被动语态
- 80 双宾语句子的被动语态
- 81 静态被动形式
- 82 get与过去分词连用
- 83 have/get sth. done

# 第一节 被动语态的构成

## 77 被动语态的构成 Track 077

### (1) 被动语态的构成：be + 过去分词

主动句	被动句	规则
I clean the window.	The window is cleaned by me.	被动语态由“be+ 过去分词”构成；主动句的主语 I, you, he 变成被动句中 by 的宾语：by me, by you, by him；主动句的宾语 the window 变成被动句的主语。
You clean the window.	The window is cleaned by you.	
He cleans the window.	The window is cleaned by him.	

### (2) 根据时态的不同，被动语态中的be动词可以有多种变化

时态	主动句	被动句	be 的形式
一般现在时	He <u>cleans</u> the window.	The window <u>is cleaned</u> by him.	is
现在进行时	He <u>is cleaning</u> the window.	The window <u>is being cleaned</u> by him.	is being
现在完成时	He <u>has cleaned</u> the window.	The window <u>has been cleaned</u> by him.	has been
一般过去时	He <u>cleaned</u> the window.	The window <u>was cleaned</u> by him.	was
过去进行时	He <u>was cleaning</u> the window.	The window <u>was being cleaned</u> by him.	was being
过去完成时	He <u>had cleaned</u> the window.	The window <u>had been cleaned</u> by him.	had been
一般将来时	He <u>will clean</u> the window.	The window <u>will be cleaned</u> by him.	will be

时态	主动句	被动句	be 的形式
将来完成时	He <u>will have cleaned</u> the window.	The window <u>will have been cleaned</u> by him.	will have been
完成进行时 (have been doing) 几乎不用被动语态。进行时 (be doing) 也较少用被动语态。			

## 第二节 被动语态的用法

### 78 被动语态中的介词短语by sb. 可以省略 Track 078

被动语态在使用中是可以不带by短语的，即不给出动作的实施者，因为有些情况下不需要知道动作的实施者，或谁是实施者并不重要。具体情况包括：

#### (1) 动作的实施者很明显，因而没有必要提到

a. The rubbish hasn' t been collected.

垃圾还没有被清走。

b. Your hand will be X-rayed.

你的手要拍X光片。

c. The streets are swept every day.

街道每天都清扫。

#### (2) 不知道谁是动作的实施者或没有必要提及动作的实施者

a. The President has been murdered.

总统被暗杀了。

b. My car has been moved!

我的车被人挪动过。

c. Rice is grown in many countries.

很多国家种植水稻。



d. The library was built in 1890.

该图书馆建于1890年。

### (3) 动作的实施者泛指“人们”

#### 主动句

a. People believe him to be honest.

人们相信他是诚实的。

b. People suspected him of receiving stolen goods.

人们怀疑他接受了赃物。

#### 被动句

c. He is believed to be honest.

相信他是诚实的。

d. He was suspected of receiving stolen goods.

他被怀疑接受了赃物。

可以这样使用的动词还有：

acknowledge assume believe consider

estimate feel find know

presume report say think

### (4) 当动作的实施者是不定代词one或you和they时，常可用被动语态

a. One/You see this kind of advertisement everywhere.

可改为：This kind of advertisement is seen everywhere.

这样的广告随处可见。

b. They are building a new public library in our town.

可改为: A new public library is being built in our town.

我们小镇上正在兴建一个新的公共图书馆。

(5) 在主从复合句中, 使用被动语态可避免改变句子主语 (这时可以用by引出动作实施者)

主动句	被动句
When he arrived home, <u>a detective</u> arrested him.	可 改 为: When he arrived home, <u>he</u> was <u>arrested by a detective</u> .
When their mother was ill, the <u>neighbors</u> looked after the children.	可 改 为: When their mother was ill, <u>the children</u> were looked after by the <u>neighbors</u> .

## 79 不及物动词没有被动语态 Track 079

一般来说，能带宾语的动词才可以有被动语态。因此，不及物动词和系动词是没有被动语态的，只有及物动词才可以有被动语态。

He looks fine.（没有被动语态）

He came here last night.（没有被动语态）

## 80 双宾语句子的被动语态 Track 080

对于双宾语句子（即句子含有一个直接宾语和一个间接宾语）的被动语态，理论上讲，可以有两种形式：

$$\text{Someone gave me a gift.} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \text{I was given a gift.} \\ \text{A gift was given to me.} \end{cases}$$

但是，实际应用中我们通常把间接宾语“人”作为被动句的主语。即第一种说法更常见。

## 81 静态被动形式 Track 081

I locked the door two minutes ago. The door <u>was locked</u> by me two minutes ago.	这里的 was locked 强调动作。
Now the door <u>is locked</u> .	这里的 is locked 并非强调动作，只是在说明门的状态。locked 起着形容词的作用，用来描述状态而非动作，我们称之为“静态被动形式”。

再比如：

a. Clint broke the window last night.

b. The window **was broken** last night.

这窗户玻璃是昨天晚上打碎的。（强调动作）

c. Now the window **is broken**.

现在窗户玻璃碎了。（静态被动）

常见的这种表示静态被动的词还有：

interested excited satisfied

married disappointed scared

frightened worried lost

这种表示状态的被动语态后面一般不接介词by，而是用其他介词。  
如：

a. I am **interested in** grammar.

- b. I am satisfied with Clint' s grammar course.
- c. She is married to her teacher.
- d. The table is made of wood.
- e. Are you scared of snakes?

## 82 get与过去分词连用 Track 082

既可以构成被动语态：

- a. My watch **got broken** while I was playing with the children.
- b. He **got caught** by the police because he exceeded the speed limit.

由于超速，他让警察给截住了。

也可以接静态的被动形式，表示主语的状态：

- c. I stopped working because I **got tired**.
- d. I **got worried** because he was two hours late.
- e. She is **getting dressed** to the party and has trouble deciding what clothes to wear.

## 83 have/get sth. done Track 083

我们可以用have sth. done或者get sth. done（主要用在口语中）来表示：

### （1）安排别人把事情做好（主要用法）

a. The roof of Clint's house was damaged in a storm, so he arranged for somebody to repair it. Yesterday a workman came and repaired the roof. Then we can say:

Clint **had the roof repaired** yesterday.

昨天，克林特找人把屋顶给修了。

The roof was repaired not by Clint himself, but by the workman.

b. —Are you going to repair the car yourself ?

你打算自己修车吗？

—No, I'm going to **have it repaired**.

不，我打算找人修。

c. I must **get my hair cut**. = I want someone to cut my hair.

d. You should **get/have your bike repaired**.

e. If you don't get out of my house, I'll **have you arrested**.

你要是不给我出去，我就叫人把你抓起来。

### （2）谈论发生在自己身上的事



### 例句

a. We had all our money stolen while we were on holiday.

度假的时候，我们的钱全让人给偷了。

b. I got my car stolen last year.

去年，我的车让人给偷了。

c. Have you ever had your passport stolen?

你的护照被偷过吗？

d. Joe had his leg broken in a fight.

在一次打架中，乔把腿弄折了。

e. It took me two hours to get the washing done.

我花了两个小时才把衣服洗完。

f. Don't get your plans changed.

别改变你的计划。

### 温故知新

总的来说，被动语态是较为简单的。重点是要熟练掌握被动语态的各种时态变化形式以及have/get sth. done句型。

另外，学好被动语态有助于理解非谓语动词的语态变化，这将在《英语语法新思维 基础版3》一书中讨论。

### 被动语态练习

#### 一、将下列句子转换成被动语态。

1. Mr. Clint teaches our grammar.

2. Mr. Clint will teach our grammar.
3. Mr. Clint is teaching our grammar.
4. Mr. Clint taught our grammar.
5. Mr. Clint has taught our grammar for 2 years.
6. He wrote the book.
7. He will invite you to the party.
8. John is writing the report.
9. The teacher is going to explain the lesson.
10. Bob mailed the package.
11. The children have eaten the cake.
12. I didn' t write that note. Jim wrote it.
13. Mr. Smith hasn' t written those letters.
14. Is Mr. Brown painting your house?
15. His tricks won' t fool me.
16. Someone was cleaning the room when I arrived.

二、如有可能，将下列句子转换为被动语态，必要时加上by短语。

17. People grow corn in many countries.
18. Peter came here two months ago.
19. Someone made this antique table in 1900.
20. Great changes have taken place in Beijing these years.

21. An accident happened last night.
22. Someone stole my purse.
23. The Chinese invented paper, the main writing material today.
24. Someone was making coffee when I walked into the kitchen.
25. Translators have translated that book into many languages.
26. Is Mr. Clint teaching our grammar this semester?
27. When did someone invent the telephone?
28. When is someone going to announce the results of the contest?
29. You can see this sort of advertisement everywhere.
30. If you expose a film to light while you are developing it, you will ruin the negatives (底片).
31. They teach English in every school in that country.
32. They are going to build a new hospital next year. They have already built a new elementary school.

### 三、试着将下列句子转换为被动语态。用间接宾语作主语。

33. They will send you a bill at the end of the month.
34. A local advertising company has offered Maria a good job.
35. Some company paid Fred three hundred dollars in consulting fees.

36. Peking University has awarded John a scholarship.

37. A clerk handed Ann a menu at the restaurant.

#### 四、用所给词的get done形式填空。

38. There was an accident, but luckily nobody\_\_\_\_\_.  
(hurt)

39. We didn' t have a map, so we\_\_\_\_\_. (lose)

40. We can leave as soon as you\_\_\_\_\_. (dress)

41. When\_\_\_\_\_you\_\_\_\_\_? (marry)

42. How long did it take you to\_\_\_\_\_to living here?  
(accustom)

43. Sam was supposed to be home an hour ago, but he still isn' t here. I\_\_\_\_\_. (worry)

44. Just try to take it easy. Don' t\_\_\_\_\_. (upset)

45. I \_\_\_\_\_because everybody gave me different advice.  
(confuse)

46. \_\_\_\_\_you\_\_\_\_\_to the party? (invite)

47. I \_\_\_\_\_, so I didn' t stay for the end of the movie.  
(bore)

48. I \_\_\_\_\_on Fridays. I' ll give you the money I owe you next Friday, Okay? (pay)

49. First, they\_\_\_\_\_.

Then, they\_\_\_\_\_.

Later, they\_\_\_\_\_.

Finally, they\_\_\_\_\_. (remarry) Today they are very happy.

### 五、用所给内容的have sth. done结构填空。

50. —Why did you take your car to the garage (修车厂)?

—I\_\_\_\_\_. (repair)

51. —Why did you take your jacket to the cleaner's?

—I\_\_\_\_\_. (clean)

52. I can't cut my hair myself. I need to\_\_\_\_\_. (cut)

53. The coat is dirty. I must\_\_\_\_\_. (clean)

54. They didn't paint the house themselves. They\_\_\_\_\_.  
(paint)

55. —Did you make the curtains yourself?

—No, I\_\_\_\_\_. (make)

56. When was the last time you\_\_\_\_\_? (your hair / cut)

57. \_\_\_\_\_(you / a newspaper / deliver) to your house or  
do you go to the shop to buy one?

58. —What are those workmen doing in your garden?

—Oh, we\_\_\_\_\_. (a swimming pool / build)

### 六、根据情景回答问题，用have sth. done句型。

59. John's leg was broken in an accident.

What happened to John?

He\_\_\_\_\_in an accident.

60. Sarah' s bag was stolen on a train.

What happened to Sarah?

She\_\_\_\_\_on a train.

61. Clint' s hat was blown off in the wind.

What happened to Clint?

He\_\_\_\_\_in the wind.

62. His passport was taken away from him by the police.

What happened to him?

He\_\_\_\_\_from him by the police.

### 被动语态练习答案

#### 一、将下列句子转换成被动语态。

1. Our grammar is taught by Mr. Clint.

2. Our grammar will be taught by Mr. Clint.

3. Our grammar is being taught by Mr. Clint.

4. Our grammar was taught by Mr. Clint.

5. Our grammar has been taught by Mr. Clint for 2 years.

6. The book was written by him.

7. You will be invited to the party by him.

8. The report is being written by John.

9. The lesson is going to be explained by the teacher.

10. The package was mailed by Bob.
11. The cake has been eaten by the children.
12. That note wasn' t written by me, but by Jim.
13. Those letters haven' t been written by Mr. Smith.
14. Is your house being painted by Mr. Brown?
15. I won' t be fooled by his tricks.
16. The room was being cleaned when I arrived.

二、如有可能，将下列句子转换为被动语态，必要时加上by短语。

17. Corn is grown in many countries.
18. 没有被动语态
19. This antique table was made in 1900.
20. 没有被动语态
21. 没有被动语态
22. My purse was stolen.
23. Paper, the main writing material today, was invented by the Chinese.
24. Coffee was being made when I walked into the kitchen.
25. That book has been translated into many languages.
26. Is our grammar being taught by Mr. Clint this semester?
27. When was the telephone invented?

28. When are the results of the contest going to be announced?

29. This sort of advertisement can be seen everywhere.

30. If a film is exposed to light while it is being developed, the negatives (底片) will be ruined.

31. English is taught in every school in that country.

32. A new hospital is going to be built next year. A new elementary school has already been built.

### 三、试着将下列句子转换为被动语态。用间接宾语作主语。

33. You will be sent a bill at the end of the month.

34. Maria has been offered a good job by a local advertising company.

35. Fred was paid three hundred dollars in consulting fees.

36. John has been awarded a scholarship by Peking University.

37. Ann was handed a menu at the restaurant.

### 四、用所给词的get done形式填空。

38. got hurt

39. got lost

40. get dressed

41. will / did; get married

42. get accustomed



- 43. get worried
- 44. get upset
- 45. got confused
- 46. Have; got invited
- 47. got bored
- 48. get paid
- 49. got engaged
- got married
- got divorced
- got remarried

五、用所给内容的have sth. done结构填空。

- 50. had it repaired
- 51. had it cleaned
- 52. have it cut
- 53. have it cleaned
- 54. had it painted
- 55. had them made
- 56. had your hair cut
- 57. Do you have a newspaper delivered
- 58. are having a swimming pool built

六、根据情景回答问题，用have sth. done句型。

59. He had his leg broken in an accident.

60. She had her bag stolen on a train.

61. He had his hat blown off in the wind.

62. He had his passport taken away from him by the police.

## Chapter 10 情态动词



音频

84 情态动词概述

85 表示能力或可能性: can/could / be able to

86 表示许可: may/might/can/could

87 表示请求: May I...? / Would you...?

88 表示必须: must/ have to / have got to

89 表示忠告或责任: should/ ought to / had better

90 表示提议或建议: Shall I/we/he...?

91 shall的用法

92 表示意愿: will/would

93 表示过去的重复动作: would / used to

94 情态动词表示推测

95 “情态动词+完成式”的用法

## 第一节 情态动词概述

### 84 情态动词概述 Track 084

#### (1) 英语中的情态动词

1) 英语中常见的情态动词有can/could, may/might, shall/should, will/would, must, had better。

2) 其他类似的表达有:

be able to (与can类似)

be going to (与will类似)

ought to

be supposed to (与should类似)

have to / have got to (与must类似)

此外, need和dare既可以用作情态动词, 也可以用作实义动词。

#### (2) 情态动词的含义与用法特点

1) 词义

情态动词有别于助动词 (be, have, do), 有其自身的词汇意义, 而且通常是一词多义。情态动词多用来表示可能、建议、愿望、必要、允许、能力、怀疑等, 以表示说话者对某种行为或状态的看法或态度。

比如must既可以表示强烈的必要性, 也可以表示推测。

## 例句

a. I must go to school today.

今天我得上学去。

b. John isn' t in class. He must be sick.

约翰今天没上课，他一定是病了。

## 2) 在谓语中的作用

情态动词在句中不能单独作句子谓语，必须和实义动词一起构成复合谓语。没有第三人称单数的变化，且后面只能接动词原形：

He can dance.

不说：He **cans** dance.\*

不说：He can **dances**.\*

不说：He can **danced**.\*

不说：He can **dancing**.\*

不需借助助动词do就能构成否定式或疑问式：

He can' t dance.

不说：He doesn' t can dance.\*

Can he dance?

不说：Does he can dance?\*

can, may, will, shall分别有过去时态的变化：could, might, would, should。但并不一定都表示过去时间的动作。（具体用法后面详述）

## 第二节 情态动词的用法

### 85 表示能力或可能性: can/could/be able to Track085

#### (1) 表示现在或将来有能力做某事

can表示因为具备某些特点或条件某人能够完成某件事，或某事是可能存在的。所以can既表示有能力，也表示可能性。（注意：这里的“可能”与后边讨论的“推测”是不同的。）

#### 例句

a. Bob can play the piano. He has taken lessons for many years.

（后天获得的能力）

b. John is strong. He can lift that heavy box. （能力）

c. A fish can't walk, but it can swim. （天赋的能力）

d. Dogs can bark, but they cannot talk. （天赋的能力）

e. The theater can seat 10,000 people. （可能）

这个剧院可容纳一万人。

f. I can walk to school. It's not far. （可能）

g. You can see fish at an aquarium（水族馆）. （可能）

h. You can buy stamps at the post office, but you can't buy shoes there. (可能)

注：表示现在有能力做某事，一般不用be able to。

## (2) 表示过去有能力做某事

在表示能力时，could可以作为can的过去式来表示过去有能力做某事。(注意：如果不表示能力，could则不表示过去。例如could可以表示现在的“许可”“推测”。)

### 例句

a. Our son could talk when he was two years old. (表示过去的能用can的过去式could)

b. I could run fast when I was a child, but now I can't.

c. In those days few workers could support their families.

那时很少有工人能够养家糊口。

## (3) 在表示“过去有能力做某事”时，could和was/were able to的用法区别

1) could只能表示过去“一般的能力，总的能力”。所谓“一般的能力 (general ability)”，即我们在过去想干什么就随时可以干什么。(这时，我们也可用was/were able to。)

### 例句

a. I could/was able to recite several poems when I was 3 years of age.

我在三岁时就能背诵几首诗。



b. I **could/was able to** run fast when I was a child, but now I can't.

小时候我能跑得很快，但现在不行了。

c. He **could/was able to** pull down a bull and was acknowledged as a man with superman strength. (我们还可以说: He used to be able to...)

他那时能拉倒一头牛，被公认为是具有神力的人。

2) 而要表示在过去某个特定场合所表现出的“特定的能力，具体的能力”，或表示某人在某一场合设法成功地完成了某件事，而非表示泛指的能力时，我们要用was/were able to。此时，was/were able to意思相当于succeeded in doing或managed to do。

(When used to denote past ability, **COULD** does not refer to a single instance of ability on a particular occasion, but rather, it signifies an ability in a very general sense. The successful demonstration of ability on a particular past occasion is expressed by means of “be able to”, “manage to”, “succeed in”, etc.)

下面例句中均不能用could:

a. With the aid of the wood, he **was able to** swim across the river.

借助那块木头，他游到了河的对岸。

b. I applied everywhere and finally I **was able to** get a good job.

我到处应聘，最后找到了一份好工作。

c. He hurried to the station and **was able to** catch the train .

他匆匆忙忙赶到车站，赶上了火车。

d. The fire spread through the building quickly but everybody **was able to** escape. = ...everybody managed to escape.

大火很快蔓延到整栋大楼，但是人们还是都逃了出来。

e. The two boys tried many ways to catch that sly fox and **were able to** do so at last .

两个男孩试用了多种方法去抓那只狡猾的狐狸，终于成功了。

f. Although the pilot was badly hurt he **was able to** explain what had happened.

尽管飞行员的伤势很严重，但是他还是解释了发生的一切。

g. Tom has started an exercise program. He **was able to** run two miles yesterday without stopping or slowing down.

汤姆开始了训练计划，他昨天跑了两英里，中途没有停也没有放慢速度。

3) 在否定句中could 和was/were able to可以互换，也就是说在否定句中它们就不存在上述区别了。

### 例句

a. I applied everywhere but **couldn' t** get any good job.

b. The fire spread through the building quickly and people **couldn' t** escape.

## 86 表示许可: may/might/can/could Track 086

表示“许可”，我们一般用陈述句[若用疑问句则表示“请求(request)”，见第87小节]。肯定的陈述表示“允许某人做某事”；否定的陈述则表示“不允许某人做某事”。表示许可常用的情态动词有may, might, can, could。但我们多用can或be allowed to do。

### (1) 肯定句——给予许可

#### 例句

a. I **can** leave the office as soon as I have finished. = I am allowed to leave the office...

我工作一结束就可以离开办公室。

b. You **can** use my car tomorrow.

明天你可以用我的车。

c. — **May** I turn on the TV?

我可以打开电视吗？(may用在疑问句中表示“请求许可”)

—Yes, of course you **may**.

当然可以。(may用在肯定的陈述句中表示“给予许可”)

### (2) 否定句——拒绝许可(甚至禁止)

#### 例句

a. — **May** I borrow your car?

(may用在疑问句中表示“请求许可”)

— No, I' m afraid you **may not**.

(may用在否定的陈述句中表示“拒绝许可”)

b. You **can' t** take your camera into the museum.

相机不让带进博物馆。

c. You **can' t** take the test paper out of the classroom. =  
You are not allowed to take...

试卷不允许带出教室。

我们还可用**must not** 表示强烈的拒绝——禁止。**must not**比**can not**, **may not** 语气更强烈。

d. Students **must not** take the test papers out of the classroom.

任何学生不得把试卷带出教室。

### (3) **could**一般不用来表示现在的许可，而用来表示过去的许可

—**Can** I ask you a question?

—Yes, of course you **could**.\* (不能这样说)

表示过去的许可时，**could**可与**was/were allowed to do**互换，例如：

I **could** / **was allowed to** read what I liked when I was a child.

我小的时候，爱看什么书，就看什么书。

不过，若表示过去允许进行某项特定的活动，我们要用**was/were allowed to do**。这一区别与**could**和**was/were able to**的区别类似，

例如：

Yesterday evening, Peter **was allowed to** watch TV for an hour.

不能说：Peter could watch...

could更多是用在陈述句中表示“建议”（见第90小节）；用在疑问句中表示“请求”。（见第87小节）

## 87 表示请求: May I...? / Would you...? Track 087

表示“请求”，我们通常用一般疑问句。主语为第一人称时，表示“请求对方许可我们做某事”；主语用第二人称时，表示“请求对方为我们做某事”。

“请求”是和“许可”相对应的。我们若用陈述句，则是表示许可；用一般疑问句，则表示“请求”，请求对方许可我们做某事。

### 例句

a. —Can I ask you a question?

(can用在疑问句中表示请求允许)

—Yes, of course you can.

(can用在陈述句中表示给予许可)

b. —Can I have some more wine?

我可以再喝点酒吗？

—No, I'm afraid you can't.

不，恐怕你不能再喝了。

### (1) 第一人称：请求对方允许我（们）做某事

May I/we...?

Could I/we...?

Can I/we...?

Might I/we...? (很少用)

典型回答:

Certainly.

Yes, certainly.

Of course.

Yes, of course.

Sure. (非正式)

1) may I和could I 表示较正式、很礼貌地提出请求。如:

May I please borrow your car?

May I borrow your car, please?

Could I please borrow your car?

Could I borrow your car, please?

2) Can I...?则是非正式地请求允许,一般用于说话人与对方相当熟悉的情况下,比如你向你的同学借一支笔:

Can I borrow your pen?

3) Might I...? 显得过于正式和客气,所以一般很少用。

## (2) 第二人称: 请求对方为我们做某事

Would you...?

Could you...?

Will you...?

Can you...?

典型回答:

Yes, I' d like to.

Yes, I' d be happy to.

Yes, I' d be glad to.

Certainly.

Sure. （非正式）

对于礼貌的请求我们通常是给予肯定回答。若需要给予否定回答，我们往往这样说：I' d like to, but...在but后面给出不能答应的理由。

用法	例句
would you 和 could you 都是用来表示很客气地请求，客气程度相同；will you 不如 would you 客气。	Would you please lend me your car? Would you lend me your car, please? Could you please lend me your car? Could you lend me your car, please?
can you 常用于非正式场合或熟人之间。	Can you pass me the salt, Mom?

比如下面对话发生在同学之间：

— I am on duty this afternoon. Will you please cover for me? I have a doctor' s appointment.

今天下午我值日，你能替我吗？我得去看医生。

— I am sorry I can' t. My term paper is due tomorrow.

对不起，我替不了你。我明天得交学期论文。



## 88 表示必须: must/ have to / have got to Track 088

1) must和have to相近，都译为“必须”。

### 例句

a. All applicants must take an entrance exam.

b. All applicants have to take an entrance exam.

2) have got to 主要用于口语中，不是很正式。

I have got to go now. I have a class in ten minutes.

3) 要表示过去“必须”，我们要用had to，而must和have got to没有过去式形式。

I had to study last Sunday.

4) 注意否定意思：

don' t have to: 不必要

mustn' t或must not: 千万不要，表示禁止。

### 例句

a. Tomorrow is Saturday. We don' t have to go to school.

明天是周六，我们不必上学。

b. You must not tell anyone my secret. Do you promise?

你千万别告诉任何人我的秘密，你能答应我吗？

## 89 表示忠告或责任: should/ ought to / had better Track 089

1) should和ought to意思相近, 表示“应该做某事”。

### 例句

a. You should do as you are told.

b. Drivers should / ought to obey the speed limit.

2) had better常用于口语中, 后面接动词原形, 否定用had better not, 含有警告或警示的意味, 如:

We had better study harder, or we' ll probably fail in the exam.

我们最好学习努力点儿, 否则可能会考试不及格。

## 90 表示提议或建议: Shall I/we/he...? Track 090

1) shall用于第一、三人称的一般疑问句中 (Shall I/we/he...?), 表示征求对方的“建议”。

### 例句

a. Shall I open the window?

要不要我把窗子打开?

b. Shall we leave at two?

我们两点钟走如何?

c. Shall he come with us?

要不要他和我们一起去?

2) could在有些情况下并不表示过去能做某事, 而是表示提议, 也可以用can, 但could没有can那么肯定。

—What shall we do this evening?

—We could go to the cinema.

3) may/might (just) as well 也常用来向他人推荐更佳方案, 意为“倒不如……; 不妨……”, 如:

a. We may as well stay here tonight.

我们今晚不如在这儿过夜。

b. —I' ll go on Monday by train.

—You might just as well wait till Wednesday and go by plane.

4) 其他非情态动词表示建议，如Let' s..., Why don' t..., Why not...?等。

a. Let' s go to a movie.

b. Why don' t we go on a picnic?

**忠告与建议的比较：**should表示强烈的、明确的忠告。could表示委婉的建议。

### 例句

a. A: John doesn' t feel good. He has a bad stomachache.

B: He should see a doctor.

C: Well, he could see a doctor. Or he could simply stay in bed for a day and hope he feels better tomorrow.

b. A: I need to get to the airport.

B: You should take the airport bus. It' s cheaper than a taxi.

C: Well, you could take the airport bus. Or you could take a taxi. Maybe Clint could take you. He has a car.

## 91 shall的用法 Track 091

(1) shall用于第二、三人称的陈述句，表示说话人的许诺

### 例句

a. You shall have the money back next week. =I promise you will have...

下星期你就可以拿到钱了。

b. If he passes the examination he shall have a bicycle.  
=I promise he will have...

若他能通过考试，他就能得到一辆自行车。

(2) shall用于第二、三人称的陈述句，还表示说话人强烈的意愿，甚至是威胁

### 例句

a. You shall pay for this.

你一定会为此付出代价。

b. They shall do as they are told.

他们一定要按照吩咐的去做。

(3) 在法律条文、规章制度中，我们常用shall表示“必须”

Each competitor shall wear a number.

每位参赛人员必须佩戴号码牌。

(4) shall用于第一、三人称的一般疑问句中，表示“建议”

a. Shall I buy you a gift?

要不要我给你买份礼物？

b. A detective (侦探) arrested a criminal and was about to handcuff (上手铐) him when a huge gust of wind (一阵狂风) blew off the detective's hat. “Shall I go and fetch it?” the criminal asked. “Do you take me for a fool?” asked the detective. “You wait here while I go and get it!”

## 92 表示意愿: will/would Track 092

will或would 表示说话者愿意做某事。

### 例句

- The phone is ringing.
- I will get it.



## 93 表示过去的重复动作: would / used to

### Track 093

我们用would或used to 表示过去重复的动作 (repeated action in the past)。如:

When I was a child, my mother would read / used to read me a story before bed. 小时候,睡觉前妈妈常常会给我讲故事。

1) would do和used to do之间是有区别的

used to可以表示过去定期重复的动作,也可以表示过去**存在的状态**,含有“现在不再……”的含义。would只能用来表示过去重复的动作,不表示状态。

#### 例句

a. When I was a boy, I would go / used to go swimming in a river near my house.

b. When I was a child, my mother would read / used to read me a story before bed.

c. Illiteracy (文盲) is still a problem in my country, but it used to be much worse. (此句不说...it would be...)

d. I used to have a cat. (此句不说I would have a cat.)

e. There used to be a lot of fish in this river, but nothing seems to be in it after it's been polluted by the wastes. (此句不说There would be...)

f. My mother used to be (表示过去的状态,不用would替换) very busy the whole day, but as soon as evening came, she

would move (表示过去的动作) very fast to get ready to meet my father. At that time we didn' t understand; we used to tease (表示过去的动作, 二者可互换使用) her; but now I remember what a tremendous, delicate love she had for him. It didn' t matter what happened that day; she was ready with a smile to meet him .

以前, 我妈妈白天总是忙忙碌碌的, 但是只要到了夜幕时分, 她就会很快地把家里的一切都料理好, 以迎接我爸爸回家。那时我们对此都不理解, 因而常常取笑她。但现在我终于明白, 这是母亲对父亲多么深厚而细微的爱啊! 每天不论发生什么事, 她总是微笑着去迎接父亲回家。

2) used to和would均不能用来表示过去某事发生的次数。

### 例句

a. I went to that restaurant over ten times when I was in college.

b. I used to go / would go to that restaurant over ten times when I was in college.\*

## 94 情态动词表示推测 Track 094

### (1) 对现在的肯定推测

我们以Why isn't John in class? (约翰为什么没上课?) 为例, 来看must, may, could, might, can在表示对现在情况的肯定推测时的用法区别。

表达方式	肯定的程度	例句
陈述句	对客观事实的陈述, 表示 100% 确定	He <u>is</u> sick. 他病了。
must	表示强烈的肯定, 对自己陈述的内容很有把握 (约 90% 的确定性)	He <u>must be</u> sick. 他一定是病了。
may/could/might	表达较弱的 (少于 50% 的确定性) 肯定, 把握不大。在肯定句中, 三者差别不大。但在否定句中, couldn't 比 may not 和 might not 语气强烈得多 (见下文)	He <u>may/might/could be</u> sick. 他可能是病了。 I don't really know. He <u>may be</u> at home watching TV. He <u>might be</u> at the library. He <u>could be</u> out of town.
can	常表示一般性的肯定推测	Winters in Chongqing <u>can be</u> really cold.

### 例句

- You've been traveling all day. You **must be** tired.
- Carol **must get very bored** in her job. She does the same thing every day.
- I have one teacher who is so forgetful that he gave the same test three weeks in a row. If he does that two more times,

I **may pass** it.

d. Michael: Teacher, is there life after death?

Teacher: Why do you ask?

Michael: I **may need** the extra time to finish all this homework you gave us.

(2) 对现在的否定推测

我们以The restaurant is always empty.（这家餐馆人总是很少。）为例，来看“情态动词表示对现在情况的否定推测”的用法。

表达方式	否定的程度	例句
陈述句	对客观事实的陈述，表示强烈的否定（100% 的确定性）	It <u>is</u> very bad. 这餐馆很糟糕。

表达方式	否定的程度	例句
can't, couldn't	表示说话人认为某事是不可能的，强烈的否定推测（约 90% 的确定性）	It <u>can't</u> be very good. 这家餐馆不可能很好。
may not, might not	表示一般性的否定推测（少于 50% 的确定性）	It <u>may/might not</u> be very good. 这家餐馆可能不太好。

注意：must表示推测时，一般不用在否定句中。在肯定句中，could, may, might三者差别不大。但在否定句中，couldn't比may not和might not语气强烈得多。

例句

Judge: How could you swindle people who trusted in you?

Prisoner: But Judge, people who don’ t trust you cannot be swindled.

法官：你怎么能够诈骗信任你的人呢？

罪犯：但是法官大人，不信任你的人是不可能被你骗的。

(3) 对过去的肯定推测：must/can/may/could/might + 完成式

下面我们以Why wasn’ t John in class yesterday?（约翰昨天怎么没上课？） 为例，来看“情态动词表示对过去情况的肯定推测” 的用法。

表达方式	肯定的程度	例句
陈述句	对客观事实的陈述，表示 100% 确定	He <u>was</u> sick. 他病了。
must have done	对过去情况的肯定推测，把握较大 (约 90% 的确定性)	He <u>must have been</u> sick. 他一定是病了。
may/could/might have done	对过去情况的肯定推测，把握不是很大 (50% 左右的确定性)，表示有可能	He <u>may/could/might have been</u> sick. 他可能是病了。

(4) 对过去的否定推测

下面我们仍以Why wasn’ t John in class yesterday?（约翰昨天怎么没上课？） 为例，来看“情态动词表示对过去情况的否定推测” 的用法。

表达方式	否定的程度	例句
陈述句	对客观事实的陈述，表示 100% 确定	He <u>wasn't</u> sick. 他没有生病。
could not have done	对过去情况的否定推测，把握较大 (约 90% 的确定性)，意为“一定不是；不可能”	He <u>couldn't have been</u> sick. 他不可能是病了。
may/might not have done	对过去情况的否定推测，把握不是很大 (50% 左右的确定性)，意为“可能没有”	He <u>may/might not have been</u> sick. 他可能不是病了。

(5) 对将来的推测

下面我们以Tomorrow John will take a test. (约翰明天要考试。) 为例，来看“情态动词表示对将来情况的推测” 的用法。

表达方式	否定的程度	例句
will / will not	表示十分有把握的 (100% 的确定性) 对未来的预计	He <u>will</u> do well on the test. 他会考得很好。
should / ought to	表示对将来事件的推测，比较有把握 (70%-80% 的确定性)	He <u>should/ought to</u> do well on the test. 他应该会考好。
can/may/might	表示对将来事件不太有把握的推测 (50% 以下的确定性)	He <u>can/may/might</u> do well on the test. 他可能会考好。

## 95 “情态动词+完成式”的用法 Track 095

### (1) 表示对过去的推测

肯定推测	could have done / may have done / might have done / must have done / should have done / ought to have done
否定推测	can' t have done / couldn' t have done / may not have done / might not have done

#### 例句

a. — The money has disappeared! Who **could have taken** it?

— John **could have**; he was here alone yesterday.

b. The situation was bad but it **could have been** worse.

当时情况很糟糕，但本来还可能更糟糕。

c. You screamed in your sleep last night. You **must have had** a terrible dream.

你昨晚睡觉时大喊大叫了，你一定是做了噩梦。

d. I can' t find my sunglasses. I **may/might have left** them at the restaurant yesterday.

e. The package is gone. Someone **might have picked** it up by mistake.

### (2) 表示过去应该或能够做某事而实际并没有做

1) should / ought to have done 表示过去 **应该做** 某事而实际 **并没有做**，含有批评的意思。用于否定句中，则表示过去 **不应该做** 某事而实际 **做了**，也含有批评的意思。

### 例句

a. You **should have phoned** me last night.

你昨晚应该给我打个电话。

b. — I feel terribly ill today.

我今天感觉很糟糕。

— You **shouldn' t have eaten** those mushrooms yesterday.  
Mushrooms don' t agree with you.

你昨天不应该吃那些蘑菇。你不能吃蘑菇。

2) could have done 表示过去 **本能做** 某事而实际 **并没有做**，含有惋惜的意思。

### 例句

a. You **could have told** me you were getting married.

你本来可以告诉我你要结婚的事嘛。

b. I **could have lent** you the money. Why didn' t you ask me?

我那时是能够把钱借给你的，你为什么不向我借？

c. Some women \_\_\_\_\_ a good salary in a job instead of staying at home, but they decided not to work for the sake of the family.

A. must make

B. should have made



C. would make

D. could have made

正确答案：D。

### (3) 表示本来不必做某事，但实际上做了

needn' t have done 表示本来不必做某事但实际做了。

#### 例句

a. —We went to the meeting, but it had been cancelled.

—Oh, so you needn' t have gone.

b. The restaurant was nearly empty. We needn' t have booked a table.

#### 温故知新

英语中，情态动词的用法较为烦琐，不是在短篇幅中能够介绍完全的。读者要想真正活用情态动词，尚需在阅读中细心体会。现附上“情态动词用法一览表”，以备查阅。

can/could/may/might

can的用法：

表示能力 (ability)	<p>a. Bob can play the piano. But I can't.</p> <p>b. A fish can't walk, but it can swim.</p> <p>c. The theater can seat 10,000 people.</p>
表示许可 (permission) : 用在肯定句或否定句中表 示许可, 相当于 be(not) allowed to do...	<p>a. I can leave the office as soon as I have finished. =I am allowed to leave the office...</p> <p>b. You can use my car tomorrow.</p> <p>c. You can't take your camera into the museum.</p> <p>d. You can't take the test paper out of the classroom. = You are not allowed to take...</p>
在疑问句中表示有礼貌的 请求 (polite request)	<p>a. Can I use your car?</p> <p>b. Can Tom use the car whenever he likes?</p> <p>c. Can you lend me your car?</p>
在否定句中表示 “不可能 (impossibility) ”	<p>You can't see her now because she is out.</p>

could的用法:

作为 can 的过去式，表示过去的能力 (past ability)	<p>a. Our son could talk when he was two years old.</p> <p>b. I could run fast when I was a child, but now I can' t.</p> <p>c. In those days few workers could support their families.</p>
表示有礼貌的请求 (polite request) 时，比 can 语气要委婉；此时 could 并不表示过去	<p>a. Could you lend me your car?</p> <p>b. Could you show me the way?</p> <p>c. Could I see your license?</p>
表推测时，确定性小于 50%，与 might 表示推测的用法类似，但在否定句中表示“不可能 (impossibility)”，并不表示过去	<p>a. —Why isn' t Clint in class? —I have no idea. He could be sick. (could 表示现在的可能性)</p> <p>b. The phone is ringing. It could be John.</p> <p>c. Look at those dark clouds. It could start raining any minute. (could 表示将来的可能性)</p>
表示建议，可以用 can。could 没有 can 那么肯定，此时，could 并不表示过去	<p>a. —What shall we do this evening? —We could go to the cinema.</p> <p>b. It is a nice day. We could go for a walk.</p>

## may的用法:

表示礼貌的请求 (polite request)	May I use your car?
表示正式的允许 (formal permission)	You may take my car.
表示不太有把握的推测 (less than 50% certainty)	<p>a. The phone is ringing. It may be John.</p> <p>b. He may be waiting at the station. 他现在可能在火车站等着。(现在的可能)</p> <p>c. He may be waiting at the station when we arrive. 我们到达车站时，他有可能在火车站等着呢。(将来的可能)</p>

might的用法:

表示对现在或将来事件的可能性推测；把握不大 (less than 50% certainty)。 在表示推测时，may 和 might 的用法差不多，只不过 might 把握性更小，怀疑的语气更重些	a. He might be waiting at the station. 他现在可能在火车站等着。(现在的可能) b. He might be waiting at the station when we arrive. 我们到达车站时，他有可能在火车站等着呢。(将来的可能)
也可表示礼貌的请求 (polite request)，但很少使用	Might I borrow your car?

will / would / be going to / used to

will的用法:

表示对将来情况完全肯定的推测 (100% certainty)	I believe he will do well in tomorrow' s test.
表示意愿 (willingness)	—The phone is ringing. —I' ll get it.
表示委婉的请求 (polite request)	Will you open the window, please?

would的用法:

表示委婉的请求 (polite request)	Would you open the window, please?
表示过去重复发生的动作 (repeated action in the past)	When I was a child, my mother would read me a story at night before bed.

used to的用法:

表示过去重复发生的动作 (repeated action in the past)	When I was a child, my mother used to read me a story at night before bed.
表示过去存在的某种状况	There used to be a river here.

## shall/should / ought to / had better

### shall的用法:

用于第一、三人称的一般疑问句中，表示“建议”	Shall I buy you a gift? Shall I open the window?
------------------------	---

表示强烈要求	They shall do as they are told. 他们一定要按吩咐的去做。
表示承诺	You shall have the money back next week.

### should的用法:

表示建议或劝告	Drivers should obey the speed limit.
表示对将来的推测 (约 90% 的确定性)	He should do well on the test.

### ought to的用法:

表示建议或劝告	Drivers ought to obey the speed limit.
表示对将来的推测 (约 90% 的可能性)	He ought to do well on the test.

had better的用法:

表示劝告	You had better stay here tonight.
------	-----------------------------------

must / have to / have got to

must的用法:

表示必要或很重要，即必须 (strong necessity)	I must study hard.
用在否定句中，表示禁止 (prohibition)	You must not cheat on the exam.
表示对现在有把握的肯定 推测 (约 95% 的确定性)	John isn' t in class. He must be sick.

have to的用法:

表示必须 (necessity)	I have to study hard, for the finals are near.
在口语中，可用 have got to (不用于否定句中)	I' ve got to go now.

情态动词练习

一、判断下列各句中情态动词的使用是否正确，如果错误，请予以改正。

- 1. He can to speak English well.
- 2. He can spoke English well.
- 3. He can speaking English well.

4. He can speaks English well.
5. He cans speak English well.
6. He cans speaks English well.
7. He doesn' t can speak English well.
8. Does he can speak English well?
9. They must don' t do that again.
10. They must did the work yesterday.
11. They musted do the work yesterday.
12. You had better to do it at once.

## 二、用could, couldn' t, was/were able to填空。

13. They didn' t want to come with us at first but we\_\_\_\_\_persuade them.
14. Jack was an excellent tennis player. He\_\_\_\_\_beat anybody.
15. Jack and John had a game of tennis yesterday. John played very well, but in the end Jack\_\_\_\_\_beat him.
16. I looked everywhere for the book but I\_\_\_\_\_find it.
17. I looked everywhere for the book and finally I\_\_\_\_\_find it.
18. Sue wasn' t at home when I phoned, but I\_\_\_\_\_contact her at her office.
19. My mother loved music. She\_\_\_\_\_play the piano very well.

20. A girl fell into the river but fortunately we\_\_\_\_\_rescue her.

21. I had forgotten to bring my camera, so I\_\_\_\_\_take any photographs.

22. Although I forgot to bring my camera that day, I\_\_\_\_\_take some nice photographs with John' s camera.

23. When I worked as a secretary, I\_\_\_\_\_type 60 words a minute without making a mistake.

24. Yesterday I typed these reports for my boss. I don' t type very well, but I\_\_\_\_\_finish the reports without making too many mistakes.

25. When I ran into Mr. Smith yesterday, I\_\_\_\_\_recognize him even though I hadn' t seen him for years.

26. At the sale yesterday, I\_\_\_\_\_get this shirt for half price. Quite a bargain, don' t you think so?

27. My grandfather was a merchant all his life. He knew how to make a sale by using psychology. He\_\_\_\_\_convince anyone to buy anything, whether they needed it or not.

### 三、根据所给情景礼貌地提出请求。

28. You want to ask your teacher a question.

29. You' re at your friend' s apartment. You want to use the phone.

30. You want your boyfriend to meet you in front of the library at three this afternoon.

31. You knock on your professor' s half-open door. He' s sitting at his desk. You want to go in.

32. You are at a gas station. You want the attendant to check the oil.



33. You want to use your deskmate' s dictionary for a minute.

34. You want a stranger in an airport to keep an eye on your luggage while you get a drink of water.

#### 四、用must not或don' t have to填空。

35. I' ve already finished all my homework, so I\_\_\_\_\_study tonight.

36. You\_\_\_\_\_forget to take your keys with you.

37. You\_\_\_\_\_introduce me to Dr. Smith. We' ve already met.

38. A person\_\_\_\_\_become rich and famous in order to live a happy life.

39. A person\_\_\_\_\_get married to lead a happy and fulfilling life.

40. You\_\_\_\_\_play with sharp knives.

41. We\_\_\_\_\_go to the concert if you don' t want to, but it might be good.

42. I\_\_\_\_\_go to the doctor. I' m feeling much better.

43. In order to be a good salesman, you\_\_\_\_\_be rude to a customer.

44. This is a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity. We\_\_\_\_\_let it pass. We must act.

#### 五、用would或used to填空。

45. I \_\_\_\_\_be very shy. Whenever a stranger came to our house, I \_\_\_\_\_hide in a closet.

46. When I was a child, I \_\_\_\_\_take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my

parents' knowing about it.

47. I remember my aunt very well. Every time she came to our house, she \_\_\_\_\_ give me a big kiss and pinch my cheek.

48. I \_\_\_\_\_ be afraid of flying. My heart \_\_\_\_\_ start pounding every time I stepped on a plane. But now I' m used to flying and enjoy it.

## 六、用所给词的适当形式填空，以表示推测，注意肯定程度的不同。

49. It rained every day during their holiday, so they \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) a very nice time.

50. The restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very good. It' s always full of people.

51. The phone rang but I didn' t hear it. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) asleep.

52. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a bad accident here. Look at all the broken glass.

53. Jane walked past me without speaking. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not/see) me.

54. Joe isn' t at work today. He \_\_\_\_\_ (be) ill.

55. Joe wasn' t at work last week. He \_\_\_\_\_ (be) ill.

56. When I woke up this morning, the light was on. I \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) to turn it off.

57. The lights were red but the car didn' t stop. The driver \_\_\_\_\_ (not/see) the red light.

58. She knew everything about our plans. She \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to our conversation.

59. I can' t find my umbrella. I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) it in the restaurant last night.

60. I left my bike outside the house last night and this morning it wasn' t there any more. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_(take) it.

61. —He says he saw you at the theater yesterday.

—He \_\_\_\_\_(not see) me. I wasn' t there.

62. —He has been working the whole morning.

—He \_\_\_\_\_(be) very tired.

63. —Did you hear me come in last night?

—No, I \_\_\_\_\_(be) asleep.

## 七、单项选择。

64. Several cases have been reported recently of people who\_\_\_\_\_read and detect colors with their fingers.

A. should

B. can

C. will

D. could

65. No one except his secretary\_\_\_\_\_go straight into his office without permission.

A. can

B. is able to

C. will

D. is not allowed to

66. She was absent for the first time yesterday.  
She\_\_\_\_\_sick.

A. must be

B. has been

C. is

D. must have been

67. He did very badly on the exam. He\_\_\_\_\_harder.

A. must study

B. must have studied

C. should study

D. should have studied

68. He\_\_\_\_\_ten lectures on American history, but he only gave two because of his illness.

A. had given

B. would give

C. must have given

D. should have given

69. We did hold a meeting yesterday, but you\_\_\_\_\_. So we did not inform you.

A. did not need attending

B. needn' t attending

C. did not need to attend

D. needn' t attend

70. We came early and had to wait two hours before the ceremony began. We\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. should not hurry
- B. must not have hurried
- C. need not hurry
- D. need not have hurried

71. —Have you paid your telephone bill?

—No, but I\_\_\_\_\_yesterday.

- A. ought to pay it
- B. ought to have paid it
- C. must pay it
- D. must have paid it

72. He\_\_\_\_\_pull down a bull and acknowledged as a man with superman strength.

- A. used to be able to
- B. would be able to
- C. should be able to
- D. might be able to

### 情态动词练习答案

一、判断下列各句中情态动词的使用是否正确，如果错误，请予以改正。

1. 去掉to
2. spoke→speak
3. speaking→speak

4. speaks→speak
5. cans→can
6. cans speaks→can speak
7. doesn' t can→can' t
8. Does he can→Can he
9. They must not do that again.
10. They must have done the work yesterday.
11. They must have done the work yesterday.
12. You had better do it at once.

## 二、用could, couldn' t, was / were able to填空。

13. were able to
14. could
15. was able to
16. couldn' t
17. was able to
18. was able to
19. could
20. were able to
21. couldn' t
22. was able to
23. could

- 24. was able to
- 25. was able to
- 26. was able to
- 27. was able to / could

### 三、根据所给情景礼貌地提出请求。（仅作参考）

- 28. May I ask you a question, please?
- 29. Can I use the phone?
- 30. Could you meet me in front of the library at three this afternoon?
- 31. May I come in, please?
- 32. Would you please check the oil?
- 33. Can I use your dictionary for a minute?
- 34. Would you please keep an eye on my luggage while I get a drink of water?

### 四、用must not或don' t have to填空。

- 35. don' t have to
- 36. must not
- 37. don' t have to
- 38. doesn' t have to
- 39. doesn' t have to
- 40. must not
- 41. don' t have to

42. don' t have to

43. must not

44. must not

五、用would或used to填空。

45. used to; would

46. used to

47. would

48. used to; would

六、用所给词的适当形式填空，以表示推测，注意肯定程度的不同。

49. can' t have had

50. must be

51. must have been

52. must have been

53. might not have seen

54. must be

55. must have been

56. must have forgotten

57. might not have seen

58. must have listened

59. must have left

60. must have taken



61. can' t / couldn' t have seen

62. must be

63. must have been

### 七、单项选择。

64. B 65. A 66. D 67. D 68. D 69. C 70. D 71. B 72.

A

## Chapter 11 限定词



音频

- 96 数量形容词some/any
- 97 个体形容词each/every
- 98 个体形容词another/other
- 99 个体形容词either/neither
- 100 限定词与名词的搭配
- 101 限定词之间的位置搭配
- 102 限定词与形容词的区别

在英语中，限定词 (determiner) 与名词的关系最为密切。它总是直接或间接地用在名词前面，以限定名词所指的范围，对名词起修饰作用。

英文中的限定词包括：

1) 冠词：the, a, an

2) 基数词和序数词：one/first, two/second, three/third等

3) 指示形容词：this, that, these, those

4) 物主形容词：my, your, his, her, our, their

5) 数量形容词：a few, a little, much, many, a lot of, some, any, enough, several, most, all等

6) 个体形容词：each, every, either, neither, both等

7) 名词属格：Mary's, John's, his father's等

冠词是我们最为常见的限定词，其用法在《英语语法新思维 基础版 1》一书中已经详细讨论过。这一章我们主要讨论数量形容词和个体形容词的用法。

## 第一节 限定词的用法

### 96 数量形容词some/any Track 096

(1) 从与名词的搭配来看，some和any均可以与不可数名词和可数名词复数连用，表示“一些”。但some一般用在肯定句中；而any一般用在疑问句和否定句中

#### 例句

- a. I need some medicine to cure my cough.
- b. Can you give me any advice?
- c. I want to buy some computer books.
- d. I don't have any friends here.

#### (2) some的特殊用法

1) 当你期待一个正面回答或要鼓励对方说“是”时，在疑问句中也要用some。例如：

- a. Would you like to give me some advice?
- b. Can I have some more wine?

2) some与数词连用时，表示“大约”，此时所表示的数量往往给人以深刻的印象。例如：

- a. Some 1,500 passengers and crew died aboard the Titanic when it sank on April 14, 1912 after hitting an iceberg. It

lies at a depth of **some 4,000** meters, **some 640** kilometers south of Newfoundland, Canada.

泰坦尼克号于1912年月14日撞上冰山后沉没，船上约有1,500名乘客和船员丧生。泰坦尼克号沉没于距加拿大纽芬兰以南约640公里处大约4,000米的深海里。

b. For “good”, the Chinese worked out a combination of “woman” and “child”. Once this combination process had started, there was no limit to it. The Chinese still use the system today, having developed it to the point of producing **some forty thousand** combined characters out of a few hundred original pictures of concrete objects. （用几百个象形文字创造出40,000个左右的组合字。）

3) some可与单数可数名词连用，这时some表示不确定的“某一个”“未知的”人或物。往往带有缺乏兴趣或蔑视的意味。例如：

a. A mirage is an atmospheric optical illusion of **some** object.

海市蜃楼是某个物体的奇特的光学幻影而已。

b. **Some** person at the gate is asking to see you.

门口有个人要见你。

c. —Two buttons have been off my new jacket.

我那件新夹克已经掉了两粒扣子了。

—**Some** bargain.

什么破烂货！

d. I don't want to spend my life in **some** lonely little village.

我可不想把自己的一生消磨在某个偏僻的小山村里。

## 97 个体形容词each/every Track 097

each和every后面都只能接单数可数名词，我们说every/each boy，而不说every/each boys。若其所修饰限定的名词作主语，句子的谓语动词显然要用单数形式。例如：

- a. Every/Each boy has a gift.
- b. Every man is the master of his own fortune.

每一个人都是自己命运的主宰。

但二者的用法也有诸多区别，具体讲解如下：

(1) each不仅用作限定词，还可用作代词；而every只能用作限定词。因此each可以单独使用作成分，而every只能与名词连用，不能单独使用

如上面a句可以改为：

- a. Each has a gift.

人人都有礼物。

却不能说：Every has a gift.\*

注意下面句子的结构和用法：

- b. Every/Each boy has a gift. (each用作限定词)

c. Each of the boys has a gift. (each用作代词，加of短语。此时of后面须加限定词，然后再接名词复数。不能说each of boys，而要说each of these/the/my boys。)

- d. Each has a gift. (each用作代词)

e. Every one of the boys has a gift. (every不能单独使用，而且与of短语连用时，只能是every one of…，而不能说everyone of…)

f. The boys **each have** a gift. (each用作代词, 可跟在主语后面, 此时谓语动词用复数)

g. The boys have a gift **each**. (each用作代词也可放在句末)

h. I give the boys **each** a gift. (each用作代词也可放在间接宾语后面)

## (2) 从意思上来看, 二者有两点区别

1) each可以用来指两个或两个以上的事物; 而every却总是指三个或三个以上的事物, 不能指两个。例如:

a. **Each sex** has its own physical and psychological characteristics.

男女各有其生理上和心理上的特点。(性别就男和女两种, 故不能说Every sex...)

b. There are a lot of trees on **each side** of the street. (街道只有两边, 故不能说every side)

2) 尽管each和every都可作“每一个”讲, 但两者意思并不完全相同。every强调整体, 相当于all的意思; 而each则表示个别的概念, 强调的是一个个不同的人或事物。例如:

a. We want every student to succeed in the exam.

我们希望所有学生都能通过考试。(强调整体)

b. Each student has his own personal dream in his mind.

每个学生的内心都怀有自己的梦想。(强调个体)

不过这种区别有时并不那么突出, 所以一般来说, 我们仍可以将each和every通用。

## (3) every可与数词连用, 然后再加复数名词, 而each一般不这么用

every two days 每两天, 每隔一天

every other day 每隔一天

every four years / every fourth year 每隔三年，每四年

In the United States, presidential elections are held once every four years.

在美国，总统大选是每四年举行一次。

#### (4) 此类词与of连用

someone	}	不接 of 短语
anyone		
everyone		
no one		

some one	}	of 短语
any one		
every one		
none		

#### 例句

- a. Everyone is here. (不说Every one is here.\*)
- b. Every one of us has a gift. =Everyone has a gift.
- c. None of us has a gift. =No one has a gift.



### (1) 与名词搭配时的区别

another只能与单数可数名词连用，表示不确定的“另一个”“再一个”，如another day, another cup of water, 而不说another days或another water。然而，other与单数、复数可数名词以及不可数名词连用均可，表示不确定的“另外的”“其余的”人或物，如：other boys, the other boy, other fish等。

### (2) 与数词搭配时的区别

1) another +数词+复数名词

2) 数词+ other +复数名词

例如：

another three days 不说 three another days \*

three other days 不说 other three days \*

我们还应该注意这两种用法**意思上的区别**。当我们说I will stay herefor another three days., 意思是“我还要在这里再待三天。”言外之意，我已经在这里待过一段时日了，现在还得再加上三天。即“another +数词+名词复数”这一结构表示“在原有基础上的一个延续”。

而three other days意思却完全不同，比如我们说I am always busy from Monday to Thursday, but I can come on three other days., 意思是“我其他三天 (Friday, Saturday and Sunday)能来”，所以three other days 并不像another three days那样具有一种“累加延续”的效果，而只是单纯地表示“其他的……，另外的……”。

另外，与“another + 数词 + 名词复数”这一结构意思相同的另一种结构是“数词 + more + 复数名词”，比如我们可以说three more days。

综上所述，虽然another不能直接与复数名词连用，但其后可以先接数词或few，然后再接复数名词。如：another few weeks / a few more weeks（还有几个星期），another few boys / a few more boys（又有几个男孩）。

### 例句

—What do you do when you realize that you are about to die?

— It' s simple. You get things right with God, and you spend as much time with those you love as you can. Then you settle up with everybody else. You know, really, you ought to live every day like you have only a few more days to live.

### (3) other的其他用法

1) other之前可以有其他限定词修饰，如：some, any, every, one/two/three, no, many, his/my/their等。例如：

a. Can you give me some other reference books?

你能否给我一些其他的参考书？

b. every other day 每隔一天（相当于every two days）

c. no other tools 没有其他的工具了

d. Have you got any other colors?

你这里有别的颜色吗？

2) other和the other

“other +名词”表示不确定的“其他的……，另外的……”；  
“the other +名词”表示特定的“其余的……”。例如：

a. Some metals are magnetic and other metals are not.

b. Of all metals, only mercury is liquid and the other metals are solid.

### 3) other和others

other只能作限定词来用，后面必须接名词，不能说Other are…  
\*；而others只能用作代词，后面不能再接名词，不能说Others  
people are…\*。正确的说法是Others are…。

## 99 个体形容词either/neither Track 099

### (1) 从词义角度分析，二者词义不同

1) either的基本意思是“两个当中的任何一个”，即“这个或那个 (one or the other)”。例如：

Come over on Saturday or Sunday. Either day is OK.

星期六或星期日来吧。这两天中的哪一天都行。

2) either有时候也指“两个中的每一个 (each of the two)”，特别是与end和side连用时。例如：

There are a lot of trees on either side of the river.

河的两岸都种满了树。

比较：There are a lot of trees on both sides of the river. (side要用复数)

还可以说：There are a lot of trees on each side of the river. (each可指两者或两者以上中的“每一个”)

但不可说：There are a lot of trees on every side of the river.\* (every指三者或三者以上)

3) neither只有一个意思：“两者都不 (not one and not the other)”。

例如：

Neither of the answers is right.

两个答案都不正确。

## (2) 从与名词的搭配来看，二者的结构用法相同

1) 用作限定词时，总是与单数可数名词连用，谓语动词用单数形式。

### 例句

Either day is OK. (不说...are OK.)

两天中的哪一天都行。

Neither day is OK. (不说...are OK.)

两天中的哪一天都不行。

**注意：**作限定词时，二者均不能再与其他的限定词（如冠词、物主代词或指示形容词）连用。比如我们可以说the book, your book或either book，但我们不说the either book, either your book或the either day。

2) 用作代词时，二者不直接接名词，而是单独使用或接of短语。例如：

Come over on Saturday or Sunday. Either is OK.

You can't choose Choices A or B. Neither is right.

选项A和B你都不能选，两个都不对。

**注意**它们与of短语连用时的结构：“Either/Neither of +限定词+名词复数+（单数）谓语动词”。例如：

Either of the answers is right.

两个答案中任何一个都是正确的。

Neither of my children has done that.

我的两个孩子都没有做这件事。

在这个结构中有三点须注意：

1) 名词前面必须有限定词。我们不说either of answers✱, neither of children✱。

2) 名词必须用复数形式。我们不说either of the answer✱, neither of my child✱。

3) 谓语动词通常用单数形式。我们一般不说Either of the answers are right.\* Neither of my children have done that.\*。

### (3) either...not相当于neither

#### 例句

a. Either of the answers is not correct.

两个答案都不对。

b. Neither of the answers is correct.

两个答案都不对。

至于其他的限定词，如基数词和序数词 (one/first, two/second, three/third)、指示形容词 (this, that, these, those)、物主形容词 (my, your, his, her, our, their)及名词属格 (Mary' s, John' s, his father' s)，其用法较为简单，不再赘述。

## 第二节 限定词的搭配

### 100 限定词与名词的搭配

各种限定词与不同“数”的名词搭配，一般应遵循以下规则：

- 1) 只与单数可数名词搭配的限定词有a, an, each, either, neither, another, every, one等。
- 2) 只与复数可数名词搭配的限定词有both, few, a few, fewer, a number of, many, several, these, those, two/three/four等。
- 3) 只与不可数名词搭配的限定词有little, a little, much, a bit of, a great amount/deal of等。
- 4) 与不可数名词或复数可数名词均可搭配的限定词有a lot of, lots of, plenty of, more, most。
- 5) 与单数可数名词、复数可数名词和不可数名词均可搭配的限定词有any, some, no, the, my/your/his..., Tom's / my mother's等。

## 101 限定词之间的位置搭配

根据限定词在名词前的位置关系，我们把限定词区分为三类：前位限定词 (pre-determiner)、中位限定词 (central determiner) 和后位限定词 (post-determiner)。

	前位限定词	中位限定词	后位限定词	名词
I met	all	my	many	friends.
They questioned	both	the	last two	boys.

注意：以上句子看起来并不通顺，是因为三种限定词很少会同时出现，通常情况下只用一种或两种。

### (1) 前位限定词

#### 1) 种类

前位限定词主要是用来说明名词的数量，主要有三种。

①表示倍数关系的数量形容词：

half my salary

twice my salary

double my salary

three times my salary

②表示几分之几的数词：

one third my salary

two-thirds my salary



③个体形容词:

all my salary

both my salaries

2) 共存性

前位限定词一般互相排斥, 不能共存。例如我们不能说:

all half my salary \*

half double her income \*

## (2) 中位限定词

1) 种类

①冠词: the, a, an

all the book

half an hour

twice the size

②物主形容词: my, your, his, her, our, their

all my money

all his friends

③指示形容词: this, that, these, those

all these problems

twice that size

four times this amount

④名词属格:

all John' s friends

## 2) 共存性

中位限定词亦彼此排斥，不能同时出现。例如我们不能说：

my the money \*

our these problems \*

## (3) 后位限定词

### 1) 种类

①基数词或序数词：one/first, two/second, three/third等。

the two children

his fourth birthday

②一般序数词：next, last, past, previous, subsequent, other, another等。

my next plan

our last meeting

your previous mistake

her subsequent response

③数量形容词：few, many, several, little, less, more等。

my many friends

our several achievements

the few friends that I have

## 2) 共存性

不同于相互排斥的前位和中位限定词，后位限定词可以同时出现在名词前。

my next two plans

several other people

但也有先后顺序问题：

①序数词/一般序数词+基数词：

the first two weeks

during the next 50 years

②序数词/一般序数词+数量形容词：

during the past few years

## 102 限定词与形容词的区别

尽管限定词和形容词都可以用在名词前面来修饰名词，但二者在性质和用法上都存在着很大的区别。

(1) 限定词用以限定名词所指的范围，对名词起泛指或特指、定量或不定量等限定修饰作用；而形容词则是用来表示名词的性质和特征。

many / a few / his children

(起限定作用，很多/几个/他的孩子)

naughty / lovely / clever children

(起修饰作用，顽皮的/可爱的/聪明的孩子)

(2) 限定词一般不用作表语 (少数表示数量的限定词few, many, much除外)；而绝大多数形容词都可用作表语。

(3) 除了few, little, many, much外，限定词没有比较级和最高级形式；大多数形容词有比较级和最高级形式。

(4) 限定词总是位于名词之前；而形容词作定语时，有的可置于被修饰词之后。

a kind woman

the attorney general

a handsome guy

something interesting

a clever boy

the notary public

the secretary general

the president elect

### 温故知新

本章主要讨论了数量形容词和个体形容词这两种限定词的用法。读者要重点掌握它们在接名词时的区别，比如：other可接任何名词，而another却只能接单数可数名词。

另外还要了解不同限定词之间的位置关系。

### 限定词练习

#### 一、单项选择题。

1. I broke my vase, so I have to buy\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the other one  
B. another one  
C. the other  
D. other
2. I have to get\_\_\_\_\_about the subject before I write the paper.  
A. a few more information  
B. more a little information  
C. a little more information  
D. little more information

3. He works harder than\_\_\_\_\_in his class.

A. anyone

B. any one else

C. any other student

D. any another student

4. When the children entered, \_\_\_\_\_was given a present.

A. each

B. every

C. all

D. both

5. Sleep is divided into periods of so-called REM sleep, characterized by rapid eye movements and dreaming, and longer periods of so-called non-REM. \_\_\_\_\_kind of sleep is at all well-understood.

A. Either

B. Neither

C. Each

D. Any

6. \_\_\_\_\_ballet dancers learn five basic positions for the arms and feet.

A. All of

B. Of every

C. All

D. Every

7. She spent\_\_\_\_\_on clothes.

A. her all earnings

B. her all earning

C. all her earnings

D. all her earning

8. \_\_\_\_\_all rainwater falling from a cloud reaches the ground; some of it is lost through evaporation.

A. Nowhere

B. Not

C. No

D. None

9. \_\_\_\_\_mechanical device has ever been invented that can satisfactorily replace teasel flower heads for raising the nap on cloth.

A. No

B. Not the

C. Never has a

D. There is no

10. Jupiter, the closest of the giant planets to Earth, has\_\_\_\_\_solid surface and is surrounded by zones of intense

radiation.

- A. not
- B. no
- C. nor
- D. neither

11. \_\_\_\_\_social crusade aroused Elizabeth Williams' enthusiasm more than the expansion of educational facilities for immigrants to the United States.

- A. No
- B. Nothing
- C. Not
- D. None

12. Nebraska has floods in some years, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. in others drought
- B. droughts are others
- C. while other droughts
- D. others in drought

13. I have two sons but \_\_\_\_\_of them likes English.

- A. both
- B. neither
- C. none



D. either

14. No agreement was reached in the discussion, as neither side would give way to\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the other

B. any other

C. another

D. other

15. \_\_\_\_\_the teachers came on the trip.

A. Neither of

B. Nobody of

C. None

D. No one of

16. I have classes\_\_\_\_\_day, Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays.

A. each other

B. every other

C. one another

D. all other

17. Ed and Jim have arrived, but\_\_\_\_\_in the class aren' t here yet.

A. other

B. others

C. the others

D. the other

18. John, Peter and Bill\_\_\_\_\_have obtained a reward.

A. each

B. every

C. every one

D. both

19. These books, which you can get at any bookshop, will give you\_\_\_\_\_you need.

A. all the information

B. all the informations

C. all of information

D. all of the informations

20. It is reported that\_\_\_\_\_adopted children want to know who their natural parents are.

A. the most

B. most of

C. most

D. the most of

21. Radio, televisions and press\_\_\_\_\_of conveying news and information.

- A. are the most three common means
- B. are the most common three means
- C. are the three most common means
- D. are three the most common means

22. The Grapes of Wrath, a novel about the Depression years of the 1930' s, is one of John Steinbeck' s\_\_\_\_\_books.

- A. most famous
- B. the most famous
- C. are most famous
- D. and most famous

23. The letter was short because there wasn' t\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. many news
- B. much news
- C. a lot news
- D. a lot of news

24. \_\_\_\_\_people left early.

- A. A lot
- B. A few
- C. A little

D. Less

25. He doesn' t have\_\_\_\_\_money.

A. much

B. many

C. a few

D. little

26. There\_\_\_\_\_bad news on television tonight.

A. is too much

B. are too much

C. is too many

D. are too many

## 二、改错。

27. Since the (A) 1950' s, folk music (B) has had a significant influence (C) on many (D) popular vocal and instrumental music.

28. For hundreds (A) of years, sailors relied on echoes to warn them of (B) another (C) ships, icebergs, or cliffs in foggy weather (D) .

29. Polar bears (A) are bowlegged and pigeon toed, adaptations that enable this (B) massive animals to maintain (C) their balance as they walk (D) .

30. Rarely has (A) a technological development had as great an impact on much (B) aspects of social, economic, and cultural development (C) as the growth (D) of electronics.

31. Cloud droplets and ice crystals first (A) form on certain types of (B) small particles of dust (C) or another (D) airborne materials.

32. Yogurt contains a higher (A) percentage (B) of lactic acid than another (C) fermented milks (D) .

33. Almost every (A) fruits and vegetables contain riboflavin; the richest (B) sources are leafy (C) green vegetables such as (D) spinach, kale, or turnip greens.

34. Before (A) the formation of labor unions (B) , individual workers had almost not (C) voice in determining their wages, hours, or working conditions (D) .

35. The factory is experimenting with (A) a new kind of drug (B) that will have less (C) side effects (D) .

36. Fewer (A) people reside in (B) Newfoundland than in other any (C) Canadian province except (D) Prince Edward Island.

37. The Texas Panhandle region in the (A) northwestern part (B) of the state produces more wheat, cotton (C) , and grain sorghum than any of (D) other area of Texas.

38. Seven of planets (A) rotate in the same direction as (B) their orbital motions, while (C) Venus and Uranus rotate in the opposite direction (D) .

39. Because the tachinid fly (寄生蝇) is a parasite of harmful (A) insects, much (B) species have been (C) imported into the United States to combat (D) insect pests.

40. Migration of animals (A) may be initiated by physiological stimuli (B) such as reproductive changes, external pressures such as weather changes, or a combination (C) of either (D) types of changes.

41. Bacteria are either (A) plants nor animals, but are single-celled (B) organisms that reproduce most (C) commonly through (D) binary fission.

42. Sagebrush (A) flourishes in the dry (B) soil of the western plains (C) , where other many (D) plants cannot grow.

43. None (A) two butterflies have exactly (B) the same design (C) on (D) their wings.

44. The evolutionary adaptation of a particular species (A) of animal (B) over time occurs in response to environmental (C) conditions, including others (D) animals.

45. Proteins (A) form the most (B) of the structure (C) of the body and also act as enzymes (D) .

### 限定词练习答案

#### 一、单项选择。

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. A

10. B 11. A 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. A 16. B 17. C 18. A

19. A 20. C 21. C 22. A 23. B 24. B 25. A 26. A

#### 二、改错。

27. D much

28. C other

29. B these

30. B many

31. D other

- 32. C other
- 33. A all
- 34. C no
- 35. C fewer
- 36. C any other
- 37. D any
- 38. A of the planets
- 39. B many
- 40. D both
- 41. A neither
- 42. D many other
- 43. A No
- 44. D other
- 45. B most

## Chapter 12 主谓一致



音频

- 103 单数形式的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式
- 104 复数形式的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式
- 105 当两个名词性结构作并列主语时，谓语动词的形式
- 106 of结构作主语时谓语动词的单复数形式
- 107 特殊句式中的主谓一致问题

主谓一致是指主语和谓语在**人称和数上需保持一致**，即主语是单数，谓语动词用单数形式；主语是复数，谓语动词用复数形式。说起来非常简单，但在实际应用当中却相当复杂。本章就试图对这一问题做一总结，以便大家能准确地把握主谓一致问题。



## 103 单数形式的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式

### Track 100

一般来说，单数名词作主语，谓语动词用单数形式，这符合英语中的**语法一致原则**。但此种情况也有例外，现详细归纳如下：

(1) **Many a + 可数名词单数**，虽为复数概念，但作主语时谓语用单数形式

#### 例句

a. Many a boy and girl **has** made such a funny experiment.

b. There **is** many an error that he has neglected.

c. Many a man and (many a) woman **has** wished that they had a better education. (Many men and women **have**...) )

(2) **More than one + 可数名词单数**，是复数概念，但作主语时谓语用单数形式

a. There **is** more than one answer to this question.

b. More than one topic **has** been discussed at the meeting.

与此类似的另外一个结构：**more + 复数名词 + than one**，作主语时谓语用复数形式。例如：

c. More topics than one **have** been discussed at the meeting.

d. More persons than one **were** killed.

(3) **One/A + 单数名词 + or two**作主语时，谓语用单数形式

但注意：“One or two + 复数名词”作主语时，谓语用复数形式。

- a. A word or two **is** misused in the sentence.
- b. One or two words **are** misused in the sentence.

(4) 对于集体名词，如party, crowd, class, team, family, crew, government, committee, audience, public等，在作主语时，谓语的数要视情况而定

若集体名词被看成一个整体，则谓语用单数形式；若集体名词被看成是由具体若干成员组成的，则谓语用复数形式。

试比较：

- { The public **is** the best judge.
- { The public **are** requested to write down their names in this book.
- { He has joined the football team who **are** all famous footballers.
- { A football team which **keeps** training hard is more likely to win.
- { The committee **was** made up of ten members.
- { The committee **were** unanimous in their opinion.
- { The committee **are** not of one opinion.
- { The committee who **were** responsible for it **were** all punished.
- { The committee which **was** responsible for it **was** dissolved.
- { There **was** a large audience in the great hall.
- { The audience **were** excited.

集体名词police, militia (民兵), cattle, people等作主语时，谓语常用复数形式；集体名词mankind, humanity作主语时，谓语常用单数形式。

Police in Guangdong Province **are** investigating an organized cheating operation in Dianbai County of the province during national college entrance exams.

(5) “the + 形容词或过去分词”作主语时，谓语动词的形式

1) 若表示抽象概念，谓语用单数形式。

a. The good in him **overweighs** the bad.

他身上的优点比缺点多。（抽象概念）

b. The best **is** yet to come.

好戏还在后头。

c. The beautiful **is** not always the same as the good.

2) 若表示一类人，则为复数概念，作主语时谓语用复数形式。

a. The blind **are** unfortunate.

b. The oppressed **are** to rise one day.

3) 有时需根据上下文来判断。

a. The deceased was his mother. （表示单个人）

b. The deceased were ten farmers.

## 104 复数形式的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式

### Track 101

这种情况下，谓语动词的形式不能一概而论。基本原则是：

1) 若复数形式的名词表示的是复数概念，则显然要接复数形式的谓语；

2) 若复数形式的名词表示的是单数概念，或将其看成一个整体，则用单数形式的谓语。

这样说来，在这种情况下，我们主要采用**意义一致**的原则来判断主谓一致。

#### (1) 常见的表示成对概念的复数名词作主语时，谓语用复数形式

此类常见的复数名词有：

pants trousers scissors scales (天平)

glasses binoculars (双筒望远镜) spectacles (护目镜)

但这类名词前若有A pair of修饰时，谓语用单数形式（详见第106小节）。

#### (2) 形式上是复数（词尾有s）但表示单数概念的词，作主语时谓语用单数形式

works (工厂) gallows (绞刑架) politics

statistics measles diabetes

例句

a. Politics **is** often a popular topic among people.

b. Statistics **is** a science.

但若politics, statistics不表示学科，而分别表示“政治观点”和“统计数据”，则作主语时，谓语需用复数形式。

### 例句

a. Statistics prove that...

b. What are your politics?

c. As far as I am concerned, his politics are rather conservative compared with other politicians'.

(3) 表示时间、重量、数额的复数名词作主语时，我们通常将它们看成一个整体，谓语用单数形式

a. Ten years **is** a moment in history.

b. One hundred dollars **is** a large sum for the poor.

c. Two tons **is** enough.

d. The difference between America and England is: the English think 100 miles **is** a long distance and Americans think 100 years **is** a long time.

值得注意的是，大于“1”的“数词”单独作主语，表示人或物时，谓语动词一般用复数形式。

e. Ten **were** killed, five **were** missing and several **were** severely wounded in that accident.

f. Few **know** the fact

(4) 复数的专有名词作主语时，谓语均用复数形式

- a. The Himalayas are the roof of the world.
- b. The Great Lakes are a series of five lakes between the USA and Canada.
- c. The Niagara Falls are the falls on the Niagara River.

不过，较特殊的比如the United Nations, the United States均看作一个整体，故作主语时，谓语用单数形式。

## 105 当两个名词性结构作并列主语时，谓语动词的形式 Track 102

(1) 由and连接的多个并列结构作主语时，若表示一种事物或一种概念，谓语用单数形式；若表示的是多个不同的概念，则谓语用复数形式

### 例句

a. The writer and translator **is** delivering a speech in our college tonight.

(此处writer和translator是指同一个人)

b. The writer and the translator **are** delivering a speech in our college tonight. (此处writer和translator指两个人)

c. The tenth and last lesson **is** translated by him. (同一课)

d. The tenth and the last lesson **are** translated by him. (不同的两课)

e. A black and a white dog **are** playing in the yard. (两只狗)

f. A black and white dog **is** playing in the yard. (一只狗)

g. The assistant and graduate student\_\_\_\_\_check the exercise books.

A. help

B. helping

C. helps

D. to help

正确答案：C。

h. Sound, heat and light **are** different forms of energy.

(2) 若and连接两个并列主语，且and后的名词有相关的副词(not, perhaps, particularly, even, too, likewise, as well等)修饰，则谓语动词形式与and前面的名词保持一致。因为此时句子真正的主语是and前面的名词，and与前面的名词之间常有逗号隔开

#### 例句

a. The horse, **not** the donkey, **is** used in games of racing.

b. Tom, and **not** Jim, **has** gone there.

c. That the sun and **not** the Earth **is** the center of our planetary system was a difficult concept to grasp in the Middle Ages.

d. Jack, and **perhaps** Williams, **has** been there.

e. The film, and **particularly** the special effects, **is** liked by many people.

f. His parents, and **particularly** Jack, **are** fond of this music.

(3) 两个表示不同物质的名词，虽由and连接，但习惯上此两样东西常常被同时使用，这时我们将二者看作是一个整体，谓语仍用单数形式



### 例句

- a. Bread and butter **is** my favorite breakfast.
- b. Apple pie and ice cream **is** the favorite dessert of many people.
- c. The fork and knife **is** hard for me to use.
- d. That cup and saucer **is** made from a kind of rare porcelain.
- e. A needle and thread **is** what he needs now.

(4) or连接的并列主语，谓语形式与和or邻近的主语保持一致

### 例句

- a. He or I **am** to go.
- b. Her sisters or his brother **has** a hobby of collecting stamps.
- c. John, Mike, or Noriko **drives** Paula to work each morning.
- d. An erupting volcano or an earthquake sometimes **affects** the feature of the surrounding region and can even cause lakes to disappear.

(5) every...and (every)... / each...and (each)... / any...and (any)... / no...and (no) ... / many a...and (many a) ...连接的并列主语，谓语用单数形式

### 例句

- a. Every hour and every minute **is** important.
- b. Every man, woman and child **is** an important being.
- c. Every boy and girl **has** to have **his** hair neatly combed.  
(用his作物主代词)
- d. Many a man and (many a) woman **has** wished he or she had had a better education.
- e. Here is a message of importance to every man and woman who\_\_\_\_\_.

A. votes

B. vote

C. voting

D. are voting

正确答案：A。

(6) 在**either...or... / not only...but also... / neither...nor...**句型中，谓语的单复数与**or / but (also) / nor**后面的名词一致

### 例句

- a. Not only the students but also **their teacher is** required to attend the meeting.
- b. Not only their teacher but also **the students are** required to attend the meeting.

(7) 在“**主语+ with / together with / along with / as well as / as much as / including / in addition to / added to / except / besides / rather than / accompanied by + 另一主语**”的结构中，谓语形式与第一个主语保持人称和数的一致

### 例句

- a. Mary, along with her sisters, attends the sessions regularly.
- b. The students as well as the teacher are required to attend the meeting.
- c. I, as well as they, am ready to help you.

## 106 of结构作主语时谓语动词的单复数形式

### Track 103

这类情况较为复杂，且不总是那么具有规律性，基本可归纳如下：

(1) 像kind, type, sort, class, species, breed, variety, form, brand等表示类别的名词，总的规律是：句子谓语的单复数与of前面的名词形式保持一致

#### 例句

- a. What kind of rice is served in that restaurant?
- b. This kind of apple is sour.
- c. The kind of apples is sour.
- d. Apples of this kind are sour.
- e. What kinds of rice are served in that restaurant?

(2) “a pair of + 复数名词”看作整体，作主语时谓语用单数形式

#### 例句

- a. A pair of gloves/glasses is on the table.

但是：

- b. Five pairs of gloves are on sale.

(3) “the + 最高级 + of +名词复数”作主语时，谓语用单数形式

例句

The most elaborate of all bird nests is the large, doomed communal structure built by social weaverbirds.

(4) “a number of / an average of / a total of +名词复数”作主语时，谓语用复数形式，强调数量

但 “the number/average/total of +名词复数” 强调整体，作主语时，谓语用单数形式。

例句

a. A total of ten thousand dollars **were** donated last month.

b. An average of ten thousand letters a day **are** sent by this post office.

c. The total of dollars donated last month **was** 100,000 dollars.

d. The total of 10 thousand dollars donated last month **was** sent to the flood-stricken areas.

e. It is said that the average number of moles a person has **is** fourteen. Moles can appear on almost any part of the body, including the scalp.

据说，人体黑痣的平均数目 在14颗左右，而且人体的任何部位都可能长痣，甚至是头皮里。

(5) “A part of +单数名词”作主语时，谓语使用单数形式；“A part of +复数名词”作主语时，谓语用复数形式

类似的词组还有：the rest/remainder of, most of, plenty of, 分数+of, 百分数+ of等等。它们作主语时，谓语的数依of后的名词形式而定，名词是单数形式，则谓语也为单数形式；名词若是复数形式，谓语亦为复数形式。

### 例句

- a. A part of the apple is bad.
- b. A part of the apples are bad.
- c. Three-fourths of the surface of the earth is covered with water.
- d. A third of his composition has been corrected.
- e. A third of their compositions have been corrected.
- f. Three-fourths of the people are illiterate.

## 107 特殊句式中的主谓一致问题 Track 104

名词性从句、动名词短语或动词不定式短语作主语时，谓语用单数形式。

### (1) 名词性从句或名词性的短语作主语时，谓语用单数形式

a. Children's interfering in their parents' right to remarry **has** become a social problem. (主语是动名词复合结构)

b. When I can complete the work **is** still unclear.

c. What I said and did **is** of no concern to you.

d. How close parents are to their children\_\_\_\_\_a strong influence on the character of the children.

A. have

B. has

C. having

D. to have

正确答案：B。

### (2) 定语从句中的主谓一致

请认真比较下列例句：

a. One of those men **likes** to drive fast.

b. He is **the only one of** those men who **likes** to drive fast.

c. He is one of **those men** who **like** to drive fast.

d One of those men **who like** to drive fast is her. son.

可见，定语从句中的谓语形式应与先行词的单复数形式保持一致。若先行词为单数形式，那么从句谓语也用单数形式，如b句；若先行词为复数形式，那么从句谓语也用复数形式，如c，d句。

### 温故知新

关于主谓一致问题，关键是要区分不同形式的主语，这也是本章的写作思路，比如短语作主语，并列主语，复数形式的名词作主语等等。认清了主语的形式，然后依照各自规则来判断谓语的单复数形式，问题就迎刃而解了。

### 主谓一致练习

#### 一、单项选择。

1. The police\_\_\_\_\_making inquiries about the accident.

A. is

B. are

2. The cattle\_\_\_\_\_grazing in the meadows.

A. is

B. are

3. One thousand pounds\_\_\_\_\_a small sum to run a factory.

A. is

B. are

4. The singer and dancer\_\_\_\_\_attend our evening party.



A. is to

B. are to

5. The public\_\_\_\_\_requested not to leave cigarette ends in the woods.

A. is

B. are

6. The police\_\_\_\_\_the prisoner' s statements by questioning several witnesses.

A. are verifying

B. is verifying

C. are verified

D. is verified

7. She says more than one\_\_\_\_\_dismissed from this company.

A. have been

B. are

C. has been

D. had been

8. More than half of those committing murder and violent assaults\_\_\_\_\_alcohol immediately before the crime.

A. have been consumed

B. have consumed

C. has been consumed

D. has consumed

9. In the last few years, intensive design and development effort\_\_\_\_\_to the introduction of electronic exchanges.

A. have been applied

B. has been applied

C. is being applied

D. would be applied

10. The greater part of the lower grade students in our university\_\_\_\_\_to achieve the norm on the reading tests.

A. was unable

B. was to be unable

C. were unable

D. being unable

11. She as well as the other students\_\_\_\_\_how to install this electric equipment.

A. has learned

B. are learning

C. have learned

D. are to learn

12. Beef cattle\_\_\_\_\_of all livestock for economic growth in certain geographic regions.

- A. the most are important
- B. are the most important
- C. is the most important
- D. that are most important

13. \_\_\_\_\_in the desert is mainly due to the limited supply of water.

- A. Plants are widely spaced
- B. The spacing of plants is wide
- C. Plants to be spaced widely
- D. The wide spacing of plants

14. Most electronic devices of this kind,  
\_\_\_\_\_manufactured for such purposes, are tightly packed.

- A. that are
- B. as are
- C. which is
- D. what are

15. Neither of the young men who had applied for a position in the university\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. has been accepted
- B. have been accepted

C. was accepted

D. were accepted

16. The growth of part-time and flexible working patterns, and of training and retraining schemes, \_\_\_\_\_ more women to take advantage of employment opportunities.

A. have allowed

B. allow

C. allowing

D. allows

17. How close parents are to their children \_\_\_\_\_ a strong influence on the character of the children.

A. have

B. has

C. having

D. to have

18. Here is a message of importance to every man and woman who \_\_\_\_\_.

A. votes

B. vote

C. voting

D. are voting

19. The basketball team \_\_\_\_\_ baths now.

A. has

B. have

C. is having

D. are having

20. Statistics\_\_\_\_\_one of the subjects that I study.

A. are

B. is

C. were

D. was

21. \_\_\_\_\_already been interviewed.

A. A number of applicants have

B. A number of applicants has

C. The number of applicants have

D. The number of applicants has

22. There\_\_\_\_\_telephone calls today.

A. has been a number of

B. have been a number of

C. has been the number of

D. have been the number of

23. The number of doctors in our country\_\_\_\_\_greatly increased since liberation.

- A. has
- B. have
- C. are
- D. is

## 二、改错。

24. One of the most difficult questions (A) in defining (B) sleep is (C) “what is (D) the functions of sleep?”

25. It is (A) the interaction (B) between people, rather than the events that occur in their lives, that are (C) the main focus of social (D) psychology.

26. One of the wildest (A) and most inaccessible (B) parts of the United States are (C) the Everglades where wildlife is abundant and largely (D) protected.

27. Despite (A) much research, there are still certain elements in (B) the life cycle of the insect that is (C) not fully understood (D) .

28. The tapir (貘) , an odd-toed, hoofed mammal, feed (A) on plants, eating (B) such things as grass, leaves, fallen (C) fruit, and moss in large (D) quantities.

29. The weeds (A) and tall grass in that yard makes (B) the house look (C) as if it had been (D) vacant for quite some time.

30. Just outside (A) the ruins are (B) a magnificent (C) building surrounded (D) by tall trees.

31. The amount of pressure (A) which (B) the materials are subject (C) to affect (D) the quality of the products.

32. Nearly (A) 75 percent of (B) the land of the (C) Canadian province of British Columbia are (D) covered by forests.

33. Australian koalas are furry, gray animal (A) that live (B) in trees (C) and feed on (D) leaves.

34. Pollen can be (A) transferred by the wind or by birds that comes (B) into contact (C) with (D) flowers.

35. Usually an atom having (A) one, two, or three electrons in its (B) valence band readily contributes electrons to and receive (C) electrons from neighboring (D) atoms.

36. The wingspread of various (A) species of bats range (B) from over (C) five feet to (D) less than two inches.

37. The hind leg (A) of the gerbil are particularly (B) well adapted to leaping (C) across (D) its desert habitat.

38. A change in direction of the monsoon winds result (A) from the differences (B) between the heating or cooling (C) of landmasses and that of oceans (D) .

39. In some areas (A) of the United States, unfavorable climate or (B) soil make farming (C) an impossible (D) task.

40. The structure or (A) behavior of many (B) protozoans are amazingly (C) complex for single-celled animals (D) .

41. Intelligence (A) , education, and (B) experience all helps (C) shape management (D) style.

42. There are many valuable services ( ) which the public are willing to pay for ( ) , but which does not bring ( ) a return in money ( ) to the community.

43. Beneath (A) the deep oceans that cover (B) two-thirds of the Earth, intriguing secret (C) of the planet are concealed (D) .

44. The early periods of aviation (A) in the United States was marked by exhibition (B) flights made by individual fliers (C) or by teams of performers (D) at country fairs.

45. Alaska's vast areas of untamed (A) wilderness (B) attracts (C) many people who enjoy (D) the outdoors.

### 主谓一致练习答案

#### 一、单项选择。

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. B

10. C 11. A 12. B 13. D 14. C 15. C 16. D 17. B 18. A

19. D 20. B 21. A 22. B 23. A

#### 二、改错。

24. D are

25. C that is

26. C is

27. C that are

28. A feeds

29. B make



- 30. B is
- 31. D affects
- 32. D is
- 33. A animals
- 34. B that come
- 35. C receives
- 36. B ranges
- 37. A legs
- 38. A results
- 39. B and
- 40. A and
- 41. C help
- 42. C do not bring
- 43. C secrets
- 44. A period of aviation
- 45. C attract

新东方  
XDF.CN

New Perspective Grammar  
英语语法新思维

基础版3

Basic

张满胜 / 著

连续热卖10余年的语法系列重装上市  
百万读者推崇的经典之作不容错过

英语语法新思维，改变你的“英语世界观”

浙江教育出版社  
ZHEJIANG EDUCATION PUBLISHING HOUSE

# 版权信息

---

书名：英语语法新思维 基础版3

作者：张满胜

出版社：浙江教育出版社

出版日期：2018-08-01

ISBN：978-7-5536-7368-4

## 前言 | Preface

---

★语法即是造句规则。学习语法有两个目的：首先，便于我们读懂句子；其次，教会我们造句。

★语法不是“死”的造句规则，而是“活”的语言思维。

一般语法书都是只讲“死”的规则，而不去追究规则背后合乎逻辑的语法思维，致使很多英语学习者花费大量时间学英语，学语法，记死规则，最后又很快遗忘，终难修成英语学习的正果。本套书力求不仅告诉你规则“是什么”，而且还要告诉你规则背后的“为什么”。从而达到既掌握规则又培养英文思维的目的。

★《英语语法新思维》“新”在何处？

### 新理念

笔者提出语法即思维的全新理念，并将这一理念贯穿于整个语法书创作的始终。语言是人们进行思维的载体；语法——作为语言遣词造句的规则，体现了用语者的思维。

### 新体系

本套书不再像传统语法书那样，以词法和句法两条主线对英语语法进行“大而全”、包罗万象的规则罗列，而是注重实用，循序渐进，科学地分为三册。具体思路体系安排如下：

《英语语法新思维基础版1》：以动词和名词作为两大主线，介绍英文主要词类的正确使用，让读者能够熟练构造简单句，并且能够对各种主要词类运用自如。

《英语语法新思维基础版2》：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者能够熟练地构造复合句，分析和读懂复杂的句子，进而使读者在下笔时不再是通篇简单句，而开始能够较灵活地把握句子的构造。

《英语语法新思维基础版3》：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者更深入地比较各种复合句的特点，并掌握复合句与简单句之间的转化。教会读者征服复杂难句，简化复杂从句，做到使句子返璞归真。

### 新角度

笔者一直力图从全新的角度对传统的语法规则进行阐述，目的是使复杂的规则易学易用。比如，对于“名词性从句”，笔者的表述思路是：名词性从句的本质是把句子当作名词来用。名词在句中可充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语。因此，我们同样可用一个完整的句子来充当另一个句子的这四种成分，于是便有了主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句这四种名词性从句。问题的关键是：我们可以用三种句子（陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句）来分别充当这四种成分。于是，就把传统的介绍繁杂的连词用法的方式转化成了三种句子充当四种成分构成名词性从句的讲法。

### 新例句

规则毕竟是为语言服务的，精炼、明晰的规则披上美丽的语言外衣，使语法学习不再是枯燥乏味的死记规则，而是妙趣横生、驾轻就熟的语言实践。因此，笔者在例句的选择上真可谓煞费苦心，注重幽默性、知识性和思想性，使读者在欣赏语言之美的同时掌握语言表达规则。

另外，本系列图书还为读者配备了例句音频，可以扫描封底二维码或登录封底网址获取。所有例句均由发音纯正的美籍外教精心录制。希望能够帮助读者在学习语法的同时提高英语发音与听力水平。

本书是笔者在语法领域内的研究成果，水平有限，疏漏、错误在所难免。我真诚地希望，读者朋友们在阅读过程中如有疑问，或者对此书有任何建议，能够及时与我联系，我的微博地址是：

[www.weibo.com/zhangmansheng](http://www.weibo.com/zhangmansheng)

感谢您选读此书！

张满胜

## Chapter 01 名词从句



音频

- 1 名词从句的本质：三种句子充当四种成分
- 2 主语从句
- 3 宾语从句
- 4 表语从句
- 5 同位语从句

## 1 名词从句的本质：三种句子充当四种成分 Track01

各位读者以前均学习过名词从句，但在这里笔者要从一种全新的思维角度去研究名词从句。所谓名词从句，就是把完整的句子当作名词来使用，在另一个句子中充当某种成分。一般来讲，名词在句中主要充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语。同样，我们可以把一个完整的句子当作一个名词来使用，也在另一个句子中充当这四种成分，于是便有了我们常说的四种名词从句：主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

现在问题关键是：我们可以把何种句子当作名词来用呢？

经研究发现，具有名词作用的句子有三类：陈述句、一般疑问句以及特殊疑问句。

因此，名词从句可简单概括为这样一句话：名词从句就是用三种句子（陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句）来分别充当另外一个句子的四种句子成分（主语、宾语、表语和同位语）。这即构成了名词从句的本质特征。

但是，值得注意的是，这三种句子不是直接放在另一个句子中作成分，而是要做以下调整：

（1）用陈述句作成分时，需要在陈述句句首加that来引导。



陈述句	名词从句	解释
English is difficult.	<u>That</u> <b>English is difficult</b> is not my idea. 有人认为英语很难，我可不这么认为。	陈述句作主语，构成主语从句。
Love, not time heals all wounds.	I've learned <u>that</u> <b>love, not time heals all wounds</b> . 我明白了，是爱而不是时间能够治愈一切创伤。	陈述句作宾语，构成宾语从句。
The child should be sent to school.	My idea is <u>that</u> <b>the child should be sent to school</b> . 我认为应该把这个孩子送去学校。	陈述句作表语，构成表语从句。

(续表)

陈述句	名词从句	解释
He succeeded in the experiment.	The fact <u>that</u> <b>he succeeded in the experiment</b> pleased everybody. 他的实验取得成功，这让大家很高兴。	陈述句用作同位语，补充说明 the fact，构成同位语从句。

(2) 用一般疑问句作成分时，需要先将疑问句的倒装语序换成正常的陈述语序，然后在句首加上whether或if（if只用在宾语从句中）来引导，以保留原句的疑问意义。

一般疑问句	名词从句	解释
Will he come to my party?	<u>Whether</u> <b>he will come to my party</b> makes no difference to me. 他来不来参加我的聚会对我来说无所谓。	一般疑问句作主语，构成主语从句。
Does he need my help?	I don't know <u>if/whether</u> <b>he needs my help</b> . 我不知道他是否需要我的帮助。	一般疑问句作宾语，构成宾语从句。
Will people live on the moon someday?	My question is <u>whether</u> <b>people will live on the moon someday</b> . 我的问题是，人类在未来某一天是否真的能生活在月球上。	一般疑问句作表语，构成表语从句。
Is there life on other planets?	Scientists have argued over the question <u>whether</u> <b>there is life on other planets</b> . 科学家们就其他行星上是否有生命这个问题一直争论不休。	一般疑问句作同位语，补充说明 the question，构成同位语从句。

（3）用特殊疑问句作成分时，只需要将疑问句的倒装语序换成正常的陈述语序。

特殊疑问句	名词从句	解释
Why did dinosaurs become extinct? 恐龙为什么会灭绝？	<b>Why dinosaurs became extinct</b> is still a mystery. 恐龙为什么会灭绝目前还是个未解之谜。	特殊疑问句作主语，构成主语从句。

(续表)

特殊疑问句	名词从句	解释
How many letters are there in the English alphabet? 英文字母表中有多少个字母?	I don't know <b>how many letters there are in the English alphabet.</b> 我不知道英文字母表中有多少个字母。	特殊疑问句作宾语, 构成宾语从句。
What are we badly in need of? 我们目前最需要什么?	Money is <b>what we are badly in need of.</b> 我们急需的是钱。	特殊疑问句作表语, 构成表语从句。
Where could we get the loan? 我们去哪里能弄到这笔贷款?	There arose the question <b>where we could get the loan.</b> 现在的问题是我们去哪里能弄到这笔贷款。	特殊疑问句作同位语, 补充说明 the question, 构成同位语从句。

请大家重点理解下列语法知识点!

1) 引导名词从句的常用连词:

名词从句的引导词	对应的句子类型	是否作成分
连词: that	对应于陈述句	that 在从句中不作成分
连词: whether, if	对应于一般疑问句	whether, if 在从句中不作成分
连接副词: when, where, why, how 连接代词: who, whom, what, which, whose	对应于特殊疑问句	when, where, why, how 在从句中作状语; who, whom, what 在从句中作主语、宾语或表语; which, whose 在从句中作定语, 后面接名词连用。

我们要特别关注这些连词是否在句中充当句子成分。比如, that 不能作任何成分, 只起连接作用, 后边要接陈述句; what 一定充当从句的主

语、宾语或表语；which和whose后边都要接名词，等等。这些都是考试重点。

2) 同位语从句通常由that引导，而很少用whether，if以及连接代词或连接副词引导。这是因为我们多是用陈述句来补充名词的内容，而很少用一般疑问句或特殊疑问句来补充名词的内容。

3) 在一个句子中，可能会含有多个名词从句，这样会使句子变得更复杂，遇到时要仔细分析句子结构。例如：

a. I realized that what I said was not exactly what I meant to say . 我后来意识到，当时所说的话并非是我真正想要说的。（在that引导的宾语从句中同时含有what引导的主语从句和what引导的表语从句。）

b. The question is how what you have learned can be put into practice. 问题是，你所学到的知识如何才能应用于实践。（在how引导的表语从句中含有what引导的主语从句。）

## 2 主语从句 Track02

### (1) that引导的主语从句句型

that引导的主语从句直接放在句首的情况较少，例如：

a. That he doesn't understand English is obvious.

b. That the world is round is a fact.

c. That the Moon itself does not give off light is common knowledge. 月球本身不发光，这是一个常识。

更常见的是用it作形式主语置于句首，而将that引导的主语从句放在句末， 例如：

d. It is obvious that he doesn't understand English.

e. It is a fact that the world is round.

f. It is common knowledge that the Moon itself does not give off light.

g. It is common knowledge that the whale is not a fish.

h. It is common knowledge that a flash of lightning is seen before a clap of thunder is heard.

i. It is a shame that you did not pass the test.

你没通过这次考试真遗憾。

因此，下列都是常见的主语从句句型：（重点内容！）

1) It is +过去分词+ that从句：过去分词可以是reported, noted, found, pointed等。

It's reported that... 据报道……

It's believed that... 人们相信……

It is generally thought that... 人们普遍认为……

It should be noted that... 应当注意……

It has been found that... 现已发现……

It must be pointed out that... 必须指出……

同样可以这么用的动词有: say, expect, know, estimate, forecast等。

2) It is +形容词+ that从句: 形容词可以是clear, possible, certain, necessary等。

It is clear that... 显然……

It is possible that... 有可能……

It is likely that... 很可能……

It is natural that... 很自然……

It is certain that... 可以相信……

It is strange that... 奇怪的是……

It is fortunate that... 幸运的是……

It is necessary that... 有必要……

3) It is +名词短语+ that从句: 名词短语可以是a pity, a shame, an honor, a good idea, no wonder等。

It is a pity that... 可惜的是……

It is a fact that... 事实是……

It is good news that... ……真是太好了。

It is a good thing that... ……真是件好事。

It is no wonder that... 难怪……

It is a shame that... 遗憾的是……/……真是太不像话了。

It is an honor that... 很荣幸……

It is common knowledge that... ……是常识。

It is my belief that... 我相信……

It is a miracle that... ……真是奇迹。

4) It +不及物动词或其短语+ that从句: 不及物动词或其短语可以是seem, appear, turn out, come about等。

It seems that... 似乎……

It follows that... 因此……/由此可见……

It happens that... 碰巧……

It turns out that... 结果证明是……

It comes about that... 结果是……

a. It seems that you know a lot about computers.

b. It turned out that he did not steal her book.

5) 其他结构:

It dawns upon/on sb. that... 某人突然想起……

It occurs to sb. that... 某人突然想起……

It makes no difference that... ……无所谓。

It doesn't need to be bothered that... 不必担忧……

It is of little consequence that... ……无关紧要。

a. It has never occurred to me that he is a thief. 我没想到他是小偷。

b. It dawns upon me that there is a logical connection between all the things that happen in that immensely connected body of salted water that covers 71 percent of the surface of the Earth.

c. It makes no difference whether he will come or not.

## (2) **whether**及连接代词或连接副词引导主语从句一般放在句首。

a. Several days ago, an IT company fired about 400 people overnight. The act startled the fired employees and at the same time worried the rest. Moreover, **what was special about this case** was that the day before the 400 were fired, they all received from their boss a gift—the book *Who Moved My Cheese?*.

b. **What happened on September 11, 2001** will be forever etched in our memory. 9• 11事件将会永远铭刻在我们的记忆中。



### 3 宾语从句 Track03

#### (1) 宾语从句的位置

1) 在及物动词后作宾语:

a. I've learned that love, not time heals all wounds.

我明白了，是爱而不是时间能够治愈一切创伤。

b. I think that a sound knowledge of grammar is indispensable to good writing . 我认为扎实的语法功底对英文写作极为重要。

c. I don't know who has been elected president of the committee.

d. I think he is fit for the job. (that被省去)

e. Parents generally buy whichever books their children want.

f. Do you know when he arrives ?

2) 在双宾语动词后作直接宾语:

a. Could you tell me where the post office is ?

b. I assure you that I had no intention of offending you .

c. Tell us who has been elected president of the committee.

3) 在介词后作宾语:

a. I find the best way to concentrate is to make notes on **what the teachers are saying**.

我认为课上集中注意力的最好办法就是把老师讲的内容认真记下来。

b. You should vote for **which candidate you assume best**.

c. There is disagreement among economists about **what money is and how money is measured**.

关于什么是货币 以及怎样计量货币 在经济学家们之间存在分歧。

d. That depends on **how hard you work**.

e. We will plug the leaks with **whatever is handy**.

我们会随便拿个什么东西把漏洞堵上。

4) 在某些形容词后作宾语:

a. I am sure **that we shall succeed**.

b. I am afraid **that I can't come**.

c. She was glad **that he agreed to date her**.

5) 宾语从句后置:

这种情况出现在复合宾语结构中: 动词+ it形式宾语+宾语补足语+ **that**宾语从句。

a. We must make it clear that the parties involved are to make every effort to curb the pollution.

我们必须申明有关部门要尽一切努力控制污染。

b. There are those who consider it questionable that these defence-linked research projects will account for an

improvement in the standard of living or, alternately, do much to protect our diminishing resources.

这些与防御有关的研究项目 会不会促进生活水平的提高，或者说会不会有利于保护我们日益减少的资源，对此，有人是持怀疑态度的。

c. We believe it true that the human body is also a kind of good conductor. 人体也是一种良导体，我们认为这是对的。

## (2) that在宾语从句中省略的问题

一般来讲，that引导宾语从句时，可将that省去。但若是几个宾语从句并列使用，则连词that不可省去。

I once read **that** "The beauty of life is its changes," and **that** "the art of life lies in a constant readjustment to our surroundings."

我曾经读到过这样一句话：“生活的魅力在于变化，而生活的艺术在于不断适应周围环境的变化。”

## (3) if还是whether?

1) if一般只用于引导宾语从句，而whether可引导包括宾语从句在内的名词从句。

a. **If** he comes or not makes no difference.\* (不用if引导主语从句)

b. The question is **if** he will come.\* (不用if引导表语从句)

(注：本书中\*符号表示句子错误)

2) if不和or not直接连用，即一般不说if or not，但可以说if...or not。而whether没有此限制。

a. I don't know **if or not** he comes.\*

b. I don't know whether or not he comes.

c. No one knew whether or not interest rates would rise.

## 4 表语从句 Track04

(1) 表语从句通常是置于系动词，尤其是is后边。

a. This is where our basic interest lies. 这是我们的根本利益所在。

b. Some women are much too preoccupied by family. Once the marriage begins to disintegrate, they're lost. That's where their unhappiness springs from and that's why most divorced mothers regard themselves as victims.

一些女性太专注于家庭了。一旦婚姻开始瓦解，她们就失去了方向。这就是她们不快乐的来源，也是大多数离婚的母亲认为她们是受害者的原因。

c. Change is what keeps us fresh and innovative. Change is what keeps us from getting stale. Change is what keeps us young.

唯有变革才能使我们思维敏捷，富有创造性；唯有变革才能防止思想僵化；唯有变革才能让我们永葆青春。

d. Money is what we are badly in need of . 我们急需的是钱。

(2) 名词reason后面的表语从句一般用that来引导，而不用because。

该考查点常见于四、六级或研究生入学考试中，需要大家重点学习。

a. The reason (why) he was dismissed is that he was careless and irresponsible.

b. The reason (why) he was dismissed is because he was careless and irresponsible. \*

## 5 同位语从句 Track05

### (1) “名词+ that +陈述句” 句型

所谓同位语，就是用来补充说明名词的成分。当我们用一个完整的陈述句来补充说明名词时，即构成同位语从句。所以同位语从句都是位于名词后边，用来进一步说明前面名词的内容，形式上便构成“名词+ that +陈述句”的结构。（前文提到，一般情况下都是由that引导同位语从句。）

a. There is a popular saying that family instability causes social instability.

有一种流行的说法认为，家庭的不稳定导致了社会的不稳定。

b. He was prepared to prove his theory that two different weights would fall to the ground at the same time.

他准备证明他的这一理论：两个不同重量的物体将同时落地。

c. The fact that he succeeded in the experiment pleased everybody. 他的实验取得了成功，这让大家很高兴。

d. The rumor that Tom was a thief turned out to be untrue.

有人曾谣传汤姆是小偷，结果证明是不实的。

同位语从句也可由whether或连接代词、连接副词引导，但较少用到。

e. Scientists have argued over the problem whether there is life on other planets.

科学家们就其他行星上是否有生命这个问题一直争论不休。

f. There arose the question where we could get the loan.

现在的问题是我们去哪里能弄到这笔贷款。

## (2) “名词+其他成分+ that +陈述句”句型

同位语从句可能与其所修饰的名词被其他成分隔开，形式上便构成“名词+其他成分+ that +陈述句”的结构。这种被分隔开来的情形在阅读文章中很常见，遇到时一定要认真分析，才能正确理解句子意思。

a. They spread the lie everywhere that Tom was guilty of theft.

他们到处散布谣言说汤姆犯有盗窃罪。

b. A saying goes that practice makes perfect. 俗话说熟能生巧。

c. Dreary months dragged by before the tragic news reached her that her beloved brother had been killed for anti-Nazi activities.

在狱中挨过数月苦闷的日子后，突然一天传来了噩耗——她敬爱的哥哥因参与反法西斯活动被杀害。

d. Evidence came up that specific speech sounds are recognized by babies as young as 6 months old.

有证据表明，六个月的婴儿就能辨别出特定的说话声音。（注意此处that引导的从句不是作came up的宾语，因为came up是不及物动词词组，因此是作evidence的同位语。）

e. The motion came from the chairman that the regulations be adopted. 执行该项规章制度的动议是由董事长提出来的。

此外，关于同位语从句与定语从句的区别，详见“定语从句”相关内容。



关于“名词从句中用虚拟语气”的情况，详见“虚拟语气”相关内容。

关于“名词从句的简化”参见Chapter 7这一章。

### 名词从句练习

#### 一、将括号中的句子变成相应的名词从句填入横线中。

1. There is a popular saying \_\_\_\_\_. (Family instability causes social instability.)

2. No one knows exactly \_\_\_\_\_. (Is there life on other planets?)

3. No one knew \_\_\_\_\_. (Would interest rates rise?)

4. I am interested in the question \_\_\_\_\_. (Will people live on the moon someday?)

5. No one knows for sure \_\_\_\_\_. (Will the gains be greater than the losses?)

6. My question is \_\_\_\_\_. (Do we have enough time to go to the movies?)

7. September 11, 2001 started out as an ordinary day, but \_\_\_\_\_ will be forever etched in our memories. (What happened that morning?)

8. \_\_\_\_\_ is a wholly new kind of police force. (What do we need?)

9. Children often ask \_\_\_\_\_. (How do bears survive winter?)

10. \_\_\_\_\_ is true. (What did he tell you?)

11. \_\_\_\_\_ has not yet been decided. (Who will chair the meeting?)

12. \_\_\_\_\_ has not yet been decided. (When is the meeting to be held?)

13. \_\_\_\_\_ is still a mystery. (Why did he refuse to cooperate with us?)

14. \_\_\_\_\_ is more important than what his fate is. (How does a person master his fate?)

15. Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_? (Where is the post office?)

16. We don't know \_\_\_\_\_. (Why didn't he come yesterday?)

17. This is \_\_\_\_\_. (Where does our basic interest lie?)

18. My question is \_\_\_\_\_. (Where are we going to have our holidays?)

## 二、单选题（主语从句）。

19. It is obvious \_\_\_\_\_ on more important things.

- A. which the money should we spend
- B. what the money should we spend
- C. that the money should we spend
- D. that we should spend the money

20. \_\_\_\_\_ hard water does not mix well with soap.

- A. That is a well-known fact

B. That is a well-known fact in which

C. It is a well-known fact that

D. It is a well-known that

21. \_\_\_\_\_every magnet is surrounded by a magnetic field.

A. It believes that

B. It believed that

C. It is believed that

D. It's believing that

22. \_\_\_\_\_was to return to school.

A. That really interested him

B. What really interested him

C. Which really interested him

D. That interested him really

23. \_\_\_\_\_your men have been on my land without permission.

A. It seems that

B. There seems to be

C. That seems

D. It seems for

24. \_\_\_\_\_ I have made no arrangements to deal with such cases.

- A. It appear that
- B. That appears
- C. They appear that
- D. It appears that

25. \_\_\_\_\_ that the first cheese was probably made more than 4,000 years ago by nomadic tribes in Asia.

- A. The belief
- B. Although they believe
- C. It is believed
- D. Believing

26. \_\_\_\_\_ to space travelers is high acceleration or deceleration forces.

- A. That can be dangerous
- B. What can be dangerous
- C. They can be dangerous
- D. It can be dangerous

27. \_\_\_\_\_ unstable and explodes as a supernova is not known.

- A. For a star to become
- B. How a star becomes

- C. A star becomes
- D. That a star is becoming

28. \_\_\_\_\_composed traditionally has been a subject of debate among scholars.

- A. Where ballads how
- B. Ballads were how they
- C. How ballads that were
- D. How ballads were

29. \_\_\_\_\_that the professor's strictness with him is not to punish a careless student but to teach him how to be precise.

- A. Joseph was dawned
- B. It was dawned on Joseph
- C. It dawned on Joseph
- D. Joseph dawned it on

30. \_\_\_\_\_was not our concern.

- A. No matter how he might pass the examination
- B. Whether he passed the examination or not
- C. Though he might pass the examination
- D. While he passed the examination

三、单选题（宾语从句）。

31. He asked me \_\_\_\_\_ I intended to do after my graduation.

- A. that what
- B. what
- C. that
- D. which

32. Listening carefully to \_\_\_\_\_ in class means less work later.

- A. what does the teacher say
- B. what the teacher says
- C. that the teacher says
- D. which the teacher says

33. John didn't say \_\_\_\_\_ he would return, but I presume he'll be back for dinner.

- A. that when
- B. when
- C. if or not
- D. where

34. After the accident, I opened my eyes slowly and realized \_\_\_\_\_ I was still alive.

- A. that
- B. whether

C. what

D. which

35. No one knows exactly \_\_\_\_\_.

A. how did the speech begin

B. how the speech began

C. how the beginning of the speech

D. of how beginning the speech

36. He wondered \_\_\_\_\_.

A. what will be his wife's reaction

B. what would his wife's reaction be

C. how would be his wife's reaction

D. what his wife's reaction would be

37. A popular belief \_\_\_\_\_ radio and television have homogenized the language of the United States.

A. states that

B. that is stated

C. that states

D. stating that

38. I don't care \_\_\_\_\_ we are invited to the dinner.

A. if or not

B. whether or not

C. what

D. that

39. The professor made \_\_\_\_\_ clear that there would be no pass until his students handed in satisfactory dissertations.

A. that

B. them

C. it

D. this

40. He is wondering \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor.

A. whether or not he should see

B. that he should see or not

C. if or not he should see

D. if to see or not

#### 四、单选题（表语从句）。

41. The reason for my return is \_\_\_\_\_ I left my keys behind.

A. because

B. it

C. that

D. why



42. The mountain was \_\_\_\_\_ many animals, such as wolves, foxes and rabbits once haunted but now it is so silent.

- A. that place
- B. where
- C. what
- D. then

43. The reason we' re so late is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. because of the car breaking down
- B. due the care broke down
- C. that the car broke down
- D. because the car broke down

44. The reason she failed in the exam was \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. that she hadn' t worked hard
- B. because she hadn' t worked hard
- C. why she hadn' t worked hard
- D. because she was too careless

45. A hinge joint is \_\_\_\_\_ permits the forward and backward movement of a door.

- A. what
- B. that
- C. which

D. where

46. Stopping pouring polluted water into the river is \_\_\_\_\_ the factory has to solve at present.

A. what

B. which

C. as

D. that

### 五、单选题（同位语从句）。

47. There are signs \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants are becoming more popular with families.

A. that

B. which

C. in which

D. whose

48. Scientists have reached the conclusion \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature on Earth is getting higher and higher.

A. what

B. that

C. which

D. when

49. An idea came to her \_\_\_\_\_ she might do the experiment in another way.

- A. that
- B. what
- C. when
- D. which

50. Obviously there was little certainty\_\_\_\_\_the chairman would agree to this proposal.

- A. which
- B. why
- C. what
- D. that

51. We were all overjoyed at the news\_\_\_\_\_the experiment turned out a success.

- A. which
- B. that
- C. when
- D. what

52. I have no idea\_\_\_\_\_has happened to him.

- A. what
- B. that
- C. which
- D. why

53. The author wishes to call our attention\_\_\_\_\_modern man has polluted his environment to such an extent that he might destroy himself if he went on like that.

- A. to that
- B. in that
- C. to the fact which
- D. to the fact that

## 六、单选题与填空题（what/which/that辨析）。

54. He didn't live up to\_\_\_\_\_had been expected of him.

- A. what
- B. which
- C. that
- D. all what

55. I realized\_\_\_\_\_I said was not exactly\_\_\_\_\_I meant to say.

- A. what that, what
- B. that what, what
- C. that which, which
- D. that that, what

56. Although Anne is happy with her success, she wonders \_\_\_\_\_will happen to her private life.

- A. that

- B. what
- C. it
- D. which

57. The mere fact \_\_\_\_\_ most people believe nuclear war would be madness does not mean that it will not occur.

- A. what
- B. which
- C. that
- D. why

58. One of the qualities \_\_\_\_\_ (that/what/who/why) separate us two-legged animals from the four-legged ones is compassion. It is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) makes us stand up tall instead of crawling about on all fours. And standing up tall is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) frees our arms to reach out to a fellow being and say, "Let me help you."

59. Change is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) keeps us fresh and innovative. Change is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) keeps us from getting stale. Change is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) keeps us young.

## 七、单选题（综合练习，提高题）。

60. If you had told me just \_\_\_\_\_ I was to do they would never have found fault with my handling of the case.

- A. that
- B. what
- C. which

D. whatever

61. \_\_\_\_\_ the London Zoo will adopt as a measurement at the critical moment is to try all ways preserving the animals in the zoo.

A. That

B. What

C. It's

D. Whether

62. How close parents are to their children \_\_\_\_\_ a strong influence on the character of the children.

A. have

B. has

C. having

D. to have

63. \_\_\_\_\_ that snow men were often spotted on the mountainside above 7,000 meters by the local inhabitants.

A. It was used to be saying

B. It used to be said

C. It used to say

D. It was used to saying

64. The problem now is \_\_\_\_\_ we can adopt to overcome the difficulties in shortage of funds.

- A. what measure
- B. that measure
- C. measure that
- D. measure which

65. \_\_\_\_\_ theories approximate the truth is the day-to-day business of science.

- A. Determining how closely
- B. How closely to determine
- C. How one determines close
- D. One is close to determining

66. \_\_\_\_\_ the students think it their duty to study hard has laid the foundation for the university's high reputation.

- A. That all
- B. What
- C. All that
- D. What all

67. It's doubtful \_\_\_\_\_ the government of that country can accept them as permanent residents.

- A. whether
- B. that
- C. how

D. what

68. It has always puzzled me \_\_\_\_\_ the old man tied a red silk ribbon on the young tree in his courtyard.

A. that

B. why

C. where

D. what

69. \_\_\_\_\_ was the "curiosity of all mankind to explore the unknown".

A. That moved the human spirit

B. What moved the human spirit

C. What the human spirit moved

D. Which moved the human spirit

70. \_\_\_\_\_ the mass of the nucleus is slightly less than the total mass of the protons and neutrons which make up the nucleus.

A. It found that

B. It was found that

C. It was found for

D. It finds that

71. His success was due to \_\_\_\_\_ he had been working hard.



- A. that
- B. the fact which
- C. the fact that
- D. the fact of

72. \_\_\_\_\_ makes mistakes must correct them.

- A. What
- B. That
- C. Whoever
- D. Whatever

73. He works too hard. That is \_\_\_\_\_ is wrong with him.

- A. that which
- B. that what
- C. what
- D. the thing what

74. The reason why I plan to go is \_\_\_\_\_ if I don't.

- A. because she will disappoint
- B. that she will be disappointed
- C. because she will have been disappointed
- D. for she will be disappointed

75. — What is that building?

— \_\_\_\_\_ the garden equipment is stored.

- A. There's in which
- B. That's where
- C. The building that
- D. That's the building which

76. You can take \_\_\_\_\_ room you prefer.

- A. to what
- B. whichever
- C. that
- D. who

77. Free movie tickets will be given to \_\_\_\_\_ comes first.

- A. whoever
- B. whomever
- C. whichever
- D. whatever

78. We agreed to accept \_\_\_\_\_ they thought was the best tourist guide.

- A. whatever
- B. whomever
- C. whichever

D. whoever

79. Yet no firm evidence had come to light \_\_\_\_\_ the men arrested were actually responsible.

A. which

B. as

C. what

D. that

80. \_\_\_\_\_ that as both birds and mammals become larger, their metabolic rates per unit of tissue decrease, and they generally live longer.

A. The truth

B. It is true

C. If true

D. To be true

81. \_\_\_\_\_ is the center of our planetary system was a difficult concept to grasp in the Middle Ages.

A. It is the sun and not the earth

B. Being the sun and not the earth

C. The sun and not the earth

D. That the sun and not the earth

82. It is a widely held theory \_\_\_\_\_ the ancestral prototype of the flowering Astereles was a woody plant, perhaps a small tree.

A. where

B. until

C. while

D. that

83. \_\_\_\_\_ that his story may be a fabrication?

A. Was it ever dawned upon you

B. Have they ever dawned upon you

C. Do they ever dawned upon you

D. Has it ever dawned upon you

84. \_\_\_\_\_ he was the assassin.

A. It had never occurred to me that

B. He had occurred that

C. To him occurred that

D. What occurred to him was

85. The question is \_\_\_\_\_ can be put into practice.

A. how you have learned

B. how that you have learned

C. that why you have learned

D. how what you have learned

86. \_\_\_\_\_ the trainer wanted to tell is \_\_\_\_\_ Asian elephants are easier to tame than African ones.

A. That, those

B. What, that

C. What, the

D. That, which

87. When reports came into London Zoo \_\_\_\_\_ a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.

A. what

B. as

C. which

D. that

88. Prof. Lee's book will show you \_\_\_\_\_ can be used in other contexts.

A. that you have observed

B. that how you have observed

C. how that you have observed

D. how what you have observed

89. The quantum theory states \_\_\_\_\_, such as light, is given off and absorbed in tiny definite units called quanta or photons.

A. energy that

B. that it is energy

C. it is energy

D. that energy

90. In the fourteenth century, \_\_\_\_\_ that glass coated with silver nitrate would turn yellow when fired in an oven.

A. the discovery

B. it was discovered

C. with the discovery

D. if it was discovered

91. The early feminist leader Susan B. Anthony became increasingly aware through her work in the temperance movement \_\_\_\_\_ the same rights as men.

A. women were not granted that

B. that women were not granted

C. not granted women that were

D. that were not granted women

92. The early years of the United States government were characterized by a debate concerning \_\_\_\_\_ or individual states should have more power.

A. whether the federal government

B. either the federal government

C. that the federal government

D. the federal government

93. When I try to understand \_\_\_\_\_ that prevents so many Americans from being as happy as one might expect, it seems to me that there are two causes.

- A. why it does
- B. what it does
- C. what it is
- D. why it is

94. Fossils records indicate \_\_\_\_\_ existing in the past have become extinct.

- A. that many species of organisms
- B. many species of organisms that are
- C. many species of organism are
- D. there are many organisms

95. According to some educators, the goal of teaching is to help students learn what \_\_\_\_\_ to know to live a well-adjusted and successful life.

- A. do they need
- B. they need
- C. they are needed
- D. as they may need

## 八、辨别改错。

96. Nutritionists (A) believe what (B) diet affects how (C) one feels physically. (D) and emotionally.

97. Is there any proof (A) which (B) the food of the plant differs (C) from that of (D) animals?

98. A man cannot be really happy if that (A) he enjoys doing is ignore (B) d by society as of (C) no value or importance (D) .

99. More and more people have realized (A) such (B) a fact of (C) heart diseases are related to (D) the way people live.

100. Widely acknowledged as a great (A) and important playwright, Eugene O' Neill brought to the United States stage it (B) was probably his first really (C) serious drama (D) .

101. We consider necessary (A) that (B) the instrument should (C) be adjusted each time (D) .

### 名词从句练习答案

#### 一、将括号中的句子变成相应的名词从句填入横线中。

1. There is a popular saying that family instability causes social instability.

2. No one knows exactly whether/if there is life on other planets.

3. No one knew whether/if interest rates would rise.

4. I am interested in the question whether people will live on the moon someday.

5. No one knows for sure whether/if the gains will be greater than the losses.

6. My question is whether we have enough time to go to the movies.



7. September 11, 2001 started out as an ordinary day, but what happened that morning will be forever etched in our memories.

8. What we need is a wholly new kind of police force.

9. Children often ask how bears survive winter.

10. What he told you is true.

11. Who will chair the meeting has not yet been decided.

12. When the meeting is to be held has not yet been decided.

13. Why he refused to cooperate with us is still a mystery.

14. How a person masters his fate is more important than what his fate is.

15. Could you tell me where the post office is?

16. We don't know why he didn't come yesterday.

17. This is where our basic interest lies.

18. My question is where we are going to have our holidays.

## 二~七、单选题。

19-23: DCCBA

24-28: DCBBD

29-33: CBBBB

34-38: ABDAB

39-43: CACBC

44-48: AAAAB

49-53: ADBAD

54-57: ABBC

58. that, what, what

59. what, what, what

60-65: BBBBAA

66-70: AABBB

71-75: CCCBB

76-80: BADDDB

81-85: DDDAD

86-90: BDDDB

91-95: BACAB

## 八、辨别改错。

96. B/that

97. B/that

98. A/what

99. C/that

100. B/what

101. A/it necessary

## Chapter 2 定语从句



音频

- 6 全面理解“先行词”
- 7 关系词
- 8 常见关系代词
- 9 as的用法
- 10 what的用法
- 11 than作关系代词的用法（考研常考题）
- 12 but的用法

- 13 when的用法
- 14 where的用法
- 15 why的用法
- 16 根据定语从句中的线索来判断介词
- 17 根据先行词来判断介词
- 18 表示所属关系或部分与整体关系时用介词of
- 19 in which to do结构
- 20 that在名词从句与定语从句中
- 21 which在名词从句与定语从句中
- 22 各种复杂定语从句

## 第一节 先行词与关系词

所谓定语从句，简言之，即在句中有一个具有主谓结构的完整句子来充当定语，修饰前面的名词（短语）或代词。这个起修饰作用的从句在功能上相当于一个形容词，所以也可称定语从句为形容词从句。

在《英语语法新思维 基础版2》一书里我们也讨论过定语从句，不过那里的内容主要是介绍定语从句常见关系词的用法，以帮助读者了解定语从句的简单构造。在这里，我们将更加深入地了解定语从句，所讨论的内容将更加贴近考试和难句阅读分析。具体内容包括：

全面理解“先行词”（第6小节）

特殊关系词的用法（第9，10，11，12小节）

关系词前边如何加介词（第16，17，18小节）

各种结构复杂的定语从句（第22小节）

### 6 全面理解“先行词” Track06

我们知道，先行词和关系词是定语从句的两个重要概念，定语从句的核心内容就是围绕先行词和关系词展开的。我们现在简单回顾一下这两个重要概念。请看例句：

a. The girl is my girlfriend. **She** is dancing with that boy.

b. The girl **who is dancing with that boy** is my girlfriend.

正在和那个男孩跳舞的女孩是我的女朋友。

1) **先行词**：被关系词所指代（b句中用who指代the girl），并且被定语从句所修饰或限定的对象称为先行词。b句中the girl即为先行词。

2) **关系词**：重复指代先行词，起连接主句和从句的作用并且在定语从句中充当一定成分的连接词。b句中的who即为关系词。因此关系词有两个作用：①代词作用：重复指代先行词并且在定语从句中充当一定成分；②连接作用：起连接主句和从句的作用。

### （1）先行词可以不只是一个词

尽管我们把定语从句所修饰的对象称为先行词，但先行词并不一定都是一个“词”。先行词可以是：

1) 一个词（通常是名词，也可以是代词）

a. The woman who lives next door is a famous dancer.

b. He who laughs last, laughs best. 谁笑到最后谁笑得最好。

c. Never leave that until tomorrow which you can do today.  
今日事，今日毕。

2) 一个短语

He likes climbing mountains , which is a good exercise.

3) 一个分句

He said that he had no time , which isn't true.

4) 一个完整的句子

a. He arrived an hour later , which annoyed his girlfriend very much.

b. My girlfriend likes dancing with other guys , which really drives me crazy.

## (2) 正确找出先行词

只有先正确找出先行词，才能明白定语从句所修饰的真正成分是什么，这样才能正确理解句子前后的逻辑关系，分清句子结构，从而正确理解句子的意思。之所以这样讲，是因为有时先行词并不像常规那样[如下列1)中的a, b句]紧靠着关系词，而是与关系词之间插入了其他成分[如下列2)中的a, b, c, d句]，这时位于关系词前面的名词就不是先行词。

### 1) 先行词紧靠关系词

a. There is a very interesting remark in a book by a man who is a great American writer.

b. The woman who lives next door is a famous dancer.

### 2) 先行词与关系词被分隔

a. There is a very interesting remark in a book by an American writer that I read recently .

分析：先行词a book与关系代词that被先行词的另一个定语by an American writer所隔开，即先行词a book带有两个定语：一个是介词短语by an American writer，另一个是that引导的定语从句。

b. I don't suppose anything happens that he doesn't foresee.

分析：先行词anything与关系代词that被suppose的宾语从句中的谓语动词happens所隔开。注意，先行词为anything这样的不定代词时，关系词用that而不用which。

c. He who laughs last , laughs best. 谁笑到最后谁笑得最好。

d. Never leaves that until tomorrow which you can do today. 今日事，今日毕。

## (3) 正确找出先行词关系到：

### 1) 关系词的选择

a. He needs a long spoon\_\_\_\_\_supps with the devil.

- A. who
- B. which
- C. as
- D. when

正确答案：A。

分析：因为定语从句的先行词是he，而不是spoon，因此关系词应该为关系代词。这是一句谚语，字面意思是“同魔鬼一起喝汤需要用一把长勺子”，言外之意就是“同坏人打交道需要提防着”。

b. The world is a book, and those\_\_\_\_\_read only a page do not travel.

- A. which
- B. who
- C. what
- D. whom

正确答案：B。

分析：先行词是指“人”的those，因此关系词应该为关系代词，且在定语从句中作主语。

### 2) 定语从句中的主谓一致问题

a. Despite (A) much research, there are still certain elements in (B) the life cycle of the insect that is (C) not fully understood (D) .



正确答案：C，应改为are。先行词是certain elements，而不是the insect。

b. It is (A) the interaction (B) between people, rather than the events that occur in their lives, that are (C) the main focus of social (D) psychology.

正确答案：C，应改为is。先行词是the interaction，而不是their lives。

相信大家已经体会到“抓住先行词”对于正确理解定语从句的重要意义。在今后的学习当中，遇到定语从句的时候，首先要想到“抓住先行词”。因为只有正确找到先行词，才能分清句子结构，理解句子各部分的逻辑关系，从而正确理解句子的意思。

## 7 关系词 Track07

### (1) 关系词的特点

定语从句总是由关系词（尽管有时会将其省去）来连接，关系词在定语从句中起两个作用：

- 1) 连词作用：将定语从句与主句的其余部分连接起来。
- 2) 代词作用：用来重复指代其前面的先行词，且在定语从句中作句子成分。

### (2) 关系词的分类

关系词可分为关系代词和关系副词，具体请看下表。

语法作用	可用于限定性及非限定性定语从句			用于限定性定语从句	
	人	物	其他	人和物	其他
主语	who	which		that	
宾语	who/whom	which		that/ 省略 that	
所有关系	whose	whose/ of which			
限定性		which			
状语			when/ where		why

从上面的表格得知：

- 1) that和why只引导限定性定语从句。

2) 关系代词：关系代词在从句中可充当主语、宾语或表语。其中 whose 一定要与名词连用，表示所属关系。which 可单独引导定语从句，也可用作限定词与名词连用。

{ who, whom → 指人  
which → 指物  
that, whose → 指人或指物

3) 关系副词：关系副词只充当状语。when 表时间，where 表地点，why 表原因。

注意：how 不可以作为表示方式的关系副词来引导定语从句。在定语从句中，若表示方式，我们用以下句型：

the way { in which  
that  
省略

a. During the 1940s science and engineering had an impact on the way music reached its audience and even influenced the way in which it was composed.

b. You know the old golden rule, "Care for others the way you would like them to care for you."

此外，英文中尚有特殊关系代词：what, as, than, but。这是我们下一节的重点讨论内容。

## 第二节 关系代词的用法

### 8 常见关系代词 Track08

常见的引导定语从句的关系代词及其用法在《英语语法新思维 基础版2》一书中已经介绍过，这里我们再简单回顾一下。

关系代词	用法	例句
指代人用 who, whom。	在从句中作主语不用 whom。	Students <b>who cheat</b> on exams will poison the atmosphere of the college. 在考试中作弊的学生会破坏学校的校风。
	在介词后边不能用 who, 而只能用 whom。	The girl <b>with whom</b> you work is his girl friend. 和你一起工作的那个女孩是他的女朋友。
指代物用 which。		Anger is a <b>wind which</b> blows out the lamp of the mind. 愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。
that 指人、指物均可。	指物	Anger is a <b>wind that</b> blows out the lamp of the mind.
	指人	Students <b>that cheat</b> on exams will poison the atmosphere of the college.
	在介词后边不用 that。	The world <b>in which</b> we live is made up of matter. 我们所生活的世界由物质组成。

( 续表 )

关系代词	用法	例句
whose 后边要接名词，表示所属关系。可以指人或物。	指人	It is almost impossible to find two persons <b>whose opinions</b> are the same.
	指物	It was a meeting <b>whose importance</b> I did not realize at the time.
	指物的 whose 可以和 of which 互换。	These children sit in a schoolroom <b>whose windows</b> are all broken. These children sit in a schoolroom <b>of which all the windows</b> are broken.

下面来重点介绍as，what，than，but这四个特殊关系词的用法。

## 9 as的用法 Track09

(1) 在as引导限定性定语从句时，只是用在一些固定的结构中，即只能用在such, the same, as, so的后面。

- a. He'll repeat **such** points **as** are discussed in the book.
- b. **Such** a student **as** works hard will be sure to succeed.
- c. He tried to make **as** few mistakes **as** he could avoid.
- d. He is not **the same** playboy **as** we knew.
- e. The instrument is not **such** an instrument **as** I saw on the exhibition.
- f. He is not such a man\_\_\_\_\_would leave his work half done.

- A. who
- B. whom
- C. as
- D. that

正确答案：C。

(2) as引导非限定性定语从句可位于句首，而which不能这样用。

- a. As is known, the whale is not fish but a mammal.

众所周知，鲸不是鱼类，而是哺乳类动物。（as指的是the whale is not fish but a mammal整个句子。）

- b. \_\_\_\_\_is known to the world, Mark Twain is a great American writer.

- A. That
- B. Which
- C. As
- D. It

正确答案：C。

c. \_\_\_\_\_ might be expected, the response to the question was very mixed.

- A. As
- B. That
- C. Which
- D. What

正确答案：A。

(3) as和which都可引导非限定性定语从句，代替前面整个句子。

a. He married her, as/which was natural.

b. He was late for school, which/as is often the case.

但因为as引导的定语从句有“正好……”，“就像……”，“由……而知”的含义，所以，当主句和从句在内容上一致时，或者说从句内容是顺着主句意思说下来时，关系词要用as。若主句和从句内容上不一致，或从句的内容对主句的内容起反对、排斥、否定等消极的作用时，则多用which。试分析比较以下例句：



- c. The young man cheated his friend of much money, which was disgraceful.
- d. She has married again,  $\begin{cases} \text{as was expected.} \\ \text{which was unexpected.} \end{cases}$
- e. The elephant is like a snake, which is not right.
- f. The gentleman admires Mrs. Brown, which surprised me.
- g. She is very careful, as her work shows.

她很细心，这从她的工作中就可以看出来。

## 10 what的用法 Track10

what作为关系代词，用法很特殊，它是先行词和关系代词的结合体，我们姑且称之为“缩合关系词”。它的一般含义可理解为：the things that, all that。具体用法有以下三点需要注意：

### (1) what前不能有先行词

what包括一个关系代词及其“先行词”。所以，what前面不能再有先行词出现。换句话说，如果句中已有先行词，就一定不能再用what引导定语从句。

a. You can have everything what you like. \*

b. All \_\_\_\_\_ is a continuous supply of the basic necessities of life.

A. what is needed

B. the things needed

C. for our needs

D. that is needed

正确答案：D。

### (2) what单独使用

此时，what作关系代词，可表示物，也可表示人。

a. She is not what she used to be.

=She is not the girl that she used to be.

b. Show me what you have written.

=Show me the things that you have written.

c. He is not what he was a few years ago.

=He is not the man that he was a few years ago.

我们注意到以上句中what前均没有先行词。

### (3) what +名词

此时，what作关系形容词，结构是“what +名词”，意为“所有的……，尽可能多的……”。

a. I will give you what help I can. 我会尽可能地帮你。

b. What money I have has been given to you. = All the money that I have has been given to you 我身上所有的钱都给了你了。

c. Lend me what reference books you have on the subject.

=Lend me all the reference books that you have on the subject.

请把你所有的有关这个研究专题的参考书借给我。

以上是what最基本的三条用法，其中“what前不能有先行词”是正确使用what的一个前提。凡是由what引导的定语从句均可改为“特定的先行词+关系代词that”。这说起来较为简单，但在实际使用过程中较为复杂，有时难以判断what之前到底是有还是没有“先行词”。

请分析如下练习：

d. Beethoven, the great musician, wrote (A) nine symphonies in his life, most of what (B) were written after he had lost (C) his hearing (D).

e. As for the winter, it is inconvenient to be cold, with most of \_\_\_\_\_ furnace fuel is allowed saved for the dawn.

- A. what
- B. that
- C. which
- D. such

f. Most of \_\_\_\_\_ food elephants eat is brought to their mouths by their trunks.

- A. what
- B. which
- C. that
- D. as

g. Most (A) of the food what (B) elephants eat is brought (C) to their mouths by their (D) trunks.

h. Most of \_\_\_\_\_ archaeologists know about prehistoric cultures is based on studies of material remains.

- A. these
- B. what
- C. which
- D. their

我们先对上述习题进行分析研究，让大家进一步明确what的用法。

d. **正确答案：**B，应改为most of which。因为这里的what前面有先行词nine symphonies，所以改成most of which，也就相当于most of nine symphonies。

e. 正确答案：A。这个句子有一定的难度，with前的主句我们不难理解，关键是对with后面成分的理解。

1) 其实，这里实际上是由with引导的一个独立分词结构（详细内容参见“Chapter 6分词”），其一般结构是：with +名词 / 名词性短语+分词。此句中的结构可看成：with + what引导的一个名词从句（相当于名词短语）+ saved for the dawn（分词结构）。这个with独立分词结构在句中作状语，表示原因。

2) 我们再来分析这个由what引导的名词从句：most of what furnace fuel is allowed。据以上分析我们得知，what前没有先行词，这里的what是上文所说的what的第三种用法：what +名词（furnace fuel）。引导的名词从句确切地说应为：what furnace fuel is allowed（所分配的锅炉燃料），可改为定语从句：all the furnace fuel that is allowed。然后再加上most of (what furnace fuel is allowed)，也就相当于：most of all the furnace fuel that is allowed，即“所分配的锅炉燃料中的大部分”，不要将其理解成：（most of what furnace fuel）is allowed\*。

3) 此句可译成：到了冬天，由于所分配的锅炉燃料中的大部分需要节省下来等到黎明时候再用，因此（夜里）冷得难受。

f. 正确答案：A。这里也还是what的第三种用法：what +名词（food），what前没有先行词。

g. 正确答案：B，应改为which或that。因为此句中有先行词the food。大家可将其与f题进行比较。

h. 正确答案：B。what前没有先行词，且又引导一个从句。

在这里，需要说明的是，what引导的从句从结构上看，既可以理解为定语从句，也可理解为名词从句。

## 11 than作关系代词的用法（考研常考题）

### Track11

that作关系代词的用法特点：

1) than可作关系代词引导定语从句，在从句中一般作主语。

2) than前面的主句需有形容词的比较级形式。

a. Don't drink more wine than is good for health.

不要饮酒过量，适量饮酒有益于健康。

b. Don't give him more money than is needed , since money will burn a hole in his pocket.

不要多给他钱，他需要多少就给多少，因为他有钱就会花掉。

c. Today we know a great deal more about the sea than was known in ancient times.

d. There ought to be less anxiety over the perceived risk of getting cancer than\_\_\_\_\_in the public today.

A. exists

B. exist

C. existing

D. existed

正确答案：A

分析：这里的than指anxiety，且根据句末today可判定从句的时态为一般现在时，所以选A。

译文：人们不应该像如今这样担心患上癌症。

3) than也可在从句中作宾语。

For now, however, it does appear that the economy can sustain a higher growth rate than most people thought impossible just a year or two ago. In that limited respect, at least, we appear to be in a "New Economy".

不过，目前我们的经济确实实现了持续的、较快的增长，在一两年前绝大多数人认为该增长率是不可能实现的。所以，仅此而言，我们正处于一个“新经济时代”。

## 12 but的用法 Track12

but的用法特点：

1) but作关系代词，相当于that... not , who... not , whom... not , 在句中作主语或宾语，可指人也可指物。

2) 尽管定语从句形式上肯定，但在意义上是否定的。

3) 常与具有否定意义的主句连用。

4) 通常只引导限定性定语从句。

a. There is no man but errors. (= There is no man who doesn't err. but作主语) 人必犯错。

b. There are very few but admire his talents. (= There are very few who don't admire his talents. but作主语) 很少有人不赞赏他的才干。

c. There are very few people in this club but he knows. (= There are very few people in this club whom he doesn't know. but作宾语)



### 第三节 关系副词的用法

在英语中，引导定语从句的关系副词主要有when, where, why, 它们在从句中分别作时间状语、地点状语和原因状语，它们又都可用“相应的介词 + which”来替换。

#### 13 when的用法 Track13

(1) 可引导限定性和非限定性定语从句，其先行词必须是表示时间的名词，如day, year, time等。when可用on which 来替换。

a. I'll never forget the day when I met you.

b. I'll never forget the day on which I met you.

c. I'll never forget the day that I met you. (特别关注：此句中that用作关系副词)

d. April Fool's Day is that special day of the year when you should play a joke on someone! Children's favorites are to put salt in the sugar bowl for Dad's morning coffee or put chalk on a desk chair at school so the teacher gets a white backside! But remember, if you play a joke after 12 at noon, YOU are the April Fool!

e. We will put off the outing until next week, when we won't be so busy.

f. March 10, 1876 was the day when (= on which) the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.

g. My favorite season is spring, when the earth seems born again.

h. The day may soon come when we don't bother to go to office but just work at home.

i. This kind of solar cooker can be used only in the daytime \_\_\_\_\_ the sun is shining.

A. when

B. as

C. while

D. since

正确答案：A。

(2) 紧跟在时间名词后边的关系副词，也可省去。

a. I'll never forget the day I met you.

b. Most education experts today stress the importance of "life-long learning". They point out that education never ends. It is a continuous process. The day we stop learning is the day when we die.

(3) 注意：表示时间的先行名词，若定语从句不是缺状语，而是缺少主语或宾语，要用which或that来引导定语从句。因为用when来引导定语从句的前提条件是when在其引导的定语从句中作时间状语。

a. I'll never forget the time which I spent on campus.

which作spent的宾语。

b. I'll never forget the day when we first met in the park.

when作时间状语，修饰met。

c. The hours\_\_\_\_\_the children spend in their one-way relationship with television people undoubtedly affect their relationships with real-life people.

A. when

B. on which

C. that

D. in which

正确答案：C。

分析：这句话的定语从句中的谓语spend缺宾语，因此填入的关系词要充当这一宾语，所以选C。

## 14 where的用法 Track14

(1) where引导定语从句，作状语，其前边的先行词必须是表示地点的名词，如place, house等。

a. Do you know any place where I can buy Clint's grammar book?

b. Do you know any place at which I can buy Clint's grammar book?

c. Do you know any place that I can buy Clint's grammar book?  
\*

d. Do you know any place I can buy Clint's grammar book?\*

e. This is the town where (= in which ) I spent my childhood.

f. This is the restaurant where I often have my breakfast.

g. — Since you work in the theater, can't you get me a free ticket now and then?

— Certainly if you bring me a few notes now and then from the bank where you work!

(2) 注意：与when类似，并非凡是表示地点的名词作先行词，都得由where来引导定语从句，这需要看关系词在从句中充当的成分。若定语从句缺主语或宾语，要用which或that引导定语从句。

a. This is the town which I told you about before.

which作about的宾语。

b. The library where students often study was on fire last night.

c. The library, **which** was built in the 1930s, needs to be renovated.

d. I've never been to Beijing, but it's the place \_\_\_\_\_.

A. where I'd like to visit

B. in which I'd like to visit

C. I most want to visit

D. that I want to visit it most

正确答案：C。

分析：这句话的定语从句中的谓语visit缺宾语，因此填入的关系词要充当这一宾语，故关系词可为which或that，作宾语时可省去，所以选C。

(3) **where**的先行词可以是含有地点意义的抽象名词，如**situation**, **point**等。

a. Cheating is most likely in **situations where** the vital interests are high and the chances of getting caught are low.

如果利益重大而且被人发现的可能性又很小，在这种情况下，欺诈行为最有可能发生。

b. He has reached the **point where** a change is needed.

他已到了需要改弦易辙的地步。

c. The knee is the **joint where** the thigh bone meets the large bone of the lower leg.

d. We may encounter situations \_\_\_\_\_ this principle cannot be applied.

A. where

B. which

C. what

D. as

正确答案：A。

分析：原句本来应是We may encounter situations **which** this principle cannot be **applied to** . 句末的介词通常要置于关系代词前边（关于“介词+关系代词”，见本章第四节），所以原句可改成：

We may encounter situations **to which** this principle cannot be **applied** .

进而变成：

We may encounter situations **where** this principle cannot be **applied** .

所以选A。

#### （4）区分**where**引导的地点状语从句和定语从句。

若是定语从句，则**where**前边必然有被修饰的地点名词；若**where**前边没有被修饰的名词则视为地点状语从句。请比较：

定语从句	When you read books, you had better make a mark at <b>the spot where you have any question</b> .	看书时，最好在有问题的地方做上标记。
地点状语从句	When you read books, you had better make a mark <b>where you have any question</b> .	

需要注意的是：只有定语从句中的**where**才能转换成“介词+ **which**”的结构，而地点状语从句中的**where**不能。请比较：

a. Would you please put the book **where** it belongs? 请把书放回原处。

b. Would you please put the book **to which** it belongs? \*

a句为where引导的地点状语从句，而非定语从句，因为where前的名词book不是表示地点，即where前面没有先行词。

## 15 why的用法 Track15

用来表原因，只引导限定性定语从句，先行词是reason等表示原因的名词。

This is the reason **why** I didn't come here. (此处why = for which)



## 第四节 介词+关系代词

我们常常遇到定语从句的关系代词（主要是which, whom或whose）前带有介词或介词短语的情况，这些介词什么时候不需要，什么时候必须加，以及究竟用什么介词，这些问题对于学习者来说是有难度的。

下面是笔者根据个人的研究总结出的三条规律（16~18）：

### 16 根据定语从句中的线索来判断介词 Track16

这些线索可以是：

1) 定语从句中的动词。这是主要线索，所选介词需要与动词搭配。（最常见）

a. The buzzard can watch high in the sky the ground for signs of the waste and the dead animals **on which** it **feeds** .  
(...animals **which** it **feeds on** .)

秃鹰可以从高空中往地上搜寻它们要吃的垃圾和动物尸体。

b. It was luck again, according to Nina, that brought her the role in *Mute Wife* **for which** she is best **known** .

尼娜认为，这次又是“幸运”让她在《哑巴妻子》这部剧中担任角色，她正是以此剧为人们所熟知。

c. This is the shop **of which** I often **speak** to you.

这就是我常常同你提起的那个店铺。

d. He is the man **on whom** I think you can **depend** .

我认为他是你可以依靠的人。

e. The goal **for which** he had **fought** all his life no longer seemed important to him.

他毕生为之奋斗的目标现在对他来说似乎并不重要了。

f. The girl **with whom** you **work** is his girlfriend.

和你一起工作的那个女孩是他的女朋友。

g. Let me say how grateful I am to all those who supported me and supported the cause **for which** we have **fought**.

h. We must preserve the freedoms **for which** our ancestors **fought**.

2) 定语从句中的形容词。所选介词与形容词构成短语。（比较常见）

a. When they come back from Spain, they will pass along their fresh impressions to the groups **in which** they are **active**.

他们回国后会将对西班牙的新鲜印象与自己积极参与的几个小组内的成员进行交流。

b. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those **with which** we are **familiar** on land.

据我们推测，这些水底声音的意义同我们所熟悉的陆地上的声音的意义相似。

c. Dolphins might be trained to cooperate with fishermen and help them by finding, tracking, herding, or even catching fish... **in** all of **which** activities dolphins are **expert**.

可以训练海豚来与渔民们合作，帮他们找到或是跟踪鱼群，或把鱼聚集成群，甚至是捕鱼，这些活动都是海豚所擅长的。

d. He referred me to some reference books **with which** I am not very **familiar** . 他让我参考的几本书我一本也不熟悉。

3) 定语从句中的名词。所选介词需要与名词搭配，如attention to。（较少用）

I am sending you an inquiry, **to which** your prompt **attention** is highly appreciated. 兹寄去询价单一纸，望尽快办理，不胜感激。

## 17 根据先行词来判断介词 Track17

所选用的介词与先行词构成固定搭配。比如：at the rate, in the direction, to the extent, to the degree, at the temperature, with ease, by the means等。

先看两个简单句：

About a thousand species of animals are in danger of extinction. They are being destroyed at this rate and the rate has increased.

约有1,000种动物濒临灭绝。它们目前正在以这样的速度遭到残害，而且这个速度还在加快。

我们现在要明确说是什么速度在增加：the rate（接定语）has increased，所以用they are being destroyed at this rate 作定语修饰the rate。我们便得到：

The rate (they are being destroyed at which ) has increased.

连词要放在从句开头，所以变为：

The rate ( at which they are being destroyed) has increased.

最后，我们得出一个标准的定语从句，如下：

a. About a thousand species of animals are in danger of extinction, and the rate at which they are being destroyed has increased.

约有1,000种动物濒临灭绝，而且遭到残害的速度日益加剧。

以下更多例句，请认真分析：

b. When television was first introduced, **the extent to which** it would affect society could not have been foreseen.

最早发明电视的时候，人们并没有预见到它会对人类社会产生重大影响。

c. It is useful to be able to predict the extent \_\_\_\_\_ which a price change will affect supply and demand.

A. from

B. with

C. to

D. for

正确答案：C。

d. It is the way we understand the world and **the means by which** we shape it.

这就是我们理解这个世界的方式，同时也是我们塑造它的手段。

e. **The speed at which** an animal lives is determined by measuring the rate at which it uses oxygen.

通过测定动物消耗氧气的速率可以确定该动物的生长速度。

f. Americans regard education as the **means by which** the inequalities among individuals are to be erased and **by which** every desirable end is to be achieved.

美国人认为，教育可以消除群体中存在的的天，实现个人的理想。

g. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's **pace at which** they deliver their products.

人们对大多数网络公司的怨言是他们如蜗牛爬行一般的送货速度。

h. The pressure from spending in turn determines the **ease with which** prices increase. 来自消费的压力转而又决定了价格上涨的快慢。

i. The ease \_\_\_\_\_ the fish can be collected from the shore has almost resulted in its extinction.

- A. which
- B. with what
- C. with which
- D. with that

正确答案：C。

j. By bringing about a great leap in the **speed and ease with which** information moves from place to place, the Internet has greatly accelerated the rate of scientific and technological changes.

互联网使信息传递更快捷、方便，由此大大加速了科技变革的进程。

## 18 表示所属关系或部分与整体关系时用介词of Track18

先行词与从句表示所属关系或部分与整体关系时，关系词前的介词常用of，此时of要前置。

a. I bought a book **of which the author** is a farmer. =  
...the author of which...

b. The company, **of which** Max Harrison was until recently **the chairman**, has made loss of three million pounds this year.

这家公司今年亏损达三百万英镑，直到前不久马克斯·哈里森还是它的董事长。

c. I saw two dwarfs at the circus **of whom neither** was over three feet tall. = ...neither of whom...

d. The total cultivated area is 13,000 acres, \_\_\_\_\_ 10,000 acres are irrigated fields.

- A. which
- B. of which
- C. in that
- D. of that

正确答案：B。

分析：在13,000英亩中有10,000英亩是需要灌溉的田地，描述的正是部分与整体关系，所以选B。

e. The course normally attracts 20 students per year, \_\_\_\_\_ up to half will be from overseas.

- A. in which
- B. for whom
- C. with which
- D. of whom

正确答案：D。

分析：同样表示部分与整体的关系，相当于up to half of the 20 students，所以选D。

与此结构类似的有：a number of whom/which, half of whom/which, the youngest of whom等，即限定词（some, any, none, all, both, several, enough, neither） / 数字 / 最高级+ of whom/of which的结构。



## 19 in which to do结构 Track19

“介词+关系代词”这一定语从句结构，可以简化成不定式。请比较：

a. The farmer used wood to build a house **in which he could store grains**.

b. The farmer used wood to build a house **in which to store grains**.

进一步简化为：

c. The farmer used wood to build a house **to store grains in**.

用这一结构时我们应注意以下几点：

1) 若没有与关系代词搭配的介词，我们不能采用这一结构。

I can't think of anybody **whom** to invite.\*

2) 有介词和关系代词，不能将介词置于句末。

The farmer used wood to build a house **which** to store grains **in**.\*

3) “介词+关系代词”不能用一个关系副词来替换。

The farmer used wood to build a house **where** to store grains.\*

再看下例：

a. We moved to the country so that the kids would have a garden \_\_\_\_.

- A. in which to play
- B. to play with
- C. to play in
- D. to play
- E. where to play
- F. which to play
- G. which to play in

正确答案：A, C。

b. The professor could hardly find sufficient grounds\_\_\_\_\_his arguments in favor of the new theory.

- A. to be based on
- B. to base on
- C. which to base on
- D. on which to base

正确答案：D。

**思考与总结：**

1) 本节三种判断关系代词前面的介词的方法，以第一、第二种方法最常用。

2) 如何决定用第一种方法还是用第二种方法关键要熟悉各种短语的介词搭配，这是前提。

① 如果先行词是普通的名词（如book没有什么介词与其构成固定的搭配），则一般可考虑采用第一种方法：分析与定语从句中的某个

动词、形容词或名词构成固定搭配的介词。例如：

He referred me to some reference books **with which** I am not very **familiar**.

② 对于较为特殊的先行词，如上文提到的extent (to the extent), means (by the means), ease (with ease), rate (at the rate), pace (at the pace)等，则可考虑第二种方法：选择与先行词构成固定搭配的介词。

### 3) 介词的位置。

① 与动词和形容词搭配的介词：可前置（置于关系代词前），也可后置（分别紧跟在动词或形容词后面）。但若将介词后置，即置于定语从句中，则句子显得较为松散，所以最好还是前置，使句子紧凑。

② 其他情形的介词一般都只能前置（所使用的介词要放在which, whom或whose的前面）。

## 第五节 that/which 与名词从句和定语从句

### 20 that在名词从句与定语从句中 Track20

请比较that在名词从句与定语从句中的区别：

1) 在名词从句中，that不充当句子成分，所以that后面一定要接完整的陈述句。

2) 在定语从句中，that一定充当句子成分，如作主语、宾语或表语，所以that后面接不完整的陈述句。

a. The rumor that he spread everywhere turned out to be untrue.

b. The rumor that Tom was a thief turned out to be untrue.

以上两句从句的先行词都是the rumor，连接词都是that。

但a句中的that在从句he spread everywhere中作成分，充当spread的宾语，故该从句为定语从句。b句中的that在从句Tom was a thief中不作任何成分。从句Tom was a thief是一个完整的句子，不缺任何成分，故b句为同位语从句，作the rumor的同位语，补充说明the rumor的具体内容。

c. The fact that we talked about is very important. (that作talked about的宾语，定语从句)

d. The fact that he succeeded in the experiment pleased everybody. (that不充当成分，同位语从句)

e. The fact that there are no lives on the moon is known to us all. (同位语从句)

f. The fact **that** you pointed out made me interested. (定语从句)

注意，f句可改写为：The fact **which** you pointed out made me interested. 若是同位语从句，则不能把that换成which。

## 21 which在名词从句与定语从句中 Track21

请比较which在名词从句与定语从句中的区别：

1) 在名词从句中，which作为限定词，不能单独使用，必须是“which +名词”。

2) 在定语从句中，which通常作为关系代词单独使用，且在定语从句中充当成分。

a. You should vote for which candidate you assume best.  
(宾语从句)

b. Anger is a wind which blows out the lamp of the mind.  
(定语从句)

愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。

c. Yet no firm evidence had come to light \_\_\_\_\_ the men arrested were actually responsible.

A. which

B. as

C. what

D. that

正确答案：D。

分析：这是一个同位语从句，所以关系词不能用which。因为从句中不缺任何成分，所以不能用what。所以选D。

## 第六节 各种复杂定语从句

### 22 各种复杂定语从句 Track22

有时，在较难的英语文章里或较高级别的英语考试中，定语从句并非像“名词/代词+定语从句”这样的简单结构，而是会出现各种复杂的结构。造成定语从句结构复杂的主要原因有：

#### (1) 定语从句后置

在前面也提到过，有时定语从句不是紧跟在先行词后边，而是被其他修饰成分隔开。这时，往往会造成不知道定语从句到底修饰哪部分的疑惑。

a. Consequently, **nothing** seems good **that does not accord with the interests of the people** . 因此，只有符合人民利益的事物才是好的。

分析：定语从句是修饰nothing的，此句还含有双重否定nothing... that does not...的结构，增加了理解的困难。

b. It is **the interaction** between people rather than the events that occur in their lives **that is the main focus of social psychology**.

社会心理学研究的核心不是发生在人们日常生活中的事件，而是人们之间的相互作用与影响。

分析：这句话中有一个很重要的提示——rather than（而不是），被定语从句所修饰的成分不会在rather than后边。介词短语between people用来修饰interaction，再结合定语从句的意思，综合起来我们推断，that从句修饰的是the interaction。

#### (2) 带有插入语的定语从句

所谓带有插入语的定语从句，即指在有些定语从句的关系词后边往往紧跟一个“主谓结构”，但这个“主谓结构”并非从句的主谓语，而是一个表达个人观点的插入语。

a. He ran all the way from the station, **which I thought was** incredible. 他大老远从车站跑过来，我觉得这真让人难以置信。

上面这句定语从句可改写为：..., which, I thought, was incredible.

I thought即为插入语，并非从句中的主谓结构。从句主语是which，谓语是was。

**注意：**定语从句的插入语一般都要紧跟在关系词后边。

b. Tax cuts have been on his mind since he became president of the United States. One of his first acts in government was to announce cuts **which he claimed would** give back \$1.6 trillion to the American people over 10 years.

实施减税是他成为美国总统以来一直想要推行的一项政策。他上台后的第一件事就是宣布这一政策，他声称该项措施在十年之内将会使1.6万亿美元重新回到美国人民的口袋里。

再看下面这道题：

c. This is the woman \_\_\_\_\_ artists said posed as a model for the painting.

A. whose

B. who

C. which

D. whom

**正确答案：**B。



分析：此题关键是要分析出填入的关系词在从句中应充当何种成分。原句可以改写成 “This is the woman \_\_\_\_\_, artists said, posed as a model for the painting.”。所以，artists said只是插入语，posed才是从句的谓语，因此空格处要作主语并且指代the woman。所以选B。

### （3）并列定语从句

所谓并列定语从句，是指两个或两个以上的定语从句通过并列连词and, but或or连接，来共同修饰同一个先行词。

a. Greater expense does not always equal better gift. I would much rather receive a gift that was unique or that I knew my friend had put some thought into rather than something that cost a lot of money but that I didn't need or want. I would much rather receive something that made me laugh, made me reminisce, or fit my personality than something that cost a lot but that I will just throw in my closet and forget about.

礼物并不是价格越高就越贵重。我倒希望收到的礼物是很别致的，或我知道是朋友为我精心准备的，而不是花费很多却不是我所想要或需要的。我希望的是能够让我开心、让我回味过去时光，或是适合我的礼物，而不是价格不菲但看完之后随手就扔到储藏室、抛在脑后的礼物。

b. Friendship is a very difficult thing. It is hard to handle. It creates many different problems. In fact I would say that friendship is as hard to handle as love is, or even marriage. Of course I am not talking about easy-come-easy-go friendship. I'm talking about friends who care deeply about each other, who support each other, and who make life worth living. I'm talking about friends who you can share almost everything with.

### （4）双层定语从句

双层定语从句比较复杂，也很少见到。其特点是：

1) 一个先行词首先被一个限定性定语从句所修饰来表示一个特定的意思。然后，这个“先行词+限定性定语从句”再被另外一个限定性定语从句所修饰。

2) 这两个限定性定语从句是处在不同层次上的，不能用连词and, but或or等来连接，因为这种定语从句并不是像上文讲到的“并列定语从句”那样在同一个先行词后有两个并列的定语从句。

a. He is the only person that we know who speaks so many foreign languages.

第一层定语从句that we know的先行词为the only person。

第二层定语从句who speaks so many foreign languages的先行词为the only person that we know。

b. Dr. Kissinger is the only person (that) we know who can eat caviar with chopsticks.

第一层定语从句的先行词为the only person。

第二层定语从句的先行词为the only person we know。

请看电影《魂断蓝桥》里的一段对白：

c. Mara: What was it you started to tell me in the restaurant that you didn't understand about me?

你刚才在餐馆里想要告诉我的说你不了解我的是什么来着？

Laurie: No use going into it now.

Mara: No, but tell me, please, I'd like to know.

Laurie: Well, it...it struck me as curious ever since I met you, you know, from that very early moment ages ago...you're so young, so lovely, and so defeatist. I mean you don't seem to expect much from life.

Mara: Well, I'll be all right. For instance, I met you, I liked you, and now so soon we have to part, and perhaps we'll never see each other again.

### 定语从句练习

#### 一、单项选择（学会识别先行词）。

1. Another food crop raised by Indians \_\_\_\_\_ strange to the European was called Indian corn.

- A. who were
- B. that were
- C. that was
- D. who was

2. The time is not far away \_\_\_\_\_ modern communications will become widespread in every corner of the world.

- A. as
- B. when
- C. until
- D. before

3. They helped us time and again, \_\_\_\_\_ very kind of them.

- A. who were
- B. which was
- C. that was

D. which were

4. Those guilty of a serious crime \_\_\_\_\_ refuse to reform must be severely punished.

A. which

B. whom

C. when

D. who

5. Helen was much kinder to her youngest child than she was to the others, \_\_\_\_\_ of course, made others jealous.

A. who

B. that

C. what

D. which

## 二、单项选择（常见关系代词用法）。

6. Beer is the most popular drink among male drinkers, \_\_\_\_\_ overall consumption is significantly higher than that of women.

A. whose

B. which

C. that

D. what

7. The residents, \_\_\_\_\_ had been damaged by the flood, were given help by the Red Cross.

- A. all their homes
- B. all who homes
- C. all of whose homes
- D. all of their homes

8. The professor and her achievement \_\_\_\_\_ you told me about are admired by us all.

- A. who
- B. which
- C. that
- D. whom

9. I don't suppose anything happens \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't foresee.

- A. that
- B. which
- C. what
- D. as

10. They shouted with the loudest voice \_\_\_\_\_ they could.

- A. when
- B. that

C. which

D. what

11. This is the best book\_\_\_\_\_on the subject.

A. which there is

B. that there is

C. which is

D. what is

12. What's in a name? That\_\_\_\_\_we call a rose by any other name would smell as sweet.

A. what

B. that

C. which

D. when

13. \_\_\_\_\_I have already mentioned, cardiac surgery is one of the amazing new surgical techniques that have been developed in recent years.

A. Which

B. What

C. As

D. This

14. The meeting was postponed,\_\_\_\_\_was exactly what I wanted.

- A. that
- B. which
- C. and which
- D. this

### 三、单项选择（特殊关系代词）。

15. Such people \_\_\_\_\_ knew Tom thought he was a trustworthy man.

- A. that
- B. which
- C. as
- D. what

16. The British are not so familiar with different cultures and other ways of doing things, \_\_\_\_\_ is often the case in other countries.

- A. as
- B. what
- C. so
- D. that

17. In her time, Isadora Duncan was \_\_\_\_\_ today a liberated woman.

- A. calling what we would
- B. who would be calling

C. what we would call

D. she would call it

18. They lost their way in the forest, and \_\_\_\_\_ made matters worse was that night began to fall.

A. that

B. it

C. what

D. which

19. He is not such a man \_\_\_\_\_ would leave his work half done.

A. who

B. whom

C. as

D. that

20. Water will continue to be \_\_\_\_\_ it is today—next in importance to oxygen.

A. how

B. which

C. as

D. what

21. Much more money has been earned in the past two years than \_\_\_\_\_.



- A. what had anticipated
- B. had expected
- C. had been expected
- D. that what had been expected

22. A microscope can reveal vastly more detail \_\_\_\_\_ is visible to the naked eye.

- A. than
- B. that
- C. which
- D. what

23. He claims to be an expert in astronomy, but in actual fact he is quite ignorant on the subject. \_\_\_\_\_ he knows about it is out of date and inaccurate.

- A. What little
- B. So much
- C. How much
- D. So little

24. Scientists believe the first inhabitants of the Americas arrived by crossing the land bridge that connected Siberia and \_\_\_\_\_ more than 10,000 years ago.

- A. this is Alaska now
- B. Alaska is now

C. is now Alaska

D. what is now Alaska

25. The first people to live in \_\_\_\_\_ Hawaii were the Polynesians, who sailed there in large canoes from other Pacific Islands about 2,000 years ago.

A. now where is

B. what is now

C. it is now

D. now this is

26. \_\_\_\_\_ touching in O. Henry's stories is the gallantry with which ordinary people struggle to maintain their dignity.

A. Most is

B. It mostly is

C. That is most

D. What is most

27. With the introduction of the electric computer, there are no complicated problems \_\_\_\_\_ can be solved.

A. that

B. as

C. but

D. which

28. There are very few rules of grammar \_\_\_\_\_; the exception proves the rule.

- A. that are not with exception
- B. but have exceptions
- C. not having exception to them
- D. not with exception to them

29. \_\_\_\_\_ is generally accepted, economical growth is determined by the smooth development of production.

- A. What
- B. That
- C. It
- D. As

30. In Norway, \_\_\_\_\_ is a Baltic country, you can see the mid-night sun.

- A. which
- B. where
- C. in which
- D. that

31. In some countries, \_\_\_\_\_ are called "public schools" are not owned by the state.

- A. that
- B. which

C. as

D. what

32. In Kuwait, \_\_\_\_\_ there are many oil wells but no rivers, fresh water had to be brought in boats from 100 miles away.

A. which

B. where

C. that

D. what

33. In some countries, \_\_\_\_\_ is called "equality" does not really mean equal rights for all people.

A. which

B. what

C. that

D. one

#### 四、单项选择（关系副词用法）。

34. I know of a number of occasions \_\_\_\_\_ people died from water pollution.

A. which

B. when

C. where

D. while

35. There can't be any life on Venus, \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature is as high as 900° F.

A. which

B. when

C. where

D. there

36. The reason \_\_\_\_\_ he died was lack of medical care.

A. which

B. for that

C. as

D. why

37. He told us how he dealt with the self-interest of countries to bring them into a kind of international accord \_\_\_\_\_ everyone seemed to benefit.

A. where

B. which

C. that

D. what

38. Although he knew little about the large amount of work done in the field, he succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ other more well-informed experimenters failed.

A. which

- B. that
- C. what
- D. where

39. We may encounter situations\_\_\_\_\_this principle cannot be applied.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. what
- D. as

40. This is the shop\_\_\_\_\_I often speak to you.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. of which
- D. in which

41. This is the shop\_\_\_\_\_I often buy foodstuffs.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. of which
- D. to which

42. When you read the book, you'd better make a mark\_\_\_\_\_you have any questions.

- A. at which
- B. where
- C. the place where
- D. in which

五、把下列简单句合并成带有定语从句（介词+关系词）的复合句。

43. He is the man and I think you can depend on him.

44. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those sounds on land and we are familiar with the sounds on land.

45. Agriculture was a step in human progress and subsequently there was not anything comparable to it until our own machine age.

46. When television was first introduced, it would affect society to the extent and the extent could not have been foreseen.

47. It is useful to be able to predict the extent and to the extent a price change will affect supply and demand.

48. Public demonstrations are an effective means and by the means the people can bring social inequalities to the attention of government officials.

49. Americans regard education as the means and by this means the inequalities among individuals are to be erased and by this means every desirable end is to be achieved.

50. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's pace and at this pace they deliver their products.

51. The pressure from spending in turn determines the ease and with ease prices increase.

## 六、单项选择（介词+关系词）

52. When television was first introduced, the extent\_\_\_\_\_it would affect society could not have been foreseen.

- A. what
- B. to which
- C. to that
- D. which

53. TV's influence should be measured not only in terms of immediate change in behavior, but also by the extent\_\_\_\_\_it develops certain views of life.

- A. to which
- B. so that
- C. in which
- D. with which

54. It was luck again, according to Nina, that brought her the role in Mute Wife\_\_\_\_\_she is best known.

- A. as which
- B. which
- C. for which
- D. to which



55. Many critics agree that the novel is an art form\_\_\_\_\_women excel.

- A. in which
- B. to which
- C. of which
- D. by which

56. He is the man\_\_\_\_\_I think you can depend.

- A. in whom
- B. on who
- C. with whom
- D. on whom

57. The goals\_\_\_\_\_he had fought all his life no longer seemed important to him.

- A. against which
- B. for which
- C. which
- D. for that

58. Public demonstrations are an effective means\_\_\_\_\_the people can bring social inequalities to the attention of government officials.

- A. by this
- B. with which

C. by which

D. and which

59. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those \_\_\_\_\_ we are familiar on land.

A. to which

B. with whom

C. with that

D. with which

60. Dolphins might be trained to cooperate with fishermen and help them by finding, tracking, herding, or even catching fish— \_\_\_\_\_ activities dolphins are expert.

A. at all of these

B. in all of which

C. all of which

D. in all of what

61. About a thousand species of animals are in danger of extinction, and the rate \_\_\_\_\_ they are being destroyed has increased.

A. which

B. that

C. what

D. at which

62. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's pace\_\_\_\_\_they deliver their products.

- A. in that
- B. at what
- C. at which
- D. which

63. The buzzard can watch high in the sky the ground for signs of the waste and the dead animals\_\_\_\_\_it feeds.

- A. which
- B. on what
- C. in which
- D. on which

64. She spent all evening talking about her latest book,\_\_\_\_\_none of us had ever heard.

- A. in that
- B. in which
- C. of what
- D. of which

65. Agriculture was a step in human progress\_\_\_\_\_which subsequently there was not anything comparable until our own machine age.

- A. to

- B. for
- C. in
- D. from

66. The pressure from spending in turn determines the ease \_\_\_\_\_ prices increase.

- A. by which
- B. with that
- C. with which
- D. what

67. Oil, \_\_\_\_\_ there are several different types, is used for many purposes by countries all over the world.

- A. which
- B. in which
- C. by which
- D. of which

68. Many countries face some serious problems of land use, \_\_\_\_\_ result from population growth and the demands of modern technological living.

- A. most which
- B. which most
- C. of most which
- D. most of which

69. It is useful to be able to predict the extent \_\_\_\_\_ which a price change will affect supply and demand.

- A. from
- B. with
- C. to
- D. for

70. By bringing about a great leap in the speed and ease \_\_\_\_\_ information moves from place to place, the Internet has greatly accelerated the rate of scientific and technological changes.

- A. with which
- B. which
- C. to which
- D. by which

71. We need a chairman \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. for whom everyone has confidence
- B. in whom everyone has confidence
- C. who everyone has confidence of
- D. whom everyone has confidence on

72. A survey was carried out on the death rate of new-born babies in that region, \_\_\_\_\_ the results were surprising.

- A. as

- B. which
- C. what
- D. of which

73. The classroom is a natural environment\_\_\_\_\_and apply the concept of community service to reduce local crime problems.

- A. which to introduce
- B. to introduce
- C. in which to introduce
- D. which to introduce

74. The science of medicine,\_\_\_\_\_progress has been very rapid lately, is perhaps the most important of all the sciences.

- A. in which
- B. to which
- C. with which
- D. which

## 七、翻译下列短文，认真体会关系词前边的介词用法。

75. A friend is not just someone **to whom** you say "Hello". A friend is a tender shoulder **on which** you can softly cry. A friend is a well **into which** you can pour all your troubles down. A friend is a hand which pulls you up from darkness and despair when all your other "so-called friends" have helped to put you there. A true friend is an ally who can't be moved or bought, a voice which keeps your name alive when others

have forgot. But most of all a friend is a heart, a strong and sturdy wall, for from the hearts of friends there comes the greatest love of all!

76. When we indulge in self-pity, we rob the poor and the suffering of that which is theirs by right and waste it on ourselves, **to whom** it does more harm than good.

#### 八、分析下列**that**引导的是定语从句还是名词从句，并译成汉语。

77. Studies show **that** the things **that** contribute most to a sense of happiness cannot be bought, such as a good family life, friendship and work satisfaction.

78. The ruler of an ancient kingdom wanted to disprove the rumor **that** their wives ruled the men of his domain. He had all the males in his kingdom brought before him and warned **that** any man **that** did not tell the truth would be punished severely. Then he asked all the men **that** obeyed their wives' directions and advice to step to the left side of the hall. All the men did so but one little man **that** moved to the right. "It's good to see," said the king, "**that** we have one real man in the kingdom. Tell these chicken-hearted dunces (傻瓜) why you alone among them stand on the right side of the hall." "Your Majesty," came the reply in a squealing (长而尖锐的声音) voice, "it is because before I left home my wife told me to keep out of crowds."

79. The mere fact **that** most people believe nuclear war would be madness does not mean that it will not occur.

80. An evidence **that** life may have existed on earth 3.8 billions years ago has been discovered in these ancient rocks.

81. When reports came into London Zoo **that** a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.

## 九、分析下列定语从句的结构，并翻译成汉语（各种复杂定语从句）。

82.If there is anything in the world that a young man should be more grateful for than another, it is the poverty which necessitates starting life under very great disadvantage.

83.One of the illusions of life is that the present hour is not the critical, decisive hour. Write it on your heart that every day is the best day of the year. He only is rich who owns the day, and no one owns the day who allows it to be invaded with worry, fret, and anxiety. Finish every day, and be done with it. You have done what you could.

84.Every December we choose ten trends that we think will be the most important influences in the business of technology in the coming year.

85.There are things you would love to hear but you will never hear it from the person from whom you would like to hear it, but don't be deaf to hear it from the person who says it with heart.

86.The 20th century will not be remembered as the era when space was conquered, or the power of the atom harnessed, but that in which were made the first machines having intelligence.

87.Customs inspectors are hard to fool. They see scores of travelers every day. They soon learn how to pick out a person who may be smuggling something across the border. The clue may be in the way the person walks. Or it may be in the way he talks. Or it may be just a strange feeling the inspector has that makes him suspect a person of smuggling.

## 十、单项选择。



88. Many students face problems when they have to study a subject \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. that they think it is difficult
- B. that they think is difficult
- C. which they think that is difficult
- D. they think it is difficult

89. He has made a discovery, \_\_\_\_\_ of great importance to the progress of science and technology.

- A. I think which is
- B. which I think is
- C. which I think it is
- D. of which I think it is

90. They pointed out the damage \_\_\_\_\_ had been done by last night's storm.

- A. which they supposed
- B. which they supposed that
- C. they supposed that
- D. that they supposed which

91. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ we supposed was drowned came back.

- A. who
- B. whom

C. as

D. which

92. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ we supposed drowned came back.

A. what

B. that

C. as

D. which

93. Water enters into a great variety of chemical reactions, \_\_\_\_\_ have been mentioned in previous pages.

A. a few of what

B. a few of which

C. a few of that

D. a few of them

94. shrewd people \_\_\_\_\_ he described in his novel are to be found everywhere.

A. Such/like

B. Such/as

C. So/like

D. So/as

95. The Great Wall is the place \_\_\_\_\_ almost all tourists would like to visit when they come to Beijing.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. of which
- D. in which

96. He didn't have a good command of spoken English, \_\_\_\_\_ made it difficult for him to get a good job.

- A. that
- B. which
- C. what
- D. this

97. Collin's struggle to make a place for herself in ballet is the kind of life story \_\_\_\_\_ a fascinating novel might be written.

- A. of that
- B. about which
- C. by whom
- D. for whom

98. The quality of teaching should be measured by the degree \_\_\_\_\_ the students' potentiality is developed.

- A. of which
- B. with which
- C. in which

D. to which

99. Basic research provides the capital fund of scientific knowledge, \_\_\_\_\_ which the applied researchers draw to give society a rich rate of interest.

A. on

B. out

C. up

D. back

100. Hiram Revels, the first Black member of the United States Senate, served as senator from Mississippi, an office \_\_\_\_\_ he was elected in 1870.

A. which

B. to which

C. and which

D. at which

101. They will move into the new house next Friday, \_\_\_\_\_ it will be completely furnished.

A. by the time

B. by which time

C. by that time

D. by this time

102. The tall rectangular buildings may well give way to a more complex and exciting shape providing areas \_\_\_\_\_ which

the individual can fully identify himself.

- A. to
- B. for
- C. with
- D. by

103. The professor can hardly find sufficient grounds\_\_\_\_\_his argument in favor of the new theory.

- A. which to base on
- B. on which to base
- C. to base on which
- D. which to be based on

104. We can separate oil into the chemical compounds\_\_\_\_\_it is composed.

- A. of which
- B. with which
- C. in which
- D. from which

105. We have found a useful compound\_\_\_\_\_we can separate some important elements.

- A. of which
- B. with which

C. in which

D. from which

106. I've kept up a friendship with a girl who I was at school \_\_\_\_\_ twenty years ago.

A. about

B. since

C. till

D. with

107. This is an exciting area of study, and one \_\_\_\_\_ which new applications are being discovered almost daily.

A. from

B. by

C. in

D. through

108. Noise in a room may be reduced by carpeting, draperies, and upholstered furniture, \_\_\_\_\_ absorb sound.

A. which they all

B. of them all

C. all of which

D. of all which

109. After the First World War, the author Anais Nin became interested in the art movement known as Surrealism and in psychoanalysis, both\_\_\_\_\_her novels and short stories.

- A. in which the influence
- B. of which influenced
- C. to have influence
- D. its influence in

110. I don't think the number of people\_\_\_\_\_this happens is very large.

- A. when
- B. to whom
- C. that
- D. of which

111. Anthony Jason,\_\_\_\_\_Louis succeeded in the experiment, was a friend of mine.

- A. with the help from whom
- B. with whose help
- C. with the help of his
- D. with his help

112. He's written a book\_\_\_\_\_the name I've completely forgotten.

- A. whose

- B. which
- C. of which
- D. that

113. Watercolor provides a brilliant transparency and freshness, \_\_\_\_\_ it allows extraordinarily free brushwork.

- A. that
- B. during
- C. which
- D. and

114. Mahalia Jackson, \_\_\_\_\_ combined powerful vitality with great dignity, was one of the best-known gospel singers in the United States.

- A. it was her singing
- B. which songs
- C. who sang
- D. whose singing

115. Mr. Jones, \_\_\_\_\_ John was working, was very generous about overtime payment.

- A. for whom
- B. for who
- C. whom



D. for that

116. This is the faith\_\_\_\_\_I come back.

A. in which

B. with which

C. on which

D. in that

117. It was he\_\_\_\_\_we had the greatest faith.

A. in whom

B. that

C. with whom

D. who

118. Arthur Miller's play Death of a Salesman is the tragic story of a man destroyed by his own hollow values and those of the society\_\_\_\_\_.

A. he lives in which

B. in which he lives

C. which in he lives

D. in that he lives

119. In the United States, a primary election is a method\_\_\_\_\_voters select the nominees for public office.

A. in that

B. by which

C. by those

D. is that

120. Emily Dickinson's garden was a place \_\_\_\_\_ great inspiration for her poems.

A. that she drew

B. by drawing her

C. from which she drew

D. drawn from which

121. We moved to the new house in the suburbs so that the kids would have a garden \_\_\_\_\_.

A. in which to play

B. to play with

C. to play

D. where to play

122. He showed me a book, \_\_\_\_\_ I could tell that it was pretty old.

A. which cover

B. of which cover

C. the cover which

D. from the cover of which

123. Solomon was diligent, responsible and hardworking, \_\_\_\_\_ he was promoted from a clerk to a manager.

- A. for which
- B. which
- C. for
- D. that

124. — Did the audience participate in the party?

— Yes, the actors \_\_\_\_\_ to involve the audience were successful.

- A. whom it was the function
- B. of which the function was
- C. whose function it was
- D. whose were the function

125. The doctors all blamed the irresponsible boy \_\_\_\_\_ to protect the little girl.

- A. it was he that was
- B. whose duty was it
- C. it was whose duty
- D. whose duty it was

126. The project requires more labor than \_\_\_\_\_ because it is extremely difficult.

- A. has been put in
- B. have been put in
- C. being put in
- D. to be put in

127. He often sat in a small bar drinking considerably more than \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. he was in good health
- B. his good health was
- C. his health was good
- D. was good for his health

128. The costs of distribution and sales make up a large part of prices that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. all products are paid for
- B. are paid for all products
- C. for all products paid
- D. for which all products paid

129. Without facts we can't form a worthwhile opinion for we need to have factual knowledge \_\_\_\_\_ our thinking.

- A. upon which to base
- B. which to base upon
- C. which to be based on

D. to which to be based

130. Many people are unaware that prairies once existed \_\_\_\_\_ is now the state of Michigan.

A. in what

B. in that

C. in which

D. where

131. His great grandmother was among the last to settle in \_\_\_\_\_ is now the famous mountain resort.

A. that

B. where

C. which

D. what

132. More middle-aged persons suffer from heart trouble than \_\_\_\_\_.

A. it generally is realized

B. is generally realized

C. generally it is realized

D. generally is realized

133. The Social Security Retirement Program is made up of two trust funds, \_\_\_\_\_ could go penniless by next year.

A. the larger one

- B. the larger of which
- C. the largest one
- D. the largest of which

134. Living in the central Australian desert has its problems, \_\_\_\_\_ obtaining water is not the least.

- A. of which
- B. for which
- C. as
- D. whose

135. Poverty is also threatening the company's most valuable resource, its staff, \_\_\_\_\_

- A. who are increasingly being lured
- B. which is increasingly being lured
- C. lured increasingly
- D. to be increasingly lured

136. So quickly are science and technology advancing \_\_\_\_\_ is a possibility today may be a reality tomorrow.

- A. which
- B. what
- C. that which
- D. that what

137. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to all, gases expand and contract with the increase and decrease of temperature.

- A. Which
- B. As
- C. That
- D. It

138. Obviously there was little certainty \_\_\_\_\_ the chairman would agree to this proposal.

- A. which
- B. why
- C. what
- D. that

139. — Do you like the book your father gave you?

— Very much. It's exactly \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted.

- A. one which
- B. that
- C. one what
- D. the one

140. He never sells such books \_\_\_\_\_ are considered harmful to the readers.

- A. that

- B. as
- C. which
- D. what

141. Physics is the present-day equivalent of \_\_\_\_\_ used to be called natural philosophy, \_\_\_\_\_ which most of present-day science arose.

- A. what, from
- B. that, from
- C. which, of
- D. what, with

142. Many birds have feathers \_\_\_\_\_ with their surroundings.

- A. colors blend
- B. that colors blend
- C. whose colors blend
- D. of which the colors that blend

143. Civil rights are the freedoms and rights \_\_\_\_\_ as a member of a community, state, or nation.

- A. may have a person
- B. a person who may have
- C. a person may have
- D. and a person may have



144. The computer has dramatically affected \_\_\_\_\_ photographic lenses are constructed.

- A. is the way
- B. that the way
- C. which way do
- D. the way

145. Despite its wide range of styles and instrumentation, country music has certain common features \_\_\_\_\_ its own special character.

- A. give it that
- B. that give it
- C. that give
- D. that gives it to

146. Mango trees, \_\_\_\_\_ densely covered with glossy leaves and bear small fragrant flowers, grow rapidly and can attain heights of up to 90 feet.

- A. whose
- B. which are
- C. are when
- D. which

147. The computer has brought about surprising technological changes \_\_\_\_\_ we organize and produce information.

- A. in a way
- B. in the way
- C. in that way
- D. in no way

148. In the early twentieth century, the "Model T" automobile was mass-produced and sold at a price\_\_\_\_\_could afford.

- A. the average person who
- B. that the average person who
- C. and the average person
- D. the average person

149. There are many copper mines in the state of Arizona, \_\_\_\_\_contributes significantly to the state's economy.

- A. a fact
- B. which fact
- C. whose fact
- D. that

150. \_\_\_\_\_, dolphins have no sense of smell.

- A. As known as far
- B. Known thus far as
- C. It is known as far

D. As far as is known

151. Speech has to be triggered and this depends on interaction between the mother and the child, \_\_\_\_\_ the mother recognizes the cues and signals in the child's crying, smiling, and responds to them.

A. when

B. which

C. why

D. where

152. Giant pandas resemble bears in shape and in \_\_\_\_\_.

A. it is a slow, clumsy way to walk

B. the slow, clumsy way that they walk

C. they walk in a slow, clumsy way

D. their slow walk is clumsy

## 十一、辨别改错。

153. Members of a nation's foreign service represent that country's interests abroad (A) and report on (B) the conditions, trends, and policies of the country which (C) they are (D) stationed.

154. Many species can communicate (A) an amazing amount of information via (B) sound, information which (C) both the life of an individual and the continued (D) existence of the species may depend.

155. Most (A) of the food what (B) elephants eat is brought (C) to their mouths by their (D) trunks.

156. It is perhaps not an exaggeration to say (A) that we shall soon be trusting (B) our health, wealth and happiness to elements with whom (C) very names the general public are (D) unfamiliar.

157. Traditionally, ethnographers and linguists have paid (A) little attention to cultural interpretations given to (B) silence, or to (C) the types of social contexts in which tends (D) to occur.

158. Light rays what (A) enter the eye must be focused onto (B) a point on the retina in order for (C) a clear visual image to form (D) .

159. Carson McCullers was only (A) 23 when she published (B) her first novel, The Heart Is a Lonely Hunter for what (C) she received much (D) acclaim.

160. A mirage is an atmospheric (A) optical illusion in what (B) an observer sees a nonexistent body of water or (C) an image of some object (D) .

161. Humus, a substance found (A) in soil, is soft and spongy (B) and enables plant roots to send out tiny hairs through that (C) they (D) absorb water and food.

162. They pointed out (A) the damage which (B) they supposed that (C) had been done by last night's (D) storm.

163. There are many (A) valuable services which the public are willing to pay for (B) , but which does (C) not bring a return in money (D) to the community.

164. Mercury's velocity is so much (A) greater than the Earth's (B) that it completes more than four revolutions

around the Sun in the time that (C) takes the Earth to complete one (D) .

165. Vaccines for some (A) rare diseases are given only to persons which (B) risk exposure (C) to the disease (D) .

166. This is the most important respect which (A) civilized man (B) can be distinguished from (C) primitive communities (D) .

167. Doppler radar can be used to determine the direction (A) which (B) the particles (C) of a cloud are moving (D) .

168. By (A) 1860 the railroad of the United States had (B) 3,000 miles of track (C) , three-quarters of which it (D) was east of the Mississippi River and north of the Ohio River.

169. Eleanor Roosevelt set (A) the standard which (B) the wives of all United States (C) Presidents since (D) have been evaluated.

170. There is a delicate (A) balance of nature which (B) many square miles of ocean and vegetation and clean air are needed (C) to maintain only a relatively few (D) human beings.

171. Ripe fruit is (A) often stored in a place where (B) contains much (C) carbon dioxide so that (D) the fruit will not decay too rapidly.

172. About a thousand species of (A) animals are in danger of (B) extinction, and the rate which (C) they are being destroyed (D) has increased.

173. When television (A) was first (B) introduced, the extent to what (C) it would affect society could not have

been foreseen (D) .

174. Public demonstrations are an (A) effective means which (B) the people can bring social inequalities (C) to the attention of government (D) officials.

175. The speed at what (A) an animal lives is determined (B) by measuring (C) the rate at which (D) it uses oxygen.

176. Americans regard education as (A) the means which (B) the inequalities among individuals are to be (C) erased and by which every desirable end is to be achieved (D) .

177. A frequent criticism (A) of most online companies (B) has been the snail's pace to which (C) they deliver their (D) products.

178. By bringing about (A) a great leap in the speed and ease with what (B) information moves from place to place, the Internet has greatly (C) accelerated the rate of scientific (D) and technological changes.

179. For each (A) enzyme (酶) reaction there (B) is an optimum (最适宜的) temperature which (C) maximum efficiency (D) is achieved.

180. The term "metabolism (新陈代谢)" refers (A) to the chemical changes (B) which (C) living (D) things transform food into energy.

181. The outer layer (A) of the heart, called (B) the pericardium, forms (C) a sac in what (D) the heart lies.

### 定语从句练习答案

一~四、单项选择。

1-5: CBBDD

6-10: ACCAB

11-15: BCCBC

16-20: ACCCD

21-25: CAADB

26-30: DCBDA

31-35: DBBBC

36-42: DADACAB

五、把下列简单句合并成带有定语从句（介词+关系词）的复合句。

43. He is the man on whom I think you can depend.

44. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those with which we are familiar on land.

45. Agriculture was a step in human progress to which subsequently there was not anything comparable until our own machine age.

46. When television was first introduced, the extent to which it would affect society could not have been foreseen.

47. It is useful to be able to predict the extent to which a price change will affect supply and demand.

48. Public demonstrations are an effective means by which the people can bring social inequalities to the attention of government officials.

49. Americans regard education as the means by which the inequalities among individuals are to be erased and by which every desirable end is to be achieved.

50. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's pace at which they deliver their products.

51. The pressure from spending in turn determines the ease with which prices increase.

## 六、单项选择（介词+关系词）。

52-55: BACA

56-60: DBCDB

61-65: DCDDA

66-70: CDDCA

71-74: BDCA

## 七、翻译下列短文，认真体会关系词前边的介词用法。

75. 朋友，不仅仅是一个见了面你会对他说声“你好”的人。朋友，是你能依偎着轻轻哭泣的温柔肩膀。朋友，是能容纳你所有烦恼的一口深井。朋友，是当你被那些“所谓的朋友”抛弃时，把你从黑暗和绝望中解救出来的一只手。真正的朋友，是赶不走也收买不了的支持者，是一个永远回荡着你的名字的声音，即使其他人已将你遗忘。最重要的是，朋友是一颗心，一堵坚实的墙，而正是因为有了这些朋友的一片心，才使我们拥有伟大的爱！

76. 如果我们沉溺于自怨自怜中，就等于是把本该属于贫苦之人和悲痛之人的权利浪费在我们自己身上，这对我们实在是百弊而无一利。

## 八、分析下列that引导的是定语从句还是名词从句，并译成汉语。

77. Studies show that... 宾语从句



the things that contribute... 定语从句

研究表明，真正让我们感到幸福的东西是金钱无法买到的，比如美满的家庭生活、纯真的友谊和工作上的称心如意。

78. the rumor that... 同位语从句

warned that... 宾语从句

any man that... 定语从句

all the men that... 定语从句

one little man that... 定语从句

see that we have... 宾语从句

古时候，有位国王，他想证明在他统治的国度里并非像人们谣传的那样：妇人统治丈夫。他把王国里所有的男人都召到跟前，并警告说，如果谁不说实话将遭到严厉的惩罚。然后，他让所有听从夫人命令的男人站到大殿的左侧。结果所有的男人都去了左边，只有一个矮小的男人站在右边。“太好了，”国王说，“我们的国度里还有一个真正的男人。告诉那些傻瓜们，你为什么站在右边。”“陛下，”他尖着嗓子说，“我出门之前，夫人有令，人多的地方不能去。”

79. 同位语从句

尽管大多数人认为核战争是愚蠢的行为，但这并不意味着核战不会爆发。

80. 同位语从句

生命早在38亿年前就已经存在于地球的证据在这些古老的岩石中被发现了。

81. 同位语从句

当把在伦敦以南45英里处发现有一只美洲狮出没的消息通知伦敦动物园时，人们对此并没有重视。

## 九、分析下列定语从句的结构，并翻译成汉语（各种复杂定语从句）。

82. 对于青年人来说，如果世上真的有什么事物是他应该最为感激的，那就是贫穷，因为贫穷能促使他在非常恶劣的环境下开创生活。

**分析：**本句包含两个定语从句。一个是不定代词anything后that引导的定语从句，a young man should be more grateful for than another，注意此定语从句与其先行词被介词短语in the world分隔开来。另一个定语从句是which necessitates starting life under very great disadvantage，用来修饰先行词the poverty，其中引导词which在定语从句中作主语。

83. 在生活中，我们往往有一种错觉：认为眼下的每一个时刻并不是关键的、决定性的时刻。其实，应该牢记每天都是一年中最好的一天。拥有了今天的人才是一个富有的人。如果是让担心、焦虑和烦恼充斥着自己每一天，那就意味着你浪费了这一天。过好每一天，收获每一天。做好该做的。

**分析：**本句包含两个定语从句。分句he only is rich who owns the day中，第一个定语从句修饰人称代词he。分句 no one owns the day who allows it to be invaded with worry, fret, and anxiety 中，第二个定语从句修饰no one。

84. 在每年的十二月，我们要选出对来年的科技产业将会产生巨大影响的十大趋势。

**分析：**先行词为ten trends，定语从句为that we think will be the most important influences in the business of technology in the coming year，其中，引导词that在定语从句中作宾语。

85. 有些你想听的东西，可能永远无法从你希望能说出它的那个人口中听到，但是也不要对那些真心说出的话充耳不闻。

**分析：**本句包含三个定语从句。there are things you would love to hear but you will never hear it from the person from whom you would like to hear it，这句中包含两个定语从句，两个

定语从句的先行词分别为things和the person，其中第一个定语从句省略了引导词that或which（作宾语），第二个定语从句的引导词为from whom。don't be deaf to hear it from the person who says it with heart, who引导的定语从句修饰the person, who在定语从句中作主语。

86. 20世纪不会被人们铭记为征服了太空或是利用了原子动力的世纪，而是被铭记为制造了首批智能化机器的世纪。

分析：第一个定语从句when space was conquered, or the power of the atom harnessed先行词是the era。第二个定语从句in which were made the first machines having intelligence先行词也是the era，不过为了避免重复，用that指代了the era。所以，这两个定语从句由but连接，修饰同一个先行词the era。还要注意，第二个定语从句in which were made the first machines having intelligence是一个全部倒装的句子，正常语序应是：in which the first machines having intelligence were made，并可进一步还原成：the first machines having intelligence were made in the era (which)。

87. 海关检查人员可不是好骗的。他们每天要检查大量的旅客。他们很快就能学会怎样识别那些从边境走私的人。线索可能是那些人走路的样子，也可能是说话的方式，或者只是凭直觉使他们怀疑某人是在走私。

分析：it may be just a strange feeling the inspector has that makes him suspect a person of smuggling. 是一个双层定语从句。

## 十、单项选择。

88-90: BBA

91-95: ABBBB

96-100: BBDAB

101-105: BCBAD

106-110: DCCBB

111-115: BCDDA

116-120: BABBC

121-125: ADACD

126-130: ADBAA

131-135: DBBAA

136-140: DBDDB

141-145: ACCDB

146-150: BBDBD

151-152: DB

## 十一、辨别改错。

153. C/in which

154. C/on which

155. B/that或which

156. C/with whose

157. D/ in which it tends

158. A/that或which

159. C/for which

160. B/in which

161. C/through which

- 162. C/that去掉
- 163. C/do
- 164. C/that it
- 165. B/who
- 166. A/in which
- 167. B/in which
- 168. D/which
- 169. B/by which
- 170. B/in which
- 171. A/that或which
- 172. C/at which
- 173. C/to which
- 174. B/by which
- 175. A/at which
- 176. B/by which
- 177. C/at which
- 178. B/which
- 179. C/at which
- 180. C/in which
- 181. D/which

## Chapter 3 状语从句



音频

- 23 状语从句的本质
- 24 时间状语从句
- 25 地点状语从句
- 26 原因状语从句
- 27 目的状语从句
- 28 结果状语从句
- 29 so和such的用法区别

30 条件状语从句

31 让步状语从句

32 比较状语从句

33 方式状语从句

## 23 状语从句的本质

英语中的状语从句有九大类，分别可表示时间、地点、原因、结果、目的、条件、让步、比较和方式。尽管数目较多，但并不难理解。

从本质上来讲，状语从句就是用不同的连接词将几个分句连接起来，以表达分句之间特定的逻辑关系。所以，掌握引导九类状语从句的有关连接词的用法是学习状语从句的关键。只要记住连接词就能够识别状语从句的类别，从而正确分析句子结构并理解句子意思。

状语从句的引导词主要有：（它们的用法后文将详细论述）

状语从句种类	常用连接词	特殊连接词
时间状语从句	when, while, as, before, after, since, till, until, as soon as	1. 一些时间名词: the moment, the instant, the minute, the day, next time, every time 2. 一些副词: instantly, immediately, directly 3. 固定搭配的连词: no sooner...than, hardly...when, scarcely...when
地点状语从句	where	wherever, anywhere, everywhere
原因状语从句	because, as, for, since	seeing that, considering that, now that, given that, in that, inasmuch as, insomuch as
目的状语从句	so that, in order that, that	lest, for fear that, in case, in the hope that, on purpose that, for the purpose that, to the end that
结果状语从句	so...that, so that, such...that	such that, to the degree that, to the extent that, to such a degree that, to such an extent that



(续表)

状语从句种类	常用连接词	特殊连接词
条件状语从句	if, unless	suppose, supposing, providing, provided, on condition that, so long as, as long as (特别关注: supposed, provide 不用作条件状语从句的连词)
让步状语从句	although, though, even though, even if	while (一般用在句首), as (用于倒装结构), whatever, whoever, whichever, however, whenever, wherever, whether ...or..., as + adj. + as + 主谓结构 (用在句首)
比较状语从句	as, than	其他比较句型: the more...the more..., just as...so..., A is to B what/as C is to D, no more...than, not A so much as B/not so much A as B
方式状语从句	as, the way	

## 24 时间状语从句 Track23

### (1) when +短暂动词

1) when引导时间状语从句时意思相当于at that time (在……时刻)，从句谓语动词通常是短暂动词，表示某一时刻的动作。

a. I'll speak to him when he arrives.

b. I'll tell him about it when he comes back.

c. When I arrived, he was talking on the phone.

d. When I got there, he had already left.

从句谓语动词也可用延续动词，这时从句往往用过去进行时态，表示某一时间段内发生的动作。

e. The doorbell rang when I was telephoning.

在我打电话的时候，门铃突然响了。

2) 请注意when引导时间状语从句时主句和从句的时态搭配，以及不同时态表达的主句动作和从句动作的时间先后关系。

例句	主从句时态	用法解释
<p>I'll speak to him when he <b>arrives</b>.</p> <p>I'll tell him about it when he <b>comes</b> back.</p>	主句一般将来时 + 从句一般现在时	时间状语从句中要用一般现在时表示将来。
<p>I'll give you a call when I <b>have finished</b> the work.</p> <p>工作做完后，我就给你打电话。</p> <p>I'll go when I <b>have had</b> my dinner. 我吃完饭就去。</p>	主句一般将来时 + 从句现在完成时	<p>注意：这种时态搭配一般读者不会注意到。从句中用完成时态是为了强调：<b>在从句动作结束了之后，主句动作才开始发生</b>。如果是：I'll go when I have my dinner. 意思则是“我吃着饭的同时就出去了。”即“我”是端着碗出门的，边走边吃。</p>

<p>I <b>started</b> my dinner when he <b>left/had left</b>.</p> <p>他走了之后，我才开始吃晚饭。</p> <p>He <b>left</b> when I <b>got/had got</b> there.</p> <p>我到了以后，他才离开。</p>	主句一般过去时 + 从句一般过去时或过去完成时	若主从句都用一般过去时，则表示从句动作先发生。所以，从句还可以用过去完成时。
<p>I <b>had started</b> my dinner when he <b>left</b>.</p> <p>他走的时候，我已经开始吃晚饭了。</p> <p>He <b>had already left</b> when I <b>got</b> there.</p> <p>我到的时候，他已经离开了。</p>	主句过去完成时 + 从句一般过去时	与上述相反，若表达主句动作先发生，主句必须用过去完成时。

3) 也可用whenever（无论何时）引导时间状语从句。

a. Whenever you say "I love you", mean it. Whenever you say "I'm sorry", look the person right in the eyes.

无论何时说“我爱你”，请真心诚意。无论何时说“对不起”，请直视对方的眼睛。

b. Whenever someone asks you something you don't want to answer, smile and ask "Why do you want to know?" .

当别人问而你不想回答时，笑着说“你为什么想知道？”。

c. Smile whenever you pick up the phone, for the caller will be able to notice it. 面带微笑地接听电话，因为对方能感觉得到。

## (2) while +延续动词

意思相当于during that time（在……期间），表示某一时间段内发生的动作，因此，从句谓语动词通常用延续动词。

a. The phone rang while I was taking my bath.

b. The doorbell rang while we were watching TV.

c. A detective (侦探) arrested a criminal and was about to handcuff (上手铐) him when a huge gust (一阵狂风) of wind blew the detective's hat off.

“Shall I go and fetch it?” the criminal asked.

“Do you take me for a fool?” asked the detective. “You wait here while I go and get it!” （此句中go和get尽管是短暂动词，但两动词连用表示的是在一段期间的活动。）

d. I was walking along the road \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly someone patted me on the shoulder from behind.

A. immediately

B. when

C. the moment

D. while

正确答案：B。

分析：因为从句的动词patted是一个短暂动作，所以选B。

### (3) until

1) 当主句谓语动词是延续动词时，通常用肯定形式。

a. Wait until he comes back. (wait 为延续性动词)

b. we'll stay here until it stops raining. (stay为延续性动词)

c. When I showed my Dad my report card, I said, "Remember, Dad, Thomas Edison got bad grades in school, too." He said, "Fine, stay in your room until you invent the light bulb (灯泡)." ."

d. Until I came back, he was waiting for me at my home.

2) 若主句谓语动词是短暂动词，则要用否定形式。这就是我们常说的“not...until... (直到……才……)”的结构。

a. I did not realize how special my mother was until I became an adult. 直到我长大成人以后，我才真正懂得母亲是多么不平凡。

b. One will never realize how much and how little he knows until he starts talking. 人们只有在与进行交谈时才知道自己到底懂得多少。

c. Ice cream did not reach America until about the middle of the eighteenth century.

d. I didn't go to bed until 12 o'clock last night.

e. He didn't leave the office until his boss came back.

3) “not...until...” 有四种不同的句式：

### 正常结构:

a. The little boy **didn't** smile **until** he saw his mother.

b. The exact time of dying was **not** of great importance **until** recently.

直到最近，确定死亡的确切时间才 变得尤其重要。（注意翻译）

### until置于句首:

c. **Until** he saw his mother, the little boy **didn't** smile.

d. **Until** recently the exact time of dying was **not of great importance**.

### 倒装结构:

e. **Not until** he saw his mother **did** the little boy smile. (主句倒装)

f. **Not until** recently **was** the exact time of dying **of great importance**.

### 强调结构:

g. **It was not until** he saw his mother **that** the little boy smiled.

h. **It was not until** recently **that** the exact time of dying **was of great importance**.

### 注意:

1) until后接的动词常是短暂性动词。

2) 在“not until...”这个倒装结构中，需要部分倒装的是主句中的谓语动词，而非从句中的谓语动词。

**Not until** she had arrived home **did** she remember her appointment with the doctor.

3) 倒装结构转变成强调结构时, 强调句中的主句谓语不再采用倒装形式。

It was not until she had arrived home that she remembered her appointment with the doctor.

#### (4) “一……就……”

1) 表示“一……就……”的连词有: as soon as, once, the minute, the moment, the instant, immediately, directly, instantly等。

这些连词的用法和句式结构是一样的, 主句和从句时态一般一致。

a. We will leave as soon as it stops raining. 雨一停, 我们就动身离开。

b. It began to rain as soon as I arrived home. 我刚到家, 天就开始下起雨来。

c. It began to rain immediately I arrived home.

d. It began to rain the moment I arrived home.

e. The doorbell rang as soon as we began having dinner.

f. Don't trust those who leave their friends the moment they get into difficulty!

g. You see the lightning\_\_\_\_\_it happens, but you hear the thunder later.

A. the instant

B. for an instant

C. on the instant

D. in an instant

正确答案: A。

分析：因为从句的动作紧接着主句的动作发生，表示“一……就……”，所以选A。

2) hardly/scarcely...when, no sooner...than。主句多用过去完成时，且常倒装，从句用一般过去时。该句型的主句和从句与as soon as 等的从句、主句的位置正好相反。

- a. No sooner had I arrived home than it began to rain.
- b. Hardly/Scarcely had I arrived home when it began to rain.
- c. No sooner had we begun having dinner than the doorbell rang.

#### (5) 表示时间的短语引导的时间状语从句

有一些表示时间的短语也可当作连词来用，引导时间状语从句，如 next time, by the time, every time, each time, the day, the week 等。

- a. The day he returned, his father was already dead.  
在他回来的那天，父亲就已经去世了。
- b. Next time you come, remember to bring along your sister.
- c. Every time I listen to your advice, I get into trouble.
- d. In the classic children's tale, the puppet Pinocchio's nose grows longer every time he tells a lie.

在这个经典的童话故事中，小木偶皮诺曹每次一说谎，鼻子就要长长。

注意：by the time

by the time的意思是“在……之前”，强调的是“一个动作在另外一个动作之前已经完成 (one event is completed before another event)”，因此，by the time后边接从句，而与其搭配的主句要用完成时态。注意下面例句的时态搭配：



by the time 与两种完成时态搭配	
By the time they <b>arrived</b> , we <b>had already left</b> . (那天)他们到了的时候,我们已经先走了。	从句中arrived表示过去动作,对应的主句用过去完成时。
By the time they <b>arrive</b> , <b>we will have already left</b> . 一会儿等他们来的时候,我们就已经离开了。	从句中 arrive 表示将来动作,对应的主句用将来完成时。

## 25 地点状语从句 Track24

(1) 地点状语从句通常由where引导，并且一般放在主句后边。

a. Stay where you are. 待在原处别动。

b. Generally, air will be heavily polluted where there are factories.

一般在有工厂的地方空气污染都会很严重。

c. A driver should slow down where there are schools.

在有学校的地方，司机应缓行。

(2) 也可由wherever, anywhere和everywhere引导地点状语从句。

a. Wherever he happens to be, Clint can make himself at home.

无论在什么地方，克林特总能够无拘无束。

b. Everywhere they appeared, there were ovations.

他们在哪里都受到热烈欢迎。

(3) 地点状语从句若放在句首，往往失去地点含义，翻译时要灵活处理。

a. Wherever there is love, there is also wealth and success!

只要有爱，就会有财富和成功。

b. Where there is pain, we wish you peace and mercy.

当你感到痛苦时，祝福你能保持内心的平静与慈悲。

c. Where there is self-doubt , we wish you a renewed confidence in your ability to work through them.

当你对自己感到怀疑时，祝福你重新找回对自己能力的信心去奋力开创新局面。

d. Where there is tiredness, or exhaustion , we wish you understanding, patience and renewed strength.

当你感到身心疲惫时，祝福你能理解、忍耐，并重新获取力量。

e. Where there is fear, we wish you love and courage.

当你感到恐惧时，祝福你得到爱和勇气。

## 26 原因状语从句 Track25

### (1) 原因状语从句常见连词

我们常用的连词有because, for, as, since。具体区别在《英语语法新思维 基础版2》一书中已有详解，在此不再赘述。

用法	例句
because 语气最强，只有它才能用来回答 why 的问句。所引出的原因往往是听话人所不知道的或最感兴趣的原因。	My friends dislike me because I'm handsome and successful.
since 表示人们已知的事实，无须强调的原因，所以常译成“既然……”。通常放在句首。	a. Since we don't have class tomorrow, why not go out for a picnic? b. Since you are an English major, I guess you can help me with this sentence.

(续表)

用法	例句
as 与 since 的用法差不多，所引出的理由在说话人看来已经很明显，或已为听话人所熟悉而不需要用 because 加以强调。	As Monday is a national holiday, all government offices will be closed.
for 表示推断的理由，对前面分句的内容加以解释或说明。	It rained last night, for the ground is wet this morning. 试比较：Because it rained last night, the ground is wet this morning.

### (2) 用介词表示因果关系

常用的介词有because of, due to (不用在句首), owing to (常用于句首)。

因为是介词, 所以后边只能接名词来表示原因, 而不接从句。请比较:

a. We had an accident because he was careless.

由于他粗心大意, 我们出了车祸。

b. We had an accident due to his carelessness . (不能说... due to he was careless.\*)

c. Owing to his carelessness we had an accident.

### (3) because的否定转移

在主句是否定的情况下, because引导的从句的翻译可分为1) 和2) 两种情形:

1) 两种理解方式:

a. I didn't attend the meeting because he was present , too.

**翻译1:** 因为他也出席, 所以我没有去参加这个会议。

作这种理解时, 原句主句和从句之间应该有一逗号:

I didn't attend the meeting, because he was present , too.

否则可以有如下理解方式:

**翻译2:** 我出席这次会议并不是因为有他参加。

原句相当于: I attended the meeting, not because he was present, too.

这种形式上是否定主句, 但在意思上是否定原因从句的情形我们称之为 **否定转移**。 同样的句子还有:

b. I did not marry her because I loved her.

**翻译1：**因为我爱她，所以我决定不跟她结婚。（不结婚是为了她的幸福）

**翻译2：**我并不是因为爱她才和她结婚。（而是因为她有钱或其他原因）= I married her, not because I loved her but for some other reasons.

2) 只能作为否定转移来理解：

a. I don't study English just because I like to.

**只能翻译为：**我学英文并不只是因为我喜欢英文。（有其他原因，比如工作需要）

b. Certainly I don't teach because teaching is easy for me . Teaching is the most difficult of the various ways I have attempted to earn my living. Nor do I teach because I think I know answers, or because I have knowledge I feel compelled to share.

我选择教书，并不是因为教书对我来说很容易。相反，在我尝试过的众多谋生方式当中，教书对我来说其实是最难的。我选择教书，不是因为我知道答案，也并不是因为我自认为自己学识渊博因而想要急切去炫耀。

我们来看一道托福听力题：

c. He doesn't exercise because he likes to.

A. He likes to exercise by himself.

B. He exercises for reasons other than enjoyment.

C. He's glad he doesn't have to exercise.

D. He doesn't have enough time to exercise.

**正确答案：**B。

**分析：**doesn't否定的不是exercise，而是because引导的原因状语从句中的likes，此时likes应该重读。所以选B。

d. The conference's purpose is to demonstrate that we're all continuing to focus on the economy as the president promised to do when he came into office and that means **not** sitting around and patting yourself on the back **because of** the unemployment and inflation rates being low.

此次会议的目的就是要证明我们正一直致力于发展经济，这正如我们总统上台执政时所承诺的。我们政府并没有因为较低的失业率和通货膨胀率就无所事事，沾沾自喜。

### 3) 其他类似的否定转移

这种否定转移不局限于because引导的原因状语从句。一般来说，句中什么词重读就否定什么词。

a. He won't go to just **any** school.

A. He's the only one who won't go with us.

B. He just won't go to school.

C. He'll probably study in several locations.

D. He's particular about where he goes to school.

正确答案：D。

分析：此句中any重读，即表明“他”并不是随随便便上一个学校就算了，而是对上什么学校是很在乎的（particular），所以选D。

b. I didn't write that memo to the department chair to **amuse** myself.

A. I wrote a funny letter to department chair.

B. I don't think the department will write me a letter.

C. The department chair was amused by my letter.

D. I wrote to the department chair about a serious matter.

正确答案：D。

c. I **didn't spend** three hours repairing your vacuum so it could sit in the closet.

我花了三小时把你的吸尘器修理好并不是为了把它放在储藏室不用。

#### (4) 其他复合连词表示原因

1) seeing (that), now (that), considering (that), given (that)与since相近，它们都有“鉴于某个事实，考虑到……”的意思。

a. **Seeing that** it's raining hard, we'll have to stay here for the night.

b. They did the job very well, **considering that** they had no experience.

c. **Given that** they are inexperienced, they've done a good job.

d. **Now that** the semester is finished, I'm going to rest a few days and then take a trip.

e. **Now that** you are sixteen, you can get a driver's license.

2) in that的基本意思是“原因就在于……”，其引导的从句要放在主句后边，而且主句通常是在做比较。

a. The girl is like her mother **in that** she also has very delicate feeling. 这个女孩很像她妈妈，原因在于她的感情也很细腻。

b. Britain's press is unusual **in that** it is divided into two very different types of newspaper: the quality press and the popular press.

英国报业与众不同，原因就在于它的报纸分为内容严肃的大报和通俗报纸两种截然不同的类型。



c. Mercury differs from other industrial metals **in that** it is a liquid. 水银不同于其他种类的工业金属，原因就在于它是液体的。

d. Liquids are like solids \_\_\_\_\_ they have a definite volume.

- A. in that
- B. for that
- C. with that
- D. at that

正确答案：A。

e. Lhasa is unique \_\_\_\_\_ it is the highest city in China.

- A. on that
- B. so that
- C. for that
- D. in that

正确答案：D。

3) not that...but that意思是“不是因为……而是因为……”。

I haven't finished writing the report yet, **not that** I'm lazy, **but that** I have no time.

4) 此外inasmuch as, insomuch as, in as much as, in so much as也可表原因，但显得比较文绉绉，不太常用，通常只用于很正式的书面语或演讲中。

**Inasmuch as** the two government leaders could not reach an agreement, the possibilities for peace are still remote.

## 27 目的状语从句 Track26

### (1) 目的状语从句常见引导词

常用的连词有so that, in order that或that。从句中常含有情态动词may/might, shall/should, will/would, can/could等。

a. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.

小的时候,我常常睡觉时带着手电筒上床,这样我可以偷看连环画册而不被父母发现。

b. I spoke slowly and clearly so that/in order that the audience could understand me.

c. They carved the words on the stone so that/in order that the future generation should remember what they had done.

d. We climbed high (so) that we might get a better view.

e. The teacher raised his voice in order that the students in the back could hear more clearly.

f. I turned off the TV (in order) that my roommate could study in peace and quiet. 我关掉了电视,好让我的室友安静地学习。

从句一般位于主句之后。但需要强调目的状语从句,可将so that, in order that置于句首。

g. In order that the coming generation can learn the martial arts, he has recently devoted much time to writing

books on the subject.

## (2) 目的状语从句的简化

1) In order for + sb. + to do sth.

我们可用这一不定式结构表示目的。

a. I spoke slowly and clearly **in order for the audience to understand me.**

b. They carved the words on the stone **in order for the future generation to remember** what they had done.

c. The teacher raised his voice **in order for the students in the back to hear** more clearly.

d. I turned off the TV **in order for my roommate to study** in peace and quiet.

2) in order to/so as to + do

若目的状语从句主语与主句主语是同一人或物，则可用in order to或 so as to + 动词原形（短语）来表示目的。

a. All the key words in the article are printed in bold type **so as to** attract readers' attention.

b. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me **in order to** read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.

c. I arrived at the cinema early **so as not to** miss the beginning of the film.

d. We climbed high **in order to** get a better view.

e. We climbed high **so as to** get a better view.

f. **In order to** get a better view, we climbed high.

g. **So as to** get a better view, we climbed high.\* (so as to不能置于句首, 只能放在句中; in order to可在句首或句中。)

h. \_\_\_\_\_measure matter we must have units of weight, volume and length.

A. In order

B. In order to

C. So as

D. So as to

正确答案: B。

3) 直接用动词不定式表示目的。

a. **To get** a better view, we climbed high.

b. **To avoid** criticism, do nothing, say nothing, be nothing.

c. **To acquire** knowledge, one must study; but **to acquire** wisdom, one must observe.

d. I'd climb the highest mountain, just **to see** you smile.  
I'd swim the ocean, just **to hold** your hand. I'd run a million miles, just **to be** with you forever.

### (3) 其他引导词

1) lest, for fear (that), in case, 也可以引导目的状语从句, 有时含有否定意义, 可译为“以免, 以防, 生怕……”。

a. Take an umbrella with you **lest** it **should** rain.

b. People evacuated the building **for fear that** the wall **should** collapse.

c. She cleans the window with great care **lest** she **might** break the glass. ( **in order that** she **might not** break the glass)

d. We had a meeting and talked the matter over face to face, **for fear that** there **should be** any misunderstanding. (in order that there **should not be** ...)

我们开了个会来当面谈了这件事，以免发生任何误会。

2) 我们还可用 **in the hope that**, **on purpose that**, **for the purpose that**, **to the end that** 等来表示目的。

The teacher raised his voice **on purpose that** the students in the back could hear more clearly.

## 28 结果状语从句 Track27

### (1) 结果状语从句常见引导词

1) 常用的引导词有so...that, such...that, such that。从句中一般不带情态助动词，且从句都要放在主句之后。

a. Sensible Sam: I saw you pushing your bicycle to work this afternoon.

Foolish Fred: Yes, I was so late that I didn't have time to get on it.

b. A "John Hancock" is a person's signature. John Hancock was the first person to sign the American "Declaration of Independence". He signed it so large and bold that now we use his name to refer to anyone's signature!

c. His anger was so explosive that he lost control of himself.

d. Diplomats and crabs are creatures who move in such a way that it is impossible to tell whether they are coming or going.

e. The sloth pays so little attention to its personal hygiene that green algae grow on its coarse hair and communities of a parasitic moth live in the depths of its coat producing caterpillars which graze on its mouldy hair. Its muscles are such that it is quite incapable of moving at a speed of over a kilometer an hour even over the shortest distances and the swiftest movement it can make is a sweep of its hooked arm. It is virtually dumb and its hearing is so poor that you can let off a gun within inches of it and its only response will be to turn slowly and blink.

树懒极不讲究卫生，以至它粗糙的毛发上生出了绿色的藻类，成群的寄生蛾生长在它的皮毛深处，产下以它的脏毛为食物的毛毛虫。它的肌肉

不能让它哪怕在很短的距离内以每小时一公里的速度移动。它能做的最敏捷的动作就是挥一挥它那弯曲的胳膊。树懒简直就是聋子，听觉能力糟糕透顶，以至于你能在离它几英寸的距离开一枪，而它唯一的反应也只不过是缓缓地扭一下头，眨眨眼。

2) 在such that引导的结果状语从句中，such = so +形容词。

a. His anger was **such that** he lost control of himself.

b. His anger was **so explosive that** he lost control of himself.

c. The weather is **such that** we can only stay in air-conditioned places.

d. The weather is **so hot that** we can only stay in air-conditioned places.

e. The performance was such\_\_\_\_\_the audience was deeply moved.

A. as

B. that

C. so

D. so that

正确答案：B。

## (2) 结果状语从句的简化

我们可以用不定式来简化结果状语从句，句型是such...as to do sth., such as to do sth., so...as to do sth., 注意不要漏掉as。

- a. He was **such** a fool **as to believe** him.
- b. He was **so** foolish **as to believe** him.
- c. Her voice was  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{such as to make everyone stare.} \\ \text{so bad / loud as to...} \end{array} \right.$
- d. His story is \_\_\_\_\_ to arouse our sympathy.

- A. such as
- B. so sad
- C. too sad
- D. such sad as
- E. so sad as

正确答案：A, E。

### (3) 结果状语从句的倒装（考试重点）

such/so... that引导结果状语从句，为了强调，还可以将主句倒装。

a. **So fast does** light travel **that** it is difficult for us to imagine its speed.

原句：Light travels **so fast that** it is difficult for us to imagine its speed.

b. **So terrible was** the storm **that** the roofs were all ripped off.

c. **Such a fool was he that** he believed her.

d. \_\_\_\_\_ **that** the pilot couldn't fly through it.



- A. So the storm was severe
- B. So severe was the storm
- C. The storm so severe was
- D. Such was the storm severe

正确答案：B。

#### (4) 其他短语引导的结果状语从句

这些短语有to the degree (that) , to the extent (that) , to such a degree (that) , to such an extent (that) 。

当它们位于句首表强调时，主句需要倒装。

a. To such an extent did his health deteriorate that he was forced to retire.

b. To such a degree was he excited that he couldn't sleep last night.

c. The bereaved mother was grieved to the degree that she couldn't eat anything for 3 days.

d. To such an extent \_\_\_\_\_ his empty speech that some of us began to doze.

- A. did he go on with
- B. he would go on with
- C. he went on with
- D. he did go on with

正确答案：A。

## 29 so和such的用法区别 Track28

### (1) so的用法

#### 1) so +形容词 / 副词

a. The food is **so bad** in the school cafeteria **that** flies go there to lose weight. 我们学校食堂饭菜的质量太差，连苍蝇都去那儿减肥。

b. The house is **so expensive that** I can't afford to buy it.

#### 2) so +形容词+ a(n) +单数可数名词

a. This is **so expensive a house that** I can't afford to buy it.

b. He is **so patient a teacher that** every one of us likes him.

#### 3) so many/much/few/little +名词

so可以与表示数量的形容词连用，如：many, much, few, little, 然后再接名词。此时不用such，如：so many flowers, so many beautiful flowers, so much patience, so much fun, so few cars, so little care。

Recently in the automobile industry, multinational companies have developed (A) to the point where such few cars (B) can be described as having been made (C) entirely (D) in one country.

正确答案：B，应改为so few cars。

## (2) such的用法

such是一个限定词，因此后边要接名词。

1) such后可直接加各种名词

单数可数名词: such a house, such a day

复数可数名词: such boys, such shirts, such cars

不可数名词: such patience, such weather, such information

2) such +形容词+名词

单数可数名词: such an expensive house , such a nice day

(与so比较: so expensive a house , so nice a day )

复数可数名词: such nice boys, such good shirts, such expensive cars

不可数名词: such great patience, such nice weather, such important information

3) 限定词+ such +名词

虽然一般情况下我们不说such many, such much, such few, 但我们可以说many such dogs, much such attention, few such cars。能够这样用的原因是: 首先由such修饰名词, 如such cars, 然后由这些表示数量的形容词修饰such, 于是便有了many such cars。其他可用在such前面的限定词有no, other, some, any, one (two, three...) 等。

a. These Ministers used "splendid" "magnificent" and other such expressions to describe the King's new clothes.

b. no such man (不说no such a man\*)

one such man (不说one such a man\*, 但说such a man)

every such fool (不说every such a fool\*)

three such men

all such men

five hundred such planes

## 30 条件状语从句 Track29

这里只分析真实条件句，非真实条件句在“Chapter 8虚拟语气”一章中将作详细讨论。

### (1) 条件状语从句常用引导词

最常见的引导词是if和unless。

a. If winter comes, can spring be far behind?

既然冬天来了，春天还会远吗？

b. You don't need an umbrella unless it is raining.

如果天没下雨，你就不需要带伞。

c. In politics, if you want someone to make a speech, ask a man; if you want something done, ask a woman. (by Margaret Thatcher)

d. If he's the first thing you think of when you wake up, the only thing you think of when you're awake, and the last thing you think of before you go to bed, then he's really something special.

e. Today if a happy smile comes to you, a happy smile that perhaps you can't explain...it is because at that moment, I am thinking of you, and smiling too.

其他引导条件状语从句的常见连词有suppose (that), supposing (that), providing/provided (that), so long as, as long as, on condition that等。

f. A man is not old **as long as** he is seeking something. A man is not old until regrets take the place of dreams.

g. Don't worry about the mistakes you may make in conversation, **so long as** you can make yourself understood in English.

h. **So long as** you work hard enough, an iron rod can be ground into a needle. 只要功夫深，铁杵磨成针。

i. I may lend you the book **on condition that** you return it to me in time.

j. **Suppose** nothing happens to you. **Suppose** you live there your whole life and nothing happens. You never meet anybody, you never become anything and finally, you die one of those New York deaths and no one notices for two weeks until the smell drifts into the hallway.

k. He will surely finish the job on time \_\_\_\_\_ he's left to do it in his own way.

- A. in that
- B. in case
- C. as far as
- D. so long as

正确答案：D。

## (2) 其他表示条件意义的句型

1) 祈使句 / 省略句+ and... = if从句+主句

a. Use your head, and you will find a way. = If you use your head, you will find a way.

b. A minute later and we would have missed the train. = If we had arrived a minute later, we would have missed the train.

c. Spare the rod and spoil the child. = If you spare the rod, you'll spoil the child. 孩子不打不成器。

2) 祈使句 / 省略句+ or/or else = unless从句+主句

Give it back to me or (else) I'll tell your parents. = Unless you give it back to me, I'll tell your parents.

## 31 让步状语从句 Track30

### (1) 让步状语从句常用引导词

常见的引导让步状语从句的引导词有though, although, even though, even if。此时，主句前不能用but，但可以用yet 或 still。

a. Though/Although he tried hard, (yet/still) he failed.

b. Although I didn't know anybody at the party, I had a very good time.

c. The family is the essential presence...—the thing that never leaves you, **even if** you find you have to leave it.

d. Although Mr. Smith studied art (A) in Paris, but his (B) writings attracted much (C) more interest than (D) his paintings.

正确答案：B，应改为his，即把but去掉。

e. Although Professor Green's lectures usually ran over (A) the fifty-minute period, but (B) none (C) of his students even objected (D) as they found his lectures both informative and interesting.

正确答案：B，把but去掉。

### (2) 介词表示让步

although, though是连词，因此后边只接从句（有时是省略形式的从句），而介词despite, in spite of, for all, notwithstanding只接名词（短语）。

a. Though he was inexperienced, he did a very good job. = In spite of his inexperience, ...或In spite of his being inexperienced, ...



b. Although it was dangerous, ... = Despite the danger, ...

c. Though the weather was bad, ... = In spite of the bad weather, ...

d. Despite (A) fats and oils are nutritionally (B) important as (C) energy sources, medical research indicates (D) that saturated fats may contribute to hardening of the arteries.

正确答案：A，应改为Though或Although。

e. \_\_\_\_\_ what he achieved in medicine, he remained modest.

A. Despite

B. Although

C. If

D. Whereas

正确答案：A。

分析：因为这里what = things that，引导的是一个名词性从句，其本质上相当于一个名词短语，故此处仍需要用介词。用although只能说成：Although he achieved a lot in medicine, he remained modest.

f. \_\_\_\_\_ tired, he wouldn't stop working.

A. Despite

B. For all

C. Though

D. Whereas

正确答案：C。

分析：这是一个省略的让步状语从句，原句相当于：Though he was tired, he wouldn't stop working.

### (3) while置于句首一般表示“尽管……”

while位于句首，一般意为“尽管……”，引导让步状语从句。在很多阅读文章中我们常见到while的这一用法。

a. While I sympathize with (同意) your point of view, I cannot accept it.

b. While many countries of the world celebrate their own Mother's Day at different times throughout the year, there are some countries such as Denmark, Finland, Italy, Turkey, Australia, and Belgium which also celebrate Mother's Day on the second Sunday of May.

c. Now the U.S. Supreme Court has spoken. Let there be no doubt, while I strongly disagree with the court's decision, I accept it. And tonight, for the sake of our unity of the people and the strength of our democracy, I offer my concession. (Former U.S. Vice President Al Gore's concession speech)

d. While the government pushed for a total breakup of the software maker, Microsoft fought fiercely against any positions that would affect its ability to compete in the marketplace.

### (4) no matter wh-

No matter + what/who/when/where/which/how可以代替 whatever/whoever/whenever/wherever/whichever/however来引导让步状语从句。

a. We have decided to do so, whatever happens.

b. Whoever may trouble you, I will help you to the last.

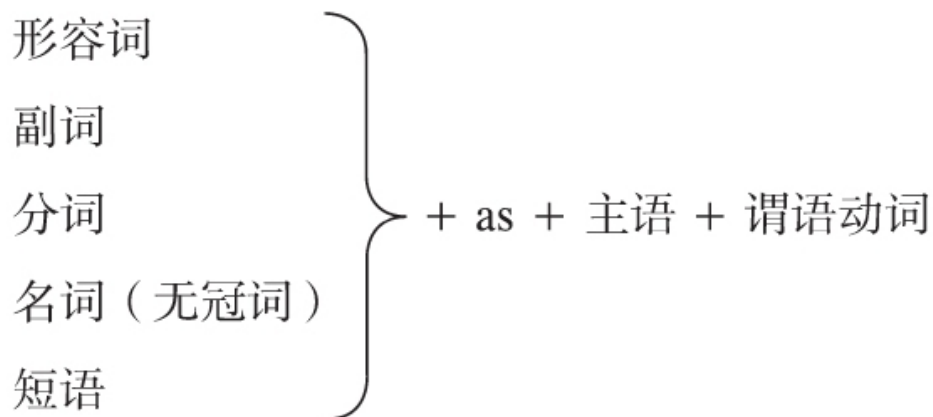
c. No matter what I did to the money, you still wanted it because it did not decrease in value. Many times in our lives, we are dropped, crumpled, and ground into the dirt by the

decisions we make and the circumstances that come our way. We feel as though we are worthless. But **no matter what** has happened or what will happen, you will never lose your value in God's eyes. The worth of our lives come not in what we do or who we know but by WHO WE ARE! You are special—Don't ever forget it!

无论我如何对待那张钞票，你们还是想要它，因为它并没贬值。人生路上，我们会无数次地被自己的决定和碰到的逆境击倒、欺凌甚至碾得粉身碎骨。我们觉得自己似乎一文不值。但无论发生了什么，或将要发生什么，在上帝的眼中，你们永远不会丧失价值。生命的价值不依赖我们的所作所为，也不仰仗我们结交的人物，而是取决于我们本身！你们是独特的——永远不要忘记这一点。

### (5) as的倒装句

as接倒装句表示让步，这一结构有：



- a. **Young** as he is, he is knowledgeable. (形容词)
- b. **Much** as I respect him, I can not agree with him. (副词)
- c. **.Child** as he is, he is knowledgeable. (名词不带冠词)
- d. **Lazy a boy** as he is, he is kind to help others. (注意词序: Lazy a boy)

e. **Oldest** in our workshop as he is, he works hardest. (此时, 最高级前不用the)

f. **Praised** as he was, he remained modest. (分词)

g. **Again** as he failed in doing this experiment, he didn't lose heart. (副词)

h. \_\_\_\_\_, she often behaves like a child.

A. As old is she

B. As old she is

C. Old as is she

D. Old as she is

正确答案: D。

另外, 我们可以把动词原形置于句首, 此时结构为: V + as + S + 情态动词或助动词 (may/might/will/would/can/could/do/does/did)。若动词是及物动词, 则其宾语也要随着动词提前。

i. **Lose money** as I did, I got a lot of experience. (不用lost, 宾语money紧跟在动词后面)

j. **Try** as you will, you won't manage it. (动词原形提前)

k. **Fail** as I did, I would never stop trying. (动词原形提前)

l. **Try** as he will, no man breaks wholly loose from his first love, no matter who she is.

不管怎么样, 没有一个男人能够完完全全忘却自己的初恋, 不管她是谁。

注意: 这里的as可以替换为that或though, 尽管这样的情况比较少见。不可以用although。

m. Poor \_\_\_\_\_ he is, he is honest and kind.

- A. that
- B. however
- C. because
- D. although

正确答案：A。

n. \_\_\_\_\_, he does get annoyed with her sometimes.

- A. Although much he likes her
- B. Much although he likes her
- C. As he likes her much
- D. Much as he likes her

正确答案：D。

o. Much although (A) I have traveled, I have never seen anyone to equal (B) her in thoroughness, whatever (C) the job (D) .

正确答案：A，应改为Much as。

#### (6) As/So +形容词+ as +主谓结构，放在句首，表示让步。

a. **As much as** John hates to do it, he must stay at home and study tonight. 尽管约翰不愿意，但他今晚还是得待在家里学习。

b. **As amusing and perceptive as** graffiti may sometimes be, it has by no means won universal approval.

尽管涂鸦有时可以怡人情趣并发人深思，但它决没有赢得普遍的认同。

c. **As important as** your obligation as a doctor, a lawyer or a business leader will be, you are a human being first, and

those human connections with spouses, with children, with friends are the most important investments you will ever make. At the end of your life, you will never regret not having passed one more test, winning one more verdict, closing one more deal. You will regret time not spent with a husband, a child, a friend or a parent. Our success as a society depends not on what happens in the White House but on what happens inside your house. (America's Former First Lady Barbara Bush, to students at a college commencement)

尽管你们将来或许要成为一名医生、一位律师或是一个商人而肩负重任，但首先你是一个平凡的人。因此，你与自己的配偶、孩子、朋友之间的亲情或友情是最为重要的。在你生命临终前，让你感到后悔的不会是因为没有多做一次医学测试、没能多打赢一场官司或没有多做成一笔生意，而是后悔没有多花时间陪你的丈夫、孩子、朋友或是父母。社会的发展进步依赖于每一个家庭，而不是白宫。（美国前总统布什夫人芭芭拉·布什在一所大学的毕业典礼上的演讲）

d. As important as qualifications are, and you won't get to an interview without the qualifications, the most thing in fact is the character and how a person presents himself at interview. I find it very difficult to define exactly the sort of person I am looking for, but when I meet someone I can tell whether they are the sort of person that I would like to appoint or whether they are not.

在求职过程中，资历固然很重要，因为若没有很好的资历，你是得不到面试机会的。但事实上，最重要的是你的个性以及在面谈中如何去展现自己。有时很难确切地说我需要何种类型的人才，但是在面谈过程中，我能够判断出他们是否是我所需要聘任的人。

## （7） be引导的倒装句表示让步

a. All substances, be they gaseous, liquid or solid, are made up of atoms. = All substances, whether they may be gaseous, liquid or solid, are made up of atoms.

一切物质，不论是气态、液态还是固态，都是由原子构成的。

b. The business of each day, **be it selling goods or shipping them** (= **whether it may be** selling goods or shipping them), went quite smoothly.

每天的生意，不论是售货还是运货，都进展得很顺利。

c. **Be it** ever so humble, there is no place like home. =  
However humble it may be, there is no place like home.

金窝银窝，不如自己的草窝。

d. Home is home, **be it** never so homely.

e. \_\_\_\_\_, I will marry him all the same.

A. Were he rich or poor

B. Whether rich or poor

C. Being rich or poor

D. Be he rich or poor

正确答案：D。

## 32 比较状语从句 Track31

### (1) as

#### 1) "as +形容词 / 副词+ as" 结构

a. The work is not as difficult as you think.

b. Eyes are as eloquent as lips (are).

c. An adult human must take eight steps to go as far as a giraffe does in one stride.

#### 2) "as +形容词+ a(n) +可数名词单数+ as" 结构

a. Americans tend to think from small to large. Let us take as simple an example as the addressing of envelopes.

美国人的思维倾向由小到大。我们举一个写信封地址的简单例子吧。

b. Rarely has a technological development had as great an impact on so many aspects of social, economic, and cultural development as the growth of electronics.

c. He caught as large a fish as I did that day.

d. I didn't finish as large a part of the work as he did.

e. I didn't finish as a large part of the work as he did.\*

#### 3) 在否定句中第一个as可用so代替。

a. He is not so/as clever as you.



b.No other modern nation devotes **so small a portion** of its wealth to public health **as** the United States does.（注意否定词No在句首，故此句为否定句）

4）为了保持句子平衡，从句还可以用全部倒装或部分倒装。

a.Small as it is, the ant is as much a creature **as are all other animals** on the earth.

b.The computer revolution may well change society as fundamentally **as did the Industrial Revolution** .

## **(2) than**

1）两个同类事物才能比较，如he和I。两个非同类事物是无法比较的。

a.He is taller than I (am).

b.The weather of the South is wetter than the North. \*

**分析：**这是典型的错误句子，因为the weather of the South和the North是两个截然不同的事物，无法进行比较。只能是“南方的天气”和“北方的天气”两个同类事物才能比较。故原句应改为：The weather of the South is wetter than **that of** the North.（为避免重复，用that代替 the weather）

c.Young readers, more often than not (A) , find the novels of (B) Dickens far more (C) exciting than Thackeray (D) .

**正确答案：**D，应改为Thackeray's。这里的比较对象是两位作家的小说。Thackeray's也就相当于Thackeray's novels。

2）在有than的比较句子里，主句中必须有比较级形式出现。

a.He has made **great** contributions to the company than anyone else.\*

本句中应将great改为greater。

b. There are few electronic applications\_\_\_\_\_to raise fears regarding future employment opportunities than robots.

- A. likely
- B. more likely
- C. most likely
- D. much likely

正确答案：B。

c. On the whole (A) , ambitious students are much likely (B) to succeed in their studies than are those (C) with little (D) ambition.

正确答案：B，应改为more likely。

3) 为了保持句子平衡，从句还可以用全部倒装或部分倒装。

a. The surface conditions on the planet Mars are more like the Earth's **than are those** of any other planet in the solar system.

b. The air inside a house or office building often has higher concentrations of contaminants\_\_\_\_\_heavily polluted outside air.

- A. than does
- B. more
- C. as some that are
- D. like of

正确答案：A。

### (3) 表示“倍数比较”的三种句型

在英文中，除了用than, as来对两个事物进行比较外，我们还可以用 times 一词来说明两事物之间的倍数关系。例如，A是B的三倍长，我们可以说：

a. A is three times the length of B.

b. A is three times longer than B.

c. A is three times as long as B.

故在英文中，表示两个事物倍数关系的比较，我们可用以下三种句型：

1) A is...times the size (或其他形容词对应的名词形式) of B.

2) A is...times bigger (或其他形容词比较级) than B.

3) A is...times as big (或其他形容词原级) as B.

其中，句1) 中形容词对应名词的形式还有：big/size, long/length, wide/width, heavy/weight, high/height等。

这里同样强调两事物之间的可比性。如：

a. The earth has a mass that is one hundred times the moon.  
. \*

这句中两个被比较的事物是地球的质量与月球的质量，而不是地球的质量与月球。故应将原句改为：

b. The earth has a mass that is one hundred times that of the moon.

c. Americans eat \_\_\_\_\_ as they actually need every day.

- A. twice as much protein
- B. twice protein as much twice
- C. twice protein as much
- D. protein as twice much

正确答案：A。

#### (4) “The more..., the more...” 句型表示比较

1) 注意此句型的主从句关系：“The +比较级（从句），the +比较级（主句）”。

2) 翻译成汉语时先译从句，后译主句。

- a. The more she practiced, the worse she sang.
- b. The less you open your heart to others, the more your heart suffers.
- c. The nearer it is drawn to the surface of the earth (从句), the more a body weighs (主句). 一个物体离地球表面越近，重量就越大。
- d. The more we help others, the more we receive in return. We advance ourselves as we help others.  
帮助别人越多，我们获得的回报也越多。帮助了别人，提升了自己。
- e. The more you leave things to chance, the less chance there is for you.
- f. Friends are lights in winter: the older the friend, the brighter the light. 朋友犹如冬日里的暖阳，愈久弥珍。

g. **The higher** you go (从句), **the less dense** air becomes (主句). =Air becomes less dense (主句) the higher you go (从句). 你升得越高, 空气就会变得越稀薄。

h. **The higher** you climb the ladder, **the more** you get into administrative or executive work, **the greater** the emphasis on ability to work within the organization rather than on technical abilities or professional knowledge.

你的地位越高, 你担任的行政管理工作权限越大, 你就越是要注意在单位内部的管理能力, 这比技术能力和专业知识更重要。

i. **The better** a man's self-image, **the better** friends he is likely to choose, hence **the better** the relationship, and hence his self-esteem is enhanced. **The worse** a man's self-image, **the more** likely he is to choose jerks for friends, hence the relationship is likely to go bad, and his self-image is further lowered because of this failure. So the lesson is obvious. You cannot depend on others for your sense of self-worth. It must come from within you.

一个人的自我形象越好, 他所交的朋友也会越好, 因此这样的友谊就会越浓厚, 从而也就增强了他的自信心。反之, 一个人若是自我形象越差, 所交的朋友也会越差, 因此这样的友谊很可能会变质, 这种人际交往的失败进而会导致自我形象贬低。因此, 道理很简单, 自我价值的提升不在于他人而在于自己。

若主句主语较长, 主句还可用倒装句式:

j. **The more** rural the community, **the more uniform are the customs of child upbringing.**

k. Hubble's law states that **the greater** the distance between any two galaxies, \_\_\_\_\_ **is their relative speed of separation.**

A. the greatest

- B. the greater
- C. greater than
- D. as great as

正确答案：B。

#### (5) “(Just) as..., so...” 结构表示类比

1) 基本意思是“正如……，所以……”。

2) 后半句可用倒装结构。

a. As you sow, so will you reap/so you will reap.

种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。

b. Just as dark clouds cannot long hide the sun, so no lies can cover up the fact. 乌云遮不住太阳，谎言掩盖不了事实。

c. Just as food nourishes the body, so do books enrich the mind.

食物滋养身体，书本丰富心灵。

d. As it is the mark of great minds to say many things in a few words, so it is the mark of little minds to use many words to say nothing.

大智者寥寥数语，即能达意；寡智者口若悬河，仍言之无物。

e. As land is improved by sowing it with various seeds, so is the mind by exercising it with different studies.

土壤因播种不同的种子而改良，智力用各科的学习来提高。

f. Just as the soil is a part of the earth, \_\_\_\_\_ the atmosphere.

- A. as it is
- B. the same is
- C. so is
- D. and so is

正确答案：C。

g. Just as they must put aside their prejudices, \_\_\_\_\_ we must be prepared to accept their good faith.

- A. thus
- B. so
- C. as
- D. like

正确答案：B。

#### (6) A is to B what/as C is to D.

这一结构可以改写为：What/As C is to D, so is A to B/that A is to B.

a. Air is to man what/as water is to fish. = What/As water is to fish, so is air to man/ that air is to man.

b. Sixteen is to eight what two is to one.

c. The people is to the people's army what water is to fish.

军民鱼水情。

d. Personality **is to** man **what** perfume **is to** a flower.

人的品格，犹如花的芳香。

e. **What/As** blood vessel **is to** a man's body, **that** railway **is to** transportation/ **so is** railway **to** transportation.

f. Case study **is to** Harvard **what** the Leaning Tower **is to** Pisa.

### (7) “no more...than” 表示比较

1) no more...than或not...any more than的基本意思是“同……一样不……”。

2) than后的句子为肯定形式，否定意思。

a. The Emperor **can** see no more than his Ministers.

此句相当于：The Emperor **can not** see and his ministers **can not** see, either.

b. You are no more clever than he.

此句相当于：You **are not** clever and he **is not** clever, either./You are as **stupid** as he.

比较：

You are **not more** clever **than** he.

此句意思是：You are as clever as he./You both are clever, not stupid.

c. A fool can **no more** see his own folly **than** he can see his ears.



傻瓜看不到自己的愚蠢，就像他看不到自己的耳朵一样。

d. Unmerited praise is no more honor than deserved blame is.

不该得到的表扬和应该受批评一样不光彩。

e. As a jazz lover, I find it refreshing that many Chinese pop stars are beginning to be influenced by jazz, and are including jazzy rhythms and harmonies in their songs. However, incorporating jazz elements into pop music does not make it jazz, any more than putting chili pepper into a McDonald's hamburger turns it into Sichuan cuisine.

作为一个爵士乐迷，我发现很多中国流行歌星们开始受到爵士乐的影响，正在把爵士乐的节奏与和声运用到他们的歌曲当中。然而，把爵士乐的元素掺进流行乐，并不能将流行音乐变成爵士乐，这就像把辣椒放进麦当劳的汉堡包也不能把它变成川菜一样。

f. The heart is \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent than the stomach, for they are both controlled by the brain.

A. not so

B. not much

C. no more

D. much more

正确答案：C。

#### (8) “not A so much as B/not so much A as B” 表示比较

1) 基本含义为“与其说A倒不如说B”或“是B，而不是A”，但在实际句子中翻译非常灵活。

2) A和B是两个被比较的平行结构，比如同为介词短语、动词不定式或名词短语等。

a. The great use of a school education is **not so much** to teach you things **as** to teach you the art of learning. (被比较的是：动词不定式短语)

b. The trumpet player was certainly loud, but I was **not** bothered by his loudness **so much as** by his lack of talent. (被比较的是：介词短语)

c. The great thing in this world is **not so much** where we stand **as** in what direction we are moving.

人生的意义不在于你目前身在何处，而在于你心向何方。

d. We both agreed that our marriage had taken a marked decline in the romance department. And it was **n't** a lack of intimacy that concerned us **so much as** the lack of conversation. Conversation, in fact, has always been our aphrodisiac.

我们俩都承认，我们的婚姻在浪漫这方面已大打折扣了。这倒不是因为缺少亲密感，而是缺少交流。事实上，保持交谈曾一直是我们感情的催化剂。

e. He does not respect learning and prefers "sport". The problem set for society is **not** the virtue of the type **so much as** its adequacy for its function.

他不重视学习，只喜欢“消遣”。社会要回答的问题并不是这类人物有无美德，而是他是否胜任其职务。

### 33 方式状语从句 Track32

方式状语从句表示动作的方式，引导词有as, like, as if, as though, the way等。

a. When in Rome, do **as** the Romans do. 入乡随俗。

= When traveling, follow the customs of the local people.

b. Work **like** you don't need money, love **like** you've never been hurt, and dance **like** nobody's watching.

c. Do **as** I say, not **as** I do.

= Follow my advice, but don't follow my example.

d. Do it **the way** you were taught.

e. He looks **as though/as if** he is an actor.

f. Nails protect the ends of human fingers and toes \_\_\_\_\_ protect the toes of most other vertebrates (脊椎动物) .

A. claws

B. as claws

C. as claws to

D. so do claws

正确答案：B。

状语从句练习

## 一、根据两个分句之间的逻辑关系， 填入相应的连词。

1. I've brought my umbrella\_\_\_\_\_it's raining.
2. You don't need an umbrella\_\_\_\_\_it's raining.
3. I've brought my umbrella\_\_\_\_\_it's not raining.
4. I've brought my umbrella\_\_\_\_\_I don't get wet.
5. I've brought my umbrella\_\_\_\_\_it rains.
6. we'll stay here\_\_\_\_\_it stops raining.
7. I intend to go for a walk this morning\_\_\_\_\_it's raining.
8. I try hard to learn English\_\_\_\_\_I don't seem to improve.
9. I find it difficult to believe a word he says\_\_\_\_\_he never tells me the truth.
10. You see the lightning\_\_\_\_\_it happens, but you hear the thunder later.

## 二、单项选择（时间状语从句）。

11. \_\_\_\_\_she realized it was too late to go home.
- A. No sooner it grew dark than
- B. Scarcely had it grown dark than
- C. Hardly did it grow dark that
- D. It was not until dark that

12. I had just started back for the house to change my clothes \_\_\_\_\_ I heard voices.

- A. as
- B. when
- C. after
- D. while

13. Not until \_\_\_\_\_ himself seriously ill.

- A. he had completed the task did he find
- B. had he completed the task did he find
- C. he completed the task he had found
- D. did he complete the task he had found

14. By the time the firemen arrived, the whole building \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. has burned down
- B. had burned down
- C. will have burned down
- D. burned down

15. We heard a loud sound of drums beating \_\_\_\_\_ the parade marched.

- A. till
- B. while

C. the moment

D. once

16. The policemen went into action\_\_\_\_\_they heard the alarm.

A. promptly

B. presently

C. quickly

D. directly

17. We held a meeting to sum up our experience\_\_\_\_\_we finished the work.

A. incidentally

B. while

C. immediately

D. before

18. Charles started a job, he did it\_\_\_\_\_it was finished.

A. Since, where

B. Once, until

C. Each time, once

D. The moment, as

三、单项选择（地点状语从句）。

19. The picture is not hanging\_\_\_\_\_it should on the wall.

- A. until
- B. wherever
- C. where
- D. when

20. \_\_\_\_\_, work songs often exhibit the song culture of a people in a fundamental form.

- A. They occur where they are
- B. Occurring where
- C. Where they occur
- D. Where do they occur

21. I have kept that portrait\_\_\_\_\_I can see it every day, as it always reminds me of my university days in London.

- A. which
- B. where
- C. whether
- D. when

#### 四、单项选择（原因状语从句）。

22. \_\_\_\_\_you are leaving tomorrow, we can eat dinner together tonight.

- A. For

- B. Since
- C. Before
- D. While

23. \_\_\_\_\_the cold weather, we decided not to go out.

- A. Because
- B. Due to
- C. Owing to
- D. Since

24. Neon is said to be inert\_\_\_\_\_does not react with other substances.

- A. because of it
- B. it is because
- C. because it
- D. is because it

25. \_\_\_\_\_he will not accept the offer, I have to find someone else.

- A. Until
- B. Though
- C. As soon as
- D. Seeing that



26. Skimming also differs from scanning\_\_\_\_\_it is an effort to get general information rather than specific facts.

- A. in which
- B. for that
- C. in that
- D. on that

27. Although many people view conflict as bad, conflict is sometimes useful\_\_\_\_\_it forces people to test the relative merits of their attitudes and behaviors.

- A. by which
- B. to which
- C. in that
- D. so that

28. Advertising is distinguished from other forms of communication \_\_\_\_\_ the advertiser pays for the message to be delivered.

- A. in that
- B. which
- C. whereas
- D. because of

## 五、单项选择（目的状语从句）。

29. Let's take the front seats\_\_\_\_\_we may have a better view.

- A. so as to
- B. in order to
- C. in order
- D. that

30. The motorist looked over the engine carefully\_\_\_\_\_on the way.

- A. so that it should go wrong
- B. lest it should go wrong
- C. in order that should not go wrong
- D. for fear that it should not go wrong

31. I spoke slowly and clearly\_\_\_\_\_the audience to understand me.

- A. so that
- B. in order that
- C. in order for
- D. so as

32. Batteries must be kept in dry places\_\_\_\_\_electricity should leak away.

- A. where
- B. lest
- C. that

D. unless

## 六、单项选择（结果状语从句）。

33. It is \_\_\_\_\_ weather that I would like to go to the beach.

A. so nice

B. such nice

C. such a nice

D. so nice a

34. She told us \_\_\_\_\_ stories that we all laughed.

A. so funny

B. such funny

C. funny such

D. so fun

35. The windows are \_\_\_\_\_ small as not to admit much light at all.

A. very

B. as

C. too

D. so

36. Would you be \_\_\_\_\_ do me a favor, please?

A. so kind to

- B. kind as to
- C. as kind to
- D. so kind as to

37. The police called off their search for the survivors of the air crash because of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. such bad weather
- B. so bad
- C. such a bad weather
- D. too bad a weather

### 七、单项选择（条件状语从句）。

38. \_\_\_\_\_ you fell in love with your boss, what would you do?

- A. Provide
- B. Supposing
- C. Unless
- D. Except

39. You can arrive in Beijing earlier for the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ you don't mind traveling by air.

- A. provided
- B. unless
- C. though

D. until

40. Government cannot operate effectively\_\_\_\_\_it is free from such interference.

A. so long as

B. if only

C. unless

D. lest

#### 八、单项选择（让步状语从句）。

41. \_\_\_\_\_lay eggs, but some give birth to live young.

A. Although most insects

B. Most insects

C. Despite most insects

D. Most insects that

42. Airsickness is produced by a disturbance of the inner car, \_\_\_\_\_ psychogenic factors, such as fear, also play a part.

A. in spite of

B. neither

C. nor

D. although

43. his physical handicap, he\_\_\_\_\_a successful businessman.

- A. Despite, has become
- B. Although, has become
- C. In spite, became
- D. Despite of, becomes

44. \_\_\_\_\_ all our kindness to help her, Sarah refused to listen to us.

- A. At
- B. For
- C. In
- D. On

45. \_\_\_\_\_, the policeman still has good command.

- A. Sophisticated as search techniques were
- B. Sophisticated were search techniques
- C. Search techniques were sophisticated
- D. Sophisticated as search techniques they were

46. \_\_\_\_\_, I still enjoy driving even after my accident.

- A. It may seem strange though
- B. Strange though it may seem
- C. Though strange it may seem
- D. Strange it may seem though

47. I've already told you that I'm going to buy it,  
\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. however much it costs
- B. however does it cost much
- C. how much does it cost
- D. no matter how it costs

48. \_\_\_\_\_, the fire men were unable to quench the fire.

- A. Try they would
- B. As they tried
- C. What they tried
- D. Try as they would

49. \_\_\_\_\_ I admire him as a poet, I do not like him as a man.

- A. Much so
- B. So much
- C. Much as
- D. As much

50. The engineers are going through with their project, \_\_\_\_\_ the expenses have risen.

- A. even though
- B. just because

C. now that

D. as though

51. Every society, \_\_\_\_\_ great or small, primitive or civilized, has a culture.

A. if it is

B. no matter it is

C. if it were

D. be it

52. \_\_\_\_\_, we will set off as we planned.

A. Were it good or bad

B. Being good or bad

C. Whether good or bad

D. Be it good or bad

53. All science students, \_\_\_\_\_, should have a good foundation in basic sciences.

A. whether they are future physicists and chemists

B. they are future physicists or chemists

C. they should be future physicists or chemists

D. be they future physicists or chemists

九、翻译下列句子，注意分析句型（比较状语从句）。



54. Just as we nurture our bodies with the right vitamins and nutrients, so we need to nurture our minds with good thoughts.

55. Science is built with facts just as a house is built with bricks, but a collection of facts cannot be called science any more than a pile of bricks can be called a house.

56. A causeless event or thing, we cannot think of any more than we can of a stick with only one end.

57. The greatness of a people is no more determined by their number than the greatness of a man is determined by his height.

58. What Newton was to mechanics and Darwin to biology, Freud was to psychology.

59. Stress is inevitable, but you don't have to be a victim of it. So what are the tools that can calm our nerves and open our minds? Here comes the good news: we all have the inner resources that are needed: courage, optimism, humility, humor, intuition, acceptance, forgiveness, love and yes, patience. These inner resources are to our souls what medicine is to our bodies.

#### 十、单项选择（比较状语从句）。

60. An adult human must take eight steps to go \_\_\_\_\_ as a giraffe does in one stride.

- A. as far
- B. the farther
- C. how far
- D. farther

61. The harder you work, \_\_\_\_\_ you have of passing your exam.

- A. more chance
- B. more chances
- C. the more chance
- D. the chances

62. The knee is \_\_\_\_\_ most other joints in the body because it cannot twist without injury.

- A. more likely to be damaged than
- B. much likely to be damaged than
- C. likely to be more damaged than
- D. more than likely to be damaged

63. Smoking is so harmful to personal health that it kills \_\_\_\_\_ people each year than automobile accidents.

- A. seven more times
- B. seven times more
- C. over seven times
- D. seven times

64. Just as the soil is a part of the earth, \_\_\_\_\_ the atmosphere.

- A. as it is
- B. the same is

C. so is

D. and so is

65. I would have paid \_\_\_\_\_ for my car if the salesman had insisted, because I really wanted it.

A. as much twice

B. much twice

C. twice as much

D. two times

66. Any preexisting illness, even \_\_\_\_\_ the common cold, increases the chances of contracting another disease.

A. as mild one as

B. as one mild as

C. as a mild one as

D. as mild a one as

67. After retirement my father earns only \_\_\_\_\_ as he used to. However, he lives happily enjoying his leisure time.

A. a half as much

B. a half as many

C. half as many

D. half as much

68. The greater population there is in a locality, \_\_\_\_\_ for water, transportation, and disposal of

refuse.

- A. the great need
- B. the greater need there is
- C. greater the need
- D. the greater the need there is

69. In China the South generally receives much less snow than \_\_\_\_\_ the North.

- A. does
- B. it does
- C. does in
- D. it does in

70. Robin \_\_\_\_\_ give up his scheme than the spider would give up his attempts.

- A. will no longer
- B. can no more
- C. would rather
- D. would no more

### 十一、单项选择（综合练习）。

71. His father had promised to buy him a computer \_\_\_\_\_ he behaved himself.

- A. provided

- B. while
- C. in case
- D. after

72. \_\_\_\_\_the weather was bad, we decided not to go out.

- A. In spite of
- B. Though
- C. Since
- D. Although

73. I find it difficult to believe a word he say \_\_\_\_\_he never tells me the truth.

- A. so
- B. as
- C. though
- D. while

74. \_\_\_\_\_dragon exists in the world. That's your illusion.

- A. No such a thing as
- B. No such thing as a
- C. No such a thing as a
- D. No such thing as

75. \_\_\_\_\_, many people still vote against the use of the death penalty.

- A. However some crimes are inexcusable
- B. However are some crimes inexcusable
- C. However inexcusable some crimes are
- D. Some crimes are however inexcusable

76. He always did well at school \_\_\_\_\_ having to do part-time jobs every now and then.

- A. in case of
- B. in spite of
- C. regardless of
- D. on account of

77. \_\_\_\_\_ the calculation is right, scientists can never be sure that they have included all variables and modeled them accurately.

- A. Even if
- B. As far as
- C. If only
- D. So long as

78. These two areas are similar \_\_\_\_\_ they both have a high rainfall during this season.

- A. to that

B. besides that

C. in that

D. except that

79. The trumpet player was certainly loud. But I wasn't bothered by his loudness \_\_\_\_\_ by his lack of talent.

A. than

B. more than

C. as

D. so much as

80. \_\_\_\_\_ devised to lessen the drudgery of washing clothes that the origin of the washing machine is unclear.

A. Were the inventions so numerous

B. The inventions so numerous

C. So numerous were the inventions

D. The inventions that were so numerous

81. \_\_\_\_\_ some flowers contain more nectar than others, how does a honeybee worker, faced with a patch of flowers containing variable amounts of nectar, decide when to stop collecting.

A. Given that

B. Giving that

C. To give

D. Being given

82. Hovercraft, or air-cushion vehicles, are unusual\_\_\_\_\_travel over land and water on a layer of air.

A. they

B. in they

C. that they

D. in that they

83. Computers that once took up entire rooms are now\_\_\_\_\_to put on desktops and into wristwatches.

A. smaller than

B. so small

C. as small as

D. so small as

84. \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that his initial experiments had failed, Prof. White persisted in his research.

A. Because of

B. Though

C. In spite of

D. In view of

85. Criticism and self-criticism is necessary\_\_\_\_\_it helps us to find and correct our mistakes.

A. by that



B. at that

C. on that

D. in that

86. There are few electronic applications \_\_\_\_\_ to raise fears regarding future employment opportunities than robots.

A. likely

B. more likely

C. most likely

D. much likely

87. The world's deepest cave, Pierre St. Martin in the Pyrenees mountains, is almost three times as deep \_\_\_\_\_.

A. as the Empire State Building is high

B. that the Empire State Building is higher

C. is higher than the Empire State Building

D. and the Empire State Building's height

88. Just as the builder is skilled in the handling of his bricks, \_\_\_\_\_ the experienced writer is skilled in the handling of his words.

A. as

B. thus

C. so

D. like

89. According to psychologists, a person's attention is attracted \_\_\_\_\_ by the intensity of different signals as by their context, significance, and information content.

- A. not much so
- B. not so much
- C. so much not
- D. so not much

90. \_\_\_\_\_ their differences, the couple were developing an obvious and genuine affection for each other.

- A. But for
- B. For all
- C. Above all
- D. Except for

91. The chief reason for the population growth isn't so much a rise in birth rates \_\_\_\_\_ a fall in death rates as a result of improvements in medical care.

- A. and
- B. as
- C. but
- D. rather than

92. The very essence of civil liberty consists in the right of every individual to claim the protection of laws, \_\_\_\_\_ he receives an injury.

- A. whenever
- B. wherever
- C. whatever
- D. whereas

93. \_\_\_\_\_ she was a talented amateur cook, whose specialty was rich, cream-filled gateaux and puddings, she decided to put that talent to work.

- A. Seen that
- B. Seeing that
- C. So
- D. When

94. \_\_\_\_\_ she started to look for premises, she looked at the business property columns in the local paper.

- A. Not sooner than
- B. While
- C. The moment
- D. Hardly

95. Angiosperms inhabit relatively diverse environments and may be found \_\_\_\_\_ higher plants can survive.

- A. there
- B. where
- C. somewhere

D. then

96. \_\_\_\_\_ that my head had cleared, my brain was also beginning to work much better.

A. For

B. Now

C. Since

D. Despite

97. A man escaped from the prison last night. It was a long time \_\_\_\_\_ the guards discovered what had happened.

A. before

B. until

C. since

D. after

98. The more female faculty at a school, whether it is co-ed or single sex, the more \_\_\_\_\_ a female student is to go on to postgraduate accomplishment, usually a higher degree.

A. possible

B. probable

C. alike

D. likely

99. \_\_\_\_\_ all his varied modes of writing and the multiplicity of characters in his novel, the novelist and his work are of a piece.

- A. At
- B. For
- C. In
- D. On

100. A turtle differs from all other reptiles \_\_\_\_\_ it has its body encased in a protective shell of its own.

- A. for that
- B. for what
- C. in case
- D. in that

101. \_\_\_\_\_ you are familiar with the author's ideas, try reading all the sections as quickly as you possibly can.

- A. Now that
- B. Ever since
- C. So that
- D. As long as

102. The songs of Bob Dylan are very popular among people, who regard him \_\_\_\_\_ other musicians.

- A. as more superior to
- B. as superior than
- C. as superior to

D. as more superior than

103. Scientists generally agree that the Earth's climate will warm up over the next 50 to 100 years\_\_\_\_\_it has warmed in the 20,000 years since the Ice Age.

A. as long as

B. as much as

C. as soon as

D. as well as

104. People throughout the world are eating\_\_\_\_\_meat per person as they did in 1945.

A. more than twice

B. twice as much

C. twice much as

D. twice more

105. The boy walked quietly into the room\_\_\_\_\_awake his room mates.

A. in order to not

B. so as not to

C. for not to

D. so as to

106. Let us hope that\_\_\_\_\_a nuclear war, the human race might still survive.

- A. in relation to
- B. in support of
- C. in the case of
- D. in the event of

107. No sooner had we started the experiment \_\_\_\_\_ we stopped it because of the cut-off of water.

- A. than
- B. when
- C. then
- D. as

108. \_\_\_\_\_ was the first fully successful transatlantic cable finally laid.

- A. Not until 1866
- B. Until 1866, just
- C. Until 1866
- D. In 1866, not until

109. This is an ideal site for a university \_\_\_\_\_ it is far from the downtown area.

- A. provided that
- B. now that
- C. so that

D. in that

110. \_\_\_\_\_, I will marry him all the same.

A. Were he rich or poor

B. Whether rich or poor

C. Being rich or poor

D. Be he rich or poor

111. Mercury differs from other industrial metals\_\_\_\_\_it is a liquid.

A. and that

B. but that

C. in that

D. for that

112. Some companies have introduced flexible working time with less emphasis on pressure \_\_\_\_\_.

A. than more on efficiency

B. and more efficiency

C. and more on efficiency

D. than efficiency

113. She is\_\_\_\_\_a musician than her brother.

A. much of

B. much as



C. more of

D. more as

114. The lower \_\_\_\_\_ in a room, the more slowly our eyes focus.

A. the level of lighting

B. light level

C. leveling of light

D. lighting is level

115. Just as the value of a telephone network increases with each new phone added to the system, \_\_\_\_\_ the value of a computer system increase with each program that turns out.

A. so

B. so does

C. and it does

D. so does it

116. The heart is \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent than the stomach, for they are both controlled by the brain.

A. not so

B. not much

C. no more

D. much more

117. Melted iron is poured into the mixer much \_\_\_\_\_ tea is poured into a cup from a teapot.

- A. in the same way like
- B. in the same way which
- C. in the same way
- D. in the same way as

118. There is no reason they should limit how much vitamin you take, \_\_\_\_\_ they can limit how much water you drink.

- A. much more than
- B. no more than
- C. no less than
- D. any more than

119. The lenses in an optical microscope bend the light passing through a specimen to form an image of that specimen that is much larger \_\_\_\_\_ actually viewed.

- A. than it
- B. than the one
- C. one than
- D. than one which

120. Hydrogen is the fundamental element of the universe \_\_\_\_\_ it provides the building blocks from which the other elements are produced.

- A. so that

- B. but that
- C. in that
- D. provided that

121. The vocabulary and grammatical differences between British and American English are so trivial and few as hardly \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. noticed
- B. to be noticed
- C. being noticed
- D. to notice

122. \_\_\_\_\_ recurring fear is out of proportion to any real danger, it is called a phobia.

- A. When
- B. Whereas
- C. Which
- D. Whether

123. \_\_\_\_\_ no conclusive evidence exists, many experts believe that the wheel was invented only once and then diffused to the rest of the world.

- A. Even
- B. But
- C. Although

D. So

124. Human beings are superior to animals\_\_\_\_\_they can use language as a tool to communicate.

A. for which

B. in which

C. for that

D. in that

125. \_\_\_\_\_earth scientists understand how and why earthquakes happen, forecasts are usually inaccurate.

A. As

B. While

C. For

D. Since

126. \_\_\_\_\_, Sarah Orne Jewett, a nineteenth-century writer, read widely in her family's extensive library.

A. That she received little education formally

B. As she received little formal education

C. The little formal education that she received

D. Although she received little formal education

127. Gorillas are quiet animals,\_\_\_\_\_they are capable of making about 20 different sounds.

A. whether

- B. which
- C. even though
- D. as well as

128. \_\_\_\_\_ your opinions are worth considering, the committee finds it unwise to place too much importance on them.

- A. As
- B. Since
- C. Provided
- D. While

129. \_\_\_\_\_ we have begun exploring in earnest, we are getting glimpses of how huge the questions are and how far from being answered.

- A. That
- B. Then
- C. Now that
- D. Now

130. \_\_\_\_\_ that they may eventually reduce the amount of labor needed on construction sites by 90 percent.

- A. So clever are the construction robots
- B. So clever the construction robots are
- C. Such construction robots are clever

D. Such clever construction robots are

131. The atmosphere is as much a part of the earth as \_\_\_\_\_ its soils and the water of its lakes, rivers and oceans.

A. are

B. do

C. is

D. has

132. Hippopotamuses, \_\_\_\_\_ a great deal of time submerging in lakes or rivers, do not feed in the water.

A. spend

B. they spend

C. although they spend

D. which they spend

133. \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic Ocean crosses the equator, the trade winds cause a flow of water to the west.

A. Where

B. And

C. That

D. At

十二、辨别改错。

134. Some of the (A) first aerial photographs (B) were taken from (C) a balloon while (D) the Civil War in the United States.

135. Since rats are destructive (A) and may carry (B) disease, therefore many (C) cities try to exterminate (D) them.

136. The southwestern portion (A) of the United States is a land of little (B) rain, and parts of it are too (C) dry that they are (D) called deserts.

137. The black (A) leopard is very (B) dark that its spots (C) are difficult to see (D) .

138. The radio was of so (A) inferior quality that (B) I took it back (C) and asked for a better one (D) .

139. Science fiction is any fiction dealing (A) with the future or with so (B) imaginative subjects as interstellar travel, life (C) on other planets, or (D) time travel.

140. The speaker claimed that no other (A) modern nation devotes so small (B) a portion of its wealth to public assistance and health than (C) the United States does (D) .

141. The moon has a mass that is nearly one hundred times less (A) than the earth (B) ; in consequence, the force (C) of gravity at the moon's surface is only one-sixth of (D) that at the earth's surface.

142. Some insects (A) hear ultrasonic sounds (B) more than (C) two octaves than higher (D) human can.

143. Saturn is the second largest (A) planet after (B) Jupiter, with (C) a diameter nearly ten times those of (D) Earth.

144. It was not so much the many blows (A) he received for (B) the lack of fighting spirits that (C) led to his losing (D) the game.

145. Despite (A) fats and oils are nutritionally (B) important as (C) energy sources, medical research indicates (D) that saturated fats may contribute to hardening of the arteries.

146. Much although (A) I have traveled, I have never seen anyone to equal (B) her in thoroughness, whatever (C) the job (D) .

147. Some psychologists believe that those who (A) are encouraged to be independent, responsible (B) , and competent in childhood (C) are likely more than (D) others to become motivated to achieve.

148. Brown rice (A) has great (B) nutritional value (C) than white rice because the nutrient-rich outer layers of the rice kernel (D) are not removed from brown rice.

149. Although Christopher Columbus failed in (A) his original goal, the discoveries he did make (B) were as (C) important as the route to Asia he expected (D) to find.

150. Ice is less (A) denser (B) than the liquid (C) from which it (D) is formed.

151. Of (A) the many machines invented (B) in the late century, none (C) had a great (D) impact on the United States economy than the automobile.

### 状语从句练习答案

#### 一、根据两个分句之间的逻辑关系， 填入相应的连词。

1. I've brought my umbrella because it's raining.



2. You don't need an umbrella unless it's raining.
3. I've brought my umbrella even though it's not raining.
4. I've brought my umbrella so that I don't get wet.
5. I've brought my umbrella in case it rains.
6. we'll stay here until it stops raining.
7. I intend to go for a walk this morning although it's raining.
8. I try hard to learn English though I don't seem to improve.
9. I find it difficult to believe a word he says as he never tells me the truth.
10. You see the lightning the moment it happens, but you hear the thunder later.

## 二~八、单项选择。

11-15: DBABB

16-20: DCBCC

21-25: BBCCD

26-30: CCADB

31-35: CBBBD

36-40: DABAC

41-45: BDABA

46-50: BADCA

51-53: DDD

### 九、翻译下列句子，注意分析句型（比较状语从句）。

54. 正如我们用维生素和其他营养物滋补身体，我们也需要用好的思想丰富自己的心灵。（Just as..., so...）

55. 科学是建立在事实基础之上的，正如房屋是用砖块砌成的；但是简单的事实罗列不能称之为科学，就如同砖块的堆砌不能成为房屋一样。（not...any more than...）

56. 就像我们想象不出只有一端的棍子一样，我们也想象不出事情会无缘无故地发生。（not...any more than...）

57. 一个民族的伟大不能由其人口数量而定，正像一个人的伟大不能由其高矮决定一样。（no...more than...）

58. 弗洛伊德对于心理学的意义，就像牛顿之于力学，达尔文之于生物学一样。（A is to B what C is to D.）

59. 压力不可避免，但你也不一定非得深受其害。那么要想做到精神安宁、心胸开阔到底有何良方呢？秘诀在于我们自身都有克服消极情绪的内在武器，这就是勇气、乐观、谦卑、幽默、直觉、容忍、宽恕、爱还有忍耐。这些内在武器对我们心灵的作用，就如同药物对于我们身体一样。（A is to B what C is to D.）

### 十~十一、单项选择。

60-65: ACABCC

66-70: DDBAD

71-75: ACBBC

76-80: BACDC

81-85: ADDCD

86-90: BACBB

91-95: BABCB

96-100: BADBD

101-105: ACBBB

106-110: DAADD

111-115: CCCAB

116-120: CDDBC

121-125: BACDB

126-130: DCDCA

131-133: ACA

## 十二、辨别改错。

134. D/during

135. C/many

136. C/so

137. B/so

138. A/such

139. B/such

140. C/as

141. C/the earth's

142. D/higher than

143. D/that of

- 144. B/as
- 145. A/Though
- 146. A/Much as
- 147. D/more likely than
- 148. B/greater
- 149. C/more
- 150. B/dense
- 151. D/greater

## Chapter 4 动词不定式



音频

- 34 非谓语动词概述
- 35 句型一：It is... + to do sth. (作主语)
- 36 句型二：动词+ to do (作宾语)
- 37 句型三：动词+ sb./sth. to do sth. (作宾语补足语)
- 38 句型四：名词+ to do sth. (作定语)
- 39 句型五：形容词+ to do sth. (作主语补足语)
- 40 不定式作状语

- 41 用作独立成分
- 42 不定式的逻辑主语
- 43 不定式的时态
- 44 不定式的语态
- 45 不带to的不定式
- 46 分裂不定式

## 34 非谓语动词概述

前面三章我们集中讨论了英文中的三大从句。接下来的三章内容我们将集中讨论英文中很重要的动词变化形式——三种非谓语动词形式，即动词不定式（to do）、动名词（doing）和两种分词（现在分词doing和过去分词done）。它们的作用和特点如下：

	作成分	逻辑主语	时态、语态变化
不定式	不定式即“不一定是词性的成分”，可当作名词、形容词和副词来使用。因此不定式在句中能够充当除了谓语之外的任何其他成分。	见 183 页	见 185 页
动名词	动名词相当于名词，因此在句中主要充当：主语、宾语、表语。	见 227 页	见 230 页
分词	分词相当于形容词和副词，因此在句中主要充当：定语、状语、补足语。	见 252 页	见 248 页
解释	非谓语动词作句中成分是其非动词特征的体现，这是我们学习的重点。		
		非谓语动词作为动词的一种变化形式，仍保留有动词的特征，比如有自己的主语，有时态和语态的变化。	

由上表可知，要求掌握的非谓语动词的三个重点内容为：句子成分、逻辑主语以及时态和语态的变化。

## 第一节 不定式充当的句子成分

### 35 句型一: It is... + to do sth. (作主语) Track33

#### (1) It is... + to do sth. 句型

不定式作主语, 常用it作形式主语, 放在句首, 将真正的主语动词不定式(短语)放在句子后面。

a. It's easy **to be wise after the event.** 事后诸葛亮容易当。

b. It is easier **to spend money** than to make money. 花钱要比挣钱容易。

c. It's better **to love someone you can't have** than to have someone you can't love. 爱一个无法拥有的人胜过拥有一个你不爱的人。

注意: 此处形式主语it不能用this或that来替换。

d. This (A) is impossible for (B) people to stare directly (C) at the sun.

人们不可能直视太阳。

正确答案: A, This应改为It。

e. Due to (A) the refraction of light rays, this (B) is impossible for the naked eye to determine (C) the exact location of a star close (D) to the horizon.

正确答案: B, this 应改为it。



(2) 不定式结构也可直接置于句首作主语，此时谓语动词要用单数。

a. To err is human, to forgive divine. 犯错人皆难免，宽恕则属超凡。

b. To love for the sake of being loved is human, but to love for the sake of loving is angelic.

因为被爱而爱，是人之常情；因为爱而爱，则难能可贵。

## 36 句型二：动词+ to do（作宾语） Track34

（1）直接跟在一个及物动词后面作宾语。这时句子有以下两个特点：

1) 句子主语和不定式的逻辑主语是一致的，即两个动词所表示的动作都由全句主语发出。

2) 这时句子的谓语动词多是描写态度，不定式的动词则说明行为。

a. I **hope to see** you again.

b. This company **refused to cooperate** with us.

c. He **promised not to tell** anyone about it.

d. Why should anyone bother \_\_\_\_\_ his treasure to help a stranger?

A. risking to lose

B. to risk losing

C. risking losing

D. to risk to lose

正确答案：B。

英语中常接动词不定式作宾语的动词有（具体词义和用法请查词典，词典永远是你最好的朋友！）：

afford agree appear arrange ask attempt

beg begin bother care choose consent

dare decide determine expect fail forget

happen hate help hesitate hope intend

learn like love manage mean neglect

offer prefer prepare pretend promise propose

refuse regret remember seem start swear

trouble try want wish

(2) 在一些动词之后，可以在连接代词 (what, who, which) 或连接副词 (how, when, where) 及连词whether后面接一个动词不定式。我们可以将这种结构看成是连接词引导的宾语从句的简略形式。

a. I wonder who to invite . (=who I should invite)

b. Show us what to do . (=what we must do)

c. I don't know whether to answer his letter. (此处不用if )

类似动词还有：

ask consider decide discover explain forget

find out guess imagine know learn observe

remember see tell teach think understand

### (3) 动词+ it +宾补 (名词或形容词) + to do (作宾语)

此时，往往用it作形式宾语，而将真正的宾语放在宾语补足语后面。常用于此结构中的动词有consider, think, judge, feel, make等。

a. I think it hard to answer the question in one go.

我觉得很难一下子回答这个问题。

b. He feels it challenging to be a marketing supervisor.

他认为担任市场总监很具挑战性。

c. Using many symbols makes\_\_\_\_\_to put a large amount of information on a single map.

- A. possible
- B. it is possible
- C. it possible
- D. that possible

正确答案：C。

特别注意：

一定记住以下三个句型（托福考试重点）：

句型	例句	解释
1) 动词 + it + 宾补 (名词或形容词) + 宾语 to do	The development of steel nibs <b>makes it possible</b> <u>to develop pens.</u>	不定式作宾语后置了，需要形式宾语 it。
2) 动词 + it + 宾补 (名词或形容词) + that 宾语从句	The development of steel nibs <b>makes it possible</b> <u>that people can develop pens.</u>	that 从句作宾语后置了，需要形式宾语 it。
3) 动词 + 宾补 (名词或形容词) + 名词宾语	The development of steel nibs <b>makes possible</b> <u>the development of pens.</u>	名词短语作宾语后置了，不需要形式宾语 it。
重要结论：在“宾语 + 宾语补足语”的结构中，若将不定式宾语或从句宾语放在补足语后边，则须加上形式宾语 it；名词宾语后置，不能加形式宾语 it。		

### 37 句型三：动词+ sb./sth. to do sth. (作宾语补足语) Track35

(1) 通常的结构是：动词+ sb./sth. to do sth.

a. They don't allow people to smoke in the theater.

b. The chairman declared the meeting to be over.

c. Allow me to drink to your success.

让我为你的成功干杯！（祝酒辞）

d. Allow me to propose a toast to our friendship!

我提议为我们的友谊干杯！

e. In hot, dry regions, the sun's heat causes the outer layer of rocks \_\_\_\_\_, process called exfoliation.

A. are expanded and peeled away

B. to expand and peel away

C. expanding and peeling away

D. they expand and peel away

正确答案：B。

能用于此结构中的动词有（具体词义和用法请查词典，词典永远是你最好的朋友！）：

advice allow ask beg believe cause

command challenge compel declare encourage expect  
forbid force get hate have help  
instruct invite judge leave let mean  
make need oblige order permit persuade  
prefer press recommend request remind teach  
tell tempt trouble want warn wish  
urge

特别注意：hope不可以用在此结构中。

(2) 在let, make, have, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, listen to等动词后面作宾补的不定式中，to要省略。（详见本章第四节）

## 38 句型四：名词+ to do sth.（作定语） Track36

不定式作定语一般与被修饰名词有以下三种关系：

### （1）动宾关系（所修饰的名词在逻辑上作不定式的宾语）

例句	解释
I have <b>a letter to write</b> . 我有一封信要写。	逻辑关系相当于： <b>write</b> a letter
I need some <b>paper to write on</b> . 我需要一些能写字的纸。	逻辑关系相当于： <b>write on</b> some paper
I need <b>a pen to write with</b> . 我需要一支写字的笔。	逻辑关系相当于： <b>write with</b> a pen
重要结论：从上述例句可看出，由被修饰的名词决定不定式动词是否需要接介词。 比如，我们不能说： I need some paper to write.* I need a pen to write.*	

更多例句：

a. She has four **children to take care of**.

b. I had no **place to live in**.

c. You just regard me as a thing, **an object to look at, to use, to touch**, but not **to listen to or to take seriously**.

你只把我当作一件东西，一件任你看，任你用，任你抚摸的东西，就是不听我的话，不认真对待我。

d. I gave the kid **a comic to read**. 我给了那孩子一本连环画看。

e. I have no partner to speak English with. 我没有伙伴一起练习英文。

不能说成: I have no partner to speak English.\*

另外要注意的是, 因为不定式已经有逻辑宾语, 所以不定式动词后不能再加宾语了, 比如不能说:

f. I gave the kid a comic to read it.\*

g. She has four children to take care of them.\*

## (2) 主谓关系

被only, last, next, 序数词以及形容词最高级修饰的名词常用不定式作定语, 所修饰的名词与不定式构成逻辑主谓关系。 (考试重点)

a. I don't think he is the best man to do the job.

我认为他并不是做这项工作的最佳人选。

b. The next train to arrive is from New York.

下一列到达的火车是从纽约开来的。

c. Clint was the second person to fall into this trap.

克林特是第二个掉进陷阱的人。

d. Clint was the only person to survive the air crash.

克林特是这次空难事故中唯一的幸存者。

## (3) 同位关系 (两类名词)



1) 与动词相关的名词: 要求与不定式连用的动词, 它的名词形式也要接不定式。这类常见的名词有: arrangement, attempt, claim, decision, hope, determination, failure, need, plan, promise, refusal, resolution, tendency, threat, wish 等。

He **refused to** cooperate with us.  
他拒绝与我们合作。

His **refusal to cooperate** makes us angry.  
他拒绝与我们合作, 这让我们很生气。

I don't **wish to** change.  
我不愿意改变。

I have no **wish to** change. 我不愿意改变。

2) 与形容词相关的名词: 要求与不定式连用的形容词, 它的名词形式也要接不定式。这样的名词有: ability, ambition, anxiety, eagerness, inclination, reluctance 等。

(续表)

She was **reluctant to accept** his invitation. 她很不愿意接受他的邀请。  
Her **reluctance to accept** his invitation upset him.  
她很不愿意接受他的邀请, 这使他很恼火。

They were **eager to help** me.  
他们非常热心地帮助我。

Their **eagerness to help** pleased me.  
他们的热心帮助真让我高兴。

a. A decision \_\_\_\_\_ stock by one or a few of these large companies may have a very important effect on the market as a whole.

- A. buying or to sell
- B. to buy or selling
- C. buying or selling
- D. to buy or sell

正确答案: D。

分析：因为decide后边要接to do，所以名词decision后边也要接to do。所以选D。

b. All our attempts \_\_\_\_\_ the child from drowning were in vain.

A. to rescue

B. having rescued

C. rescue

D. being rescued

正确答案：A。

分析：因为动词attempt后边要接to do，所以名词attempt后边也要接to do。所以选A。

c. According to Darwin, random changes that enhance a species' (A) ability for surviving (B) are (C) naturally selected and passed on to succeeding (D) generations.

正确答案：B，应改为to survive。

分析：因为able后边要接to do，所以名词ability后边也要接to do。

## 39 句型五：形容词+ to do sth.（作主语补足语） Track37

### （1）句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的动宾关系。

我们先分析下面这个例句：

She is interesting to listen to.

请暂停，先思考一下这句话的含义。我们给你两个选项：

- A. 她对听别人讲话很感兴趣。
- B. 听她讲话很有趣。

其实，这句话相当于说 “It is interesting to listen to her.”。意思是“听她讲话很有趣”。因此，原句的主语she在逻辑上是作不定式to listen to的宾语。

更多例句：

a. Relativity theory isn't easy to understand. = It isn't easy to understand relativity theory. 相对论不好理解。

b. She is very nice to talk to. = It is very nice to talk to her. 和她聊天很开心。

c. Mary is easy to get on with. = It is easy to get on with Mary. 玛丽很容易相处。

d. English is difficult to speak. 说好英文不容易。

e. Football is very interesting to watch. 看足球很有趣。

句子主语与不定式动词存在这种动宾关系的情况下，我们要注意以下三点：

1) 不定式动词一般不用被动式。 (最容易出错)

a. English is difficult to be spoken.\*

b. Football is interesting to be watched. \*

2) 不定式后不能再加宾语。

a. Football is very interesting to watch it. \*

b. She is nice to talk to her.\*

3) 不定式动词所带的介词不能省略。

a. She is interesting to listen.\*

b. She is easy to get on.\*

## (2) 句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的主谓关系。

这一句型中的形容词通常表示人的性格特征或行为表现。如：

brave careful careless clever considerate cruel

foolish generous kind modest nice polite

rude selfish silly stupid thoughtful

a. He was kind to help us.

b. The boy was careless to break the window.

这时句子可用以下两种方式改写：

so...as to	a. He was <b>so kind as to</b> help us. b. The boy was <b>so careless as to</b> break the window.
It is/was + 形容词 + of sb. to do sth.	a. It was kind of him to help us. b. It was careless of the boy to break the window.

但注意，并不是所有的形容词都能这样改写，这取决于特定形容词的用法。

## 40 不定式作状语 Track38

动词不定式作状语， 主要表示目的、结果和条件。

### (1) 作目的状语

a. Hating people is like burning down your own house **to get rid of** a rat.

憎恨别人，就好像为了赶走一只老鼠，而把自己的房子烧掉。

b. **To avoid** criticism, do nothing, say nothing, be nothing.

c. **To acquire** knowledge, one must study; but **to acquire** wisdom, one must observe.

d. We had better start early **to catch** the train.

e. I went to the post office **to mail** a letter.

f. I'd climb the highest mountain, just **to see** you smile. I'd swim the ocean, just **to hold** your hand. I'd run a million miles, **just to be** with you forever.

我们可用in order to do或so as to do强调目的状语。

g. We had better start early **so as to** catch the train.

h. I went to the post office **in order to** mail a letter.

i. I quote others **in order** better **to** express my own self.

我引用别人的话，是为了更好地表达自己。

j. The teacher raised her voice **in order for us to** hear more clearly.

需要注意的是，so as to一般不用在句首，但to do或in order to do可提到句首。

## (2) 作结果状语

1) Only to do... 引出意想不到或不愉快的结果。（四、六级考试重点）

a. We hurried to the railway station, **only to find** the train had just left.

我们匆匆忙忙赶到火车站，结果却发现火车刚刚离站。

b. Many women complain that they' re educated as equals, **only to** go out into the workforce to be treated as inferiors.

很多女性抱怨说，她们和男人们接受同样的教育，结果在职场上却被认为低人一等。

c. He worked very hard, \_\_\_\_\_ he had not finished half of the job.

- A. to find
- B. finding
- C. just finding
- D. only to find

正确答案：D。

2) so...as to, such as to表示结果，注意不要漏掉as。

a. Her story is **such as to** arouse our sympathy. = Her story is **so sad as to** arouse our sympathy.

- b. His indifference is **such as to** make everyone despair.
- c. He is **so indifferent as to** make everyone despair.
- d. She looks **so beautiful as to** attract all of us.
- e. She had **such a good friend as to** help her when she was in trouble.
- f. Her voice is **such as to** make everyone stare. = Her voice is **so loud/bad as to** make everyone stare.

3) enough...to结构

- a. He is **not old enough to** go to school. 他还没有到上学的年龄。
- b. The teacher speaks **loudly enough to** make himself heard clearly.

4) too...to结构

① 通常，这一结构的意思是“太……以致不能……”，形式是肯定的，意思是否定的。

- a. The box is **too heavy** for me **to** even move.

这箱子太沉了，我挪不动。

- b. The tea is **too hot to** drink.

② 在too ready/anxious/eager to do结构中，因为too不是修饰形容词ready/anxious/eager的，而是修饰整个ready/anxious/eager to do的，故此结构有“时刻准备……，急于……，非常想……”等意思，形式是肯定的，意思也是肯定的。

- a. You are **too ready to find** faults with other people.

你也太爱找别人茬儿了。



b. I'm just **too eager to help** you. 我非常乐意帮助你。

③ too前若有only, all, but, really修饰时, 此结构亦表示肯定。

a. I am **only too pleased to** help you.

b. He would be **only too glad to** be her boyfriend, but he knew he couldn't match her in family status.

他何尝不想成为她的男朋友, 但他知道他的门第配不上她。

### (3) 作条件状语

当不定式表示条件时, 句子谓语通常含有助动词或情态动词, 如: will, would, shall, should, must, can, could等。

a. You **would** be stupid not **to ask for a raise**.

如果你不要求涨工资, 那真是愚蠢。

这句话相当于: You would be stupid if you don't ask for a raise.

b. One **must** be out of his mind **to do such a thing** .  
(=...if he does such a thing)

c. I **would** have been happy **to be invited to the party** .  
(=...if I had been invited... But I was not invited. 这是虚拟语气。)

d. The father **will** be proud **for his son to win the gold medal** .  
(=...if his son wins the gold medal. 不定式带有自己的逻辑主语。)

## 41 用作独立成分 Track39

动词不定式可用作独立成分来修饰整个句子，常见的有：

to begin with

to tell the truth

to make a long story short

so to speak

to be brief/exact/frank/honest

to say nothing of (姑且不说)

to say the least (至少可以这么说)

以上所列短语均为口语中常用短语。请做到脱口而出！

a. To begin with, on behalf of all of your American guests, I wish to thank you for the incomparable hospitality.

首先，我谨代表所有美国客人向你们表示感谢，感谢你们无可比拟的盛情款待。（美国前总统尼克松1972年访华时的祝酒辞开篇）

b. — You're in pretty lousy mood, huh?

— To say the least.

c. I have a point there, to say the least.

d. To make a long story short, he is in hospital now.

## 第二节 不定式的逻辑主语

### 42 不定式的逻辑主语 Track40

#### (1) 何谓逻辑主语？

对于三种非谓语动词而言，都有一个逻辑主语的问题，这是因为它们都是动词的变化形式，既然是动词就应该有动作的执行者，即主语。之所以称之为逻辑主语，这是为了区别于句子主语。因为句子主语和非谓语动词的逻辑主语并不总是一样的。请比较：

例句	解释
He was anxious <b>to meet</b> you. 他渴望认识你。	句子主语是he；不定式to meet动作也是由he发出，因此 he 也是不定式的逻辑主语。此时，句子主语和不定式逻辑主语一致。
He was anxious <b>for his sister to meet</b> you. 他渴望让他妹妹认识你。	句子主语是he；不定式to meet动作不是由he发出，而是由 his sister 发出，因此 his sister 是不定式的逻辑主语。此时，句子主语（he）和不定式逻辑主语（his sister）不一致。

对于动名词和分词，同样存在句子主语和逻辑主语一致或不一致两种情形。具体后文再进行讨论，在此先分析不定式的逻辑主语。

#### (2) for sb. to do

不定式的逻辑主语常见的是由“for + 名词 / 代词”引出，这里的“名词 / 代词”即是不定式的逻辑主语，来说明不定式动作的执行者。

a. It's important **for you to go** there in person.

你有必要亲自去那儿一趟。

b. It is very common **for him to be** absent without leave.

不请假就擅自离开是他的一贯作风。

c. He was very willing **for everyone else to come**.

他很愿意让其他所有的人都来。

d. **For any adhesive to make** a really strong bond, the surfaces to be glued must be absolutely clean and free from moisture or grease.

对于任何黏合剂，要想粘得牢固的话，则被粘的表面必须绝对清洁且不能潮湿和有油性物质。

e. The father will be proud **for his son to win the gold medal**. (=...if his son wins the gold medal.)

f. The eye of an animal is quite easy to see. How then can the eyes be prevented from spoiling the animal's blending with its environment? One solution would be **for the animal to keep** its eyes closed when danger threatens.

下列句子因为不定式的逻辑主语不明确而显得不规范，因此在写作文时要避免。

g. To study English well, a lot of practices are needed.\*

h. A lot of practices are needed to study English well.\*

g, h两句要表达的意思是：“要想学好英文，大量练习是必要的。”但完全是受汉语思维影响而写出的句子。

以上两句均因句子主语a lot of practices不能作不定式to study的逻辑主语而显得不规范。因此，上面两句可以改为：

i. To study English well, **you** need a lot of practices.

j. A lot of practices are needed **for you** to study English well.

k. For you to study English well, a lot of practices are needed.

### (3) of sb. to do

用来说明人的性格特征或行为表现的动态形容词与不定式连用时，用“of +名词 / 代词”这一结构引出不定式的逻辑主语。这样的形容词主要有：

brave careful careless clever cruel foolish

generous kind modest nice polite rude

selfish silly stupid thoughtful

a. It's wise of you not to argue with your boss.

b. It's generous of him to lend me his car.

c. It was very careless of him to make such silly mistakes.

**for和of的使用规律是：**看句中的表语形容词是着重说明人（逻辑主语）还是事（不定式短语）。若是前者，则用of；若是后者，则用for。另外，用of的句子，可以用人作主语将句子改写，用for的句子则不能。试比较：

d. You are important to go there in person.\*

e. It's important for you to go there in person.

f. You are wise not to argue with your boss. （逻辑关系正确）

g. It's wise of you not to argue with your boss.

### 第三节 不定式的时态与语态

#### 43 不定式的时态 Track41

##### (1) 不定式时态、语态的构成

不定式的时态、语态是不定式作为动词的特征体现。英文中把动作分为四种不同的完成程度：一般动作、进行动作、完成动作和完成进行动作。同理，不定式也具备这四种形式。不定式同样还有语态方面的变化。现列表如下：

四种形式	主动	被动
一般式	to do	to be done
完成式	to have done	to have been done
进行式	to be doing	一般不用
完成进行式	to have been doing	一般不用

##### (2) 不定式的一般式 (to do)

不定式的一般形式to do所表示的动作通常：

1) 与主要谓语所表示的动作或状态同时或几乎同时发生。

a. I am glad to see you.

b. I heard him sing last night. (此句型中要省略不定式的标志to, 但是被动语态中不能省略: He was heard to sing last night.)

2) 或是在主要谓语动作之后发生。

We plan to go to the sea this summer.

### (3) 不定式的完成式 (to have done) (四、六级考试重点)

不定式的完成式可表示:

1) 发生在谓语之前的动作

由上述第(2)点得知, 不定式的一般式不能表示发生在谓语之前的动作, 若要表示不定式的动作比谓语动作先发生, 则不定式要用其完成式 to have done。

a. We are happy to have visited so many historic places in Beijing.

在北京参观了那么多名胜古迹, 我们感到很开心。

b. Humans are believed to have evolved from the primate species.

人们相信, 人类是由灵长类动物进化过来的。

c. Albert Einstein, the great American scientist, is estimated to have had the incredible intelligence quotient of 200.

据估计, 美国伟大的科学家爱因斯坦的智商高达200, 这真让人难以置信。

d. The rain seems to have stopped . It means the rain seems now to have stopped a few minutes ago.

e. I am very sorry to have bothered you with so many questions on such an occasion.

f. I am sorry not to have come on Thursday. (=I am sorry that I didn't come on Thursday.)

g. The redwood appears \_\_\_\_\_ some 100 years ago in northern forests around the world.

A. having to flourish

- B. to flourish
- C. to have flourished
- D. have flourished

正确答案：C。

分析：句子谓语appears表示现在，而some 100 years ago表明不定式动作发生在过去，所以选C。

## 2) 表示“非真实”的过去

用在表示打算、需要、计划等动词过去时的后面，表示过去本打算做但事实上没有实现的动作。这些动词有mean, intend, think, plan, hope, wish, propose等。

a. I meant to have telephoned , but I forgot.

我本来打算打电话的，但是我忘记了。

b. I planned to have visited you last night, but I was too busy.

我昨晚本来想去看你，但太忙了。

我们还可用下边两种结构表达同一种意思：

① was/were to have done, would like to have done, should like to have done

a. I was to have telephoned , but I forgot.

b. I was to have visited you last night, but I was too busy.

② 过去完成时+ to do

用上述动词的过去完成时态来表示此意，但此时不定式不能用完成式，而要用一般式to do。

a. I had intended to see you, but I was busy.



不说:

I **had intended to have seen** you, but I was busy.\*

b. He was to \_\_\_\_\_ to a foreign university but the war prevented.

- A. have gone
- B. go
- C. be going
- D. have been going

正确答案: A。

因此, 表示“过去想做而实际未做成”的事, 有下述三种表达方式:

① was/were to have done, would like to have done, should like to have done

② intended (meant, designed, hoped, planned, thought, wished, proposed) + to have done

③ had intended (meant, designed, hoped, planned, thought, wished, proposed) + to do

3) 偶尔表示“将来”

She hopes **to have finished** the work by the time he comes back.

她希望在他回来之前把这些工作都做完。

这句话本来是由宾语从句转换而来的:

She hopes that she **will have finished** the work by the time he comes back.

由于句中by the time对应的主句一般与完成时态连用，因此将宾语从句改成不定式需要用不定式的完成式，这时，表示的是一个将来完成的动作。

#### (4) 不定式的进行式 (to be doing) (不常用)

不定式的进行式可表示：

##### 1) 正在进行的动作

通常用在appear, happen, pretend, seem等动词之后。如同进行时态那样，动词不定式的进行式 (to be doing) 用于表示在我们谈论的时间 (现在或过去) 正在进行的动作，或者说与谓语动作同时发生的动作。

a. He pretended to be listening attentively when the teacher came by. 当老师走过时，他假装正在专心听讲。

此句相当于：He pretended that he was listening attentively...

b. He pretended to be sleeping when she came in.

c. He happened to be singing in the room when I came in this morning.

##### 2) 反复发生的一般性动作

因为进行时态可以表示一个最近一段时间内持续的一般性动作，同样，不定式进行式可表示一种反复发生的一般性动作，此时带有很强的感情色彩。

a. In the 1980s and early 1990s, athletes entering international sports competitions seemed to be getting younger and younger. Talented young athletes...boys and girls...were spotted early on in their school career, and were given special training.

b. I'd rather read than watch television; the programs seem \_\_\_\_\_ all the time.

A. to get worse

B. to be getting worse

C. to have got worse

D. getting worse

正确答案：B。

#### (5) 不定式的完成进行式 (to have been doing) (较少用到)

表示在谓语动作之前已经开始并且一直在持续进行的某一动作。

a. They are said to have been collecting folk songs in Yunnan.

= It is said that they have been collecting folk songs in Yunnan.

据说他们一直在云南收集民歌。

b. He seems to have been sitting there all day.

c. I seem to have been learning English for over ten years.

d. The little girl seems to have been watching TV all this evening.

## 44 不定式的语态 Track42

(1) 一般来讲，在句中若出现了不定式动作的执行者时，则不定式用主动形式。若没有执行者或不定式所修饰的成分是不定式动作的承受者，则不定式用被动形式。

请比较：

主动	被动
He wants someone <b>to take</b> some photographs. 他想找人拍几张照片。( someone 执行 take 动作 )	He wants some photographs <b>to be taken</b> . 他想拍几张照片。( 不是 he 拍照，所以照片 be taken )
I have three letters <b>to write</b> today. 我今天要写三封信。( 由 I 来执行 write 动作 )	I want the letters <b>to be typed</b> at once. 我想找人立即把这些信件打印出来。( 不是 I 来 type，对 the letters 来说就是 be typed )

更多例句：

a. I have a lot of clothes **to wash** . (由I来wash，I是动作的执行者)

b. The box is too heavy for me **to carry** .

c. She doesn't like **to be treated** as a distinguished guest.  
(She是动作treat的承受者)

d. No one hoped **to be laughed at** like that.

e. These sheets are **to be washed** .

f. This form is **to be filled out** in ink.

g. It's an honor for me **to be invited** to address the international conference.

h. It is necessary for us **to be constantly reminded of** our shortcomings. (不定式作主语)

经常有人提醒自己注意缺点，这是必要的。

i. She asked **to be given** an easy assignment. (作宾语)

她要求分给她一份轻松点的活儿。

j. He wanted the letter **to be delivered** at once. (作宾补)

他想让信件立即发出。

k. She was too old **to be assigned** such work. (作状语)

她年纪大了，不适宜做这份工作。

l. It is known that electrical and chemical energy began \_\_\_\_\_ systematically in the last century.

A. study

B. to study

C. to be studied

D. studied

正确答案：C。

m. Mr. Johnson preferred \_\_\_\_\_ heavier work to do.

A. to be given

B. to be giving

C. to have given

D. having given

正确答案：A。

(2) 形容词后边的不定式通常用不定式的主动形式来表示被动意思。

- a. English is difficult to speak .
- b. Relativity theory is hard to understand .
- c. The box is too heavy to move .
- d. The sentence was difficult to translate .
- e. This magazine is interesting to read . = I found the magazine interesting to read .

(3) to let (出租) , to blame (责备)

这两个短语是固定用法，主动形式表示被动意思。

- a. You should be to blame for it. 你应该因此受到责备。
- b. The house is to let . 此房出租。

(4) 不定式完成被动式及双重被动结构

完成被动式：

- a. The book is said to have been published.
- b. The construction is reported to have been completed.

双重被动式：

- c. The book is said to have been published.
- d. The construction is reported to have been completed.
- e. The book is not allowed to be taken out of the library.

比较：（单一被动结构）

- f. You are not allowed to smoke here.

g. You are not allowed to take the exam paper out of the classroom.

可用于这种双重被动结构的动词有：

allow announce attempt believe desire enable  
expect intend mean order permit propose  
report say

h. The Bunsen burner is so named because it is thought to \_\_\_\_\_ by Robert Bunsen, who was German by birth.

- A. be invented
- B. have been invented
- C. have invented
- D. invent

正确答案：B。

i. The bank is reported in the local newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ in broad daylight yesterday.

- A. to be robbed
- B. to have been robbed
- C. being robbed
- D. having been robbed

正确答案：B。

## 第四节 不带to的不定式

### 45 不带to的不定式 Track43

在下列几种情况下不定式要省略to:

#### (1) 在以下动词的复合宾语中

1) 感官动词: see, hear, watch, notice, feel, observe

2) 使役动词: let, make, have

a. The teacher has us write a composition every week.

b. I saw a man enter the shop.

c. They are going to have the serviceman\_\_\_\_\_an electric fan in the office tomorrow.

A. install

B. to install

C. to be installed

D. installed

正确答案: A。

d. The minister had his secretaries\_\_\_\_\_a press conference.

A. arrange

B. to arrange



C. arranging

D. arranged

正确答案：A。

若上述动词转换为被动结构，其后不定式中的to不能省略。

e. A man **was seen to enter** the shop.

3) help, listen to, look at后边的动词不定式可用to，也可不用to。

a. Would you like to **listen to me (to) read** the poem?

b. The teacher will **help you (to) study** English well.

## (2) 在下列一些短语句型中

had better    would rather    would sooner

would just as soon    might (just) as well    cannot but

cannot choose but    cannot help but

a. I **cannot but admire** his courage.

b. We **might as well put up** here for tonight.

c. It all started so innocently that warm June night, when I first met you, you looked so beautiful and lovely that I **couldn't help but fall** in love with you, even though we both agreed our worlds were far apart, and could never be one.

## (3) 在rather than, other than, than后

a. **Rather than wait** anymore, I decided to go home by taxi.

b. Rather than go on with his work, he went home.

c. No one could do other than admire it.

d. To my great surprise, she preferred to give herself up \_\_\_\_\_ herself.

A. than hiding

B. rather than to hide

C. to hiding

D. rather than hide

正确答案：D。

e. In the course of a day students do far more than just \_\_\_\_\_ classes.

A. attend

B. attended

C. to attend

D. attending

正确答案：A。

#### (4) 在Do nothing/anything/everything but do句型中

a. I have nothing to do but wait .

b. I have no choice but to wait . (若but前没有do, 则不定式加to)

c. He needs nothing but to succeed .

d. He will do anything **but give in** . 他决不会屈服。

e. That was so serious a matter that I had no choice but \_\_\_\_\_ the police.

A. called in

B. calling in

C. call in

D. to call in

正确答案：D。

f. Having missed that last bus, Bob had no alternative \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi home though he did not like the idea.

A. but to take

B. take to but

C. to but take

D. to take but

正确答案：A。

另外，在解释do的精确含义的名词从句和定语从句作主语的句子中，be动词后直接加动词原形。

g. All that I could do then **was wait** .

h. What I could do then **was wait** .

i. All you do now is **complete** this form.

j. No mountains too high for you to climb. All you have to do **is have** some climbing faith. No rivers too wide for you to make it across. All you have to do **is believe** it when you pray.

k. Husband: I have a very demanding job. I'm tired when I get home.

Wife: I also have a demanding job, but I'm expected to come home from the office and cook, care for the children and clean the house. All you do is **sit and watch** television and **complain about** how tired you are.

### (5) Why (not) + do?句型中

1) Why do sth.?含有责怪之意，通常表明做某事是无意义或愚蠢的。

a. — I really hate to write the essay Professor Smith assigned us.

— **Why bother** then?

b. **Why pay** to see that movie, since you can see it on TV for nothing.

2) Why not do sth.?表示建议

**Why not take** a holiday?

(6) 两个动词不定式由and, or, but等连接时，为了避免重复而省去第二个不定式中的to。

a. I'd like **to lie down** and **go** to sleep.

b. Do you want **to have** lunch now or **wait** till later?

c. I haven't decided whether **to go** home or **stay** at school during the coming summer vacation.

在这种情况下，若两个不定式动词有对比之意，则均须加to。

d. It is the greatest happiness on earth to love and to be loved .

e. To play fair is as important as to play well .

f. I came not to praise , but to scold you.

g. He likes to be respected , not to respect others.

## 46 分裂不定式 Track44

所谓分裂不定式，即to与动词之间插入了一个副词。

a. He liked to half close his eyes.

b. He began to slowly get up off the floor.

他开始慢慢地从地上爬起来。

但有人认为这种分裂不定式“文风恶劣”，尤其在正式文体中应尽量避免，而把副词放在to之前或句子末尾。

c. He began slowly to get up off the floor.

但是，有时为了准确表达不定式的意思，我们可能只能用分裂不定式。因为，如果改动可能会引起意思的改变。请比较下例：

d. The United Nations is expected to strongly condemn such action.

人们期望联合国强烈谴责这种行为。

e. The United Nations is expected strongly to condemn such action.

人们强烈期望联合国谴责这种行为。

### 动词不定式练习

#### 一、单项选择（不定式作主语和宾语）。

1. Sometimes\_\_\_\_\_to place physics and chemistry into separate categories.

A. that is difficult

- B. is difficult
- C. it is difficult
- D. that it is difficult

2. The teachers don't know \_\_\_\_\_ to start and run a school.

- A. what it takes
- B. what they take
- C. what does it take
- D. what takes

3. Because air is highly compressible, \_\_\_\_\_ to define a clear upper boundary of the atmosphere.

- A. it is impossible
- B. impossible is
- C. so the impossible
- D. is the impossibility

4. The Homestead Act of 1862 \_\_\_\_\_ to acquire land at a small cost.

- A. made possible
- B. made it possible
- C. made the possibility
- D. possibly made

5. To what extent will future scientific discoveries \_\_\_\_\_ possible the lengthening of the human life?

- A. be made
- B. make it
- C. make
- D. be made it

6. X-rays are able to pass through objects and thus make \_\_\_\_\_ details that are otherwise impossible.

- A. it visible
- B. them visible
- C. visibly
- D. visible

7. Digital recording has made \_\_\_\_\_ a significantly wider dynamic range in recorded music.

- A. for the possibility
- B. the possibility is
- C. it is possible
- D. possible

8. The discovery of the halftone process in photography in 1881 made

\_\_\_\_\_ photographs in books and newspapers.



- A. the possible reproduction
- B. possible to reproduce
- C. it possible to reproduce
- D. possibly reproduced

## 二、单项选择（不定式作定语）。

9. Their little bit of land doesn't provide enough food to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. live on
- B. live
- C. live in
- D. live up

10. I got out some more chairs for the other guests \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to sit
- B. to sit on
- C. sit on
- D. sit

11. I need a piece of paper to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. write on
- B. write
- C. be written

D. write with

12. He was the first \_\_\_\_\_ and the last \_\_\_\_\_.

A. arriving, leaving

B. to arrive, to leave

C. arrive, leave

D. for arriving, for leaving

13. Air pollution has been greatly reduced, so this city is still \_\_\_\_\_.

A. a good place to live

B. a good place to live in

C. a good place to be lived in

D. a good place for living in

14. I have no place \_\_\_\_\_ and no food \_\_\_\_\_.

A. to live, to eat

B. to live in, to eat

C. to live in, to eat at

D. living in, eating

15. Her failure \_\_\_\_\_ into college disappointed her parents.

A. getting

B. to get

C. get

D. of getting

16. His refusal \_\_\_\_\_ surprised us.

A. of helping

B. with help

C. to help

D. of help

17. I have been working hard, with the determination \_\_\_\_\_ something of myself.

A. making

B. of making

C. to make

D. in making

### 三、单项选择（不定式的逻辑主语）。

18. It is wise \_\_\_\_\_ the experiment that way.

A. of him to do

B. for him to do

C. of his doing

D. that he do

19. \_\_\_\_\_ any aspect of society, the sociologist must determine the laws influencing human behavior in social

contexts.

- A. Explain
- B. To explain
- C. One explains
- D. The explanation of

20. \_\_\_\_\_ as a masterpiece, a work of art must transcend the ideals of the period in which it was created.

- A. To rank
- B. The ranking
- C. To be ranked
- D. For being ranked

21. \_\_\_\_\_ the demands of aerospace, medicine, and agriculture, engineers are creating exotic new metallic substances.

- A. Meet
- B. Being met are
- C. To meet
- D. They are meeting

#### 四、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（不定式的时态）。

22. Nero, who was Emperor of Rome from 54 to 68 A.D., is believed to \_\_\_\_\_ (murder) both his mother and his wife.

23. They seem to \_\_\_\_\_ (make) much progress in their English study.

24. We are happy to \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) so many historic spots in Beijing.

25. We didn't expect you to \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for us here.

26. They are proud to \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the football match.

27. You look tired. You seem to \_\_\_\_\_ (work) too hard all day.

28. A: I thought Sam was sick.

B: So did I. But he seems to \_\_\_\_\_ (recover) very quickly. He certainly doesn't seem to be sick now.

29. I really have enjoyed our conversation, but I have to leave now. I'm very happy to \_\_\_\_\_ (have) this opportunity to meet you and talk with you. Let's try to get together again soon.

30. I am glad that my company sent me to another country to study. I am very pleased to \_\_\_\_\_ (give) the opportunity to learn about another culture.

31. Clint is fortunate to \_\_\_\_\_ (give) a scholarship.

32. — Do you believe that Charlie did best in the exam?

— Yes. He is said to \_\_\_\_\_ (work) very hard.

## 五、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（不定式的语态）。

33. A: This letter needs to \_\_\_\_\_ (send) immediately. Will you take care of it?

B: Right away.

34. He asked to\_\_\_\_\_ (send) to work in Tibet.
35. It is easy to\_\_\_\_\_ (fool) by his lies.
36. "I considered it an honor to\_\_\_\_\_ (invite) to address the meeting of world-famous scientists," said Professor Leacock.
37. Don't all of us want to\_\_\_\_\_ (love) and\_\_\_\_\_ (need) by other people?
38. Clint wants us to tell him the news as soon as we hear anything. He wants to\_\_\_\_\_ (tell) about it immediately.
39. Give him some books to\_\_\_\_\_ (read).
40. The house is to\_\_\_\_\_ (let).
41. The reason is not far to\_\_\_\_\_ (seek).
42. The magazine is interesting to\_\_\_\_\_ (read).
43. It is necessary for us to\_\_\_\_\_ (constantly, remind) of our shortcomings.
44. The report is difficult to\_\_\_\_\_ (write).
45. Everyone hates to\_\_\_\_\_ (use).
46. They found the lecture hard to\_\_\_\_\_ (understand).

## 六、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（是否省去to）。

47. The boy was made\_\_\_\_\_ (sing) the song once again.
48. Don't make children\_\_\_\_\_ (work) too hard.
49. They would rather\_\_\_\_\_ (die) than\_\_\_\_\_ (surrender).

50. He could not choose but \_\_\_\_\_ (love) her.

51. She could do nothing but \_\_\_\_\_ (change) her name under the circumstances.

52. He had his son \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the violin three hours a day.

53. There was nothing to do except \_\_\_\_\_ (escape) .

54. He has no alternative but \_\_\_\_\_ (go) and ask his sister for help.

55. If he is not willing to be with you, why \_\_\_\_\_ (not, ask) somebody else?

56. Since he is only a kid, why \_\_\_\_\_ (make) fun of him?

57. A: What can you see in a park?

B: I can see birds \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) in the sky and sometimes I can see people \_\_\_\_\_ (do) shadowboxing.

A: Do you hear anything in the park?

B: Yes, I can hear people \_\_\_\_\_ (chat) here and there and sometimes I can hear young people \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) English at the English corner.

## 七、翻译下列句子，注意句中副词的位置（分裂不定式）。

58. The boy liked to half close his eyes.

59. She was too ill to really carry out her duty.

60. The young man prepared to silently accompany her.

61. It is too heavy for me to even move.

62. He made up his mind to once more have a proposal to her.

63. I am required to carefully take the vase out of the bag.

64. The soldier is expected to firmly complete his task.

#### 八、单项选择（综合练习）。

65. On Saturday afternoon, Mrs. Green went to the market, \_\_\_\_\_ some bananas and visited her cousin.

A. bought

B. buying

C. to buy

D. buy

66. We will have to get the Dean \_\_\_\_\_ this form.

A. to sign

B. sign

C. signed

D. signing

67. She is having her car \_\_\_\_\_ this week.

A. to repair

B. repair

C. repaired



D. repairing

68. The doctor had the patient \_\_\_\_\_ on at once.

A. operate

B. operated

C. to operate

D. operating

69. My sister's professor had her \_\_\_\_\_ her paper many times before allowing her to present it to the committee.

A. rewritten

B. to rewrite

C. rewrite

D. rewriting

70. The teacher had the students \_\_\_\_\_ their homework every day.

A. do

B. to do

C. done

D. doing

71. We're leaving at six o'clock in the morning, and hope to \_\_\_\_\_ most of the journey by lunch time.

A. be doing

- B. have done
- C. have been done
- D. do

72. A membership card authorizes \_\_\_\_\_ the club's facilities of a period of 12 months.

- A. the holder using
- B. the holder's use
- C. the holder to use
- D. the holder uses

73. He asked \_\_\_\_\_ since he had been chairman for seven years.

- A. not to have been re-elected
- B. to be not re-elected
- C. not to be re-elected
- D. to have not been re-elected

74. The police were tracking the criminal who was said \_\_\_\_\_ in a nearby wood.

- A. have hidden
- B. to be hiding
- C. to hiding
- D. to hide

75. At the Seventh International Ballet Competitions, Ferando Bujones won the first gold medal ever \_\_\_\_\_ to a United States male dancer.

- A. to be awarded
- B. to award
- C. that awards
- D. should be awarding

76. — I was arguing with him about our plan just now.

— Why \_\_\_\_\_ with him? He'll never change his mind.

- A. arguing
- B. argue
- C. to argue
- D. you argue

77. It is extremely important for an engineer to know \_\_\_\_\_ a computer.

- A. use
- B. to use
- C. how to use
- D. using

78. The ancient Egyptians are supposed \_\_\_\_\_ rockets to the moon.

- A. to send

- B. to be sending
- C. to have sent
- D. to have been sending

79. He prefers to stay here \_\_\_\_\_ go home.

- A. than to
- B. rather than
- C. rather than to
- D. than

80. The use of well-chosen nonsense words makes \_\_\_\_\_ the testing of many basic hypotheses in the field of language learning.

- A. it is possible
- B. it possible
- C. possible
- D. them possible

81. I should very much like to have gone to the party, but I \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. was not invited
- B. am not invited
- C. shall not be invited
- D. am not being invited

82. Many women complain that they' re educated as equals, only to go out into the workforce \_\_\_\_\_ as inferiors.

- A. to treat
- B. to be treated
- C. be treated
- D. treat

83. After twenty years abroad, William came back only \_\_\_\_\_ his hometown severely damaged in an earthquake.

- A. finding
- B. to find
- C. was finding
- D. was to find

84. They were believed \_\_\_\_\_ the problem beforehand.

- A. to discuss
- B. in discussing
- C. to have discussed
- D. to have been discussed

85. \_\_\_\_\_ money in such a dishonest way, he would beg in the streets.

- A. Rather than getting
- B. Rather than to get

C. Rather than get

D. More than get

86. He came all the way to help her \_\_\_\_\_ that she drowned herself in a well.

A. only to find

B. to find

C. in order to find

D. so as to find

87. He preferred \_\_\_\_\_ with that Managing Editor.

A. not to identifying

B. identify himself

C. identity

D. not to identify himself

88. Caught in the act, he had no alternative but \_\_\_\_\_.

A. confess

B. confessing

C. confessed

D. to confess

89. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ smoking as soon as possible.

A. quitting

B. had quit

C. quit

D. to quit

90. I'd rather that you \_\_\_\_\_ the bike. If only I had more time, I would repair it myself.

A. repairing

B. repaired

C. to repair

D. will repair

91. It is heartening to see millions who had nothing but a record of misery and hunger \_\_\_\_\_ to improve their life.

A. having had the chance

B. had the chance

C. to have the chance

D. have the chance

92. The girl tried many times to sneak across the border to a neighboring country, \_\_\_\_\_ each time.

A. having been caught

B. always being caught

C. had been caught

D. only to be caught

93. I experienced having students\_\_\_\_\_a thousand new words in a week.

- A. considering less talented to remember
- B. considered less talented remember
- C. considering less talented remember
- D. considered less talented to remember

94. The party\_\_\_\_\_at my house, but the central heating broke down, and we had to have it at John's place.

- A. would be
- B. have been
- C. was to be
- D. was to have been

95. He couldn't help\_\_\_\_\_after he heard the news.

- A. bursting into tears
- B. burst into tears
- C. bursting out tears
- D. burst out crying

96. For the government, the challenge\_\_\_\_\_the reform to the end.

- A. is carry out
- B. is to carry out



C. is for carrying out

D. is to carrying out

97. They found the lecture hard \_\_\_\_\_.

A. to understand

B. to be understood

C. for understanding

D. for being understood

98. The Cubists were concerned with how \_\_\_\_\_ a given subject from different points of view simultaneously.

A. represented

B. to represent

C. do they represent

D. represent

99. The parents scolded the child and made her promise \_\_\_\_\_ again.

A. never to do that

B. what to do never

C. that never to do that

D. so never to do that

100. I spoke to the kid kindly \_\_\_\_\_ him.

A. not to frighten

- B. so as not to frighten
- C. in order to not frighten
- D. for not frightening

101. The child may be able to attain his immediate goal\_\_\_\_\_that his method brings criticism from people who observe him.

- A. only to find
- B. only find
- C. only finding
- D. only have found

102. The student continued to do mischief in class even though his teacher repeatedly told him \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. not doing
- B. not
- C. not to
- D. to

103. The teacher doesn't allow\_\_\_\_\_on the exam.

- A. his students to cheat
- B. his students' cheating
- C. to cheat
- D. his students cheat

104. The total influence of literature upon the course of human history \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. is difficult to evaluate
- B. is difficult to evaluate it
- C. difficult to evaluate it
- D. it is difficult to evaluate

105. Those naughty boys were caught \_\_\_\_\_ flowers in the garden again.

- A. to steal
- B. stealing
- C. to have stolen
- D. having stolen

106. Much of the forest, along with the farmland, near the Mount Saint Helens volcano, appears to \_\_\_\_\_ at the time of the eruption.

- A. be destroying
- B. have been destroying
- C. be destroyed
- D. have been destroyed

107. By the first decade of the 21st century, international commercial air traffic is expected \_\_\_\_\_ vastly beyond today's levels.

- A. to have extended

B. to be extending

C. to extend

D. to be extended

108. A Dream of the Red Chamber is said \_\_\_\_\_ into dozens of languages in the last decade.

A. to have been translated

B. to translate

C. to be translated

D. to have translated

109. The local health organization is reported \_\_\_\_\_ twenty years ago when Dr. Smith became its first president.

A. to be set up

B. being set up

C. to have been set up

D. having been set up

110. In 1938 Pearl S. Buck became the first American woman \_\_\_\_\_ the Nobel Prize for Literature.

A. receive

B. received

C. to receive

D. she received

111. The first explorer\_\_\_\_\_California by land was Strong Smith, a trapper who crossed the southwestern deserts of the United States in 1825.

- A. that he reached
- B. to reach
- C. reached
- D. reaching it

112. She could do nothing but\_\_\_\_\_her name under the circumstances.

- A. to change
- B. changing
- C. change
- D. to be changed

113. If he is not willing to be with you, why\_\_\_\_\_somebody else?

- A. don't ask
- B. not ask
- C. to ask
- D. not to ask

114. If you still don't have an answer from the New York University, why\_\_\_\_\_call the admission office?

- A. you don't

B. not to

C. not

D. don't

115. Since he is only a kid, why \_\_\_\_\_ fun of him?

A. make

B. to make

C. making

D. not to make

116. — Do you believe that Charlie did best in the exam?

— Yes. He is said \_\_\_\_\_ very hard.

A. to work

B. that he worked

C. to have worked

D. that he has worked

117. I'd rather have a room of my own, however small it is, than

\_\_\_\_\_ a room with someone else.

A. to share

B. to have shared

C. share

D. sharing

118. Mrs. Brown is supposed \_\_\_\_\_ for Italy last week.

- A. to have left
- B. to be leaving
- C. to leave
- D. to have been left

119. For nearly four hours they waited for the decision, only \_\_\_\_\_ to come again next day.

- A. they were told
- B. to be told
- C. to tell
- D. being told

120. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ a passport, one must either present legal documents or call a witness to give evidence concerning one's identity.

- A. be issued
- B. issue
- C. have issue
- D. have been issued

121. As luck would have it, my teacher happened to \_\_\_\_\_ America when an earthquake occurred in his native place.

- A. visit

- B. have visited
- C. be visiting
- D. have been visiting

122. If we allow our imagination \_\_\_\_\_ by known research, our prophecies need not be sheer fantasy.

- A. guided
- B. be guided
- C. to be guided
- D. being guided

123. During the exam, the school authorities won't allow \_\_\_\_\_ freely.

- A. to talk
- B. talk
- C. talking
- D. to be talking

124. Since you changed lanes without signaling, you are as much \_\_\_\_\_ for the accident as us.

- A. to be blamed
- B. to blame
- C. blamed
- D. blaming



125. The specialized nature of anthropological research makes \_\_\_\_\_ that various groups of people be studied to determine their similarities and differences.

- A. imperative
- B. it imperative
- C. it is imperative
- D. it is an imperative

### 九、辨别改错。

126. In order that (A) save the California condor from (B) extinction, a group of federal, local (C), and private organizations initiated a rescue (D) program.

127. Because of (A) the recent accidents, our parents forbid us from swimming (B) in the river unless (C) someone agrees to watch over (D) us.

128. Those part-time students expected to offer (A) some jobs on (B) campus during (C) the coming (D) summer vacation.

129. A conductor uses signals and gestures to let (A) the musicians to know (B) when to play (C) various parts of a composition (D).

130. Ogden Nash often extended (A) sentences over (B) several lines produce (C) surprising (D) and comical rhymes.

131. For thousands of years, people have used (A) some kind (B) of refrigeration cooling (C) beverages and preserve edibles (D).

132. The fragrant leaves (A) of the laurel plant to sell (B) commercially as bay leaves and are used for (C) seasoning foods (D) .

133. As secretary (A) of transportation from 1975 to 1977, William Coleman worked to help (B) the bankrupt railroads in the northeastern United States solved (C) their financial (D) problems.

134. Mercury's velocity is so much (A) greater than the Earth's (B) that it completes more than four revolutions around the Sun in the time that (C) takes the Earth to complete one (D) .

135. The invention of fresh (A) metaphors today continues to (B) make it possible (C) the vivid expression (D) of emotions.

136. A microphone enables musical (A) tones to be amplified (B) , thus making it possible (C) the gentle renditions of soft (D) songs in large halls.

137. Government money appropriated for art (A) in the 1930s made it possible (B) hundreds of murals and statues still admired (C) in small towns all over (D) the United States.

### 动词不定式练习答案

#### 一~三、单项选择。

1-5: CAABC 6-10: DDCAB 11-15: ABBBB 16-21: CCABCC

#### 四、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（不定式的时态）。

22. have murdered

23. have made

- 24. have visited
- 25. be waiting
- 26. have won
- 27. have been working
- 28. have recovered
- 29. have had
- 30. have been given
- 31. have been given
- 32. have worked

五、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（不定式的语态）。

- 33. be sent
- 34. be sent
- 35. be fooled
- 36. be invited
- 37. be loved, needed
- 38. be told
- 39. read
- 40. let
- 41. seek
- 42. read

43. be constantly reminded

44. write

45. be used

46. understand

## 六、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（是否省去to）。

47. to sing

48. work

49. die, surrender

50. love

51. change

52. play

53. escape

54. to go

55. not ask

56. make

57. fly, do, chat, speak

## 七、翻译下列句子，注意句中副词的位置（分裂不定式）。

58. 这个男孩喜欢半闭着眼睛。

59. 她病得太重，实在无法上班。

60. 这个青年准备默默地陪伴她。

61. 这太重了，我甚至都搬不动。
62. 他下定决心再次向她求婚。
63. 我被要求小心地把花瓶从包里拿出来。
64. 希望这位战士能坚决完成任务。

#### 八、单项选择（综合练习）。

65-70: AACBCA

71-75: BCCBA

76-80: BCCBC

81-85: ABBCC

86-90: ADDCB

91-95: DDBDA

96-100: BABAB

101-105: ACAAB

106-110: DAACC

111-115: BCBCA

116-120: CCABA

121-125: CCCBB

#### 九、辨别改错。

126. A/In order to

127. B/to swim

- 128. A/be offered
- 129. B/know
- 130. C/to produce
- 131. C/to cool
- 132. B/are sold
- 133. C/solve
- 134. C/that it
- 135. C/make possible
- 136. C/making possible
- 137. B/made possible

## Chapter 5 动名词



音频

- 47 动名词作主语
- 48 动名词作宾语
- 49 动名词的复合结构
- 50 动名词的时态和语态
- 51 there be的动名词及不定式形式

## 第一节 动名词充当的句子成分

### 47 动名词作主语 Track45

#### (1) 动名词放在句首作主语

与不定式作主语不同，动名词作主语一般直接放在句首，谓语动词用单数。

a. **Seeing** is believing.

b. **Reading** is like permitting a man to talk a long time, and refusing you the right to answer.

c. **Hating people** is like burning down your own house to get rid of a rat. 憎恨别人，就好像为了赶走一只老鼠，而把自己的房子烧掉。

d. **Having a successful marriage** takes effort and patience, and communication is the key.

要获得成功的婚姻需要努力和耐心，而交流就是关键。

e. **Ordering meals from an incomprehensible Chinese menu** is a daunting experience for foreigners, but sometimes the most expedient method is to scan nearby tables and point to dishes that they want to order.

在听不懂的中文菜单上点菜对老外来说可是件头疼的事，不过有时最省事的就是看看邻座，然后用手指出自己想要的菜。

f. **Going to the school dance** is a lot of fun. But sometimes, **deciding who to go with** isn't easy.



g. **Getting into shape** doesn't mean you have to sweat and strain. You don't have to go for the burn to get into shape...just get going. **Walking, climbing stairs and bicycling** would count as long as the activity left the person slightly winded.

h. \_\_\_\_\_by transferring the blame to others is often called scapegoating.

- A. The eliminated problems
- B. Eliminating problems
- C. Eliminate problems
- D. Problems are eliminated

正确答案：B。

i. \_\_\_\_\_to inanimate objects, such as machines, is a form of animism.

- A. When attributing emotion
- B. Attributing emotion
- C. Emotion is attributed
- D. If emotion is attributed

正确答案：B。

## (2) 固定句型

英文中有几个动名词后置作主语的固定句型，现列举如下：

- 1) It is no good/no use doing sth.

表示“做什么事没有用”。这里，it只是形式主语，真正的主语是doing sth.。其中，no good可替换为any/some good, any/some/no use, a waste of time等。

- a. Is it any good trying to explain?
- b. It's no use crying over spilt milk. 后悔没有用。
- c. It's not much use my buying salmon if you don't like fish.
- d. It's simply a waste of time and money seeing that movie.

e. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ me not to worry.

- A. you tell
- B. your telling
- C. for you to have told
- D. having told

正确答案：B。

2) There is no point/use/good (in) doing sth.

表示“做某事没有必要，没有意义”，“做某事没有用”。

- a. There is no point in my buying salmon if you don't like fish.
- b. There is no point in my going out to date someone, I might really like if I met him at the time, but who, right now, has no chance of being anything to me but a transitional man.

现在让我出去和别人约会没有用。如果我碰上了意中人，我自然会爱上他的。可是在现在这个时候，我跟谁也不会有结果的，除非是为了解解闷而已。

c. *There is no use your arguing* with him. 你没必要和他争论。

3) *There is no doing sth.*

意思相当于 *It's impossible to do sth.* 或 *We can't do sth.*，意为“不可能做某事”。

a. *There is no denying the fact that ...* 毋庸置疑……

b. *There is no gainsaying the fact that ...* 毋庸置疑……

c. *There is no telling* what will happen tomorrow.

谁也无法预知明天会发生什么。

d. *There's no knowing* the future. = *It's impossible to know the future, or we can't know the future.* 谁也无法预知未来。

## 48 动名词作宾语 Track46

### (1) 下列动词（短语）后只能用动名词作宾语

admit advise anticipate appreciate avoid consider  
contemplate delay deny detest discuss dislike  
encourage endure enjoy escape excuse fancy  
favor feel like finish forbid forgive give up  
can't help imagine involve leave off mention mind  
miss overlook permit postpone practice prohibit  
put off resent resist risk stand suggest  
tolerate understand

a. I will overlook your being so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.

b. Many of the things we do involve taking some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.

c. Being a bad-tempered man, he would not tolerate having his lectures interrupted.

d. Peter, who had been driving all day, suggested \_\_\_\_\_ at the next town.

- A. to stop
- B. stopping
- C. stop

D. having stopped

正确答案：B。

e. Putting in a new window will \_\_\_\_\_ cutting away part of the roof.

A. include

B. involve

C. contain

D. comprise

正确答案：B。

f. They are considering \_\_\_\_\_ before the prices go up.

A. of buying the house

B. buying the house

C. with buying the house

D. to buy the house

正确答案：B。

g. She was so angry that she felt like \_\_\_\_\_ something at him.

A. to throw

B. throwing

C. to have thrown

D. having thrown

正确答案：B。

## (2) 需要特别关注的动词

上文提到的接动名词的动词中有几个需特别注意，包括allow, advise, forbid, permit, recommend。

1) 这些动词后要接动名词作宾语，如allow doing sth. 等。

2) 但在某人作宾语时，则后接动词不定式（用作宾补），如allow sb. to do sth.。请看例句：

a. We don't allow smoking in the lecture room.

b. We don't allow people to smoke in the lecture room.

c. I wouldn't advise taking the car—there's nowhere to park.

我不主张开车去，因为没地方停车。

d. I wouldn't advise you to take the car. 我劝你不要开车去。

e. I recommended going by subway. 我建议坐地铁去。

f. The doctor recommended me to take a few days' rest.

医生劝我休息几天。

g. I advise you \_\_\_\_\_ before \_\_\_\_\_ final decision.

A. waiting, to make

B. to wait, make

C. waiting, making

D. to wait, making

正确答案：D。

## (3) 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词

在英语中有很多动词后接动名词和接动词不定式均可，但在意思上往往有很大的差别，现将这样的动词分类归纳整理如下：

1) 在demand, deserve, need, require, want等动词后面, 要接动名词的主动形式而不是被动形式, 但表示被动的意思; 若改接动词不定式, 则必须用动词不定式的被动形式。

a. The garden needs watering/to be watered . (不说: The garden needs being watered .\*)

b. Your hair needs cutting/to be cut .

c. He deserved praising/to be praised . (不说: He deserved being praised .\*)

d. Your hair wants \_\_\_\_\_. You'd better have it done tomorrow.

A. cut

B. to cut

C. cutting

D. being cut

正确答案: C。

2) 与remember, forget, stop, go on和regret连用时, 动名词表示发生于这些动词之前的事, 不定式表示发生在它们之后的事。

### ① remember

remember doing sth.: remember/recall something that happened in the past 记得已做过某事

a. I still remember being taken to Beijing for the first time.

b. I don't remember/recall locking my suitcase. = As far as I know, my suitcase should be open.

remember to do sth.: remember to perform a responsibility, duty or task 记得需要履行职责或完成任务

c. Remember to go to the post office, won't you?

d. Remember to do some shopping after work.

e. Clint always remembers to turn off the lights when he leaves the room.

f. If I had remembered \_\_\_\_\_ the window, the thief would not have got in.

A. to close

B. closing

C. to have closed

D. having closed

正确答案：A。

## ② forget

forget doing sth. : forget something that happened in the past 忘记了已做过的某事

a. I forgot locking the door. So when I came back, I found the door locked. As far as I know, the door should be open.

b. I'll never forget visiting Beijing for the first time.

forget to do sth. : forget to perform a responsibility, duty or task 忘记需要履行的职责或完成的任务

c. As well as getting on everybody's nerves, he's got a habit of borrowing money and forgetting to pay it back.

d. I forgot to mail the letter.

e. I'll never forget \_\_\_\_\_ you for the first time.

A. to meet



- B. meeting
- C. to have met
- D. having to be meeting

正确答案：B。

③ stop

stop doing sth. 停下经常做的或手头正在做的事

a. I really must stop smoking .

stop to do sth. 中断下来，以便做另外的某事

b. Stop to have a rest . (to have a rest是目的状语，不是宾语)

④ go on

go on doing sth. 继续做一直在做的事

a. The teacher went on explaining the text. 老师一直在讲课文。

b. Peter went on sleeping despite the noise.

go on to do sth. 改做另一件事

c. He welcomed the new students and then went on to explain the college regulations.

d. Finishing the new words, the teacher went on to attack the text.

⑤ regret

regret doing sth : regret something that happened in the past 对已发生的事感到后悔

a. I don't regret telling her what I thought, even if it upset her.

我并 不后悔 把自己的想法告诉她，尽管这让她很恼火。

注意否定位置不同句义也不同，请比较下句：

I regret not telling her what I thought.

我现在很后悔 没有告诉 她我真实的想法。

b. I regret letting slip that opportunity. 我真后悔错失了那次机会。

c. I regret lending him so much money. He never paid me back.

我真后悔把那么多钱借给他，他从来没还给我。

d. Now he regrets not having gone to university.

regret to do sth. : regret to say, to tell someone, or to inform someone of some bad news 遗憾地告诉或通知某人某个坏消息

e. We regret to inform you that we are unable to offer you employment.

f. I regret to tell you that you failed the test.

g. We regret to inform you that the flight has been cancelled.

h. We regret \_\_\_\_\_ you that you are to be dismissed next week.

A. to have informed

B. informing

C. to inform

D. having informed

正确答案：C。

3) try/mean/chance + doing/to do

① try

try doing sth. 试试做某事，看看会发生什么情况

a. I tried sending her flowers, but it didn't have any effect.

b. Try using this key to see if it works.

c. The room was hot. I tried opening the window, but that didn't help.

So I tried turning on the fan, but I was still hot. Finally, I turned on the air conditioner.

try to do sth. 作了一番努力，试图完成某事

d. I once tried to learn Japanese.

e. I tried to open the window, but it got stuck.

我想把窗子打开，但它卡住了。

② mean

mean doing sth. 意味着……

a. Your plan would mean spending hours.

b. Love means never having to say you're sorry.

爱意味着永远别说抱歉。

mean to do sth. 打算做某事，意思是想……

c. I don't mean to be rude, but could you stop smoking?

d. I didn't mean \_\_\_\_\_ anyone but somehow I succeeded in annoying them all.

A. having offended

B. to be offending

C. to offend

D. offending

正确答案：C。

### ③ chance

chance doing sth. : risk doing sth. 冒险做某事

a. He **chanced climbing** the rock without any aid.

chance to do sth. : happen to do sth. 碰巧做某事

b. He **chanced to find** his lost bike in front of a store.

### (4) to doing

在英文中带有to的固定短语，其后必须接动名词，例如：

look forward to

object to

be/get used to

prefer (doing) to (doing)

in addition to

be accustomed to do/doing

amount to doing (意味着……)

take to doing (开始喜欢做……)

be averse to doing

be opposed to doing

get round to doing

the way/approach/solution to doing

devote...to doing/be devoted to doing

dedicate...to doing/be dedicated to doing

a. I am looking forward to hearing from you. 我期待你的来信。

b. I am used to sleeping with the lights on.

c. I am accustomed to sleeping with the lights on./I am accustomed to sleep with the lights on.

d. The students object to increasing their tuition.

e. After a long delay I finally got round to making inquiries into the matter. 拖了很长时间以后，我才终于抽出时间来过问这件事。

f. The children are opposed to \_\_\_\_\_ without their uncle.

A. have a party

B. have held a party

C. take part in a party

D. having a party

正确答案：D。

g. I have no objection \_\_\_\_\_ the evening with them.

A. to spend

- B. spending
- C. of spending
- D. to spending

正确答案：D。

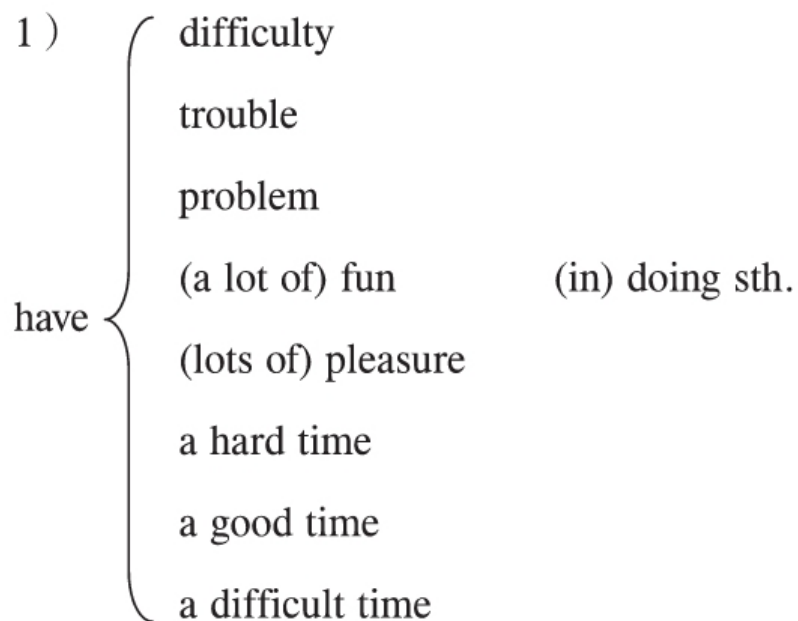
h. They don't object\_\_\_\_\_the meeting until Friday.

- A. to our postponing
- B. that we postpone
- C. for postponing
- D. to postpone

正确答案：A。

关于这样的短语，需要大家在平时的学习过程中不断地积累和总结。

#### (5) 其他用动名词的结构



但要注意: take the trouble to do sth., trouble to do sth. 和 have (no) time to do sth. 三个短语不用动名词结构。

a. W: How do you find your new apartment?

M: Well, it's quite nice really, although I have a hard time getting used to living in a big place.

b. I have learned, however, that change always seems more difficult at the outset, and if I work hard at remaining positive and view changes as opportunities to grow, I have an easier time dealing with them.

c. I worked so late in the office last night that I hardly had time \_\_\_\_\_ the last bus.

A. to have caught

B. to catch

C. catching

D. having caught

正确答案: B。

d. The teachers have had some problems \_\_\_\_\_ when they should return the final papers to the students.

A. to decide

B. deciding

C. decided

D. having decided

正确答案: B。

2) 表示“情不自禁……, 不得不……”的短语有:

can't help doing

can't resist doing

can't keep from doing

can't hold back from doing

can't keep back from doing

不过需要注意: can't help but do, can't but do和can't choose but do等短语中不用动名词结构。

No one can help liking Tom; he is such a cute boy.

3) be worth doing意为“值得做……”。用主动形式表示被动的意思。常用be worthy of being done或be worthy to be done的结构。

a. The book is worth reading .

b. The book is worthy of being read .

c. The book is worthy to be read .

此外还有be busy doing, 但是需要注意be busy with sth. 这个结构。

另外, 还有remind sb. of sth., 但是不说remind sb. of doing sth., 而是remind sb. to do sth.。

d. The money will be used to keep a space vehicle on the moon busy\_\_\_\_\_ back to the earth photographs and other information about the surface of the moon.

A. to send

B. sending

C. to be sent

D. being sent



正确答案：B。

# 第二节 动名词的逻辑主语——动名词的复合结构

## 49 动名词的复合结构 Track47

同不定式类似，动名词也是动词的一种变化形式，既然是动词就应该有动作的执行者，即主语。而句子主语和动名词的动作执行者并不总是统一的（有时是一样的，有时不一样），所以我们把动名词的主语称为逻辑主语，以区别于句子主语。

### （1）动名词复合结构的构成：my doing/Tom's doing

物主代词（如his, my, your等）或所有格名词（如Mary's, Tom's等）与动名词连用，即构成动名词的复合结构（如his doing, Mary's doing），用来引出动名词的逻辑主语。当句子主语并不是动名词动作的执行者时，我们就需要给出动名词的逻辑主语。请比较：

普通动名词	动名词复合结构
Clint insisted on reading the letter. 克林特坚持要看信。（克林特看信）	Clint insisted on <b>my reading</b> the letter. 克林特坚持要我看信。（“我”看了信）
Would you mind telling us the whole story? 你是否愿意把事情经过告诉我们？（“你”告诉）	Would you mind <b>Tom's telling</b> us the whole story? = Would you mind if Tom tells us the whole story? 你是否介意让汤姆把事情经过告诉我们？（汤姆告诉）
He disliked working late. 他不喜欢工作到很晚。	He disliked <b>his wife's working</b> late. 他不喜欢他妻子工作到很晚。
I object to making private calls on this phone. 我不赞成用这部电话机打私人电话。	I object to <b>his making</b> private calls on this phone. 我不赞成他用这部电话机打私人电话。

## (2) 动名词复合结构的用法

这种结构常在句中作主语或宾语。请看例句：

### 1) 用作主语

Tom's coming home at last was a great consolation.

### 2) 用作动词宾语

a. Do you mind my making a suggestion?

b. Would you mind Tom's telling us the whole story?

### 3) 用作介词宾语

a. Our discussion of earthquakes would be incomplete if we didn't raise the possibility of their being caused by external forces.

要是我们没有考虑到外部力量造成地震的可能性，那么我们对于地震的研究还有欠缺。

b. Clint insisted on my reading the letter.

c. What are the chances of a sleepwalker's committing a murder or doing something else extraordinary in his sleep?

梦游者在睡梦中实施谋杀或做出其他一些超常活动的可能性有多大呢？

d. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.

## (3) 普通格还是所有格？

在应用动名词复合结构时，什么时候用普通格什么时候用所有格，一般遵循下面的原则：

### 1) 若动名词复合结构在句中作主语，最好用所有格形式。

- a. Tom's refusing to accept the invitation upset me.
- b. His refusing to accept the invitation upset me. (不宜用 him refusing)
- c. It was a great consolation his coming home at last. (不宜用 him coming)

2) 动名词复合结构在句中作宾语时，用普通格或所有格均可。

- a. Do you mind me making a suggestion?
- b. I am annoyed about John forgetting to pay.
- c. I remember\_\_\_\_\_to help us if we ever got into trouble.
  - A. once offering
  - B. him once offering
  - C. him to offer
  - D. to offer him

正确答案：B。

3) 若动名词的逻辑主语是无生命的“物”而不是“人”，最好用普通格。

- a. The noise of the desks being opened and closed can be heard out in the street.
- b. There is a necessity for this type of houses being built .
- c. In the event of the project not being a success , the investors stand to lose up to \$30 million.

万一这个项目 投资失败，投资者将会损失三千万美元。

4) 若动名词的逻辑主语是不定代词（如someone, anyone, everyone等），最好用普通格。

He was awakened by **someone knocking** on the door.

5) 若动名词的逻辑主语由较长的一组词构成，最好用普通格。

a. There is no point **any one of us arguing** with him.

b. I've always had in my mind a dream of **my father , mother and I living** together.

c. Do you remember **John and his father coming** to see us last Christmas?

### 第三节 动名词的时态和语态

#### 50 动名词的时态和语态 Track48

##### (1) 动名词的被动式

1) 构成: being done

2) 意义与用法: 当动名词所修饰的名词或代词在意义上是充当动名词动作的承受者时, 或者说是作动名词的逻辑宾语时, 动名词要用被动形式。

a. He narrowly escaped being run over . 他差一点就被车轧着了。

b. I have not the least objection to the child being punished .

对这孩子进行惩罚我丝毫不反对。

c. I still remember being taken to the zoo for the first time.

我还记得第一次被带到动物园的情景。

请比较: I remember my parents' taking me to the zoo.

d. Mark often attempts to escape \_\_\_\_\_ whenever he breaks traffic regulations.

A. having been fined

B. to be fined

C. to have been fined

D. being fined

正确答案：D。

此外，也要注意前面说过的，在demand, deserve, need, require, want等动词后面，动名词主动形式表示被动的意思，而不需要用动名词的被动形式。若改接动词不定式，则必须用动词不定式的被动形式。

## （2）动名词的完成式

1) 构成：having done

2) 意义与用法：用动名词完成式表明动名词动作发生在谓语动作之前。

a. He denied **having been** there.

b. I repented **having shot** the bird.

c. He regretted **not having gone** to university.

他很后悔当初没有上大学。

d. I have always regretted \_\_\_\_\_ harder at school.

A. to have not studied

B. not study

C. not having studied

D. not to study

正确答案：C。

e. The man in the corner confessed to \_\_\_\_\_ a lie to the manager of the company.

- A. have told
- B. be told
- C. being told
- D. having told

正确答案：D。

### (3) 动名词的完成被动式

1) 构成：having been done

2) 意义与用法：兼具完成式和被动式的双重特点。

a. I appreciate **having been given** the opportunity to study abroad two years ago.

b. He prided himself on **having never been beaten** in chess.

他为自己下棋上从未被击败而自豪。

c. Our modern civilization must not be thought of as \_\_\_\_\_ in a short period of time.

- A. being created
- B. to have been created
- C. having been created
- D. to be created

正确答案：C。



## 第四节 there be的动名词及不定式形式

### 51 there be的动名词及不定式形式 Track49

#### (1) there be的动名词形式

there be的动名词形式为there being，多用于介词后面。

a. Do not bet on there being many marriages that began with love at first sight. Many people marry for practical—not romantic—reasons. That is the conclusion of a four year study sponsored by the Ford Foundation of New York City.

b. No one would have dreamed of there being such a good place.

c. He spoke of there being danger.

d. No one had told Smith about \_\_\_\_\_ a lecture the following day.

- A. there be
- B. there would be
- C. there was
- D. there being

正确答案：D。

e. Ann never dreams of \_\_\_\_\_ for her to be sent abroad very soon.

- A. there being a chance
- B. there be a chance
- C. there to be a chance
- D. being a chance

正确答案：A。

## (2) there be的不定式形式

there be的不定式形式为there to be，用在接不定式作宾语的动词后面或用于介词for后面。

a. For there to be life , there must be air and water. =  
In order that there may be life, there must be air and water.

b. It was too late for there to be any buses .

c. I don't mean there to be any unpleasantness.

我并没有任何冒犯之意。

d. I don't want there to be any misunderstanding on this point.

## 动名词练习

### 一、单项选择（动名词作主语）。

1. It's no good \_\_\_\_\_ money on make-up.

- A. of you to waste
- B. for you to waste
- C. to waste

D. your wasting

2. It's no good\_\_\_\_\_me. You'd better\_\_\_\_\_someone else.

A. to ask, to try

B. to ask, try

C. asking, tried

D. asking, try

3\_\_\_\_\_what John will be doing next.

A. No saying

B. There's no to say

C. There's no saying

D. Not to say

4. There is\_\_\_\_\_that this has been a difficult year for the company.

A. not to deny

B. not denying

C. no denying

D. without denying

5. It's a waste of time\_\_\_\_\_with such a silly fellow.

A. trying to reason

B. tried to reason

C. for trying to reason

D. to trying reasoning

6. There was \_\_\_\_\_ telling how much work we had done by the time you came that morning.

A. not

B. hardly

C. no

D. not any

7. It is \_\_\_\_\_ for him any longer; we might as well go without him.

A. not use to wait

B. no use of waiting

C. no use waiting

D. no use to wait

## 二、用动词的适当形式填空（不定式和动名词作宾语）。

8. I've had a hard time \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) English.

9. I still remember \_\_\_\_\_ (take) to Beijing for the first time.

10. Love means \_\_\_\_\_ (never, have) to say you're sorry.

11. Clint always remembers \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) off the lights when he leaves the room.

12. Now he regrets \_\_\_\_\_ (not, go) to university.

13. We regret \_\_\_\_\_ (inform) you that the flight has been cancelled.

14. I regret \_\_\_\_\_ (let) slip that opportunity.

15. The teacher has had some problems \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) when they should return the final papers to the students.

16. Mr. Smith regretted \_\_\_\_\_ (blame) his secretary for the mistake,

for he later discovered it was his own fault.

17. Peter went on \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) despite the noise.

18. He welcomed the new students and then went on \_\_\_\_\_ (explain) the college regulations.

19. The boy is constantly being told not to scratch the paint off the wall, but he goes on \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it all the same.

20. After the listening test, the students then went on \_\_\_\_\_ (translate)

some sentences.

### 三、单项选择（动名词的逻辑主语）。

21. \_\_\_\_\_ in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.

A. The girl was educated

B. The girl educated

C. The girl's being educated

D. The girl to be educated

22. I still remember \_\_\_\_\_ me to Beijing for the first time.

- A. for my parents to take
- B. my parents' taking
- C. that my parents take
- D. my parents to take

23. I don't see how you can avoid the matter \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. discussed
- B. to be discussed
- C. being discussed
- D. been discussed

24. Last night I was awakened by someone \_\_\_\_\_ at the door.

- A. tap
- B. tapping
- C. tapped
- D. to tap

25. The noise of the desks \_\_\_\_\_ could be heard out in the street.

- A. opening and closing
- B. of being opened and closed

C. to be opened and closed

D. being opened and closed

26. You must tell me the truth. I insist on \_\_\_\_\_ the truth.

A. telling

B. having told

C. your telling

D. that you tell

#### 四、用动词适当形式填空（动名词的时态和语态）。

27. The text needs \_\_\_\_\_ (explain) once again.

28. The movie is worthy of \_\_\_\_\_ (see).

29. You must tell me the truth. I insist on \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) the truth.

30. I strongly object to \_\_\_\_\_ (treat) like a child.

31. Clint had a narrow escape. He was almost hit by a car. He barely avoided \_\_\_\_\_ (hit) by the speeding automobile.

32. Last year I studied abroad. I appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ (give) the opportunity to live and study in a foreign country.

33. I'm angry at him for \_\_\_\_\_ (not, tell) me the truth.

34. I don't enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (laugh) at by other people.

35. A: You know Clint, don't you?

B: Clint? I don't think so. I don't recall ever\_\_\_\_\_ (meet) him.

36.A: What's the difference between "stop to do" and "stop doing" ?

B: Hmmm, that's an interesting question. I don't recall\_\_\_\_\_ (ask) that question before.

### 五、单项选择 (there be的动名词和不定式)。

37.It is impossible\_\_\_\_\_a happier family.

A. of there to be

B. there is

C. for there to be

D. there will be

38.John was relying on there\_\_\_\_\_another opportunity.

A. was

B. being

C. had been

D. would

39.People expect there\_\_\_\_\_more discussions on this topic.

A. are to

B. is to

C. to be



D. being

40. It isn't cold enough for there\_\_\_\_\_ a frost tonight, so I can leave Jim's car out quite safely.

A. would be

B. being

C. was

D. to be

41. She was wrong about there\_\_\_\_\_ some misunderstanding between us.

A. be

B. been

C. being

D. has

42. The students expected there\_\_\_\_\_ more reviewing classes before the final exams.

A. is

B. being

C. have been

D. to be

## 六、单项选择（综合练习）。

43. People appreciate\_\_\_\_\_ with him because he has a good sense of humor.

- A. to work
- B. to have worked
- C. working
- D. having worked

44. Although a teenager, Fred could resist \_\_\_\_\_ what to do and what not to do.

- A. to be told
- B. having been told
- C. being told
- D. to have been told

45. — Is George really leaving the university?

— Yes, but would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ to anyone?

- A. not mentioning
- B. not mention it
- C. not to mention it
- D. not mentioning it

46. I can't understand \_\_\_\_\_ a decision until it is too late.

- A. him to postpone to make
- B. his postpone making
- C. his postponing to make

D. his postponing making

47. We were greatly encouraged by the news of China\_\_\_\_\_another man-made satellite.

A. to have launched

B. to launch

C. launched

D. having launched

48. At six o' clock in the evening, when a cat ran through a truck it narrowly escaped\_\_\_\_\_over.

A. running

B. to be run

C. from running

D. being run

49. Building that railway was very difficult and involved\_\_\_\_\_ten tunnels.

A. dig

B. digging

C. to have dug

D. having dug

50. I strongly object\_\_\_\_\_like a child.

A. to be treated

- B. to being treated
- C. of being treated
- D. of treating

51. That young man still denies \_\_\_\_\_ the fire behind the store.

- A. to start
- B. having started
- C. start
- D. to have started

52. The school doesn't permit \_\_\_\_\_ on campus.

- A. smoke
- B. to smoke
- C. being smoking
- D. smoking

53. There's a man at the reception desk who seems very angry and I think he means \_\_\_\_\_ trouble.

- A. making
- B. to make
- C. to have made
- D. having made

54. Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_ to Professor Smith during your last visit?

- A. to be introduced
- B. having introduced
- C. being introduced
- D. to have introduced

55. I'm sure your proposal will \_\_\_\_\_ the problem.

- A. contribute to solving
- B. be contribute to solve
- C. contribute to solve
- D. be contributed to solving

56. Ann prefers \_\_\_\_\_ taking an examination.

- A. writing a term paper than
- B. writing a term paper to
- C. to write a term paper and
- D. to write a term paper than

57. The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate \_\_\_\_\_ late every day.

- A. for me to arrive
- B. me arrived
- C. me to arrive

D. my arriving

58. Many of the things we do involve \_\_\_\_\_ some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.

A. taking

B. take care

C. to take

D. being taking

59. I don't think you will have any difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ a driving license.

A. for getting

B. to get

C. having got

D. getting

60. The thief caught on the spot by the policeman denied \_\_\_\_\_ anything.

A. to do

B. to have done

C. do

D. doing

61. I will overlook \_\_\_\_\_ so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.

A. you to be

- B. your being
- C. you to have been
- D. you having been

62. Although punctual himself, the professor was quite used \_\_\_\_\_ late for his lecture.

- A. to have students
- B. for students' being
- C. for students to be
- D. to students' being

63. Technology will play a key role in \_\_\_\_\_ future life-styles.

- A. to shape
- B. shaping
- C. shape of
- D. shaped

64. In some countries people favor \_\_\_\_\_ together even though there is much more space.

- A. to stay
- B. stay
- C. staying
- D. of staying

65. \_\_\_\_\_ can help but be fascinated by the world into which he is taken by the science fiction.

- A. Everybody
- B. Anybody
- C. Somebody
- D. Nobody

66. When Jane fell off the bike, the other children \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. were not able to help laughter
- B. could not help but laughing
- C. could not help laughing
- D. could not help to laugh

67. Ted has told me that he always escapes \_\_\_\_\_ as he has got a very fast sports car.

- A. to fine
- B. to be fined
- C. being fined
- D. having been fined

68. Shortly after his retirement, the former president \_\_\_\_\_ gardening

and hunting.

- A. took to



- B. took on
- C. took in
- D. took after

69. Since British Railways introduced its new inter-city expresses, many businessmen have taken \_\_\_\_\_ by train.

- A. in traveling
- B. to travel
- C. to traveling
- D. on travel

70. Perfectly matched pearls, strung into a necklace, \_\_\_\_\_ a far higher price than the same pearls sold individually.

- A. in order to bring
- B. bringing
- C. their bringing
- D. bring

71. The traditional approach \_\_\_\_\_ with complex problems is to break them down into smaller, more easily managed problems.

- A. to dealing
- B. in dealing
- C. dealing

D. to deal

72. The supervisor said the school board was considering not \_\_\_\_\_ the students' proposal for the strict administration.

A. to accept

B. accept

C. accepted

D. accepting

73. Nearly every country in the world either claims to be democratic or to be on the way \_\_\_\_\_ democratic.

A. to becoming

B. to become

C. of becoming

D. in becoming

74. The government is believed to be considering \_\_\_\_\_ a law making it crime to import any weapon.

A. to pass

B. to have passed

C. passing

D. having passed

75. The items exhibited are well worth \_\_\_\_\_, and attracted large crowds of visitors in the past few days.

- A. seeing
- B. to be seen
- C. seen
- D. to see

76. For there \_\_\_\_\_ successful communication, there must be attentiveness and involvement in the discussion itself by all present.

- A. is
- B. to be
- C. will be
- D. being

77. First designated in 1970, Earth Day has become an annual international event \_\_\_\_\_ concerns about environmental issues such as pollution.

- A. dedicated to raising
- B. dedicates to raising
- C. dedicated to raise
- D. dedicates to raise

78. Nowhere in nature is aluminum found free, owing to its always \_\_\_\_\_ with other elements, most commonly with oxygen.

- A. combined
- B. having combined

- C. combine
- D. being combined

79. Children objecting to their parents remarrying\_\_\_\_\_a prevalent social problem.

- A. has become
- B. have become
- C. had become
- D. are becoming

80.— Is Henry sick?

— Yes. \_\_\_\_\_all night in the rain caused him to catch a bad cold.

- A. He worked
- B. To have worked
- C. Him working
- D. His working

81. \_\_\_\_\_theories approximate the truth is the day-to-day business of science.

- A. Determining how closely
- B. How closely to determine
- C. How one determines close
- D. One is close to determining

## 七、辨别改错。

82. Mr. Smith regretted to blame (A) his secretary for (B) the mistake, for (C) he later discovered (D) it was his own fault.

83. The boy is constantly being told (A) not to scratch the paint off (B) the wall, but he goes on to do (C) it all the same (D).

84. When I consider how talented he is (A) as a painter (B), I cannot help but believing (C) that the public (D) will appreciate his gift.

85. Alice was having (A) trouble to control (B) the children because there were (C) so many (D) of them.

86. Some bosses dislike to allow (A) people to share (B) their responsibilities; they keep all (C) important matters tightly (D) in their own hands.

87. Neither rain nor snow keeps (A) the postman from delivering our letters which (B) we so much (C) look forward to receive (D).

88. Elected (A) to serve in the United States of Representatives in 1968, Shirley Chisholm was known (B) for advocacy (C) the interests of the urban (D) poor.

89. The Moon's gravitational (A) field cannot (B) keep atmospheric gases from escape (C) into space (D).

90. Using (A) carbon-dating techniques, archaeologists can determine the age of many ancient objects (B) by measurement (C) the amount of radioactive carbon they contain (D).

### 一、单项选择（动名词作主语）。

1-7: DDCCACC

### 二、用动词的适当形式填空（不定式和动名词作宾语）。

8. learning
9. being taken
10. never having
11. to turn
12. not having gone/not going
13. to inform
14. letting
15. deciding
16. blaming/having blamed
17. sleeping
18. to explain
19. doing
20. to translate

### 三、单项选择（动名词的逻辑主语）。

21-26: CBCBDC

### 四、用动词适当形式填空（动名词的时态和语态）。

27. explaining

- 28. being seen
- 29. being told/your telling
- 30. being treated
- 31. being hit
- 32. having been given
- 33. not having told
- 34. being laughed
- 35. meeting/having met
- 36. having been asked

#### 五~六、单项选择。

- 37-40: CBCD
- 41-45: CDCCD
- 46-50: DDDBB
- 51-55: BDBCA
- 56-60: BDADD
- 61-65: BDBCD
- 66-70: CCACD
- 71-75: ADACB
- 76-81: BADADA

#### 七、辨别改错。

- 82. A/blaming
- 83. C/doing
- 84. C/but believe
- 85. B/controlling
- 86. A/allowing
- 87. D/to receiving
- 88. C/advocating
- 89. C/from escaping
- 90. C/measuring



## Chapter 6 分词



音频

- 52 现在分词的意义
- 53 过去分词的意义
- 54 三种表示被动的结构（考试重点）
- 55 关于分词短语作状语时的逻辑主语问题
- 56 分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义
- 57 带有连词或介词的分词短语
- 58 分词的完成式

- 59 现在分词与动名词的区别
- 60 动名词复合结构与现在分词短语的区别
- 61 分词作补足语
- 62 现在分词构成的复合形容词
- 63 过去分词构成的复合形容词

## 第一节 现在分词与过去分词的意义——分词作定语

分词的使用是英文中较难的一种造句规则，但是非常重要。分词的作用相当于形容词和副词，因此在句中主要是充当定语和状语，并且是简化定语从句和状语从句的一个重要手段。（关于从句简化详见“Chapter 7 从句的简化”一章）

在这里我们通过分词作定语的例子来比较并分析两种分词的区别，但作状语时二者类似。分词是简化定语从句的一个重要手段，所以作定语的分词或分词短语都可以换成一个定语从句。下面我们着重分析现在分词与过去分词在思维上的差异。

### 52 现在分词的意义 Track50

#### （1）主动的、一般的动作

特点：

1) 此时若将现在分词改成定语从句，则定语从句的谓语要用一般时态。

2) 此时现在分词多数表示的是所修饰名词的一种持久性的特点，并不是强调正在发生的动作。

a. Unidentified Flying Objects (UFO) = unidentified objects that fly

不明飞行物

b. flying fishes = fishes that can fly 飞鱼

c. a promising young man = a young man who promises well

有前途的年轻人

d. the exploiting class = the class that **exploits** others  
剥削阶级

e. an understanding man = a man who **can understand** others'  
feelings

善解人意的人

f. a puzzling problem = a problem that **puzzles** people 令人迷惑的问题

g. They live in a room facing the south. = They live in a room that **faces** the south. 他们住在一间朝南的屋子里。

## (2) 主动的、正在进行的动作

特点：

1) 此时若将现在分词改成定语从句，则定语从句的谓语要用进行时态。

2) 此时现在分词多数表示的是所修饰名词的一种短暂性的特点，强调正在发生的一个动作。

a. falling leaves = leaves that **are falling** 正在飘落的叶子

b. The man standing at the gate is my English teacher. =  
The man who **is standing** at the gate is my English teacher.

c. I like the girl dancing with that guy. = I like the girl who **is dancing** with that guy.

d. the setting/rising sun = the sun that **is setting/rising**

e. the barking dog = the dog that **is barking**

f. a sleeping child = a child who *is sleeping*

## 53 过去分词的意义 Track51

### (1) 被动的、一般的或完成的动作

特点:

此时若将过去分词改成定语从句, 则定语从句的谓语要用被动语态。

- a. the exploited class = the class that is exploited
- b. the oppressed nations = the nations that are oppressed
- c. a respected writer = a writer who is respected
- d. the broken cup = the cup that has been broken before
- e. an annoyed man = a man that has been annoyed
- f. trained employees = employees who have been trained before
- g. boiled water = water that has been boiled

### (2) 主动的、完成的动作

特点:

1) 由及物动词变来的过去分词才有被动意义, 而由不及物动词变来的过去分词则不能表示被动, 而只表示主动的、完成的动作。此时, 过去分词一般表示一种完成的状态, 而多数已失去了原动词的动作概念。

2) 此时若将过去分词改成定语从句, 则定语从句的谓语要用主动语态、完成时态。

- a. fallen leaves = leaves that have fallen 地上的落叶
- b. a retired general = a general who has retired 退伍的将军
- c. faded colors = colors that have faded 褪了的颜色

d. departed friends = friends that **have departed** 久别的朋友

e. a developed country = a country that **has developed** 发达国家

f. returned students = students that **have returned from abroad** 归国的留学生们

g. a married man = a man that **has married** 已婚男士

此外还有如 **vanished civilization** (失落的文明), **the risen sun** (升起的太阳), **rotten teeth** (坏了的牙齿), **shrunk clothes** (缩水的衣服), **sunken ships** (沉没的船只), **escaped prisoners** (逃犯) 等。

综上所述, 现在分词和过去分词二者的区别是:

1) 从语态角度来看, 现在分词表示主动意义, 它与所修饰的名词构成主谓关系, 如:

The man **standing** at the gate is my English teacher.

换句话说: The man **who is standing** at the gate is my English teacher.

而过去分词通常表示被动意义 (不及物动词的过去分词除外), 与它所修饰的名词构成动宾关系, 如: **the broken cup** 意思是 “Someone broke the cup.” 或 “The cup was broken.”。

2) 从时态角度来看, 现在分词一般表示进行的动作, 过去分词则表示完成的动作。

fallen leaves 地上的落叶	leaves that <b>have fallen</b> (表示完成的动作)
falling leaves 正在飘落的叶子	leaves that <b>are falling</b> (表示进行的动作)
sunken ships 沉没的船只	ships that <b>have sunken</b> (表示完成的动作)
sinking ships 正在下沉的船只	ships that <b>are sinking</b> (表示进行的动作)

## 54 三种表示被动的结构（考试重点） Track52

{ to be done 表示将来的动作（用不定式表示被动）  
being done 表示进行的动作  
done 表示一般过去或完成的动作

**说明：**这三种被动形式主要用来作后置定语，所以我们在本节讨论。但也可作状语或补足语。

a. The question **being discussed** is very important.

b. The house **being built** will be our library upon its completion.

c. Are you going to attend the meeting **to be held next month** ?

d. Did you attend the meeting **held last month** in Shanghai?

e. For any adhesive to make a really strong bond, the surfaces **to be glued** must be absolutely clean and free from moisture or grease.

对于任何黏合剂，要想粘得牢固的话，则被粘的表面必须绝对清洁且不能潮湿和有油性物质。

f. More than 300 local college students attended the torch relay to show their support for the 21st Universiade, **to be held** in Beijing between August 22nd and September 1st.

g. A stranger shoved a gun \_\_\_\_\_ in a paper against his back and muttered, "I'm going in with you. This is a stickup (抢劫)!"



- A. concealed
- B. being concealed
- C. to be concealed
- D. concealing

正确答案：A。

h. A tiger can't be tamed unless \_\_\_\_\_ very young.

- A. being caught
- B. caught
- C. it being caught
- D. it's being caught

正确答案：B。

i. The project \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of 2035, will expand the city's telephone network to cover 1,000,000 users.

- A. accomplished
- B. being accomplished
- C. to be accomplished
- D. having been accomplished

正确答案：C。

j. If I correct someone, I will do it with as much good humor and self-restraint as if I were the one \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to correct
- B. correcting

C. having corrected

D. being corrected

正确答案：D。

## 第二节 现在分词与过去分词的意义——分词作状语

谈到分词作状语，一个重要问题首先要引起我们的重视，即当分词作状语时，分词短语的 **逻辑主语** 和 **句子主语** 的关系问题。下面我们来具体分析。

### 55 关于分词短语作状语时的逻辑主语问题 Track53

如同前文讨论的不定式和动名词，分词也有逻辑主语的问题。关于分词的逻辑主语主要涉及三种不同情况：

#### (1) 主语一致：分词短语的动作应该由句子主语发出

一般来讲，分词短语作状语时，其动作应该是由句子主语发出的。也就是说，分词短语的逻辑主语必须与句子主语是一致的，否则句子意思在逻辑上就讲不通。先看下面典型的错误句子：

a. **Looking** out of the window, there are lots of **people** in the street.\*

b. **Waiting** for a bus, **a brick** fell on my head.\*

c. After **doing** my homework, the dog was fed.\*

d. When **using** the computer, **the password** must be remembered.\*

e. **Arriving** home, **the door** was found locked.\*

f. **.Being** a pop fan, **Celine Dion** is her favorite.\*

上面的句子都因为分词的动作与句子主语不搭配而错误。我们可以将它们作一下调整：

a. Looking out of the window, I saw lots of people in the street.

这里looking的动作是由I发出的，即I 是looking的逻辑主语，原分词短语相当于When I looked out of the window...

b. As I was waiting for a bus, a brick fell on my head. 或 Waiting for a bus, I saw a brick falling out of a window. / I came across a long lost friend.

c. After I did my homework, the dog was fed. 或最好改为：After doing my homework, I fed the dog.

d. When using the computer, you must remember the password.

e. Arriving home, I found the door locked.

f. Being a pop fan, she likes Celine Dion most.

g. After seeing the movie, \_\_\_\_\_.

A. the book was read by him

B. the book mad him want to read it

C. the reading of the book interested him

D. he wanted to read the book

正确答案：D。

h. Returning to my apartment, \_\_\_\_\_.

A. my watch was missing

- B. I found my watch disappeared
- C. I found my watch missing
- D. The watch was missed

正确答案：C。

i. in this way, the situation doesn't seem so disappointing.

- A. To look at
- B. Looking at
- C. Looked at
- D. To be looked at

正确答案：C。

## (2) 有自己主语的分词结构——独立分词结构

分词短语的逻辑主语除了上文讲到的要与句子主语一致外，很多情况下，分词本身有自己意义上的主语，这时分词短语的动作和句子的谓语动作就不是由同一主语发出。这种“名词或代词+分词短语”的结构，在英语中被称为“独立分词结构”。这就类似于动名词的复合结构（my doing）和不定式的复合结构（for sb. to do）。

- a. It being so nice a day, we go out for a walk.
- b. Weather permitting, we'll be going fishing tomorrow.
- c. All the money having been spent, we started looking for work.

钱全花光后，我们就开始找工作。

- d. Nobody having any more to say, the meeting was closed.

谁都无话可说了，会议就结束了。

e. The Chinese word for crisis is divided into two characters, **one meaning** danger and **the other meaning** opportunity.

中文中的“危机”分为两个字，一个意味着危险，另一个意味着机会。

f. So many directors \_\_\_\_\_, the board meeting had to be put off.

- A. were absent
- B. being absent
- C. been absent
- D. had been absent

正确答案：B。

g. Some snakes lay eggs, others \_\_\_\_\_ birth to live offspring.

- A. give
- B. giving
- C. they give
- D. to have given

正确答案：B。

h. Silver is the best conductor of electricity, copper \_\_\_\_\_ it closely.

- A. followed

- B. to follow
- C. following
- D. being followed

正确答案：C。

### (3) 固定表达结构

在一些表示说话人态度的固定表达结构中，分词短语的逻辑主语和句子的主语是不一致的。但因为这已是约定俗成的用法，所以是正确的。我们在运用时，只需记住这些特殊的表达方式即可。这种结构常见的有：

1) 副词+ speaking : 如generally/strictly/broadly... speaking。

a. **Generally speaking** , **men** are stronger than women. (= If we are to speak generally, men...)

b. **Strictly speaking** , **this** is not a right answer.

2) 分词 + 介词: 如 judging from, talking of, allowing for (考虑到……) , considering, assuming, supposing等。

a. **Judging from** his expression, **he** is in a lousy mood.

b. **Allowing for** her inexperience, **she** has done a good job.

c. **Talking of** English, she is the best speaker.

d. **Taking everything into consideration** , **they** ought to win this game.

3) 分词+ that从句: 如seeing that... (= since...既然……) , considering that... (= since...既然……) ,

supposing that... (= if...假如……), granting that... (= though...尽管……), allowing that... (考虑到……)。

a .Considering that she has no experience, she has done a good job.

b .Considering how far from perfect most human brains are, there isn't much threat from a computer.

c. Supposing there was a war, what would you do?

d. Granting that he has made a mistake, he is not to blame, for he intended to help us.



## 56 分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义 Track54

分词短语作状语，其实就是相应的状语从句简化的结果（见Chapter 7这章），在句中可表示时间、原因、条件、让步、结果、伴随等。

### （1）表时间，分词短语一般要置于句首。

1) 绝大多数情形下，分词动作发生在谓语动作之前。

a. **Having watered** the garden, he **began** to mow the lawn. =  
After he had watered the garden, he began to mow the lawn.

b. **Having noted down** our names and addresses, the  
policeman **dismissed** us.

c. **Reading** the letter, she **burst out** crying.

= As she read the letter, she burst out crying.

d. **Locking** the door, he **went** home.

e. **Hearing** the joke, we **burst out** laughing.

2) 分词动作与谓语动作同时发生。

a. **Riding** in the street during the rush hours, you must  
**be careful** .

= When you are riding in the street during the rush  
hours, you must be careful.

若强调两个动作同时发生，多在分词结构前加when或while，例如：

b. Be careful **when crossing** the street.

(2) 表示原因，分词短语可置于句首或句末，有时还置于主谓之间。

a. *It being* so nice a day, let's go out for a walk.

= Since it is so nice a day, let's go out for a walk.

b. *Not knowing* what to do next, I want to ask for your advice.

= Because I don't know what to do next, I want to ask for your advice.

c. Clint, *horrified at* what he had done, could at first say nothing.

克林特被自己所做的事吓坏了，一开始都说不出话来。

(3) 表条件，通常放在句首。

a. *Given* more time, I would be able to complete it.

= If I were given more time, I would be able to complete it.

b. *Weather permitting* , we'll go fishing.

= If weather permits, we'll go fishing.

c. *United* , we stand; *divided* , we fail.

= If we are united, we stand; if we are divided, we fail.

d. *If seen* under a microscope, a fresh snowflake has a delicate six-pointed shape. 如果从显微镜下观察，新降的雪花有纤小的六瓣。

e. *Added* to steel, chromium (铬) increases the metal's hardness.

#### (4) 表让步，通常放在句首。

a. **Having lived in** Canada for three years, he still can't speak English well. = Though he has lived in Canada for three years, he...

b. **Mocked** at by everybody, he had my sympathy. = Though he was mocked at by everybody, he...

c. **Though understanding** no Japanese, Charles was able to communicate with them.

d. **Although usually living** on or under rocks or on coral reefs, marine snails have been observed in a great variety of habitats.

e. **Although still running** in a number of cities, the electric trolley has for the most part fallen into disuse.

#### (5) 表结果，一般只放在句末，否则句子意义会不同。

a. **Finding** the door locked, I went home. 发现门锁着，我就回家了。（finding表示时间）

b. I went home, **finding** the door locked. 我回到家里，发现门锁着。（finding表示结果）

c. His wife died three years ago, **leaving** him with five children.

d. It rained for two weeks on end, completely **ruining** our holiday.

e. He fired, **killing** one of the bandits.

他开了枪，击毙了其中一名匪徒。

f. The film The Gua Sha Treatment exposes profound cultural conflicts between the East and West, **arousing**

concerns in Chinese audiences.

影片《刮痧》深刻揭示了东西方文化的差异，引起中国观众的强烈反响。

(6) 表伴随状况、补充说明或方式，分词短语置于句首或句末均可。

a. *Smiling* , he answered. 他笑着回答道。

b. A traveler once visited a city where everyone wore blue. *Puzzled* , he went to a dyer and said, "Please dye this handkerchief red."

c. He came *running* breathless and told me the results.

d. She came *running* hurriedly into her husband's office one morning.

一天早上，她匆忙跑进丈夫的办公室。

e. We sat *talking about* college life on the grass.

f. The old man enjoyed sitting in the sun *listening* to radio.

g. The truck passed by, with a wake of dust *floating* toward me.

h. The Chinese word for crisis is divided into two characters, *one meaning* danger and *the other meaning* opportunity.

中文中的“危机”分为两个字，一个意味着危险，另一个意味着机会。

i. When asked, "Do you consider yourself an optimistic or pessimistic person?" 53 per cent of the students replied,

"optimistic," with 21 per cent choosing "pessimistic," and 26 per cent "unsure" .

j. In Italian legends, mermaids come ashore, marry men, and bear them children. But in time these mermaid wives desert their husbands and take their children away to the depth of the ocean. The Chinese say the mermaids pass their time weeping . When they weep, their tears turn into pearls.

k. With more than 3 million hardcover copies sold in its first two years of publication, Who Moved My Cheese? has become an amazing best-seller, topping the New York Times, Wall Street Journal, Business Week and USA Today lists.

## 57 带有连词或介词的分词短语 Track55

分词短语可以用在某些连词或介词后面。

### (1) 连词+分词短语

用在连词后边的分词短语作状语，相当于简化后的状语从句保留了连词。

a. **Once deprived of** oxygen, the brain dies. = Once it is deprived of oxygen, the brain dies.

一旦缺氧，大脑就会死亡。（once强调时间）

b. Be careful **while crossing** the road. (while强调时间)

c. **After talking** to you, I always feel much better.

d. **Although exhausted** by the walk, he continued his journey. (although强调让步)

e. **Although usually living** on or under rocks or on coral reefs, marine snails have been observed in a great variety of habitats.

f. **Although still running** in a number of cities, the electric trolley has for the most part fallen into disuse.

g. **After having annoyed** everybody, he went home.

他把所有的人都惹烦了之后就回家了。

h. **If seen** under a microscope, a fresh snowflake has a delicate six-pointed shape. 如果从显微镜下观察，新降的雪花有纤小的六瓣。

但表示原因的分词短语前不能加连词（如 because, for, since, as 等），往往加介词 with。

i. \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature falling so rapidly, we couldn't go on with the experiment.

A. With

B. For

C. As

D. Since

正确答案：A。

## （2）介词+分词短语

分词短语表示伴随状况或原因的时候，可加介词with或without。

a. A car roared past, with smoke pouring from the exhaust.

一辆小汽车呼啸而过，排气管冒出一团团黑烟。

b. The old man often takes a walk after supper with his dog following him.

c. She left the party, without a word said .

分词短语表示时间，可以在分词前边加on。

d. On hearing her son's death, the bereaved mother broke out crying. 一听到她儿子死亡的消息，这位母亲放声痛哭起来。  
(on强调时间，相当于as soon as)

### 第三节 分词的完成式

#### 58 分词的完成式 Track56

1) 构成：表示主动——having done; 表示被动——having been done。

2) 意义与用法：分词的完成式主要是为了强调分词动作与谓语动作之间有很长的时间间隔，或者是因为分词动作本身经历了很长时间的延续。

注意：分词完成式一般不用作定语，而只作状语。

(1) 分词动作与谓语动作之间有一段间隔，则必须用分词完成式。

a. **Having failed** twice, he didn't want to try again. 已经失败了两次，他不想再试了。

b. **Having been** there many times, he offered to be our guide.

c. **Having failed** to qualify as a doctor, I took up teaching.

d. **Having been warned about** the thieves, he left his valuables at the bank.

e. **Having been bitten** twice, the postman refused to deliver our letters unless we chained our dog up. 邮递员被狗咬了两次之后要我们把狗拴起来，不然就不给我们送信了。

如果分词动作与谓语动作之间的时间间隔很短，这时即使分词动作先发生，我们也最好用分词一般式，以强调两个动作的衔接。例如：

f. **Locking** the door, he **went** home.

门锁上之后，他（马上）就回家了。



g. Finding the door locked, I went home.

发现门锁着，我就回家了。

h. Hearing the joke, we burst out laughing.

（显然hear和burst out两个动作的时间间隔很短）

## （2）分词动作本身要持续一段时间时，也必须用分词的完成式。

a. Having watered the garden, he began to mow the lawn. =  
After he had watered the garden, he began to mow the lawn.  
（having watered 强调动作经历了较长的一段时间）

b. Having been his own boss for such a long time, he found it hard to accept orders from another.

自己当老板已经这么久了，他觉得已经难以听从别人的差遣了。

c. For "good", the Chinese worked out a combination of "woman" and "child". Once this combination process had started, there was no limit to it. The Chinese still use the system today, having developed it to the point of producing some forty thousand combined characters out of a few hundred original pictures of concrete objects.

## （3）使用分词的完成式可以避免造成句子意思混淆不清。

a. Having sung a song, he sat down. 唱完一支歌后，他就坐了下来。

若说成 "Singing a song, he sat down."，则意思可能是 "唱着歌的时候，他就坐了下来"，给人感觉是 "他坐着唱歌"。

b. Having eaten his supper, he went out. 吃完晚饭后，他出门了。

若说成 "Eating his supper, he went out."，则给人的感觉是 "他端着饭碗出门了"。

但是，在不造成歧义的情况下，我们一般不必使用分词的完成式。

c. **Putting down** my newspaper, I walked over to the windows and saw it's raining outside. 放下报纸，我走到窗前，看到外面正在下雨。

**分析：**首先，这里put和walk两个动作间隔很短，“我”是把报纸一放下，就紧接着走到窗前；其次，“放报纸”的动作本身不需要经历很长时间，不是在“慢镜头”似地put down。这样一来，本句均不符合分词完成式的两种基本思维。再说，put和walk两个动作不可能同时发生，必然是一先一后，因此不会造成句子歧义。所以，我们不需要用having put down...这样的结构。

重要总结

到此为止，我们已把分词的各种形式讨论完毕。分词之所以很难，就是因为分词的形式较多，而且每一种形式都代表了一种思维动作，现列表总结如下：

（请记住每一种思维的典型例子！）

	主动意思	被动意思
一般动作	doing	done
	Unidentified <b>Flying</b> Objects	a <b>respected</b> writer
进行动作	doing	being done
	<b>falling</b> leaves	The question <b>being discussed</b> is very important.
完成动作	作状语：having done	作状语：having been done
	<b>Having failed</b> twice, he decided to give up.	All flights <b>having been cancelled</b> , they had to take the train.
	作定语：done（不及物）	作定语：done（及物）
	<b>fallen</b> leaves	<b>trained</b> employees
另外，表示将来的被动动作需要用 to be done 这一不定式的形式。		

## 第四节 现在分词与动名词的区别

### 59 现在分词与动名词的区别 Track57

尽管有些语法书已不再区分现在分词和动名词，而是把二者统称为-ing形式，但二者在用法上还是存在着明显的区别。

#### (1) 二者在句中充当的句子成分不完全一样。

前文说过，两种-ing词性是不同的：

- 1) 动名词是动词和名词的结合体。
- 2) 现在分词是动词和形容词或副词的结合体。

两者能够充当的成分有：

现在分词	状语	补足语	表语	定语
动名词	主语	宾语	表语	定语

因此，在句中作主语、宾语的-ing形式应该属于动名词（这是动名词的名词性质的体现）；作状语、补足语的-ing形式应该属于现在分词（这是现在分词副词和形容词性质的体现）。

a. I found him standing at the door.

句中standing at the door 是作宾语him的补足语，故此处standing为现在分词，him不可改为his。因为him standing不是动名词复合结构。

b. I appreciate you(r) helping me.

句中helping是作动词appreciate的宾语，故此处helping为动名词。you可改为your，因为you(r) helping是动名词复合结构，you是动名词

helping逻辑上的主语。

c. We sat **talking about** college life on the grass.

talking about... 在句中作伴随状语，修饰动词sat，故为现在分词。

d. He avoided **assuming** his responsibility.

assuming... 在句中作avoided的宾语，故为动名词。

e. **Reading poetry** on the stage is one of her strong suits.

reading poetry 作主语，故为动名词。

f. **Reading the letter**, she burst out crying.

reading the letter作状语表示时间，故为现在分词。

## (2) 作表语时的区别

二者均可作表语，但现在分词作表语，修饰句子主语，说明主语的性质特征；而动名词作表语则说明句子主语的具体内容是什么。一般作表语的-ing大多是动名词。

a. His hobby is **collecting** stamps. (动名词)

b. Reading is **permitting** a man to talk a long time, and **refusing** you the right to answer. (动名词)

c. These results are most **satisfying**. (现在分词)

## (3) 作定语时的区别

二者均可作定语，但现在分词作定语，表示被修饰名词的行为状态，通常含有进行意味，且均可改为定语从句；动名词作定语一般表示所修饰名词的用途，一般不可直接改为定语从句。一般作定语的-ing大多是现在分词。

a. a sleeping car = a car used for sleep (动名词)

b. a sleeping child = a child who is sleeping (现在分词)

c. a reading room = a room used for reading (动名词)

d. a reading student = a student who is reading (现在分词)

e. growing pains = pains during the growth period 成长的烦恼  
(动名词)

f. growing children = children that are growing 正在长身体的  
孩子 (现在分词)

g. boiling water = water that is boiling (现在分词)

h. boiling point = point at which water boils 而并不是 point  
which boils (动名词)

## 60 动名词复合结构与现在分词短语的区别

### Track58

这两者之间的区别很多人不曾注意到。我们先看看这两种结构在形式上的相似性。现在分词短语通常是“名词+ doing”。前文说过，动名词复合结构通常由“所有格名词+ doing”构成，但在实际情况中，也经常见到用名词的普通格代替所有格来构成复合结构，因此，在形式上也是“名词+ doing”。

a. *Children objecting to* their parents' remarrying has become a common social problem.

孩子们反对他们父母再婚已成为一个普遍的社会问题。

这个句子原本应该是：

*Children's objecting to* their parents' remarrying has become a common social problem.

或进一步改成主语从句：

*That children object to* their parents' remarrying has become a common social problem.

所以，a句主语应该是*children objecting to their parents' remarrying*这一动名词复合结构，并不是*children*这一复数名词。短语作主语时谓语动词要用单数，因此句中谓语用了*has become*而不是*have become*。该句不能改成一个定语从句的形式：*Children that object to...\**

我们再分析下面这一句：

b. *The children objecting to this plan* stand on the right please.

反对这个计划的孩子请站到右边来。

这句话相当于：

The children that object to this plan stand on the right please.

所以，b句中的主语是the children, objecting to this plan是一个现在分词短语，用来作定语修饰the children，相当于一个定语从句的作用。主语是复数形式，所以谓语动词用stand，而不是stands。该句不能改成一个名词从句的形式“*That the children object to this plan* stands on the right.\*”。

我们再看一个分词短语作状语的例子：

c. *So many directors being absent* , the board meeting had to be put off. 由于很多董事缺席，董事会只好延期。

这里的so many directors being absent是用作状语来说明原因的，原句相当于“*As so many directors were absent* , the board meeting had to be put off.”。因此-ing形式在这里只能是现在分词短语，因为动名词不能作状语。

根据以上分析我们得知，形式上相同的“名词+ doing”在本质上是不同的：动名词复合结构要改成一个名词从句；而现在分词短语要改成一个定语从句或状语从句。据此，我们就可以将二者区分开来。

## 第五节 分词作补足语

### 61 分词作补足语 Track59

(1) 在感官动词 (如 find, hear, smell, observe, watch, notice) 之后, 我们可以用两类分词作宾语补足语。

a. I **heard** him **criticized** many times. 我听见他多次受批评。

b. We **saw** the sun **rising** from behind the trees.

c. You can **see** the vapor **rising** from the wet clothes when they are hung on the fire.

d. Customer: Your dog seems very fond of **watching** you **cutting** hair.

Barber: It isn't that. Sometimes I snip off a bit of a customer's ear.

顾客: 你的狗似乎很喜欢看你给别人理发嘛。

理发师: 不是这么回事, 而是因为我有时会剪掉客人们的一点耳朵。

e. A teacher entered the classroom and **noticed** a girl student **sitting** near the door with her feet in the aisle and **chewing** gum. "Ethel," exclaimed the teacher, "take that gum out of your mouth and put your feet in."

一位老师走进教室后, 发现有位女生坐在门边, 脚伸到过道里, 嘴里还嚼着口香糖。这位老师就大声喊道: “埃塞尔, 把口香糖从嘴里吐出来, 把脚放进去!”



(2) 在这些动词之后，我们也可以用不带to的不定式作补足语。其中，用现在分词与用不定式的区别是：用现在分词，强调动作在进行；用不定式则表示一般的动作或一个动作自始至终的全过程。

a. When I glanced out of the window I saw Mary crossing the road.

b. I watched him step off the pavement, cross the road, and disappear into the post office.

我看见他走下人行道，穿过马路，进了邮局，再也不见了。

c. In the park you often see people do tai chi.

在公园里，你经常能见到人们在打太极拳。

d. I saw him doing tai chi when I came in.

我进来时，看见他正在打太极拳。

## 第六节 分词构成的复合形容词

现在分词和过去分词可分别与名词、形容词、副词构成复合形容词。那么它们的用法有何区别？究竟什么时候用“名词 / 形容词 / 副词+现在分词”构成的复合形容词，什么时候又用“名词 / 形容词 / 副词+过去分词”构成的复合形容词？这个问题有一定的难度。为了阐述清楚，我们先来分析讨论一下“外部”和“内部”两方面的关系。

**外部关系：**指分词与它所修饰的名词的关系。如English-speaking countries，这里的外部关系即指现在分词speaking和它所修饰的名词countries之间的关系。

**内部关系：**指分词与能构成复合形容词的其他词（名词、形容词、副词）之间的关系。如English-speaking countries，这里的内部关系即指现在分词speaking和构成复合形容词的名词English之间的关系。

以上两方面关系是正确使用这类复合形容词的关键，换句话说，究竟用什么构成形式的复合形容词，必须先把这两方面关系分析清楚。

首先，分析“外部关系”，即先判断是应该用现在分词还是应该用过去分词。

其次，外部关系正确无误，则再分析“内部关系”，即判断应该用什么词性的词与分词构成复合形容词。只有在内部、外部关系都正确的情况下，复合形容词才能使用正确。

例如，以下所用复合形容词均不正确，我们将在下文分析原因。

a. English-spoken countries \*

b. Water-covering land \*

c. A newly-building library \*

d. Naturally-occurred substances \*

e. Ready-making clothes \*

f. Nice-looking person \*

g. Good-done jobs \*

## 62 现在分词构成的复合形容词 Track60

这类复合形容词的总体特点：

由现在分词构成的复合形容词，具有共同的“外部关系”特点，即被修饰的名词与现在分词存在逻辑上的主谓关系，或者说被修饰的名词可以做现在分词的逻辑主语。这其实就是现在分词特征的体现。

既然外部关系存在共性，那么“内部关系”则是这一类复合形容词的个性特点。所以正确理解“内部关系”，成为正确使用这一类复合形容词的关键。

### (1) 名词+及物动词的现在分词

a. English-speaking countries

= the people in these countries speak English

b. peace-keeping force = force keeps peace 维和部队

c. freedom-loving people = people love freedom

d. a man-eating beast = a beast eats man

特点：

1) 外部关系：前面说过，存在逻辑上的主谓关系，即被修饰的名词可以作现在分词的逻辑主语。

2) 内部关系：构成复合形容词的名词（如English, peace）与现在分词（如speaking, keeping）存在逻辑上的动宾关系（speak English, keep peace），即可以作现在分词逻辑上的宾语。

## （2）名词+不及物动词的现在分词

a. a night-walking animal = an animal walks at night

b. a winter-blooming plant = a plant blooms in winter

c. a sky-flying kite = a kite flies in the sky

d. a desert-dwelling tribe = a tribe dwell in the desert

e. You may not be able to travel through the skies on your own. But you can be flying high in minutes with a sky-walking kite .

f. Through the centuries, he has served the desert-dwelling Arab as trusted mount, companion, war horse, and family pet.

### 特点：

1) 外部关系：前文说过，具有现在分词修饰名词的共同特征。

2) 内部关系：名词（如night, winter）不是作现在分词的逻辑宾语，而是与特定介词连用构成介词短语（如at night, in winter）来修饰现在分词的行为动作（walking, blooming）。

## （3）形容词+系动词的现在分词

a. a good-looking young man = a young man looks good

b. a funny-looking clown = a clown looks funny

c. an easy-going person = a person goes easy with

d. the nice-sounding music = the music sounds nice

**特点：**

1) 外部关系：具有现在分词修饰名词的共同特征。

2) 内部关系：形容词（如good, nice）作现在分词（如looking, sounding）逻辑上的表语（look good, sound nice）。

#### **（4）副词+不及物动词的现在分词**

a. far-reaching events = events reach far 有深远影响的事件

b. hard-working people = people work hard

c. a far-seeing politician = a politician see far

具有远见卓识的政治家

d. naturally-occurring substances = substances occur naturally

**特点：**

1) 外部关系：具有现在分词修饰名词的共同特征。

2) 内部关系：副词（如hard, naturally）作现在分词（如working, occurring）逻辑上的状语（work hard, occur naturally）。所以我们不能说natural-occurring substances\*。

3) 做比较：它与“形容词+现在分词”构成的复合形容词的区别。

## 63 过去分词构成的复合形容词 Track61

这类复合形容词的总体特点：

同现在分词构成复合形容词一样，由过去分词构成的复合形容词，也具有共同的“外部关系”特点，即被修饰的名词与过去分词存在逻辑上的动宾关系，或者说被修饰的名词可以作过去分词的逻辑宾语。这其实也就是过去分词特征的体现。

既然外部关系存在共性，那么“内部关系”则是这一类复合形容词的个性特点。所以正确理解“内部关系”，成为正确使用这一类复合形容词的关键。

### (1) 名词+及物动词的过去分词

a. man-made fibers = fibers made by man

b. hand-made gloves = gloves made by hand

c. water-covered land = land covered with water

d. state-owned firms = firms owned by the state

e. helium-filled balloons = balloons filled with helium

特点：

1) 外部关系：具有过去分词修饰名词的共同特征。

2) 内部关系：内部的名词（如hand, water）表示过去分词（如made, covered）动作的行为方式（made by hand）或状态（covered with water）。

3) 做比较：它与“名词+现在分词”的区别。

### (2) 形容词+及物动词的过去分词

a. a ready-made dress = made a dress ready, or a dress which is made ready 成衣

b. a green-painted house = painted a house green, or a house which is painted green

c. A clean-shaven man = a man shaved himself clean

### 特点:

1) 外部关系: 具有过去分词修饰名词的共同特征。

2) 内部关系: 此处的形容词 (如ready, green) 一般是作过去分词的逻辑宾语 (如dress, house) 的补足语 (made a dress ready, painted a house green)。

3) 做比较: 它与“形容词+现在分词”的区别。

### (3) 副词+及物动词的过去分词

a. a well-bred young man = a young man bred well

b. the above-mentioned items = the items mentioned above

c. a newly-built library = a library built newly

d. a tightly-packed box = a box packed tightly

### 特点:

1) 外部关系: 具有过去分词修饰名词的共同特征。

2) 内部关系: 此处的副词 (如newly, tightly) 一般是作过去分词 (如built, packed) 的逻辑状语 (built newly, packed tightly)。

3) 做比较: 它与“形容词+过去分词”及“副词+现在分词”的区别。

此外，复合形容词的构成结构还有：

#### (4) 形容词+名词+ ed

warm-hearted cold-blooded narrow-minded

blue-eyed near-sighted long-haired

lighter-skinned middle-aged ill-humored

bad-tempered ...

#### (5) 数词+名词+ ed

one-eyed camel two-faced person ten-storyed building

three-legged table ...

### 分词练习

#### 一、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（两种分词的区别）。

1. My two \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) children have both finished college.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) children need good nourishment.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) snow was frozen hard.

4. The \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) snowflakes in the sky are beautiful.

5. I love the noise of \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) rain.

6. More traffic will be able to pass on the \_\_\_\_\_ (widen) road.

7. Clint can't bear the smell of \_\_\_\_\_ (burn) bread.

8. Stay away from the \_\_\_\_\_ (burn) coal.



9. After jumping into the water, the lifeguard rescued the \_\_\_\_\_ (drown) child.

10. The mother of the \_\_\_\_\_ (drown) child was grieved to death.

11. Dick jumped out of the way of the \_\_\_\_\_ (approach) train.

12. The manager needs another copy of the \_\_\_\_\_ (sign) contract.

13. The \_\_\_\_\_ (return) letter had no stamps on it.

14. I've heard him \_\_\_\_\_ (criticize) many times.

15. One should always be careful with \_\_\_\_\_ (load) guns.

16. The composer was very happy to hear his works \_\_\_\_\_ (play) by the famous orchestra.

17. Do you know the girl \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the violin?

18. Today's farmers have increased milk production greatly through \_\_\_\_\_ (improve) methods of breeding, feeding and managing dairy cattle.

## 二、单项选择（分词的逻辑主语）。

19. Before singing the school song, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a poem was recited
- B. recited a poem
- C. they recited a poem
- D. they have recited a poem

20. Working like a telescope, \_\_\_\_\_ the size of objects at great distances.

- A. which magnifies a telephoto lens
- B. a telephoto lens magnifies
- C. a telephoto lens which magnifies
- D. and magnifying a telephoto lens

21. Jumping into the water, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the drowning child was rescued
- B. the drowned child was rescued
- C. the lifeguard rescued the drowning child
- D. the lifeguard rescued the drowned child

22. After jumping out of a boat, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the shark bites the man
- B. the shark bit the man
- C. the man was bitten by a shark
- D. the man is bitten by a shark

23. \_\_\_\_\_, the dog was fed.

- A. After doing my homework
- B. To have done my homework
- C. After I did my homework
- D. My homework was done

24. \_\_\_\_\_, we went swimming.

- A. Being a hot day
- B. Due to a hot day
- C. It was a hot day
- D. The day being hot

25. \_\_\_\_\_, all the quarrels came to an end.

- A. The lost money was found
- B. Finding the lost money
- C. Because the lost money found
- D. With the lost money found

26. \_\_\_\_\_ James Bland, Carry Me Back to Old Virginny was adopted as the state song of Virginia in 1940.

- A. Was written by
- B. Writing by
- C. He wrote the
- D. Written by

27. Playing the trumpet with dazzling originality, \_\_\_\_\_ dominated jazz for 20 years.

- A. Louis Armstrong
- B. the influence of Louis Armstrong
- C. the music of Louis Armstrong

D. Louis Armstrong's talent

28. \_\_\_\_\_ in a recent science competition, the three students were awarded scholarships totaling \$21,000.

A. To be judged the best

B. Having judged the best

C. Judged the best

D. Judging the best

29. \_\_\_\_\_ to steel, chromium increases the metal's hardness.

A. Added

B. In addition

C. Adding

D. Adds

30. Bob was lying on the beach, his hands \_\_\_\_\_ under his head.

A. were crossing

B. were crossed

C. crossing

D. crossed

31. Many strange new means of transport have been developed in our century, the strangest of them \_\_\_\_\_ perhaps the hovercraft.

- A. is
- B. being
- C. will be
- D. has been

32. No one else \_\_\_\_\_ willing to go, he offered to take the message.

- A. was
- B. had been
- C. were
- D. being

33. \_\_\_\_\_, a man who expresses himself effectively is sure to succeed more rapidly than a man whose command of language is poor.

- A. Other things being equal
- B. Were other things equal
- C. To be equal to other things
- D. Other things to be equal

34. Maggie ran back to the kitchen, eggs \_\_\_\_\_ carefully in her hands.

- A. to be held
- B. held
- C. were held

D. holding

35. Agriculture is the country's chief source of wealth, wheat \_\_\_\_\_ by far the biggest cereal crop.

A. is

B. being

C. has been

D. to be

36. All things \_\_\_\_\_, the planned trip will have to be called off.

A. considered

B. be considered

C. considering

D. having considered

### 三、单项选择（分词的完成式）。

37. A new technique \_\_\_\_\_, the yields as whole increased by 20 percent.

A. working out

B. having been worked out

C. having worked out

D. to have been worked out

38. \_\_\_\_\_ that everything was in place, he locked up the shop and went home.

- A. Checking
- B. Having checked
- C. Being checked
- D. Having been checked

39. The dying soldier had the message \_\_\_\_\_ straight to the commander.

- A. sent
- B. to be sent
- C. be sent
- D. being sent

40. \_\_\_\_\_ the earth to be flat, many feared that Columbus would fall off the edge of the earth.

- A. Having believed
- B. Believing
- C. Believed
- D. Being believed

41. \_\_\_\_\_ many times in a row, the opponent decided to give up fighting.

- A. Having defeated
- B. Having been defeated
- C. For having been defeated

D. As having been defeated

42. With production \_\_\_\_\_ up steadily, the factory needs an ever-increasing supply of raw materials.

A. having gone

B. going

C. to go

D. having been going

43. The supermarket is very crowded on Sundays, with people \_\_\_\_\_.

A. going in and out

B. to go in and out

C. gone in and out

D. having gone in and out

44. The fog \_\_\_\_\_ dense, all the planes were suspended.

A. is

B. was

C. being

D. having been

45. The decision \_\_\_\_\_, what is to be done now is how to carry it out.

A. been made



- B. being made
- C. having been made
- D. being making

46. There seemed little hope that the explorer, \_\_\_\_\_ in the tropical forest, would find his way through it.

- A. to be deserted
- B. having deserted
- C. to have been deserted
- D. having been deserted

47. The destructive fire \_\_\_\_\_, the firefighters recommended the occupants' getting an alarm device.

- A. having been put out
- B. being put out
- C. had been put out
- D. was put out

#### 四、单项选择（分词作补足语）。

48. You will see this product \_\_\_\_\_ wherever you go.

- A. to be advertised
- B. advertised
- C. advertise
- D. advertising

49. The manager promised to keep me \_\_\_\_\_ of how our business was going on.

- A. to be informed
- B. on informing
- C. informed
- D. informing

50. Corn originated in the New World and thus was not known in Europe until Columbus found it \_\_\_\_\_ in Cuba.

- A. being cultivated
- B. having cultivated
- C. been cultivated
- D. cultivating

51. When I caught him \_\_\_\_\_ me, I stopped buying things there and started dealing with another shop.

- A. cheat
- B. cheating
- C. to cheat
- D. to be cheating

52. He was caught \_\_\_\_\_ his classmate's money the other day.

- A. to steal
- B. stealing

C. to have stolen

D. having stolen

53. Mrs. Douglas unknowingly left a package \_\_\_\_\_ on the shop counter.

A. laying

B. to lie

C. laid

D. lying

54. His remarks left me \_\_\_\_\_ about his real purpose.

A. wondered

B. wonder

C. to wonder

D. wondering

55. Next time I catch you \_\_\_\_\_, I'll turn you in to the police.

A. stealing from others' pockets

B. steal from other's pockets

C. stealing other's pockets

D. to steal from other's pockets

56. They'll have you \_\_\_\_\_ if you don't pay your taxes.

A. to be arrested

B. arrested

C. arrest

D. being arrested

57.— There is something wrong with the table.

— yes, I can \_\_\_\_\_.

A. feel it that it's moving

B. feel it moves

C. feel it moving

D. feel it to move

58.The hall was too noisy for the speaker to make himself \_\_\_\_\_.

A. hear

B. hearing

C. being heard

D. heard

## 五、动名词与现在分词的区别。

分析下列短文中-ing形式所充当的成分，并判断其是动名词还是现在分词。

### Passage 1

Pavarotti, Opera Star Finds Creative Passion in [Painting](#)

Tenor Luciano Pavarotti holds a handkerchief whenever he sings in concert. Yet in real life he is more likely to be found **holding** a paintbrush. For his great love is **painting** vividly colored pictures of Italian villages and seascapes. What he likes best about **painting** is its contrast to opera, where the challenge is to use one's talents to bring to life the works of others. "When I finish a canvas, I feel I have created a world."

## Passage 2

### Nobody Can Decipher My Handwriting

One of his friends came to him **saying** , "I have a brother **living** in the capital. Would you mind **writing** him a letter for me?" "But I don't think I have time to go to the city!" he said.

"I am not **asking** you to go to the city," the friend explained, "I only asked if you would be kind enough to write him a letter." "I understand you perfectly the first time," he replied, "But nobody can decipher (辨认) my handwriting except myself. So if I'm not there to read it to him, it's no use **writing** . That's why I say I am not **going** to the capital."

## Passage 3

### Break the Ice

There was a mutual attraction between my sister and a trainee **working** at her office. However, both **being** shy, they could barely even speak to each other.

During an office party, my sister went into the kitchen to get a drink and the trainee followed. **Opening** the freezer, he took out some ice, placed it on the work surface and began

smashing it with a tin of coffee. Smiling , he explained, "I just wanted to break the ice between us."

六、分析下列句子中粗体部分的-ing结构是动名词复合结构还是分词短语，并翻译成汉语。

59. I don't see how you can avoid the matter being discussed .

60. The matter being discussed is of great importance to your writing.

61. Children objecting to their parents' remarrying has become a social problem.

62. The children objecting to this proposal stand on the right, please.

63. The children objecting to this proposal surprised us all.

64. Children bringing newspapers can get \$10 a day.

65. Last night I was awakened by someone tapping at the door .

66. I find myself resentful at having to talk to someone wearing sunglasses . Worst of all are those mirrored-lens sunglasses that, when you look into them, throw back two slightly distorted pictures of yourself.

67. I remember my parents taking me to the zoo.

68. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents knowing about it.

69. The noise of the desks being opened and closed could be heard out in the street.

70. Along with approximately 180 soldiers, he chose to fight to the death against **an army numbering** in the thousands.

71. There was no chance of **Davy emerging** from the battle alive.

72. With the **defenders refusing** to raise the white flag, Santa Anna's soldiers would take no prisoners.

73. We were greatly encouraged by the news of **China having launched** another man-made satellite.

74. Anyone with half an eye on the unemployment figures knew that the assertion about **economic recovery being just around the corner** was untrue.

75. The eye of an animal is quite easy to see. How then can the eyes be prevented from spoiling **the animal blending** with its environment? One solution would be for the animal to keep its eyes closed when danger threatens.

## 七、辨别改错（分词构成复合形容词）。

76. In this way these insects show an efficient use of their sound-produced (A) ability, organizing (B) two sounds delivered (C) at a high rate as one call (D) .

77. If a hydrogen-filling (A) balloon is brought (B) near (C) a flame, it will explode (D) .

78. Were (A) the Times Co. to purchase another major media company, there is no doubt that it could (B) dramatically transform a family-ran (C) enterprise that still gets 90% of its (D) revenues from newspapers.

79. Because (A) the diamond is the hardest natural (B) occurring substance, it is used in industry for cutting (C) ,

grinding, and boring other hard (D) materials.

80. A great many (A) teachers firmly (B) believe that English is one of the poorest-taught (C) subjects in high schools at present (D) .

81. As long as (A) poor people, who in general are colored, are in conflict with (B) richer people, who in general are lighter (C) skin (D) , there's going to be a constant racial conflict in the world.

## 八、单项选择（综合练习）。

82. You would be \_\_\_\_\_ if you thought that the problem was so cut and dried; in reality, it is much more complicated.

- A. narrow-minded
- B. narrow-minding
- C. narrowly-mind
- D. narrowly-minded

83. \_\_\_\_\_ substances include various forms of silica, pumice, and emery.

- A. Natural abrasives occur
- B. Abrasion occurs in natural
- C. Naturally occurring abrasive
- D. A natural occurrence of abrasion

84. The \_\_\_\_\_ economy at the turn of the century was due in large part to the influx of thousands of immigrants.



- A. rapid expanding
- B. rapid expansion
- C. rapidly expanding
- D. rapid expand

85. \_\_\_\_\_an answer, they decided to send an express telegram to them.

- A. Having received not
- B. Not received
- C. Received not
- D. Not having received

86. Niagara Falls is a great tourist attraction, \_\_\_\_\_millions of visitors every year.

- A. to draw
- B. drawing
- C. to be drawn
- D. draws

87. Language is a highway, \_\_\_\_\_all people and all ages.

- A. to link
- B. linking
- C. linked

D. links

88. The computer works very fast, \_\_\_\_\_ data at the speed of light.

A. having handled

B. handling

C. handled

D. handles

89. Though \_\_\_\_\_ no Japanese, Charles was able to communicate with them.

A. having understood

B. understanding

C. understood

D. being understood

90. This crop has similar qualities to the previous one, \_\_\_\_\_ both wind-resistant and adapted to the same type of soil.

A. being

B. been

C. to be

D. having been

91. The speech which he made \_\_\_\_\_ the project has bothered me greatly.

- A. being concerned
- B. concerned
- C. be concerned
- D. concerning

92. The question \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow is whether income tax should be increased.

- A. to debate
- B. to be debated
- C. debated
- D. that it will be debated

93. After a few rounds of talks, both sides regarded the territory dispute \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. being settled
- B. to be settled
- C. had settled
- D. as settled

94. As early as 1647 Ohio made a decision that free, tax-supported schools should be established in every town \_\_\_\_\_ 50 households or more.

- A. having
- B. to have
- C. to have had

D. having had

95. After the country won independence, great emphasis was laid on expanding education, with girls as well as boys \_\_\_\_\_ to go to school.

A. to be encouraged

B. being encouraged

C. been encouraged

D. be encouraged

96. Don't get your schedule \_\_\_\_\_; stay with us in this class.

A. to change

B. changing

C. changed

D. change

97. No matter how frequently \_\_\_\_\_, the works of Beethoven always attract large audiences.

A. performing

B. performed

C. to be performed

D. being performed

98. \_\_\_\_\_ with the picture, Mary tore it to pieces.

A. Dissatisfying thoroughly

- B. To dissatisfy thoroughly
- C. Being thoroughly dissatisfied
- D. To be thoroughly dissatisfied

99. \_\_\_\_\_with the size of the whole earth, the highest mountain does not seem high at all.

- A. When compared
- B. Compare
- C. While comparing
- D. Comparing

100. The guard walked through the train \_\_\_\_\_everyone's ticket.

- A. inspecting
- B. inspected
- C. being inspected
- D. to be inspected

101. \_\_\_\_\_nothing to talk about, the head said goodbye and went out of the room.

- A. There was
- B. Being
- C. As there being
- D. There being

102. \_\_\_\_\_, the price would be reasonable.

- A. All things are considered
- B. For all things consider
- C. All things considered
- D. If all things considered

103. Intended to display the work of twentieth-century artists, \_\_\_\_\_ in 1929.

- A. the opening of the Museum of Modern Art
- B. so the Museum of Modern Art opened
- C. why the Museum of Modern Art opened
- D. the Museum of Modern Art opened

104. \_\_\_\_\_ at the turn of the century, the Minnesota State Capital building is made of white granite and marble.

- A. Erected
- B. Was erected
- C. To erect it
- D. Erecting

105. Really? She had her driving license \_\_\_\_\_ for reckless driving?

- A. withdraw
- B. withdrawing

C. withdrew

D. withdrawn

106. With such a strong wind \_\_\_\_\_, the wire may break at any time.

A. blows

B. blowing

C. blew

D. is blowing

107. \_\_\_\_\_ left before the deadline, I am afraid I can't finish the experiment on time.

A. Although such a short time

B. It is such a short time

C. With so short time

D. With such a short time

108. We have to go to other places to find a crane, there \_\_\_\_\_ no crane here that stands idle.

A. is

B. to be

C. being

D. having been

109. The article opens and closes with descriptions of two news reports, each \_\_\_\_\_ one major point in contrast with

the other.

- A. makes
- B. made
- C. is to make
- D. making

110. As a pianist, he can hardly stand hearing a piano\_\_\_\_\_so badly.

- A. playing
- B. being played
- C. to play
- D. having played

111. \_\_\_\_\_of the burden of ice, the balloon climbed up and drifted to the South.

- A. To be free
- B. Freeing
- C. To free
- D. Freed

112. Geophysicists have collaborated with archaeologists and anthropo-logists to study the magnetic properties of pottery and fireplaces at sites\_\_\_\_\_by early humans.

- A. occupied
- B. occupying



- C. which occupy
- D. were occupied

113. During the course of its growth, a frog undergoes a true metamorphosis\_\_\_\_\_with a fishlike larval stage.

- A. begin
- B. began
- C. beginning
- D. is begun

114.\_\_\_\_\_, you should have no trouble with the difficult work.

- A. Knowing this
- B. If you are knowing this
- C. From knowing this
- D. If you had known this

115. One should never lose one's heart when\_\_\_\_\_temporary difficulties.

- A. confronted with
- B. confront with
- C. confronting with
- D. confronted

116. The difference between a winner and loser is, when \_\_\_\_\_immense difficulties, the former never loses heart.

- A. confronted with
- B. confronting with
- C. it is confronted with
- D. confront with

117. The other two children and three of the adults also had wounds \_\_\_\_\_ surgery.

- A. required
- B. require
- C. requiring
- D. to require

118. A stream of volcanic lava flows differently, \_\_\_\_\_ on the sort of ground it flows over.

- A. to depend
- B. depending
- C. that depends
- D. when it depended

119. Just as the value of a telephone network increases with each new phone \_\_\_\_\_ to the system, so does the value of a computer system increase with each program that turns out.

- A. adding
- B. to have added

C. to add

D. added

120. To everybody's surprise, the meeting ended, with nothing \_\_\_\_\_.

A. settled

B. being settled

C. settling

D. to settle

121. These are examples of the problems \_\_\_\_\_ by science that we in America and other societies face.

A. to be posed

B. that has been posed

C. posed

D. posing

122. \_\_\_\_\_ from general worker-protection laws, women workers are also satisfied with special laws designed to protect them.

A. Being benefited

B. Benefiting

C. Benefited

D. Been benefited

123. Efforts should be made to cultivate a business and legal environment\_\_\_\_\_fair competition between national industries and foreign-funded enterprises.

- A. facilitate
- B. facilitated
- C. facilitating
- D. to be facilitating

124. A similar system has been used to aid in the removal of brain tumors in children, a procedure\_\_\_\_\_extremely risky.

- A. to be considered
- B. considered
- C. to have been considered
- D. considering

125. \_\_\_\_\_any previous experience, John doesn't stand a chance of getting that job.

- A. Not having
- B. Not having had
- C. Having not
- D. Having not had

126. I picked my way through the wet grass, my feet\_\_\_\_\_the saturated soil.

- A. sank into

- B. to sink into
- C. being sunk into
- D. sinking into

127. \_\_\_\_\_the financial means to remain independent, Thomas Edison was compelled to seek employment as a night telegraph operator.

- A. He was deprived of
- B. That he was deprived of
- C. Although he was deprived of
- D. Deprived of

128. Everything\_\_\_\_\_into consideration, Bob is more suitable for the job.

- A. taking
- B. being taken
- C. to be taken
- D. taken

129. Electrical resistance is a common property of all materials, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. differ only in degree
- B. only in degree it differs
- C. it only differs in degree
- D. differing only in degree

130. \_\_\_\_\_for her anthropological research, Miss Mead also was involved with the World Federation Mental Health.

- A. Noted primarily
- B. Noting primarily
- C. Being primarily noted
- D. Having primarily noted

131. \_\_\_\_\_, she went back to her room.

- A. There was no cause for alarm
- B. There being no cause for alarm
- C. There be no cause for alarm
- D. There has been no cause for alarm

132. The human skeleton consists of more than two hundred bones \_\_\_\_\_ together by tough and relatively inelastic connective tissues called ligaments.

- A. bound
- B. to bind
- C. binding
- D. bind them

133. The criticism threw new light on the novel and the students found themselves\_\_\_\_\_it with fresh eyes.

- A. read
- B. reading

- C. to read
- D. having read

134. The carat, \_\_\_\_\_ as a unit for weighing gems, derived its name from the Greek word for the carob bean, a small weight.

- A. is still used
- B. still used
- C. still is used
- D. it is still used

135. Anna was reading a piece of science fiction, completely \_\_\_\_\_ to the outside world.

- A. being lost
- B. having lost
- C. losing
- D. lost

136. He wasn't asked to take on the chairmanship of the society, \_\_\_\_\_ insufficiently popular with all members.

- A. being considered
- B. considering
- C. to be considered
- D. having considered

137. With age, the mineral content of human bones decreases, \_\_\_\_\_ them more fragile.

- A. make
- B. and to make
- C. thereby making
- D. which it makes

138. Alaska found the first years of its statehood costly because it had to take over the expense of services \_\_\_\_\_ previously by the federal government.

- A. to be provided
- B. being provided
- C. provided
- D. providing

139. \_\_\_\_\_ 363 miles between the cities of Albany and Buffalo in New York State, the Erie Canal helped link the Atlantic Ocean with the Great Lakes.

- A. The extension of
- B. The extension
- C. Extending
- D. Extends

140. It's easy to blame the decline of conversation on the pace of modern life and on the vague changes \_\_\_\_\_ place in our ever-changing world.



- A. taking
- B. to take
- C. take
- D. taken

141. Only a small portion of college youth have actually been drafted and sent to fight in Vietnam, as \_\_\_\_\_ to the nation's previous wars.

- A. compared
- B. comparing
- C. comparison
- D. being compared

142. Though \_\_\_\_\_ in San Francisco, Dave had always preferred to record the plain facts of small-town life.

- A. raised
- B. grown
- C. developed
- D. cultivated

### 九、单项选择（提高题）。

143. The vocabulary and grammatical differences between British and American English are so trivial and few as hardly \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. noticed

- B. to be noticed
- C. being noticed
- D. to notice

144. The house was very quiet, \_\_\_\_\_ as it was on the side of a mountain.

- A. isolated
- B. isolating
- C. being isolated
- D. having been isolated

145. \_\_\_\_\_ as it was at such a time, his work attracted much attention.

- A. Being published
- B. Published
- C. Publishing
- D. To be published

146. First designated in 1970, Earth Day has become an annual international event \_\_\_\_\_ concerns about environmental issues such as pollution.

- A. dedicated to raising
- B. dedicated raising
- C. dedicates to raise
- D. that dedicates to raising

147. The country's chief exports are iron ore, coal, wool and cotton goods, wool \_\_\_\_\_ the most important of these.

A. has been

B. is

C. being

D. is being

148. With all the work \_\_\_\_\_, I don't know if I'll have time to go out.

A. done

B. to be done

C. to do

D. doing

E. being done

149. I eventually found her \_\_\_\_\_ with her friends in a pub.

A. sit chatting

B. sitting to chat

C. sitting chatting

D. sit to chat

150. In Europe it is quite usual to cross your legs when you are sitting \_\_\_\_\_ to someone even at an important meeting.

- A. to talk
- B. to talking
- C. talking
- D. for talking

151. Along the rocky New England coast are small areas of sand gravel beach, some created from debris, \_\_\_\_\_ by the action of ocean storms.

- A. others build up
- B. others built up
- C. others are build up
- D. others were built up

152. She answered the door \_\_\_\_\_ a magazine she \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. carried, read
- B. carrying, had been reading
- C. carried, was reading
- D. carrying, had read

153. The sale usually takes place outside the house, with the audience \_\_\_\_\_ on benches, chairs or boxes.

- A. having seated
- B. seating
- C. seated

D. having been seated

154. All flights\_\_\_\_\_because of the storm, they decided to take the train.

A. having canceled

B. have been canceled

C. having been canceled

D. were canceled

155. There was a very interesting remark in a book by an Englishman that I read recently\_\_\_\_\_what he thought was a reason for this American characteristic.

A. giving

B. gave

C. to give

D. given

156. Peter went to the Congress very early,\_\_\_\_\_to push out the dissidents as many as he could.

A. his mind being made up

B. with his mind made up

C. with his mind making up

D. his mind making up

157. He smiled, stared at her hand for a moment, then\_\_\_\_\_away quickly.

- A. walked
- B. walking
- C. to walk
- D. walks

158. The delegates were seen \_\_\_\_\_ in the hall but they didn't make known the problems \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. be assembling, discussed
- B. assembling, discussed
- C. assembled, discussing
- D. being assembled, discussing

159. How many of us \_\_\_\_\_, say, a meeting that is irrelevant to us would be interested in the discussion?

- A. attended
- B. attending
- C. to attend
- D. have attended

160. Anyone with half an eye on the unemployment figures knew that the assertion about economic recovery \_\_\_\_\_ just around the corner was untrue.

- A. would be
- B. to be
- C. was

D. being

161. The letters of Abigail Adams to her husband and future President, John, \_\_\_\_\_ during the American Revolution, conveyed a vivid picture of the times.

A. were written

B. which written

C. written

D. written when

162. Relative humidity is the amount of water vapor the air contains at a certain temperature \_\_\_\_\_ with the amount it could hold at that temperature.

A. to compare

B. compared

C. comparing

D. compares

163. All eels spawn in the sea, the eggs hatching into transparent, ribbon-like larvae \_\_\_\_\_, feeding until they metamorphose into small eels.

A. that drift about

B. drift about

C. about drifting

D. drift about them

164. Founded around 1075, the Acoma Pueblo is considered \_\_\_\_\_ settlement in the United States.

- A. the oldest continuously occupied
- B. occupied continuously the oldest
- C. the oldest occupied continuously
- D. continuously the oldest occupied

#### 十、辨别改错。

165. The Portuguese give (A) a great deal of credit to one man (B) for having promoted (C) sea travel, that man was (D) Prince Henry the navigator, who lived in the 15th century.

166. Beethoven, the great musician, wrote (A) nine symphonies in his life, most of them were written (B) after he had lost (C) his hearing (D) .

167. Writing (A) in verse, lucid style, the book describes the author's childhood (B) experiences (C) in Louisiana just before outbreak (D) of the Civil War.

168. Founded (A) in 1961 and employed (B) an estimated (C) 35,000 people, the organization has gained a reputation for brutality (D) .

169. He cannot tell the difference between true (A) praise and flattering (B) statements making (C) only to gain (D) his favor.

170. Whenever we hear of (A) a natural disaster, even (B) in a distant part of the world, we feel sympathy (C) for the people to have affected (D) .



171. In the teaching of (A) mathematics, the way of instruction is generally traditional, with (B) teachers presenting formal (C) lectures and students take (D) notes.

172. The conveniences that Americans desire reflecting (A) not so much a leisurely (B) lifestyle as a busy lifestyle in which even minutes of time are (C) too valuable to be wasted (D) .

173. The universe works in a way so far remove (A) from what common sense would (B) allow that (C) words of any kind must necessarily be inadequate to explain it (D) .

174. The Committee adopted a resolution requiring (A) the seven automakers selling (B) the most cars in the state making (C) 2 percent of those vehicles emissions-free (D) by 1998.

175. Plants synthesize (A) carbohydrates from water and carbon dioxide with the aid (B) of energy is derived (C) from sunlight (D) .

176. Charlotte Perkins Gilman is known primarily (A) as an author of short (D) stories, but she also wrote an influential book argued (C) for equal (D) economic opportunities for women.

177. Government money appropriated for art (A) in the 1930s made possible (B) hundreds of murals and statues still admiration (C) in small towns all over (D) the United States.

178. Ulysses S. Kay was among the (A) United States composers visited (B) the Soviet Union in 1958 to participate (C) in a cultural exchange program (D) .

179. Carrie Chapman was instrumental (A) in passing (B) the Nineteenth Amendment to the United States Constitution

gives (C) women the right to vote (D) .

180. Carrie Chapman organized (A) the League of Women Voters after (B) successfully campaign (C) for the constitutional amendment that gave (D) women the right to vote.

181. With (A) production having gone up (B) steadily, the factory needs an ever-increasing (C) supply of (D) raw materials.

182. Financier Andrew Mellon donated (A) most of his magnificent art collection (B) to the National Gallery of Art, where (C) it is now locating (D) .

183. Like all ecological systems, a forest is made up of (A) a living environment and a nonliving environment, the latter (B) is composed of (C) air, rocks (D) , soil, and water.

184. Won (A) its war for independence in 1783, the United States then struggled to establish (B) its own (C) economic and financial system (D) .

185. Bacteria lived (A) in the soil play (B) a vital role in recycling (C) the carbon and nitrogen needed (D) by plants.

186. Some (A) snakes have hollow teeth are called (B) fangs that they (C) use to poison (D) their victims.

187. Compare (A) with the jagged (B) estuaries (C) of the Atlantic coast, the Pacific coast seems almost uniformly (D) straight.

188. Discovery (A) in 1789 and (B) isolated from (C) other elements in 1841, uranium is valued as (D) a source of atomic energy.

189. Celery, an edible (A) plant is having (B) long stalks topped with (C) feathery leaves, grows best (D) in cool weather.

190. In 1862 Abraham Lincoln signed the Homestead Act, allows (A) settlers (B) 160 acres of free land (C) after they had worked it for (D) five years.

191. After (A) a heavy rain, a rainbow may spread all the way across (B) the sky, its two ends seem (C) to rest on (D) the Earth.

### 分词练习答案

#### 一、用括号中动词的适当形式填空（两种分词的区别）。

1. grown
2. Growing
3. fallen
4. falling
5. falling
6. widened
7. burned
8. burning
9. drowning
10. drowned
11. approaching
12. signed

- 13. returned
- 14. criticized
- 15. loaded
- 16. played
- 17. playing
- 18. improved

## 二~四、单项选择。

- 19-20: CB
- 21-25: CCCDD
- 26-30: DACAD
- 31-35: BDABB
- 36-40: ABBAB
- 41-45: BBACC
- 46-50: DABCA
- 51-55: BBDDA
- 56-58: BCD

## 五、动名词与现在分词的区别。

### Passage 1

painting动名词

holding分词

painting动名词

painting动名词

## Passage 2

saying分词

living分词

writing动名词

asking分词

writing动名词

going分词

## Passage 3

working分词

being分词

opening分词

smashing动名词

smiling分词

六、分析下列句子中粗体部分的-ing结构是动名词复合结构还是分词短语，并翻译成汉语。

59. 动名词复合结构

我不知道你怎样才能避免讨论这个问题。

60. 分词作定语

正在讨论的这个问题对你们的写作很重要。

61. 动名词复合结构

孩子们反对父母再婚，这已成为一个普遍的社会问题。

62. 分词作定语

反对这个计划的孩子们请站到右边来。

63. 动名词复合结构

这些孩子竟然反对这一计划，真让我们惊讶。

64. 分词作定语

那些送报的孩子每天可以得到10美元。

65. 动名词复合结构

昨晚有人敲门，把我吵醒了。

66. 分词作定语

我很讨厌跟戴着墨镜的人讲话，尤其是那种像镜子一样的太阳镜，因为你往里看时，反射出来的是两个你自己变形的模样。

67. 动名词复合结构

我还记得父母带我去动物园的情景。

68. 动名词复合结构

小的时候，我习惯把手电筒带到床上，这样我可以在被窝里看连环画而不让父母发现。

69. 动名词复合结构

课桌一开一关的噪音远远地在大街上都能听得见。

70. 分词作定语

带着约180名将士，他决定同几千人的敌军进行殊死搏斗。

71. 动名词复合结构

戴维从战场上生还的希望渺茫。

72. 分词短语作状语

由于敌人拒绝举旗投降，桑塔·安纳的将士们决定歼灭全部敌人，不抓俘虏。

73. 动名词复合结构

听到中国又成功发射一颗人造卫星，我们都感到欢欣鼓舞。

74. 动名词复合结构

任何人只要稍稍看看目前失业率的数据，就可知道断言经济复苏即将到来是毫无根据的。

75. 动名词复合结构

动物的眼睛很容易被发现。怎样才能防止因为眼睛而破坏了环境对动物的保护作用呢？一个解决办法就是，当它面临危险时把眼睛闭上。

七、辨别改错（分词构成复合形容词）。

76. A/sound-producing

77. A/hydrogen-filled

78. C/family-run

79. B/naturally

80. C/most poorly-taught

81. D/skinned

八~九、单项选择。

82-85: ACCD

86-90: BBBBA

91-95: DBDAB

96-100: CBCAA

101-105: DCDAD

106-110: BDCDB

111-115: DACAA

116-120: ACBDA

121-125: CBCBA

126-130: DDDDA

131-135: BABBD

136-140: ACCCA

141-145: AABAB

146-150: ACCCC

151-155: BBCCA

156-160: BABBD

161-164: CBAA

十、辨别改错。

165. D/being



- 166. B/written
- 167. A/Written
- 168. B/employing
- 169. C/made
- 170. D/affected
- 171. D/taking
- 172. A/reflect
- 173. A/removed
- 174. C/to make
- 175. C/derived
- 176. C/book arguing
- 177. C/admired
- 178. B/composers visiting
- 179. C/giving
- 180. C/campaigning
- 181. B/going up
- 182. D/located
- 183. C/composed of
- 184. A/Having won
- 185. A/living

186. B/called

187. A/Compared

188. A/Discovered

189. B/having

190. A/allowing

191. C/seeming

## Chapter 7 从句的简化



音频

64 名词从句的简化

65 定语从句的简化

66 状语从句的简化

在讨论完三大从句和三种非谓语动词形式之后，我们现在把从句和非谓语动词二者结合起来，研究它们之间的内在联系，这就是从句的简化工作，即把结构较复杂的从句简化为精炼的非谓语形式。

## 64 名词从句的简化 Track62

思路：英文中只有动名词和不定式具有名词特征，可以当成名词来使用。所以属于名词类的名词从句自然可以简化成两种形式：一是简化为动名词，二是简化为不定式。

### (1) 名词从句与动名词

由that引导的名词从句一般换成动名词来表达，通常采用动名词复合结构的形式。

1) that引导的主语从句简化：

直接用动名词复合结构来替换主语从句，放在句首作主语。

- a. It surprised us that John won the marathon .
- b. That John won the marathon surprised us.
- c. John's winning the marathon surprised us.
- d. That he lost the game came as a surprise to everybody.
- e. His losing the game came as a surprise to everybody.

2) that引导的同位语从句简化：

简化同位语从句时，先要在同位语从句所修饰的名词后边加上介词，通常是用of来表示同位关系，然后把从句换成动名词复合结构。

- a. There was no chance that Davy would come from the battle alive . 戴维不可能从战场上生还。
- b. There was no chance of Davy coming from the battle alive .

c. Anyone with half an eye on the unemployment figures knew that the assertion **that economic recovery would be just around the corner** was untrue.

任何人只要稍稍看一眼目前失业率的数据就能知道，有关经济复苏即将到来的断言是不符合事实的。

d. Anyone with half an eye on the unemployment figures knew that the assertion **about economic recovery being just around the corner** was untrue.

e. We were greatly encouraged by the news **that China had launched another man-made satellite** .

f. We were greatly encouraged by the news **of China having launched another man-made satellite**.

3) that引导的宾语从句简化:

宾语从句的简化较复杂，可转换成不定式或动名词，这与主句谓语动词的用法密切相关。

a. I hope **that I can drive to work in my own car** .

我希望能够开着自己的车去上班。

b. I hope **to drive to work in my own car** . (hope后要接不定式)

c. I consider **that I will emigrate to America in the future** .

d. I consider **emigrating to America in the future**.  
(consider后要接动名词)

有的动词后边还需接介词。

e. Jane's mother insisted **that she should go swimming with her brother**.

f. Jane's mother insisted on her going swimming with her brother.

综上所述，宾语从句要简化成动名词还是不定式形式，完全取决于主句谓语动词。因此，我们要熟练掌握动词的用法。在前文“48动名词作宾语”已分别列出过接动名词或不定式作宾语的常用易错动词。

## (2) 名词从句与不定式

能简化成不定式的名词从句一般有两个共同的特征：

1) 名词从句谓语往往含有情态意义，多见的是should, can和could。

2) 通常是连接代词、连接副词以及whether引导的名词从句。

a. I don't know what I should do.

b. I don't know what to do.

c. Please tell me how I can get to the bus station.

d. Please tell me how to get to the bus station.

e. She can't decide whether she should go with him or stay home.

f. She can't decide whether to go with him or (to) stay home.

g. I haven't decided whether I should vote for Clint.

h. I haven't decided whether to vote for Clint.

## 65 定语从句的简化 Track63

定语从句的简化就是把定语从句简化为短语。

如果关系代词在从句中作宾语，如：

The man **that** I saw at the party is my teacher.

此时，**that**作saw的宾语，我们可以把**that**省去。但无法把从句简化为短语形式。

所以，定语从句的简化 只能是关系词在从句中作主语的情况下，我们才能将定语从句简化为短语。

### （1）从句中含有be动词

如果定语从句中含有be动词的形式，我们只需把关系词和be动词省去即简化成短语，往往是分词短语（主动的用现在分词，被动的用过去分词），或者形容词短语。

定语从句	分词或形容词短语	翻译
Do you know the boy <b>who is playing</b> the violin?	Do you know the boy <b>playing</b> the violin?	你认识那位正在拉小提琴的男孩吗？ （现在分词短语）

(续表)

定语从句	分词或形容词短语	翻译
The man <b>who is standing</b> at the gate is my English teacher.	The man <b>standing</b> at the gate is my English teacher.	站在门口的那位男士是我的英文老师。 (现在分词短语)
Books <b>that are written</b> in English are more expensive.	Books <b>written</b> in English are more expensive.	英文版的书比较贵。 (过去分词短语)
The car <b>that was repaired</b> yesterday by him is my brother's.	The car <b>repaired</b> yesterday by him is my brother's.	昨天他修理的那辆车是我哥哥的。(过去分词短语)
The people <b>who were responsible</b> for the incident were all punished.	The people <b>responsible</b> for the incident were all punished.	对此事负有责任的人都受到了惩罚。 (形容词短语)

## (2) 从句中没有be动词

如果定语从句中没有be动词的形式，我们则可把从句的主语（即关系代词）省去并且把从句的动词变成现在分词-ing形式。

定语从句	现在分词短语	翻译
They live in a room <b>that faces</b> the south.	They live in a room <b>facing</b> the south.	他们住在一间朝南的房子里。
Anyone <b>who touches</b> the wire will get an electric shock.	Anyone <b>touching</b> the wire will get an electric shock.	谁要是碰到这根电线就会遭到电击。
English has an alphabet <b>that consists of</b> 26 letters.	English has an alphabet <b>consisting of</b> 26 letters.	英语字母表是由 26 个字母组成的。

## (3) 用不定式替换定语从句

上面讨论的（1）、（2）两点主要是将定语从句替换成分词的形式，这是因为分词具备形容词的功能，主要就是用来作定语。而不定式也可当



作形容词来用，在句中作定语。英文中规定， 被the only, the last, the next, 序数词，最高级形容词修饰的名词，其后所接的定语从句往往要用不定式来替换。（考试重点）

定语从句	不定式短语	翻译
He is the only one that understands me.	He is the only one to understand me.	他是唯一能够理解我的人。（ the only ）
The next train that arrives is from New York.	The next train to arrive is from New York.	下一列到达的火车是从纽约开来的。（ the next ）
Clint was the second person that fell into this trap.	Clint was the second person to fall into this trap.	克林特是第二个掉进陷阱的人。（ the second ）

## 66 状语从句的简化 Track64

只有当状语从句的主语和主句的主语相同时，才能把状语从句换成短语。 否则，会引起句意改变。

While the teacher was lecturing to the class, I fell asleep.

在老师讲课的时候，我睡着了。

若改成“While lecturing to the class, I fell asleep.”，则意思是“当我在给这个班上课时，我睡着了。”这样显然不妥。

### (1) 从句含有be动词

如果状语从句中含有be动词的形式，我们只需要把从句主语和be动词省去，即简化成短语。简化后的短语往往是分词短语（主动的用现在分词，被动的用过去分词）、形容词短语或名词短语。这种省略主要常见于时间、地点、条件及让步状语从句中。

a. Metals expand **when (they are) heated and contract when (they are) cooled**. 金属具有热胀冷缩的特性。（两个when后省略they are）

b. **When (he was) a student** in the university, he read a lot.  
(when后省略了he was)

c. **While (he was) waiting**, he took out a magazine to read.

d. A tiger can't be tamed **unless (it is) caught** very young.

e. \_\_\_\_\_, Dr. Smith has long been a severe critic of the government's economic policies.

A. Although not being an economist himself

B. Although not an economist himself

C. Although not having been an economist himself

D. Although being no an economist himself

正确答案：B。从句相当于：Although he is not an economist himself, ...

## (2) 从句没有be动词

如果状语从句中没有be动词的形式，我们则可以把从句主语省去并且把动词变成现在分词-ing形式。

状语从句	现在分词短语	翻译
Since <b>I came</b> to Beijing, I have made many new friends.	Since <b>coming</b> to Beijing, I have made many new friends.	到北京之后我交了很多新朋友。
After <b>I finished</b> my homework, I fed the dog.	After <b>finishing</b> my homework, I fed the dog.	我把作业做完之后，喂了狗狗。
After <b>he jumped</b> out of a boat, the man was bitten by a shark.	After <b>jumping</b> out of a boat, the man was bitten by a shark.	跳出小船后，这位男子被鲨鱼咬伤了。

## 从句的简化练习

### 一、简化下列句子中的名词从句。

1. The student denied that he had cheated on the exam.

2. That the president was involved in the fraud is obvious.

3. I consider that this is a far-reaching event.

4. That he lost the game came as a surprise to everybody.

5. That he worked all night in the rain caused him to catch a bad cold.

6.The boy is worried about the possibility that he will fail in the exam.

7.That he tries sending her girlfriend flowers every day is the only way he can think of to gain her favor.

8.I remember that he once offered to help us if we ever got into trouble.

9.You must tell me the truth. I insist that you should tell the truth.

10.Nowhere in nature is aluminum found free, owing to the fact that it is always combined with other elements, most commonly with oxygen.

11.That children object to their parents remarrying has become a prevalent social problem.

12.The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate that I arrived late every day.

13.That the girl was educated in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.

## 二、简化下列句子中的名词从句。

14.The plumber told me how I could fix the leak in the sink.

15.Please tell me where I should meet you.

16.I don't know whether I should believe him or not.

17.Sam is getting dressed to go to a party, but is having trouble deciding on what clothes he should wear.

18.He found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one he should buy.

19.I was tongue-tied. I didn't know what I should say.

20. Going to the school dance is a lot of fun. But sometimes, deciding who I can go with isn't easy.

21. A: I don't know what I should buy for her birthday. Got any suggestions?

B: How about a book?

### 三、把下列句子中的定语从句简化为短语。

22. The train that is approaching the station is from Shanghai.

23. The woman who lives next door is very friendly.

24. The people who are waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.

25. The scientists who are researching the causes of cancer are making progress.

26. Our school has a library which was built in 1900.

27. The car which caused the accident drove off.

28. We lived in an apartment that overlooked the sea.

29. Oceans continually lose by evaporation much of the river water that is constantly flowing into them.

30. Tornadoes (龙卷风) occur most often in the spring when hot winds that rise over flat land encounter heavy, cold air.

31. I don't think he is the best man that does the job.

32. He thought that it might not be the best time that he should ask his boss for a raise.

33. Trains which leave from this station take an hour to get to London.

34. Clint was the only person that survived the air crash.

35. He was the last man that left the sinking ship.

36. Be sure to follow the instructions that are given at the top of the page.

37. The psychologists who study the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.

38. The conclusion which is presented in that book states that most of the automobiles which are produced by American industry have some defect.

#### 四、把下列句子中作定语的分词短语还原成定语从句。

39. There is almost no end to the problems facing a head of state.

40. The photographs published in the newspaper were extraordinary.

41. Did you get the message concerning the special meeting?

42. The woman waiting to see you has applied for a job here.

43. The plane flying overhead is traveling north.

44. The sunlight coming through the window wakes me up early every morning.

45. Two-thirds of those arrested of car theft are under twenty years of age.

46. The man serving at the counter is very helpful.

47. This job will suit students wanting to work during the holidays.

48. There's someone knocking at the door.

49. Customers complaining about the service should see the manager.

50. Passengers traveling on planes shouldn't smoke.

### 五、单选题（简化了的定语从句）。

51. Oceans continually lose by evaporation much of the river water \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to constantly flow into them
- B. is constantly flowing into them
- C. constantly flows into them
- D. constantly flowing into them

52. Tornadoes, powerful, destructive wind storms, occur most often in the spring when hot winds \_\_\_\_\_ over flat land encounter heavy, cold air.

- A. which to rise
- B. that rising
- C. are rising
- D. rising

53. In 1938 Pearl S. Buck became the first American woman \_\_\_\_\_ the Nobel Prize for Literature.

- A. receive
- B. received
- C. to receive
- D. she received

54. The first explorer\_\_\_\_\_California by land was Strong Smith, a trapper who crossed the southwestern deserts of the United States in 1825.

- A. that he reached
- B. to reach
- C. reached
- D. reaching it

55. \_\_\_\_\_often found in fruit and vegetables.

- A. Vitamin C, a trace element that is
- B. For vitamin C, a trace element to be
- C. Vitamin C, a trace element, is
- D. Vitamin C, is that trace element.

56. The Amazon rain forests,\_\_\_\_\_the earth's lungs, convert carbon dioxide in the atmosphere back into oxygen.

- A. functioning as
- B. which functioning as
- C. functions as
- D. functioned as

57. Through a process\_\_\_\_\_coalescence, water droplets in clouds grow to a size large enough to fall to earth.

- A. calls
- B. to be called
- C. calling



D. called

58. Penicillin, \_\_\_\_\_ in the early 20th century, brought in the golden age of chemotherapy.

A. to be discovered

B. discovering

C. discovery was

D. discovered

59. The mouse, like the keyboard, is a control device \_\_\_\_\_ to a computer.

A. connected

B. to connect it

C. and connect

D. that connect

60. An amendment to the Constitution \_\_\_\_\_ in Harry Truman's tenure limits the U.S. presidency to two terms.

A. passing

B. to pass

C. passed

D. was passed

六、把下列句子中能够简化的状语从句简化为短语（有的不能简化）。

61. While I was waiting for the bus, a brick fell on my head.

62. After I turned to the corner, I saw a tile fall off the roof.

63. After I turned to the corner, a tile fell off the roof.

64. When I opened the door of the refrigerator, the smell was bad.

65. While I was watching TV last night, the telephone rang.

66. Before I came to class, I had a cup of coffee.

67. After he had finished breakfast, he left the house and went to his office.

68. After she had completed her shopping, she went home.

69. Alex hurt his back while he was chopping wood.

70. You should always read a contract before you sign your name.

71. While I was trying to get to sleep last night, a mosquito kept buzzing in my ear.

72. Since we arrived here, we have made many new friends.

73. After we looked at the map, we tried to find the right street.

## 七、单选题（简化了的状语从句）。

74. A reagent is any chemical that reacts in a predictable way \_\_\_\_\_ with other chemicals.

A. when mixed

B. when is mixed

C. it mixed

D. when mixing

75. A beam of light will not bend round corners unless \_\_\_\_\_ to do so with the help of a reflecting device.

- A. made
- B. to be made
- C. being made
- D. having made

76. As a general rule, snakes don't bite unless \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. offended
- B. are offended
- C. they offended
- D. offending

77. She had said little so far, responding only briefly when \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. speaking
- B. spoken
- C. speaking to
- D. spoken to

78. \_\_\_\_\_, his family moved to America.

- A. When still a baby
- B. When a baby still
- C. When he was still a baby
- D. When being still a baby

79. \_\_\_\_\_ native to Europe, the daisy has now spread throughout most of North America.

- A. Although
- B. If it were
- C. In spite of
- D. That it is

80. In its pure state antimony has no important uses, but \_\_\_\_\_ with other substances, it is an extremely useful metal.

- A. when combined physically or chemically
- B. combined when physically or chemically
- C. the physical and chemical combination
- D. it is combined physically and chemically

81. Although pure diamond is colorless and transparent, \_\_\_\_\_ with other material it may appear in various colors, ranging from pastels to opaque black.

- A. but when contaminated
- B. but when contaminating
- C. when contaminated
- D. when contaminating

82. \_\_\_\_\_ classified as a carnivore, the North American grizzly bear eats berries and even grass.

- A. Just as
- B. Because of

C. Although

D. Either

83. \_\_\_\_\_ usually thought to end in northern New Mexico, the Rocky Mountains really extend southward to the frontier of Mexico.

A. Despite

B. To be

C. While

D. However

84. Nearly all trees contain a mix of polymers that can burn like petroleum \_\_\_\_\_ properly extracted.

A. after

B. if

C. when it

D. is

85. Although \_\_\_\_\_ rigid, bones exhibit a degree of elasticity that enables the skeleton to withstand considerable impact.

A. apparently

B. are apparently

C. apparently their

D. are they apparently

86. Although \_\_\_\_\_ of the world's oceans, the Atlantic has by far the largest drainage area.

- A. the largest is not
- B. not the largest
- C. the largest not
- D. largest not the

### 从句的简化练习答案

#### 一、简化下列句子中的名词从句。

1. The student denied having cheated on the exam.
2. The president's being involved in the fraud is obvious. 或  
The president's involvement in the fraud is obvious.
3. I consider this a far-reaching event. 或 I consider this  
event far-reaching.
4. His losing the game came as a surprise to everybody.
5. His working all night in the rain caused him to catch a  
bad cold.
6. The boy is worried about the possibility of failing in the  
exam.
7. Trying sending her girlfriend flowers every day is the  
only way he can think of to gain her favor.
8. I remember his once offering to help us if we ever got  
into trouble.
9. You must tell me the truth. I insist on your telling the  
truth.
10. Nowhere in nature is aluminum found free, owing to its  
always being combined with other elements, most commonly with  
oxygen.

11.Children's objecting to their parents remarrying has become a prevalent social problem.

12.The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate my arriving late every day.

13.The girl's being educated in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.

## 二、简化下列句子中的名词从句。

14.The plumber told me how to fix the leak in the sink.

15.Please tell me where to meet you.

16.I don't know whether to believe him or not.

17.Sam is getting dressed to go to a party, but is having trouble deciding on what clothes to wear.

18.He found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one to buy.

19.I was tongue-tied. I didn't know what to say.

20.Going to the school dance is a lot of fun. But sometimes, deciding who to go with isn't easy.

21.A: I don't know what to buy for her birthday. Got any suggestions?

B: How about a book?

## 三、把下列句子中的定语从句简化为短语。

22.The train approaching the station is from Shanghai.

23.The woman living next door is very friendly.

24.The people waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.

25. The scientists researching the causes of cancer are making progress.

26. Our school has a library built in 1900.

27. The car causing the accident drove off.

28. We lived in an apartment overlooking the sea.

29. Oceans continually lose by evaporation much of the river water constantly flowing into them.

30. Tornadoes occur most often in the spring when hot winds rising over flat land encounter heavy, cold air.

31. I don't think he is the best man to do the job.

32. He thought that it might not be the best time to ask his boss for a raise.

33. Trains leaving from this station take an hour to get to London.

34. Clint was the only person to survive the air crash.

35. He was the last man to leave the sinking ship.

36. Be sure to follow the instructions given at the top of the page.

37. The psychologists studying the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.

38. The conclusion presented in that book states that most of the automobiles produced by American industry have some defect.

#### 四、把下列句子中作定语的分词短语还原成定语从句。

39. There is almost no end to the problems that face a head of state.



40. The photographs that were published in the newspaper were extraordinary.

41. Did you get the message that concerns the special meeting?

42. The woman who is waiting to see you has applied for a job here.

43. The plane that is flying overhead is traveling north.

44. The sunlight that comes through the window wakes me up early every morning.

45. Two-thirds of those that are arrested of car theft are under twenty years of age.

46. The man who is serving at the counter is very helpful.

47. This job will suit students who want to work during the holidays.

48. There's someone who is knocking at the door.

49. Customers who complain about the service should see the manager.

50. Passengers who are traveling on planes shouldn't smoke.

## 五、单选题（简化了的定语从句）。

51-55: DDCBC 56-60: ADDAC

## 六、把下列句子中能够简化的状语从句简化为短语（有的不能简化）。

61. While I was waiting for the bus, a brick fell on my head.  
（因为主语不同，不能简化）

62. After turning to the corner, I saw a tile fall off the roof.

63. After I turned to the corner, a tile fell off the roof.  
(因为主语不同, 不能简化)

64. When I opened the door of the refrigerator, the smell was bad. (因为主语不同, 不能简化)

65. While I was watching TV last night, the telephone rang.  
(因为主语不同, 不能简化)

66. Before coming to class, I had a cup of coffee.

67. After having finished breakfast, he left the house and went to his office.

68. After having completed her shopping, she went home.

69. Alex hurt his back while chopping wood.

70. You should always read a contract before signing your name.

71. While I was trying to get to sleep last night, a mosquito kept buzzing in my ear. (因为主语不同, 不能简化)

72. Since arriving here, we have made many new friends.

73. After looking at the map, we tried to find the right street.

## 七、单选题 (简化了的状语从句)。

74-75: AA    76-80: ADCAA    81-86: CCCBAB

## Chapter 8 虚拟语气



音频

67 非真实条件虚拟语气句

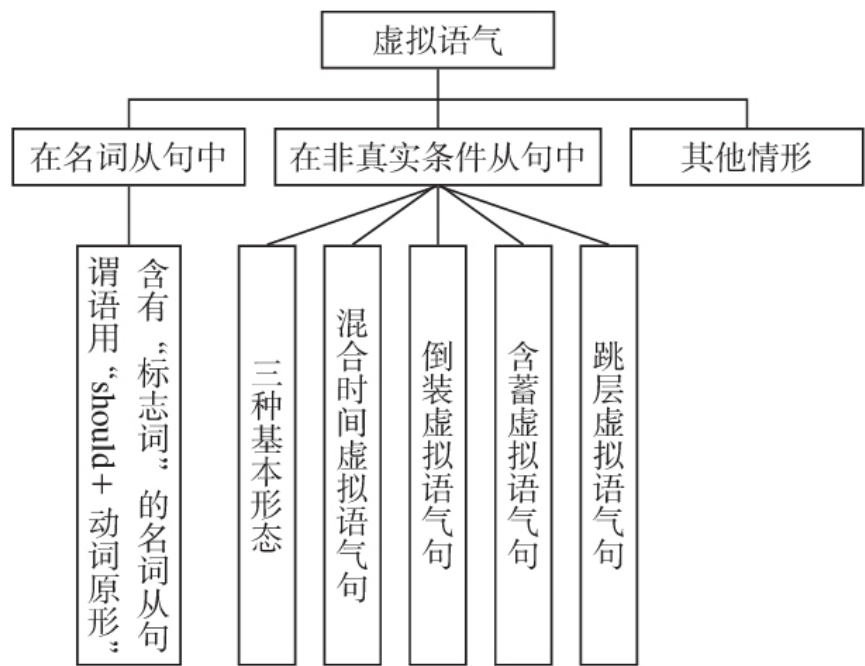
68 名词从句虚拟语气句

69 其他虚拟语气句型

语气 (mood) 是英文中的一种动词形式，它用来表示说话者的意图和态度。在英文中，语气可以分为三种：陈述语气 (indicative mood)、祈使语气 (imperative mood) 和虚拟语气 (subjunctive mood)。

在一些场合里，当说话者谈到自己与实际情况相反的愿望时，主观想象某事有可能发生时，或建议、要求某事发生时，就需要借助虚拟语气来表达他的这些意图和态度。

我们在开始学习虚拟语气的时候，往往被其复杂多样的谓语动词形式要求弄得晕头转向。为了帮大家理清思路，笔者采用如下的一个框图，只要紧扣此框图，虚拟语气的各部分关系、前后联系就一目了然了。



## 第一节 非真实条件虚拟语气句

### 67 非真实条件虚拟语气句 Track65

#### (1) 三种基本虚拟形态

非真实条件虚拟句，顾名思义，它是用来描述说话人想象的、非真实的情景的，这些情景通常是不可能发生的，与客观实际相反的，或发生可能性极小，只表示说话者的一种主观愿望、假想和建议等。它可以对现在、过去、将来的事实进行虚拟，主句和if从句中的谓语动词形式列表如下：

虚拟语气的三种基本形态

表示虚拟的时间	if 从句的谓语形式	主句谓语形式
现在	did/were	would/should/might/could + do
过去	had done/had been	would/should/might/could + have done/had been
将来	were to/should + do	would/should/might/could + do

#### 1) 与现在事实相反

a. If I **could** rearrange the alphabet, I **'d put** U and I together.

b. If I **had** enough money, I **would run** a company of my own.

c. If all difficulties **were** known at the outset of a long journey, most of us **would never start out** at all.

d. I have often thought it **would be** a blessing if each human being **were stricken** blind and deaf for a few days at some time during his early adult life. Darkness **would make** him more appreciative of sight; silence **would teach** him the joys of sound.

我常常想：如果每一个人在他生活早期都要遭受几天的眼睛失明，耳朵失聪，那该是多么幸福啊！黑暗会使他更加珍惜视觉；寂静无声能教会他欣赏声音的美妙。

If I **were** the president of a university I **should establish** a compulsory course in "How to Use Your Eyes". The professor **would try** to show his pupils how they **could add** joy to their lives by really seeing what passes unnoticed before them. He **would try** to awake their dormant and sluggish faculties.

如果我是一名大学校长的话，我会开设一门“如何用眼”的必修课。教授将向他的学生讲授，怎样通过真正观看那些发生在眼前的但过去却从未注意到的事物，从而给他们的生活增添乐趣。他将唤醒学生们迟钝、麻木的感官功能。

Suppose you set your mind to work on the problem of how you **would use** your own eyes if you **had** only three more days to see. If with the oncoming darkness of the third night you **knew** that the sun **would never rise** for you again, how **would** you **spend** those three precious intervening days? What **would** you most **want** to let your gaze rest upon?

设想你在思考这样一个问题：假如你只有三天的视力，你该如何使用自己的眼睛。假如在第三天晚上随着黑暗的降临，你知道明天太阳不再会为你升起，你将如何度过这宝贵的三天？你最想让你的目光凝视在什么上面？

注：以上选自美国聋盲女作家、教育家海伦·凯勒（Helen Keller）的文章《假如给我三天光明》（Three Days to See）。两岁时一场大病夺去了海伦的听力和视力。之后她受业于莎莉文（Anne Sullivan Macy）女士。1904年以优异成绩毕业于剑桥拉德克里夫学院。她终生致力于聋哑人和盲人的公共救助事业。

## 2) 与过去事实相反

a. If you **had invited** Wealth or Success, the other two of us **would've stayed** out, but since you invited Love, wherever he goes, we go with him. Wherever there is Love, there is also Wealth and Success!

你刚才若是邀请了“财富”或是“成功”两人，那我们其他两人就会留在外面。但是既然你已经邀请了“爱”，那么他去哪儿，我们也跟着去哪儿，因为只要有爱，就会有财富和成功！

b. You **would have missed** the train if you **had not hurried** .

c. If the flowers **had been planted** earlier, they **would have been** in bloom for the garden party last week.

d. "Do you love me?—Yes. Do you really, really love me?—Yes." It was a question that has been posed to many a lover. But Stephanie Powell had a special reason for asking her boyfriend if he loved her. Because Stephanie had just won \$7 million on the lottery and wanted to make sure of Wayne's devotion before she told him the good news. "If he **had known** about the win I **would never have known** whether it was me or the money he would want to stay with," she said, "I don't know what I **would have done** if he **hadn't answered** yes. I love him and want to enjoy spending the money with him."

“你爱我吗？——爱。你是不是真正地爱我？——是的。”这样的问题许多爱人相互之间都问过。但是斯蒂芬妮·鲍威尔问她的男朋友是否爱她时，却是因为有特别的原因。因为她刚刚中了700万美元的彩票。她想先证实韦恩对她的忠心，然后再告诉他这一喜讯。“如果他事先知道我获大奖，那我就再也没有机会知道他爱的是我还是钱，”她说道，“他当时如果没有回答说爱我，我真不知道该怎么办。我爱他，并想和他一起分享这笔巨款。”

e. It would have been just as satisfactory if I \_\_\_\_\_ at home. I learned nothing in class.

A. had stayed

B. stayed

C. was staying

D. would stay

正确答案：A。

f. If the whole operation \_\_\_\_\_ beforehand, a great deal of time and money would have been lost.

A. was not planned

B. has not been planned

C. had not been planned

D. were not planned

正确答案：C。

3) 与将来事实相反

a. If I **should win** the lottery, I **would buy** a car.

b. If he **were to** come here, how **would** you **tell** him about this?

c. Sometimes I have thought it **would be** an excellent rule to live each day as if we **should die** tomorrow. Such an attitude **would emphasize** sharply the value of life.

我时常会想，如果我们能以明天就要告别这个世界的态度来度过每一天的话，那一定是极好的，因为这种心态会让每一个人珍视生命的意义。

## (2) 混合时间虚拟语气句

前面介绍的三种基本形态的虚拟语气，其中if 从句中谓语动词表示的动作与主句谓语动词表示的动作发生的时间是一致的，即同为现在、过去或将来。可是当二者动作发生的时间不一致时，主句和从句各自的谓语形式要根据它们动作发生的时间按照上述原则作适当调整。常见的混合时间是 从句表示过去，主句表示现在。



a. If I **had not studied** English, I **would never be** here to teach you grammar **today** .

**had not studied**是对过去的事实进行虚拟, **would never be**是对现在的事实进行虚拟。

b. If they **had invested in** that stock, they **might be** wealthy **now** .

c. A: I don't like my mother-in-law.

B: Listen, don't you realize that you **couldn't have** your wife if it **hadn't been for** your mother-in-law?

A: Yes, that's why I don't like her.

d. If I **had studied** English at school, I **could read** the English novel **now** .

e. If he **had studied** English **two years ago** , he **might have** a chance of going abroad for further study **now** .

f. Luciano Pavarotti said, "If I **hadn't listened to** my father, I **would never be** here **today** ."

g. W: What an accident! If you **had been** careful, things **would not be** as they are.

M: What do you mean, it was my fault? If it **were** , surely I **would take** all responsibility for it.

### (3) 倒装虚拟语气句

当if条件句中有助动词should, had或were时, 则可以省去if, 而将should, had 或 were置于句首, 从而构成倒装虚拟语气句, 意义不变。

a. **Had he not been promoted** , he would never have remained with the company. = **If he had** not been promoted, he would never have remained with the company.

b. Should I win the lottery, I would buy a car. = If I should win the lottery, I would buy a car.

c. Were he to leave today, he would get there by Monday. = If he were to leave today, he would get there by Monday.

d. Were he to tell us everything, we could try to solve his problem. = If he were to tell us everything, we could try to solve his problem.

e. Should you change your mind, no one would blame you. = If you should change your mind, no one would blame you.

f. Had such a disaster occurred , the damage would have been incalculable. = If such a disaster had occurred , the damage would have been incalculable.

g. \_\_\_\_\_to the doctor right away, he might be alive today.

A. If he went

B. Had he gone

C. Were he gone

D. Should he have gone

正确答案：B。

h. \_\_\_\_\_before we depart the day after tomorrow, we should have a wonderful dinner party.

A. Had they arrived

B. Were they arriving

C. Would they arrive

D. Were they to arrive

正确答案：D。

#### (4) 含蓄虚拟语气句

我们前面讨论的虚拟语气句都含有虚拟的条件从句。含蓄虚拟语气句是指没有完整的条件从句，但在上下文隐含了虚拟条件的意味。隐含的条件意味可以通过下列方式表达：

##### 1) 介词或介词短语

a. What would I have done **without you** ?= What would I have done **if I had not been with you** ? 当时若没有你，我会怎么办呢？

b. **In his position** , I would commit myself. = **If I were in his position** , I would commit myself.

c. Anyone **in his position** would have done it like that.

d. **Before liberation** , such floods would have caused terrible disaster. = **If they had happened before liberation** , such floods would have caused terrible disaster.

e. **But for** their help, I would not have finished the task. = **If it had not been for** their help, I would not have finished the task.

f. **But for** the sun, there could be no life on earth. = **If it were not for** the sun, there could be no life on earth.

g. **But that** the doctor **arrived** on time that day (没有用虚拟), they would have been dead. = **If the doctor had not arrived** on time that day, they would have been dead.

h. **But that** he needed money desperately, he would never have turned to his brother for help.

i. \_\_\_\_\_ the fog, we should have reached the destination and accomplished the task.

A. But for

B. In case of

C. Because of

D. If not

正确答案：A。

j. Without your help, we \_\_\_\_\_ so much.

A. will not achieve

B. don't achieve

C. didn't achieve

D. would not have achieved

正确答案：D。

注意：but for或but that意为“若不是……”。

①but for + 名词短语

②but that + 从句（谓语动词用陈述语气，如g, h句）。

③ 可表示对过去、现在或将来的虚拟。

④表示对现在、将来的虚拟，but for相当于If it were not for...（如f句）；表示对过去的虚拟，but for相当于 If it had not been for...（如e句）。其中介词for 不能省，如下句：

k. \_\_\_\_\_ the sun, there could be no life on earth.

A. Were it not for

B. If it were not

C. Were it not

D. But that

正确答案：A。

## 2) 分词短语

a. **Given more time** , I would have been able to finish the test.

= **If I had been given more time** , I would have been able to finish the test.

b. This same thing, **happening in wartime** , would amount to disaster.

= This same thing, **if it happened in wartime** , would amount to disaster. 同样的事, 如果发生在战时, 就会酿成大祸。

## 3) 通过上下文来暗示条件

a. **We would have won** the game. (if something unexpected had not happened)

b. A: Have you done anything online that you **wouldn't have done** in person?

B: Yes, obviously people are bolder and more outgoing on the Internet when they don't have to deal with the consequences of their actions.

A: 在网上你曾做过现实中你不会去做的事吗?

B: 做过呀。很显然, 当人们在网上时, 他们无须考虑他们的行为后果, 也就比平时更大胆, 更放得开。

c. One day a bank ATM gave me an extra \$20, so I returned the money to a teller. I asked some of my professors and classmates in my moral-issues class what they **would have done** . Many conceded they **would have kept** the money, but my philosophy professor quipped, " **I'd have tried** the machine again!"

## (5) 跳层虚拟语气句

这是一类较为特殊的虚拟语气句。这类句子一般分为两部分, 两部分在语气上截然相反, 一部分虚拟, 另一部分不虚拟, 而用的是陈述语气,

用以陈述事实。它们二者往往由but, or, or else或otherwise来连接。正是因为这种虚拟和不虚拟兼而有之，一部分虚拟，一部分又跳出虚拟的圈子，故而得此名。

1) 虚拟语气句+ but +陈述句

a. He would put on weight, but he doesn't eat much. (不用 didn't)

= If he ate much, he would put on weight.

b. He could not have bought that limousine, but he inherited a big fortune from his father. = If he had not inherited a big fortune from his father, he could not have bought that limousine.

c. I would have gone to visit him in the hospital, had it been at all possible, but I \_\_\_\_\_ fully occupied the whole of last week.

- A. were
- B. had been
- C. have been
- D. was

正确答案：D。

d. Some women \_\_\_\_\_ a good salary in a job instead of staying home, but they decided not to work for the sake of the family.

- A. must make
- B. should have made
- C. would make
- D. could have made

正确答案：D。

从上面的例句我们可以总结出以下规律：

① 主语+ would do, but +主语+一般现在时谓语形式→表示对现在事实的虚拟。

② 主语+ would have done, but +主语+一般过去时谓语形式→表示对过去事实的虚拟。当然，句中的would根据同情态可换成should, might或could。我们也可以看出这类跳层虚拟语气句的关键标志词是but，随着but一转折，句子的语气也由虚拟变为不虚拟，即but将句子一分为二，but前面的句子用虚拟语气，but后面的句子用陈述语气。

2) 陈述句+ or else +虚拟语气句

a. I didn't know the extent of his difficulty, or else I would have promised to help him.

b. I forget where I read the article, or I would show it to you now.

= If I remembered where I read the article, I would show it to you now.

c. Mary couldn't have received my letter, otherwise she would have replied before now.

d. He must have had an accident, or he \_\_\_\_\_ then.

A. would have been here

B. should be here

C. had to be here

D. would be there

正确答案：A。

e. We didn't know his telephone number, otherwise we \_\_\_\_\_ him.

- A. would have telephoned
- B. must have telephoned
- C. would telephone
- D. had telephoned

正确答案：A。

这类跳层虚拟语气句和上述but连接的跳层虚拟语气句有所不同。此处是由or, or else或otherwise将句子一分为二，且前后分句的语气正好与上述but连接的虚拟语气句相反。我们看到or (or else, otherwise)前面的句子用的是陈述语气，而后面的句子用的是虚拟语气。也就是：

① 主语+一般现在时谓语形式, or +主语+ would do→表示对现在事实的虚拟。

② 主语+一般过去时谓语形式, or +主语+ would have done→表示对过去事实的虚拟。



## 第二节 名词从句虚拟语气句

### 68 名词从句虚拟语气句 Track66

虚拟语气除了在上述非真实条件从句中应用以外，在特定的名词从句中也会用到。这里所说的“特定的名词从句”是指这样的名词从句中均要含有特定的标志词，这些标志词可以用来表示愿望、建议、命令、请求和意志等语气。而且，与非真实条件虚拟语气句中主句和从句谓语动词形式完全不同的是，名词从句虚拟语气句谓语变化形式只有一条规律，那就是名词从句虚拟语气句无论主句的谓语动词是何种形式，从句谓语形式均为should + 动词原形，should可以省去。这里特别提醒读者注意的是不是用would，而是用should。

先看下例：

I **suggest** that we should go tomorrow. 我建议我们明天走。

I **suggested** that we should go the next day. 我当时建议我们第二天走。

上例中的suggest 即是我们所说的标志词，这里我们看到从句中的谓语时态（should go）并没有受主句谓语时态（suggest, suggested）的影响。

由此可知，要掌握名词从句的虚拟语气句，记住相应的标志词即可，一旦主句中出现某一个标志词，我们就注意其从句谓语必须用（should +）do的形式。

下面为大家列出一些常见的标志词：

**(1) 在下列词的宾语从句中，从句谓语必须用(should +) do的形式**

ask（要求，请求） advise beg command

demand decide deserve desire

determine move (动议, 提议) order prefer

propose require recommend request

suggest urge insist

a. His father **urged** that he **study** medicine. (不用 studies)

b. The Chinese Government and people **have demanded** that the U.S. Government **shoulder** all the responsibilities for the incident, **apologize** to the Chinese side and **take** effective measures to prevent the recurrence of such incidents.

中国政府和人民要求美国政府对此事件必须承担全部责任, 向中国道歉并采取有效措施防止类似事件再次发生。

c. The instructions ask that we \_\_\_\_\_ more than three tablets once.

A. not to take

B. not take

C. won't take

D. wouldn't take

正确答案: B。

(2) **It is + 形容词 / 过去分词 / 特定的名词 + that... 主语从句中用 (should +) do.**

1) 接这种结构的常见形容词有:

astounding amazing advisable appropriate crucial

desirable essential important imperative keen

necessary natural normal odd proper

preferable strange sorry shocked surprising

urgent unusual vital

这些形容词一般表示个人对事件的反应或态度。

a. It is **natural** that I **should dwell upon** his successes rather than upon his failures.

我宁愿强调他成功的地方，而不愿突出他的失败之处，这是自然的。

b. It is **strange** that he **should not come** here. (这里should只表明一种意外的语气，可译为“竟然”)

c. It's **essential** that people **be** psychologically **able to** resist the impact brought about by the transition from planned economy to market economy.

d. It is important that the hotel receptionist\_\_\_\_\_that guests are registered correctly.

A. make sure

B. made sure

C. has made sure

D. must make sure

正确答案：A。

e. It is quite natural that the customs of all national minorities \_\_\_\_.

A. would be respected

- B. were respected
- C. be respected
- D. had been respected

正确答案：C。

2) 接这种结构常见的过去分词有：

decided    desired    demanded    ordered

requested    required    suggested    recommended

a. It is requested that all members be present at the meeting.

b. It is politely requested by the hotel management that radios \_\_\_\_\_ after 11 o' clock at night.

- A. were not played
- B. not be played
- C. not to play
- D. did not play

正确答案：B。

3) 接这种结构的常见特定名词有：

advice    decision    desire    demand

suggestion    motion    pray    resolution

idea    proposal    order

wish    preference    recommendation    requirement

It is my **proposal** that he **be sent** to study further abroad.

### (3) 在上述名词的表语从句和同位语从句中

a. For my own part, it seems that the main **requirement** of an international language is that it **be** easily learned.

b. The **motion** that the meeting **be adjourned** was adopted.

c. Reports indicate that both sides have softened their respective positions for a possible settlement. The government has backed away from **demands** that the software giant **be broken up**, while Microsoft is now more willing to accept restrictions on how it manages its business.

d. The suggestion that the mayor \_\_\_\_\_ the prizes was accepted by everyone.

- A. would present
- B. present
- C. presents
- D. ought to present

正确答案：B。

最后需要说明的是，以上所列的标志词仅是一部分常见的，还有很多在此未尽详列，大家可以在今后的学习当中不断积累，自己总结。

### 第三节 其他虚拟语气句型

#### 69 其他虚拟语气句型 Track67

在英文中，除了上述两大类虚拟语气句以外，还有其他一些句型表示虚拟语气。它们无法列入前两节提到的任何一类，所以在此将它们一一单列，分别讨论。

##### (1) 在wish后的宾语从句中

这是大家非常熟悉的一种虚拟语气句型，它用来表示说话者难以实现的或与事实相反的愿望，具有较强的感情色彩。可分别表示对现在、过去和将来情景的虚拟。

1) 对现状表示的愿望，从句谓语动词用过去时，意指从句谓语和主句谓语所表示的动作同时发生。

a. I wish I **were** a little younger.

b. I wish I **could travel** to the moon. (But I can't do that.)

c. I wish I **knew** his address. (But I don't know his address.)

d. Whenever something goes wrong, I just push this little reset button and restart. I wish my whole life **were** like that!

e. Sometimes I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ in a different time and a different place.

A. be living

- B. were living
- C. would live
- D. would have lived

正确答案：B。

2) 对过去发生的事情表示遗憾、后悔，从句谓语动词用过去完成时 (had done) 或 would/could + 现在完成时 (have done)，意指从句谓语动词所表示的动作发生在主句谓语所表示的动作之前。

- a. I wish I **had been** there.
- b. I wish I **had not attended** that party.
- c. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ with you to the concert last night.

- A. could have gone
- B. went
- C. could go
- D. have gone

正确答案：A。

3) 对将来发生的事情表示祝愿、期许等，从句谓语动词用 would/could + 动词原形，意指从句谓语动词所表示的动作可能发生在主句谓语所表示的动作之后。

- a. I wish he **could explain** what he means.
- b. I wish you **would shut up** .

注意：即使将 wish 改为 wished，上述例句虚拟语气句中的谓语时态仍然不变。

## (2) 在If only感叹句中

If only表示“但愿”、“要是……就好了”，它的用法和wish基本相同，可以表示对现在、过去、将来的虚拟，只是比wish的感情色彩更强烈。

- a. If only he **had followed** your advice! (对过去虚拟)
- b. If only I **were** taller. (对现在虚拟)
- c. If only the rain **would stop** . (对将来虚拟)
- d. Look at the terrible situation I am in! If only I \_\_\_\_\_ your advice.

- A. follow
- B. had followed
- C. would follow
- D. have followed

正确答案：B。

## (3) 在as if/as though从句中

1) 表示和现在事实相反或对现在的情况有所怀疑，谓语用一般过去时。

I really don't care for the way you' re speaking to me.  
It seems as if you **were** my father.

2) 表示与过去事实相反，谓语用过去完成时。

We have not seen each other for ten solid years, but when we encountered on the street that day, we were still so affectionate that it seemed as if not a single day **had gone by** .



注意：若从句中的情形是根据现在迹象做出推测，有可能发生，则用陈述语气。

a. It is becoming dark. It looks as if it's going to rain.

b. It seems as if he has been to America.

#### (4) 在It is (high) time (that) 从句中

表示“该是……的时候了”，含有“晚了一点”的意思，从句中用一般过去时。

a. Don't dawdle away your youth any more. It is time you thought about your future.

b. It seems to be high time that this argument\_\_\_\_\_put to an end.

A. must be

B. is

C. were

D. should be

正确答案：C。

c. "You are very selfish. It's high time you\_\_\_\_\_that you are not the most important person in the world," Edgar said to his boss angrily.

A. realized

B. have realized

C. realize

D. should realize

正确答案：A。

在下列对话中体会这种“晚了一点”的含义。

d.Man: The school had the football field redone over the summer.

Woman: It's about time.

Q: What does the woman imply?

- A. Summer is a good time for repairs.
- B. The field had been in poor shape.
- C. It's too hot to play football in the summer.
- D. The work on the football field is almost finished.

正确答案：B。

e.A: Let's get this desk in order.

B: Yes, it's about time we cleared it off .

Q: What can be inferred about the desk?

- A. It isn't placed right.
- B. There isn't enough time to clear it off.
- C. A new desk has been ordered to replace it.
- D. It has needed reorganizing for quite a while.

正确答案：D。

(5) 在would rather, would (just) as soon, would sooner, would prefer等从句中

意指“某人宁愿让另一个人做某事”。其后的宾语从句的谓语应该用虚拟语气：表示现在或将来要做的事，从句谓语必须用一般过去时；表示过去已经做的事，从句谓语则用过去完成时。

a. I'd just as soon you **didn't speak** rudely to her.

b. I'd as soon you **hadn't spoken** rudely to her.

c. Don't come tomorrow. I'd rather you **came** next weekend.  
(不用would come)

d. She says she'd rather he **left** tomorrow instead of today. (不用would leave)

e. You don't have to be in such a hurry. I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ on business first.

A. would go

B. will go

C. went

D. have gone

正确答案：C。

f. Wouldn't you rather your child \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early?

A. go

B. went

C. would go

D. goes

正确答案：B。

需要提醒读者注意的是would rather, would (just) as soon等若不是接宾语从句, 而是直接和动词连用, 则要用动词原形, 表示主语本身“宁愿要做某事”。

g. I would rather go there tomorrow.

h. He would rather stay indoors than go to the cinema tonight.

i. He would rather not stay at home tonight. (否定要在动词前面加not, 而不是在would后面加not)

### 虚拟语气练习

#### 一、单项选择（非真实条件句）。

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_ my own clothes, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.

- A. had made, would save
- B. could make, would save
- C. can make, would save
- D. could make, will save

2. Thank goodness, it's all over. I \_\_\_\_\_ it if I \_\_\_\_\_ it was going to take me so long.

- A. would never have done, had known
- B. would never do, knew
- C. would never have done, knew
- D. would never do, had known

3. He was fully occupied yesterday, otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ to the sales conference.

- A. would come
- B. would have come
- C. came
- D. had come

4. Without computers, the world \_\_\_\_\_ what it is today.

- A. would be
- B. would not be
- C. won't be
- D. hadn't been

5. \_\_\_\_\_ I realized the consequences, I would never have contemplated getting involved.

- A. If
- B. Had
- C. When
- D. Unless

6. Had Paul received six more votes in the last election, he \_\_\_\_\_ our chairman now.

- A. must have been
- B. would have been
- C. were
- D. would be

7. He had to drive fast yesterday; otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ his plane.

- A. had missed
- B. would be missing
- C. would have missed
- D. would miss

8. \_\_\_\_\_ the sense of someone watching them, Ralph would have shouted at his wife.

- A. Despite
- B. Except
- C. But for
- D. Except for

9. Any man in his position \_\_\_\_\_ like that.

- A. has done
- B. would have done
- C. does
- D. would be done

10. We didn't know his address; otherwise we \_\_\_\_\_ an invitation to him.

- A. would have sent
- B. must have sent

C. had sent

D. would send

11. Sometimes I have thought it would be an excellent rule to live each day as if we \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

A. should die

B. are to die

C. were dying

D. must die

12. The boy would have died, \_\_\_\_\_ on him without delay.

A. if the doctor didn't operate

B. if the doctor wouldn't operate

C. would the doctor not operate

D. had the doctor not operated

13. If Greek civilization \_\_\_\_\_ all of Europe, English wouldn't contain so many Greek words.

A. hadn't influenced

B. doesn't influence

C. hasn't influenced

D. didn't influence

14. If television \_\_\_\_\_ a thousand years ago, would nations be significantly more homogeneous than they are now?

- A. were invented
- B. was invented
- C. has been invented
- D. had been invented

## 二、单项选择（名词从句虚拟语气句）

15. At the conference, it has been decided that she\_\_\_\_\_an opportunity to go abroad as a sales representative.

- A. is going to have
- B. have
- C. will have
- D. has

16. It is extremely urgent that they\_\_\_\_\_from the mountain before dark.

- A. must rescue
- B. be rescued
- C. will be rescued
- D. shall be rescued

17. The women's magazines, deploring the statistics, urged that courses on marriage, and marriage counselors,\_\_\_\_\_in the high schools.

- A. installed



- B. be installed
- C. have been installed
- D. installing

18. I intend to move that our committee\_\_\_\_\_Tom as chairman, and I hope that you will second my motion.

- A. will appoint
- B. appoint
- C. appoints
- D. has appointed

19. The dean approved of the requirement that every student \_\_\_\_\_on social investigation after summer vacation.

- A. reports
- B. report
- C. reported
- D. reporting

20. I second Mr. Wang's motion that a special committee\_\_\_\_\_to examine the problem.

- A. be established
- B. established
- C. was to establish
- D. was established

### 三、单项选择（其他虚拟语气句型）。

21. — I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ the play last night.

— It's a shame that I \_\_\_\_\_.

A. had attended, didn't

B. attended, didn't

C. had attended, hadn't

D. could attend, haven't

22. The picture exhibition bored me to death. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ to it.

A. have not gone

B. had not gone

C. didn't go

D. should not have gone

23. It was a lovely day yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ I had been at the seaside then.

A. think

B. wish

C. hope

D. expect

24. It's about time I \_\_\_\_\_ something about home-decorating.

- A. learn
- B. learned
- C. have learned
- D. should learn

25. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ with you to the concert last night.

- A. could have gone
- B. went
- C. could go
- D. have gone

26. If only we \_\_\_\_\_ a 3D printing machine!

- A. had
- B. had had
- C. would have
- D. have had

27. The manager would rather his daughter \_\_\_\_\_ in the same office.

- A. had not worked
- B. not no work
- C. does not work
- D. did not work

28. He would rather \_\_\_\_\_ than worked last night.

A. have slept

B. has slept

C. sleep

D. slept

29. Frankly, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being as it has not yet been decided.

A. did

B. didn't do

C. didn't

D. don't

30. She would rather that you \_\_\_\_\_ last night.

A. not arrive

B. do not arrive

C. had not arrived

D. did not arrive

#### 四、单项选择（综合练习）。

31. In the United States a law requires that a warning label \_\_\_\_\_ on cigarette packages.

A. ought to be printed

B. needs to be printed

C. must be printed

D. should be printed

32. It is high time that the third world countries\_\_\_\_\_a more active part in economic affairs of the world.

A. play

B. were playing

C. played

D. had played

33. If the United States had built more homes for people in 1995, the housing problems now in some parts of this country\_\_\_\_\_so serious.

A. wouldn't be

B. will not have been

C. wouldn't have been

D. would have not been

34. At the last conference, the motion that the chairman of the International Olympic Games\_\_\_\_\_was defeated.

A. would be dismissed

B. be dismissed

C. were dismissed

D. was dismissed

35. If the climate had been more favorable, the crops\_\_\_\_\_still better.

- A. would have grown
- B. would be growing
- C. would be grown
- D. will grow

36. These facts suggested that women \_\_\_\_\_ in opportunity for physical exercise by cultural taboos.

- A. should been limited
- B. had been limited
- C. be limited
- D. have been limited

37. I would very much like to have gone to see the movie, but I \_\_\_\_\_ a ticket.

- A. shall not have
- B. haven't had
- C. don't have
- D. didn't have

38. The result has turned still worse than it \_\_\_\_\_

- A. would otherwise have been
- B. would be otherwise
- C. has otherwise been
- D. had otherwise been

39. The stubborn young man did not follow the advice that he \_\_\_\_\_ on his behavior since he refused to believe he had done anything wrong.

- A. reflect
- B. had reflected
- C. would reflect
- D. must reflect

40. \_\_\_\_\_ for your help, we'd never have been able to get over the difficulties.

- A. Had it not been
- B. Had it not
- C. If it were not
- D. If we had not been

41. The storm delayed us. \_\_\_\_\_ the storm, we would have been in time.

- A. For
- B. Were it not for
- C. Had it not been for
- D. But

42. The party \_\_\_\_\_ at my house, but the central heating broke down, and we had to have it at John's place.

- A. would be

B. would have been

C. was to be

D. were

43. We are all for your proposal that the discussion  
\_\_\_\_\_.

A. be put off

B. was put off

C. should put off

D. is to put off

44. He turned down her proposal that she \_\_\_\_\_ at the  
conference.

A. should offer

B. offer

C. offered

D. offering

45. What do you think of Tom's proposal that \_\_\_\_\_ put  
on the play at tonight's English evening?

A. we will not

B. we not

C. we hadn't

D. we wouldn't



46. The school board listened quickly as John read the demands that his followers\_\_\_\_\_for.

- A. be demonstrating
- B. demonstrate
- C. had been demonstrating
- D. have demonstrated

47. It was suggested at the meeting that effective measures\_\_\_\_\_to solve the problem.

- A. be taken
- B. were taken
- C. must be taken
- D. take

48. It is desirable that the doctor\_\_\_\_\_there at the moment.

- A. be
- B. would be
- C. will be
- D. must be

49. I propose that a woman\_\_\_\_\_deputy to the district congress.

- A. would be nominated
- B. was nominated

C. is nominated

D. be nominated

50. Her mother insists that she \_\_\_\_\_ skating with her brother.

A. went

B. go

C. goes

D. will go

51. I move that he \_\_\_\_\_ discharged for his serious mistake.

A. be to be

B. was to be

C. is to be

D. would be

52. These national parks are very important for preserving many animals, who would \_\_\_\_\_ run the risk of becoming extinct.

A. instead

B. nevertheless

C. therefore

D. otherwise

53. We went to work on foot yesterday, though we \_\_\_\_\_ by bus.

- A. could have gone
- B. must have gone
- C. ought to have gone
- D. had better to

54. One of the requirements for a fire is that the material \_\_\_\_\_ to its burning temperature.

- A. is heated
- B. will be heated
- C. be heated
- D. would be heated

55. It is advisable that a general announcement \_\_\_\_\_ to the teaching staff.

- A. will be made
- B. should make
- C. be made
- D. have been made

56. Abraham Lincoln insisted that \_\_\_\_\_ not just on mere opinion but on moral purpose.

- A. to base democracy

- B. for democracy to be based
- C. democracy be based
- D. whenever democracy is based

57. Jean Wagner's most enduring contribution to the study of Afro-American poetry is his insistence that it \_\_\_\_\_ in a religious, as well as worldly, frame of reference.

- A. is to be analyzed
- B. has been analyzed
- C. be analyzed
- D. should have been analyzed

58. Mr. Smith didn't phone me last night, but he \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. might have to
- B. would do
- C. had to
- D. should have

59. A safety analysis \_\_\_\_\_ the target as a potential danger. Unfortunately, it was never done.

- A. would identify
- B. will identify
- C. would have identified
- D. will have identified

60. The millions of calculations involved, had they been done by hand, \_\_\_\_\_ all practical value by the time they were finished.

- A. could lose
- B. would have lost
- C. might lose
- D. ought to have lost

61. \_\_\_\_\_ the timely investment from the general public, our company would not be so thriving as it is.

- A. Had it not been for
- B. Were it not for
- C. Had it not been
- D. Should it not be

62. The board deemed it urgent that these files \_\_\_\_\_ right away.

- A. had to be printed
- B. should have been printed
- C. must be printed
- D. should be printed

63. If you \_\_\_\_\_ Jerry until recently, you'd think the photograph on the right was strange.

- A. shouldn't contact

B. weren't to contact

C. didn't contact

D. hadn't contacted

64. It is essential that these application forms \_\_\_\_\_ back as early as possible.

A. must be sent

B. will be sent

C. are sent

D. be sent

65. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ make any comment on the issue for the time being.

A. don't

B. wouldn't

C. didn't

D. shouldn't

66. Had he worked harder, he \_\_\_\_\_ the exams.

A. must have got through

B. would have got through

C. would get through

D. could get through

67. I don't think it advisable that Tim\_\_\_\_\_to the job since he has no experience.

- A. is assigned
- B. will be assigned
- C. be assigned
- D. has been assigned

68. If only the committee\_\_\_\_\_the regulations and put them into effect as soon as possible.

- A. approve
- B. will approve
- C. can approve
- D. would approve

69. It is vital that enough money\_\_\_\_\_to fund the project.

- A. be collected
- B. is collected
- C. must be collected
- D. can be collected

70. You\_\_\_\_\_her in her office last Friday; she's been out of town for two weeks.

- A. needn't have seen
- B. must have seen

C. might have seen

D. can't have seen

71. Jean doesn't want to work right away because she thinks that if she \_\_\_\_\_ a job she probably wouldn't be able to see her friends very often.

A. has to get

B. were to get

C. had

D. could have got

72. The local peasants gave the soldiers clothes and food, without which they \_\_\_\_\_ of hunger and cold.

A. would dead

B. will die

C. would be dead

D. would have died

73. It is recommended that the project \_\_\_\_\_ until all the preparations have been made.

A. is not started

B. will not be started

C. not be started

D. is not to be started



74. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ longer this morning, but I had to get up and come to class.

- A. could have slept
- B. slept
- C. might sleep
- D. have slept

75. We desire that the tour leader \_\_\_\_\_ us immediately of any change in plans.

- A. inform
- B. informs
- C. informed
- D. had informed

76. He suggested \_\_\_\_\_ to tomorrow's exhibition together.

- A. us to go
- B. we went
- C. we shall go
- D. we go

77. John's score on the test is the highest in the class; he \_\_\_\_\_ hard last weekend.

- A. should have studied
- B. must have studied

C. would have studied

D. should study

78. The room is in a terrible mess; it \_\_\_\_\_ cleaned.

A. can't have been

B. shouldn't have been

C. mustn't have been

D. wouldn't have been

79. Sally can't have been in Paris, or \_\_\_\_\_.

A. I met her

B. I'd meet her

C. I'll meet her

D. I'd have met her

80. Mary's score on the test is the highest in her class; she \_\_\_\_\_ have studied very hard.

A. may

B. should

C. must

D. ought to

81. Research findings show we spend about two hours dreaming every night, no matter what we \_\_\_\_\_ during the day.

- A. should have done
- B. would have done
- C. may have done
- D. must have done

82. To be frank, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ in the case.

- A. not to be involved
- B. not involved
- C. will no be involved
- D. were not involved

83. It seems to be high time that this argument \_\_\_\_\_ put to an end.

- A. must be
- B. is
- C. were
- D. should be

84. The dentist said that my tooth went worse and I \_\_\_\_\_ it pulled out.

- A. should have had
- B. might have had
- C. needn't have had
- D. mustn't have had

85. The business is risky. But \_\_\_\_\_, we would be rich.

- A. should we succeed
- B. would we succeed
- C. might we succeed
- D. could we succeed

86. If we hadn't been interrupted the day before yesterday, we \_\_\_\_\_ the job.

- A. would do
- B. would not have done
- C. had done
- D. would have done

87. It is decided that no smoking \_\_\_\_\_ in public places from now on.

- A. be allowed
- B. is allowed
- C. will be allowed
- D. should have been allowed

88. The Reform Club proposed that wages \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. would be raised
- B. were raised

C. would have been raised

D. be raised

89. Through worldly loss he came to an insight into spiritual truth to which he might \_\_\_\_\_ have been a stranger.

A. no more

B. no less

C. neither

D. otherwise

90. \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday, I would have asked him not to do that.

A. Had he come

B. Provided he came

C. If he came

D. Has he come

91. It is highly necessary that the rocket \_\_\_\_\_ until all the preparations have been made.

A. is not to be launched

B. not be launched

C. were not launched

D. is not to be launched

92. I had intended to go to the airport yesterday, in which case I \_\_\_\_\_ the guests.

- A. might meet
- B. would meet
- C. might have met
- D. had met

93. It is generally thought to be necessary to a college student that he \_\_\_\_\_ at least one foreign language.

- A. know
- B. knows
- C. knew
- D. would know

## 五、辨别改错。

94. I'd rather you would go (A) by train, because I can't bear (B) the idea of your being (C) in an airplane in such (D) bad weather.

95. When Edison died, it was proposed (A) that the American people turned off (B) all power (C) in their homes, streets, and factories for several minutes in honor of (D) this great man.

96. Your math instructor would have been (A) happy to give you a make-up test had you gone (B) and explained (C) that your parents had been (D) ill at the time.

97. I don't think it (A) advisable that he will be assigned (B) to the job since he has no (C) experience

whatsoever (D) .

98. The law I am referring to requires (A) that everyone (B) who owns (C) a car has (D) accident insurance.

### 虚拟语气练习答案

#### 一~四、单项选择。

1-5: BABBB

6-10: DCCBA

11-15: ADADB

16-20: BBBBA

21-25: ABBBA

26-30: ADABC

31-35: DCABB

36-40: BDAAA

41-45: CBACB

46-50: CAADB

51-55: ADACC

56-60: CCDCB

61-65: ADDDC

66-70: BCDAD

71-75: CDCAA

76-80: DBADC

81-85: CDCAA

86-90: DADDA

91-93: BCA

## 五、辨别改错。

94. A/went

95. B/turn off

96. D/were

97. B/(should) be assigned

98. D/have



## Chapter 9 倒装



音频

70 部分倒装

71 全部倒装

## 70 部分倒装 Track68

倒装在英文中是一种较为常见的语法现象。从结构上来讲，倒装句可分为全部倒装和部分倒装。

全部倒装：将整个谓语部分全部放在主语之前。

部分倒装：只将谓语的一部分（例如助动词或系动词）放在主语之前，其余部分仍然放在主语之后。

a. Now comes your turn. （全部倒装）

b. Could you show me that book? （部分倒装）

### （1）句首有否定词或否定短语时，句子要部分倒装。

1) 常见的否定词有never, hardly, scarcely, little, seldom, not, not until, rarely, no sooner...than, nowhere等。

a. So scary are those three words, words spoken in passion, spoken in a whisper. At one precise moment they feel so true so right. Some use them casually in their everyday chatter, but I find them sacred. I can speak them only when I'm certain. I will not use them in vain. They've been spoken to me before under the shroud of darkness beneath a warm touch. But never before did they ring true. Never before did they grab my heart and caress it with the magic of a pure soul. Never before have they been sincere enough to have my lips echo their syllables in the most meaningful sentence I could ever speak. Those three words are only for you.

b. Nowhere in the world can you find a man who is more foolish than John.

c. Nowhere in the world can you find a man who loves you so much!

d. No sooner had I taken a bath than the bell rang.

e. Not a word did he say at the meeting.

f. Never before have I heard such a story.

g. Never have I heard American music played better in a foreign land.

我在外国从来没有听到过演奏得这么好的美国音乐。

h. Not until he came back did I leave. (注意：主句中主谓结构部分倒装)

i. Not only did we lose all our money, but we also came close to losing our lives.

j. Nowhere but in Europe \_\_\_\_\_ the results so clearly, which really have surprised us all.

A. we have seen

B. we saw

C. we must have seen

D. have we seen

正确答案：D。

2) 常见的否定短语有in no way, in no case, at no time, by no means, in no sense, on no account, under no circumstances等。

这些否定短语常放在句首，表示强调，意为“绝不……”。大家一定要记住它们规定的介词搭配。

- a. In no way do I blame you for what happened.
- b. On no account \_\_\_\_\_ rudeness from his employees.
- A. the manager will tolerate
- B. the manager will not tolerate
- C. the manager tolerates
- D. will the manager tolerate

正确答案：D。

c. A thermometer put in the water tells us the temperature of water, but \_\_\_\_\_ does it show the amount of heat the water contains.

- A. on no time
- B. in no way
- C. in any way
- D. in no account

正确答案：B。

3) 如果否定词不是修饰整个句子，而只是限定句子主语，则句子不用倒装。

- a. Hardly anyone has seen a man who eats mice/cats.
- b. Not only I but also he has been there.
- c. To me he is not dead at all. Hardly a day goes by that I don't think of him or speak of him.
- d. Scarcely a sound came from among the crowd.

人群里没有发出一点儿声音。

(2) “So + 形容词 / 副词”及“to the extent/degree”放在句首，表示程度，句子要倒装。

a. To such an extent did his health deteriorate that he was forced to retire.

b. So diligently does he work that he often forgets to eat and sleep.

c. To such an extent \_\_\_\_\_ his empty speech that some of us began to doze.

A. did he go on with

B. he would go on with

C. he went on with

D. he did go on with

正确答案：A。

(3) 在含有were, had, should的虚拟语气中，若省去if，必须倒装。（详见“Chapter 8虚拟语气”中“67非真实条件虚拟语气句”第(3)点“倒装虚拟语气句”）

(4) as引导的让步状语从句必须倒装。（详见“Chapter 3状语从句”中“31让步状语从句”第(5)点“as的倒装句”）

a. Look as I would up and down, I could see no men at all.

b. Change your mind as you will, you won't gain his support.

(5) “only +状语”置于句首。

1) only +表示时间或方式的短语置于句首。

a. Only then did she realize she was wrong.

b. Only by working hard can you achieve your goal.

c. Only by having an independent ego can women fully control their own lives. 只有心怀独立的自我，女人才能完全主宰自己的生活。

d. Only under special circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ to take make-up tests.

A. are freshmen permitted

B. freshmen are permitted

C. permitted are freshmen

D. are permitted freshmen

正确答案：A。

2) only若加各类状语从句置于句首，需要注意的是主句中的主谓语必须倒装，而不是从句中的主谓语倒装，这一点与not until用法相同。

a. Only when he had failed three times did he turn to me for advice.

b. Only when a man's life comes to its end in prosperity dare we pronounce him happy.

只有当一个人的生命在辉煌中结束时，我们才能断言他是幸福的。

c. An intimate relationship does not banish loneliness. Only when we are comfortable with who we are and can function independently in a healthy way, can we truly function within

a relationship. Two halves do not make a whole when it comes to a healthy relationship: it takes two wholes.

3) 若only修饰的是句子主语，而非状语时，句子不用倒装。

Only she knew how to deal with this problem.

(6) 代词so, neither, nor或no more置于句首。

a. I can't speak French, nor can he .

b. He had no money, nor did he know anyone he could borrow from.

c. A: Meal price has gone up.

B: So has tuition.

d. She never laughed, \_\_\_\_\_ lose her temper.

A. or she ever did

B. nor did she ever

C. or did she ever

D. nor she ever did

正确答案：B。

此外，要注意：这种结构也可用来表达对别人讲的情况有同感，此时不用倒装。

e. A: It's a very nice day. 天气真好。

B: So it is . 可不是嘛！

(7) 让步状语从句的倒装句：be it...。（详见“Chapter 3状语从句”中“31让步状语从句”第（7）点“be的倒装句表示让步”）

a. The business of each day, **be it** selling goods or shipping them, went quite smoothly.

b. **Be** **he** ever so tired, he continued to go farther.



## 71 全部倒装 Track69

(1) 以介词开头的地点状语置于句首。

- a. From the window came sound of music.
- b. On the ground lies a man whose leg is broken.
- c. By his side sat his faithful dog .
- d. Just remember, in the winter far beneath the bitter snow , lies the seed that with the sun's love in the spring, becomes the rose.

(2) 副词out, in, along, then, now, up, down, away, here, there等位于句首。

- a. In came the teacher , books under arm.
- b. Just then along came Tom .
- c. When Greek meets Greek, then comes the tug of war.

两雄相遇，其斗必烈。

- d. There goes the bell .

- e. Down came the hammer and out flew the sparks .

铁锤锤一下，火星四溅。

- f. As a gift, Zeus gave Pandora a box, but told her never to open it. However, as soon as he was out of sight she took off the lid, and out swarmed all the troubles of the world. Only Hope was left in the box, stuck under the lid.

(3) such位于句首。

- a. Such will be my future dreams .
- b. Such is my whole story .
- c. Such were his dreams as a boy.

(4) 表语置于句首。

- a. Blessed is the person who is too busy to worry in the daytime and too sleepy to worry at night.
- b. Gone are the days when we had no food to eat.
- c. Gone are the days when you had to get dressed up to make an impression. On the net, you can dress down, slouch in your seat and disguise yourself as a prince charming.
- d. Every one of us has in him a continent of undiscovered character. Blessed is he who acts the Columbus to his own soul.

每个人都有未经发现的品性，能够像哥伦布那样探索自己灵魂的新大陆的人，是有福气的。

倒装练习

单项选择。

1. Not until 1931\_\_\_\_\_the official anthem of the United States.
- A. "The Star-Spangled Banner" did become
  - B. when "The Star-Spangled Banner" became
  - C. did "The Star-Spangled Banner" become

D. became "The Star-Spangled Banner"

2. \_\_\_\_\_the 18th century did man realize that the whole of the brain was involved in the workings of the mind.

A. Not until

B. It was not until

C. Until

D. It was until

3. \_\_\_\_\_that the pilot couldn't fly through it.

A. So the storm was severe

B. So severe was the storm

C. The storm so severe was

D. Such was the storm severe

4. \_\_\_\_\_dwell upon the joy of that reunion.

A. Little need I

B. Little I need

C. Little did I need

D. Little do I need

5. On no account \_\_\_\_\_borrow money from friends, and still less \_\_\_\_\_ dependent on the favors of rich relatives.

A. I would, I would be

B. would I, I would be

C. would I, would I be

D. I would, would I be

6. Only with a complete grasp of all the cues of social intercourse \_\_\_\_\_ disappear.

A. this train will

B. will this strain

C. this strain should

D. should this strain

7. In the eastern part of New Jersey \_\_\_\_\_, a major shipping and manufacturing center.

A. where the city of Elizabeth lies

B. where lies the city of Elizabeth

C. lies the city of Elizabeth

D. the city of Elizabeth lies

8. At the South Pole \_\_\_\_\_, the coldest and most desolate region on Earth.

A. Antarctica lies where

B. where Antarctica lies

C. Antarctica lies and

D. lies Antarctica

9. Not until linoleum was invented in 1860 \_\_\_\_\_ hard-wearing, easy-to-clean flooring.

- A. any house did have
- B. did any house have
- C. house had any
- D. any house had

10. \_\_\_\_\_ divorce ourselves from the masses of the people.

- A. In no time we should
- B. In no time should we
- C. At no time we should
- D. At no time should we

11. "Not until science became prominent \_\_\_\_\_ be abolished", some people argue.

- A. did slavery come to
- B. slavery to
- C. had slavery come to
- D. that slavery came to

12. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ much bigger than any planet, but unlike the planets, it consists completely of gaseous material.

- A. the sun is

B. the sun, which is

C. is the sun

D. that the sun

13. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ as a cooked dish the world over, but it is also used as the base of many other foods, condiments, and even beverages.

A. eating rice

B. rice is eaten

C. people eat rice

D. is rice eaten

14. Among the first plants to grow on the land regions of the Earth \_\_\_\_\_, which in prehistoric times grew to immense size.

A. were horsetail rushes

B. horsetail rushes

C. horsetail rushes were

D. and horsetail rushes

15. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ to determine the depth of the ocean floor, but it is also used to locate oil.

A. to use seismology

B. is seismology used

C. seismology is used

D. using seismology

16. The air inside a house or office building often has higher concentrations of contaminants\_\_\_\_\_heavily polluted outside air.

A. than does

B. more

C. as some that are

D. like of

17. \_\_\_\_\_to speak when the audience interrupted him.

A. Hardly had he begun

B. No sooner had he begun

C. Not until he began

D. Scarcely did he begin

18. Only recently\_\_\_\_\_possible to separate the components of fragrant substances and to determine their chemical composition.

A. it becomes

B. having become

C. has it become

D. which becomes

19. Although the Earth's chemical composition had been studied for years, only toward the end of the nineteenth century\_\_\_\_\_as a discipline in its own right.

- A. when geochemistry was recognized
- B. was geochemistry recognized
- C. then recognized as geochemistry
- D. as geochemistry was recognized

20. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ all the positive charge of an atom, it is also the site of the weight of every atom.

- A. does the nucleus hold
- B. the nucleus holding
- C. the nucleus does hold
- D. holds the nucleus

21. \_\_\_\_\_ devised to lessen the drudgery of washing clothes that the origin of the washing machine is unclear.

- A. Were the inventions so numerous
- B. The inventions so numerous
- C. So numerous were the inventions
- D. The inventions that were so numerous

22. Coinciding with the development of jazz in New Orleans in the 1920s \_\_\_\_\_ in blues music.

- A. was one of the greatest periods
- B. one of the greatest periods
- C. was of the greatest periods



D. the greatest periods

23. Beneath the streets of a modern city \_\_\_\_\_ of walls, columns, cables, pipes, and tunnels required to satisfy the needs of its inhabitants

A. where exists the network

B. the existing network

C. the network's existence

D. exists the network

24. \_\_\_\_\_ advance and retreat in their eternal rhythms, but the surface of the sea itself is never at rest.

A. Not only when the tides do

B. As the tides not only do

C. Not only do the tides

D. Do the tides not only

25. There is a real possibility that these animals could be frightened, \_\_\_\_\_ a sudden loud noise.

A. being there

B. should there be

C. there was

D. there having been

26. Only under special circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ to take make-up tests.

- A. are freshmen permitted
- B. freshmen are permitted
- C. permitted are freshmen
- D. are permitted freshmen

27. She never laughed, \_\_\_\_\_ lose her temper.

- A. or she ever did
- B. nor did she ever
- C. or did she ever
- D. nor she ever did

28. No sooner had we reached the top of the hill \_\_\_\_\_ we all sat down to rest.

- A. when
- B. then
- C. than
- D. until

29. \_\_\_\_\_ got on the train when it started to move.

- A. I rarely had
- B. Scarcely had I
- C. No sooner I had
- D. No sooner had I

30. On no account \_\_\_\_\_ rudeness from his employees.

- A. the manager will tolerate
- B. the manager will not tolerate
- C. the manager tolerates
- D. will the manager tolerate

31. Nowhere but in Europe \_\_\_\_\_ the results so clearly, which really have surprised us all.

- A. we have seen
- B. we saw
- C. we must have seen
- D. have we seen

32. To such a extent \_\_\_\_\_ his empty speech that some of us began to doze.

- A. did he go on with
- B. he would go on with
- C. he went on with
- D. he did go on with

33. Without the friction between their feet and the ground, people would \_\_\_\_\_ be able to walk.

- A. in no time
- B. in no way
- C. by all means

D. on any account

34. \_\_\_\_\_ the surface of metal, but also weakens it.

A. Not only does rust corrode

B. Rust, which not only corrodes

C. Not only rust corrodes

D. Rust not only corrodes

### 倒装练习答案

单项选择题。

1-5: CABAC

6-10: BCDBD

11-15: ACDAB

16-20: AACBA

21-25: CADCB

26-30: ABCBD

31-34: DABD